



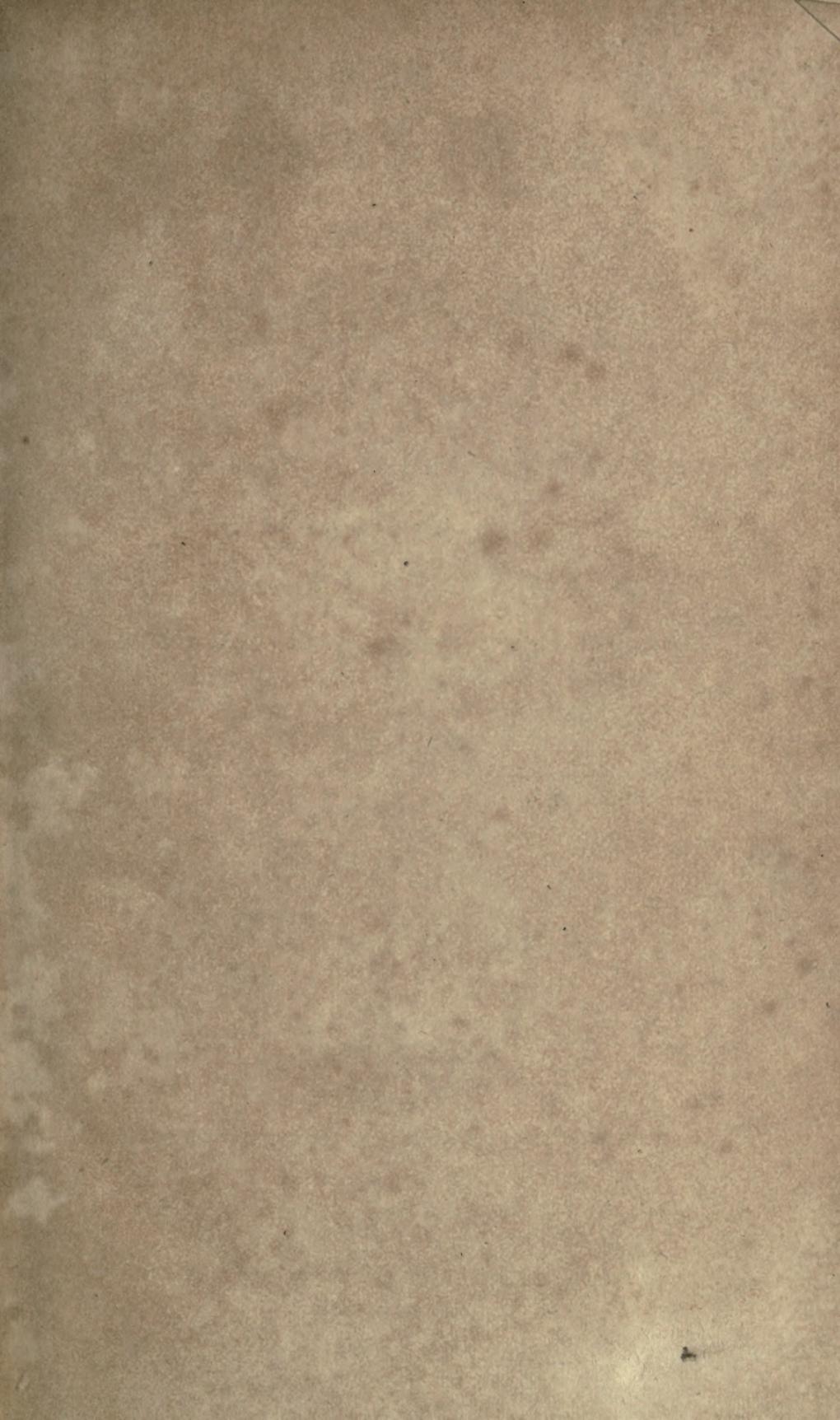
3 1761 04131 9443

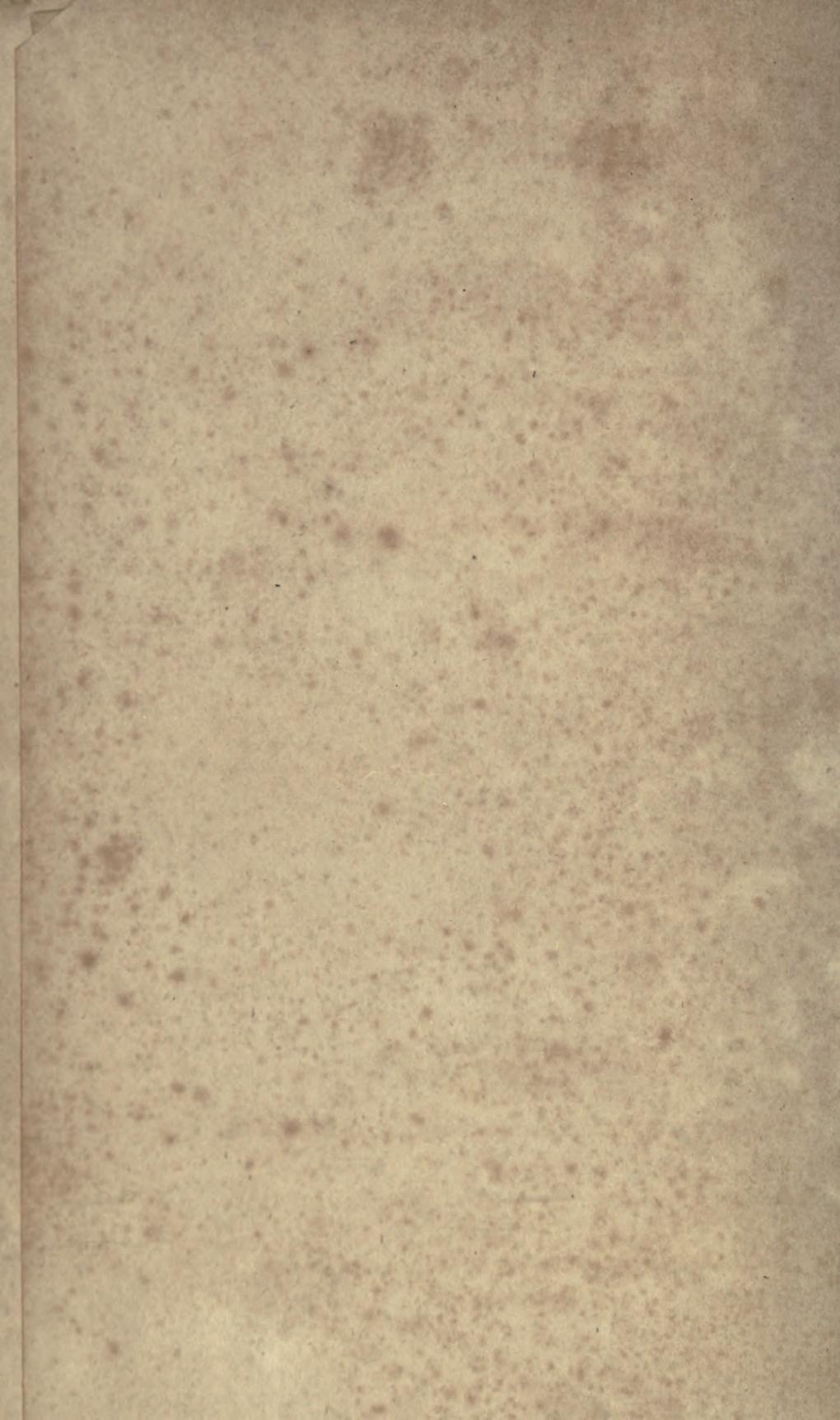


*Dear You*









HMod  
M6897

THE  
MODERN PART  
OF AN  
Universal History,  
FROM THE  
Earliest Accounts to the Present Time.

Compiled from

ORIGINAL AUTHORS.

---

By the AUTHORS of the ANCIENT PART.

---

VOL. IV.

---



---

L O N D O N,

Printed for C. BATHURST, J. F. and C. RIVINGTON, A. HAMILTON, T. PAYNE, T. LONGMAN, S. CROWDER, B. LAW, T. BECKET, J. ROBSON, F. NEWBERY, G. ROBINSON, T. CADELL, J. and T. BOWLES, S. BLADON, J. MURRAY, and W. FOX.

MDCCLXXX.

卷之三

33  
92 11 96  
24 6

# CONTENTS

## FOURTH VOLUME.

### C H A P. VII.

History of the Third Dynasty of the Seljukians,  
called that of Rûm.

SECT. VI. The Reign of Soltân Kilij Arslân II. Page 1

VII. The Reigns of Gaytho'ddîn Kay Khosraw, Rochno'ddîn Solymân, Kilij Arslân

III. and of Kay Khosraw a second Time, 12

VIII. The Reigns of Soltân Kaykaws and Alao'ddîn Kaykobâd, 21

IX. The Reigns of Soltân Gayâtho'ddîn Kay Khosraw and Azzo'ddîn, 23

### C H A P. VIII.

The History of the Moguls and Tartars, from the Time of Jenghîz Khân.

SECT. I. A Description of Western Tartary, as divided at present among the three Branches of Mungls or Moguls, 46

# C O N T E N T S.

S E C T . II . Country of the Mungls, properly so called,	46
III. The Country of the Kalka Mungls,	51
IV. The Countries belonging to the Eluths, or Eluth Mungls,	57

## С Н А Р . IX.

Of the Mungls, or Moguls, and their several  
Branches.

S E C T . I . Their Name, Persons, Manners, Customs,  
Way of Living, Habitations, and Lan-  
guage,

63

II. Religion of the Mungls,

75

III. Government of the Mungls,

78

## С Н А Р . X.

History of the Mogul or Mungl Empire, founded by  
Jenghîz Khân.

S E C T . I . The Reign of Temûjîn, till elected Grand  
Khân,

84

II. Jenghîz Khân invades the Kingdoms of  
Hya, Kitay, and Turkestân,

102

III. From the Invasion of Karazm to the Death  
of Soltân Mohammed,

116

IV. The Conquest of Karazm, Great Buk-  
haria, and Irân (or Persia at large),

till

# C O N T E N T S.

Till the Defeat of Soltân Jalâlo'ddîn Mankberni,	139
V. Conquests in Irân, from the Battle of the Indus to Jenghîz Khân's Return into Tartary,	161
VI. Conquest of the Kingdom of Hya, and the Progress made in that of Kitay, till the Death of Jenghîz Khân;	169

## C H A P. XI.

The History of Jenghîz Khân's Successors in Mo-  
gulestan, or the Country of the Moguls.

SECT. I. The Reign of Oktay Khân, second Em- peror of the Mungls,	180
II. The Regency of Tolyekona; and Reign of Quey-yew Khân.	
The Regency of Tolyekona, or Turakina Khatûn,	205
The Reign of Quey-yew, or Kayûk Khân,	208
III. The Reign of Meng-ko, or Mangu Khân,	210
IV. The Reign of Hû-pi-lay or Kublay Khân,	219

## C H A P. XII.

The History of Jenghîz Khân's Successors in Tartary  
and China.

SECT.

## C O N T E N T S.

Sect. I. The Reign of Timûr, called by the Chinese Ching-tsung,	268
II. The Reign of Hayshan, called by the Chinese Vû-tsung,	275
III. The Reign of Ayyuli-palipata, styled by the Chinese Jin-tsung,	281
IV. The Reign of Shotepala, called by the Chinese Ing-tsung,	284
V. The Reign of Yesun-temûr, styled by the Chinese Tay-ting,	287
VI. The Reign of Hoshila, known to the Chinese by the Title of Ming-tsung,	291
VII. The Reign of Tûtemûr, styled by the Chinese Ven-tsung,	295
VIII. The Reign of Towhan-temûr, styled by the Chinese Shun-ti,	297

## C H A P. XIII.

History of the Mungls, after their Expulsion from China.

326

## C H A P. XIV.

The History of Juji or Tushi Khân, and his Descendents, who reigned over the Kipjâks, with that of the Khâns of Krim Tartary,

342

## C H A P.

## C O N T E N T S.

### C H A P. XV.

The History of the Princes of the Race of Jenghîz  
Khân, who have reigned in the Great and Little  
Bukhâria, with Part of Karazm.

SECT. I. A Description of Great Bukhâria,	353
1. Province of Proper Bukhâria,	355
2. Province of Samarkand,	356
3. Province of Bâlkh,	358
1. Of the Inhabitants of Great Bukhâria, their Manners and Customs,	360
2. The Jagatay Tatars,	361
3. Uzbek Tatars of Great Bukhâria,	ibid.
II. A Description of Little Bukhâria,	362
The Inhabitants of Little Bukhâria,	367
III. The History of Great Bukhâria. Of Ja- gatay Khân and his Successors,	370
IV. Of the Descendents of Jagatay Khân, who reigned in Little Bukhâria,	375

### C H A P. XVI.

History of the Descendents of Jenghîz Khân, who  
reigned in Irân, or Persia at large.

SECT. I. The Reign of Hulâgû Khân,	379
II. The Reign of Abâka II Khân,	386

SECT.

C G N T E N T S.

<b>III. The Reigns of Nikûdâr Oglan, or Ahmed Khân,</b>	<b>390</b>
Argûn Khân,	392
Ganjatû Khân,	393
Baydû Khan,	, 394
Gâzân or Kâzân Khân,	397
Aljaytu or Aljaptu Khân,	399
Abûsaïd Khân,	401
<b>IV. Dynasties which sprung up on the Death of Abûsaïd Khân,</b>	<b>407</b>

C H A P. XVII.

The History of Timûr Bek, commonly called Tamerlan, and his Successors.

<b>Sect. I. The Transactions preceding Timûr's Reign,</b>	<b>408</b>
<b>II. The Exploits of Timûr, from his Enthrone- ment to the Reduction of Iran, or Persia at large,</b>	<b>427</b>
<b>III. Wars with the Kipjâks and Getes. Con- quest of the Countries to the Euphrates,</b>	<b>448</b>

---

---

THE  
MODERN PART  
OF  
Universal History.

---

C H A P. VII.

*History of the Third Dynasty of the Seljukians,  
called that of Rûm.*

S E C T. VI.

*The Reign of Soltân Kilij Arslân II.*

MASUT, or Massûd, emperor of the Turks, at his death, divided his dominions and provinces among his sons. He gave to Khliziaftlan, or Kilij Arslân, his capital Kogni, with the places depending on it: to his son-in-law Jagupasan (A) the cities of Amasia and An-

A.D. 1161.]  
Fifth sultân, Kilij Arslân II. attacked by Jagupasa.

fycra, with Cappadocia: and to Dadun the cities of Cœ- farea and Sebaste. The three brothers did not long live san. in unity; for the sultâns of Kogni and Cappadocia, envying each other's possessions, carried their complaints before the emperor Manuel, who secretly widened the breach between them; though he openly agreed to assist Jagupasan, through the aversion which he had to the sultân, a prince of a gloomy disposition, who studied the death of all his

(A) Perhaps Yakûb Hassân.

kindred, and often made incursions on the Roman territories.

Jagupasan, elated with this alliance, attacked the sultân, who fought several battles, with pretty equal success; but victory at length declaring for the former, he laid down his arms, and continued for some time in repose.

*Retires to  
Manuel.*

The sultân afterwards went to meet the emperor on his return to Constantinople, from his expedition to the West, and was received with joy; as he imagined his presence would serve to settle his affairs in the East. A triumph was ordered on that occasion; but the people were so terrified with an earthquake, which threw down the best houses in the city, and darkened the air with vapours, that this pageantry was but little regarded. During the long stay which the sultân made at Constantinople, he often diverted himself with public shews.

*Manuel's  
presents.*

The emperor, who had made him considerable presents, carried him one day into his cabinet; and having shewn him a great deal of gold and silver coin, wrought plate, splendid habits, and rich silks, displayed for the purpose; asked him, which of these parcels he would have? The sultân said, he should receive with respect that which was agreeable to his majesty to give. Manuel then demanded, if, with the money which he saw, he should be able to humble his enemies? Khliziaftlan answered; that he would have done it long ago, in case he had been master of but part of that wealth. "Then, said the emperor, I will give you the whole, that you may judge what a monarch possesses, who can make such magnificent presents."

*The sultân's dis-  
honesty;*

The sultân, charmed with such liberality, engaged to restore to Manuel the city of Sebaste, with its dependencies. The emperor accepted the offer with joy, and promised to make him farther presents, provided he performed his engagement; and, to induce him to keep his word, sent Constantine Gauras with the money and troops. But Khliziaftlan was no sooner arrived at Kogni, than he ruined Sebaste, took Cæsarea, drove Dadûn out of his territories, and went in pursuit of Jagupasan, who died while he was raising forces to oppose his enemy. Dadûn, in seizing Amasia, was the occasion of the death of Jagupasan's widow, who had invited him thither; for the inhabitants rising, slew her, and drove out Dadûn, whose power she intended by her intrigues to establish.

*His great  
success;*

But they found themselves too weak to resist Khliziaftlan, who reduced their city to his obedience, as he had subdued

subdued Cappadocia a little before ; although he was quite a cripple. Yet being full of spirit, this infirmity did not hinder him from violating the peace, and taking several places from the Romans : finding also the opportunity favourable, he reduced the city of Melitene, which he entirely destroyed, and drove out the emir, although he professed his own religion. He made use of perfidy to deceive his own brother, and expel him, like the rest, who fled for refuge to the emperor.

At the same time, Solymân, an artful person, came *invades the empire.* to excuse the sultân's conduct, laying upon the Turks the blame of the infringements made in the treaty. His apology was accompanied with excessive praises of Manuel, and a present of some fine horses from his master.

The emperor ordered the ambassador to reproach the sultân, in his name, with his breach of faith and inconstancy : but Khлизиastлан, far from paying any regard to his remonstrances, though he called him father, went to Laodicea, which, at that time, was not walled, and carried off a great number of prisoners, as well as cattle ; killing also many people, and, amongst the rest, the bishop<sup>a</sup>. The Turks committed other ravages ; but Manuel restrained them : and repaired Kliate, Pergamus, and Endromit, which had been ruined by them : he likewise built several forts to secure the frontiers<sup>b</sup>.

The care which the emperor took to repair the fortifications of Doryleum, gave occasion for a rupture. The sultân, pretending not to know the design of his coming, sent to intreat him to retire ; and the Turks, unwilling to be driven out of a fruitful territory, so convenient for feeding their flocks, made frequent inroads, burning villages, and ravaging the country. However, Manuel went on with the work ; and when the fortifications of that place were finished, he undertook those of Sableum. This conduct provoked the sultân to accuse him of breach of treaties ; while the emperor, in his turn, upbraided the sultân with ingratitude.

Both parties being irritated, the emperor made great preparations, and crossed into Asia. He marched through Phrygia, and, passing by Laodicea, advanced to Kone, formerly Kolossus, a very rich city, where our author Nicetas was born : from thence he marched to Lempis, and so to Celene, where the river Marsius has its source. Pro-

A.D 1175.

*A new  
rupture.*

*Manuel  
sets for-  
ward.*

<sup>a</sup> Nicet. in Manuel, lib. iii. cap. 5, & 6.    <sup>b</sup> Ibid. lib. iv. cap. 7.

ceeding forward, he arrived at Kone, and afterwards at Myriocephale.

**A.D. 1176.** *The sultân begs peace.* The sultân having received a reinforcement from Mesopotamia, sent an embassy to demand peace of the emperor, on his own terms; which all the persons of experience advised him to accept; representing that the cavalry of the Turks was invincible; that they had seized the inaccessible parts of the country; and that a contagious distemper already prevailed in the Roman army. But Manuel, suffering himself to be led by his relations, who had never been in a camp before, sent back the ambassador, without proposing any terms. The sultân having applied for peace a second time, and received no other answer than that the emperor would satisfy his demands when he came to Kogni, he prepared an ambuscade in the pass of Sybriza, through which the Romans were to march after they left Myriocephale.

*Dangerous passage.* It is a long valley, bounded on one side with high mountains, and on the other by deep precipices. The emperor, instead of detaching a body of light troops to reconnoitre the country and clear the way, divided his army into six bodies, and marched behind the baggage, at the head of the fifth, which consisted of the flower of his troops. The two first corps passed the most dangerous places without any loss; because they covered themselves with their bucklers, and valiantly fought the enemy, who attacked them from the tops of the rocks. For want of these precautions, the right wing, which made the third body, was broken and cut to pieces, with Baldwin, the emperor's brother-in-law, who commanded them. The Turks, elated with this success, blocked up the pass entirely; so that the Romans could neither advance nor retreat: in a moment both men and horses were pierced with infinite showers of arrows, which covered the ground with dead bodies.

*Romans overthrown.*

The enemy made great efforts to defeat the troops which were about the emperor, who tried several times to repulse them, and open a passage: but not being able to compass his design, he threw himself almost alone into the middle of them, and happily escaped, after he had received several wounds: about thirty arrows were sticking in his buckler, and his casque was half beaten off. Mean time the soldiers fell thick in the battle; and those who escaped this fatal pass perished in the valley. The whole defile consisted of seven vallies, one within another, the entrance of which was pretty wide, and the exit very narrow.

row. A violent wind happening to raise clouds of dust, both parties fought for some time in the dark, killing indiscriminately their friends and foes. However, a much greater number of the Romans were slain than of the Turks, and chiefly the emperor's relations.

When the storm was over, men were seen buried up to the waist among dead bodies, extending their arms, and imploring help with lamentable cries; without being able to obtain any, from men who were in too much danger themselves to think of assisting others.

The emperor appeared alone, without his armour-bearer or guards, resting himself under a wild pear-tree; there was only one horseman who offered to assist him, and tried to refit his head-piece. At the same time a Turk seized the bridle of his horse, but he struck him down with a piece which remained of his lance. Others advancing to take him, he drove them off with the lance of the horseman who attended him; killing one of them, while his assistant cut off the head of another with his sword. Having been joined at length by ten Romans, he surmounted, with incredible fatigue, the difficulties of the passes: then crossing the river, and marching over dead bodies, he found a troop of his soldiers, who came up as soon as they saw him. He beheld in the way John Cantacuzenus, who had married his niece, fighting very valiantly; but at length killed and stripped upon the spot. Those who had slain him, perceiving the emperor, made a ring, closing their ranks, to surround him. They were mounted on barbs, well trained; which, among other ornaments, had long collars of hair, with little bells. Manuel, encouraging his men, repulsed the enemy vigorously; and still advancing, at length joined the first legions.

Contostephanus, and some others, arrived in the evening. They passed the night in the greatest anxiety, and accounted themselves no better than dead men, considering the dangers which surrounded them. What terrified them most was, to hear the Turks couring round their camp, calling aloud to their countrymen to quit it, for that next morning they would put all to the sword. The emperor hereupon conceived the design of flying privately, and leaving his people to be slaughtered; nor was he ashamed to own his intention to his friends, who were filled with indignation.

A soldier, who was without the tent, and heard what he said, raising his voice, cried out, "What a detestable thought has entered into the mind of the emperor!" Then

*The emperor's distress.*

*Escapes with difficulty.*

*The emperor resolves to fly.*

*With-held  
by re-  
proach.*

addressing his speech to him, “ Is it not you (said he), who have brought us to perish here, under rocks which bruise us, and mountains which overwhelm us? what have we to do in this valley of groans and tears, in this descent to hell, in the midst of precipices and pits? We have had no difference with these Barbarians, who have inclosed us within this chain of mountains: it is you who have led us to the slaughter, to sacrifice us as victims.” This bold speech touched the emperor, and induced him to submit to the necessity of the occasion.

*The sultân  
offers terms  
of peace.*

While no hope seemed to be left for the Romans, the sultân, by persuasion of the principal men of his court, who in time of peace received pensions and presents from the emperor, proposed to offer him terms of peace. However, the Turks, who knew nothing of their master’s intentions, prepared at day-break to attack the camp. Twice the Romans made a sally to repulse them, without gaining any advantage. Meanwhile the sultân sent Gauras, who, having ordered hostilities to cease, and saluted the emperor after the Turkish fashion, presented him with a sword, and a horse which had a silver bit, and was very well trained; making use of the most gentle words to comfort him. Observing that Manuel had on a black vest over his cuirass, he said, “ That colour is not proper in time of war, and presages no good luck.” The emperor, smiling, gave him the vest, which was adorned with gold and purple. Afterwards he concluded and signed the peace, by which he was obliged to demolish the forts of Doryleum and Sableum.

*Manuel  
returns;*

The emperor designed to avoid returning by the field of battle; but the guides brought him directly through it, that he might behold at leisure the deplorable spectacle. In short, the vallies and forests were covered, and every hollow filled, with dead bodies. The heads were all scalped, and the privy parts cut off; a precaution taken by the Turks, that the Christians might not be distinguished from the circumcised, as well as to shew that the victory was theirs.

*violates the  
peace;*

When the Romans had passed the straits of the mountains, they were attacked again by the Turks, who pursued them in parties, and killed the sick and wounded, who were not in a condition to defend themselves, notwithstanding all the care that could be taken to prevent these hostilities. It is said, the sultân, repenting that he

<sup>2</sup> Nicet, in Man. lib. vi. cap. 1—4.

had

had let the prey slip out of his hands, had given his soldiers liberty to commit those violences, which continued till they reached Kone. The emperor stayed some time at Philadelphia to refresh himself; and, in passing forward, demolished the fortifications of Sableum, but left those of Doryleum standing; and when the sultân complained of it, answered, that he paid little regard to a treaty which was extorted from him by force. Hereupon the sultân sent Atapakus (B) at the head of twenty thousand chosen men, with orders to ravage the Roman provinces, and bring him home sea-water, land, and an oar. That *loses many cities.* commander ruined all the cities near the river Meander; had Tralles and Antioch delivered to him by composition; took Luma, Pentakhira, with some other castles, by force, and ravaged all the sea-coast.

The emperor, on this advice, immediately dispatched *The Turks defeated;* John Vataces, his nephew, Constantine Ducas, and Michael Aspiacius, all able men, with forces to repress the enemy. Vataces led his troops directly to Hielium and Limnokhira, small cities, which had formerly a bridge on the Meander; and hearing that the Turks were retiring with their plunder, made the greater part of his army lie in ambush, and posted the rest beyond the river. The Turks having been attacked in a place where they were much exposed, Atapakus charged the Romans at the head of his bravest soldiers, to give the others time to cross the river. He gave eminent proofs, at first, of his courage and conduct; but when he saw that there was another army of the enemy beyond the Meander, which slew all those who appeared before them, his ardour abated, and he sought a place where he might pass the stream with less danger. Finding none fordable, he placed himself in his buckler, as in a boat, making use of his sword for a rudder; and holding the bridle of his horse, who swam behind, gained the other side of the river. As soon as he had landed, he told his name aloud, in order to draw the Turks about him: but an Alan, who served in the Roman army, coming up, slew him; upon which his troops *their general slain.* being routed, most of them were drowned in the Meander. This exploit, more than any other, retrieved the affairs of the Romans, and humbled the pride of the Turks. Aspietus perished unhappily in this encounter;

(B) Some person, we presume, who had the title of Atâbek; expressed by Atapakus:

for a Turk, not being able to hurt him, his armour being proof, made a stroke at the head of his horse, which, rearing upon his hind-legs, threw him into the river<sup>d</sup>.

*Shameful flight of a Roman general.*

The emperor being desirous to attack the Turks of Panesa and Lacere, reduced the first; then sent Katidus, governor of Laodicea, to discover the condition of the others: but he declaring that the emperor himself was at hand, they fled immediately, a circumstance which so enraged Manuel, that he ordered Katidus to have his nose cut off. Soon after, he sent troops under Andronicus Angelus and Manuel Cantacuzenus, to attack the Turks of Karace, which is between Lampis and Graofgala. Andronicus, having only taken some sheep and peasants, fled full speed at the bare report of the enemy's being at hand, without even enquiring their number; and not content with escaping to Kone, spurred his horse on to Laodicea. The soldiers, astonished at the absence of their general, abandoned the prisoners and the baggage, and would have dispersed, but for Cantacuzenus. The emperor intended to have punished this pusillanimous behaviour of Andronicus, by making him walk through the city in women's cloaths, but was restrained by the relationship that was between them.

*Bravery of others.* As the Romans retired, a Turk, from a rising ground, flew a great number with arrows. Several archers shot at him again, but he had the dexterity to avoid their shafts, till Manuel Xerus, alighting, cleft his head with his sword. A deacon, who was a man of courage, and related to Nicetas, having had the charge of some plunder at Karace, did not leave it like the rest, for fear of the danger. Some admired his resolution, in marching slowly in the middle of his enemies; and others rallied him for his avarice, in setting a greater value on the booty than his life; while he reproached them with cowardice, in flying when they were not pursued.

*Claudiopolis relieved.* The Turks afterwards besieged Claudiopolis; and the emperor ran to its relief, with incredible diligence, without any equipage besides his arms. He crossed Bithynia by the light of torches: he passed the nights without sleep; and, when fatigue and watching obliged him to take a little rest, he lay upon nothing but straw. At the news of his approach the Turks betook themselves to flight, and the citizens were filled with joy<sup>e</sup>.

<sup>d</sup> Nicet. in Man. lib. vi. cap. 6.

<sup>e</sup> Idem, lib. viii. cap. 2.

Khliziaflan,

Khliziaftlan, who greatly feared the emperor Manuel, A.D. 1182. no sooner heard of his death (C), than he went and took Sozopolis; besieged, for a long time, the celebrated city of Attalia; ravaged Kotyalium; and several provinces voluntarily submitted to him<sup>f</sup>. This prince, who enjoyed a vigorous state of health, though upwards of seventy years of age, understanding that Andronicus was succeeded on the imperial throne by Isaac Angelus, sent Amîr Sames, with some horse, to make an irruption into Thrace, from whence he returned with many prisoners and much plunder: for the nations of the East allowed the Romans to remain no longer in repose than they made them presents, or paid them an annual tribute, which was the way of keeping them quiet used by the emperors of that age; who in this respect, says Nicetas, were weaker than women, who handle nothing but the spindle and distaff<sup>g</sup>.

This sultân, who, in his latter days, became very *Divides his powerful, divided his dominions among his sons, of empire.* whom he had many<sup>h</sup>: but we meet with the names of only five, Mâsfûd, Kothbo'ddîn, Rokno'ddîn Solymân, Gayatho'ddîn Kay Khosraw, and Moazo'ddîn Kayfar Shâh. After this distribution, his children treated him with much ingratitude, and even contempt: Kothbo'ddîn went so far as to seize and confine him. Afterwards marching to besiege Kayfariyah (that is, Cæfarea, in Cappadocia), which he wanted to take from one of his brothers, to whose share it fell, the old sultân, whom he carried along with him, found means at length to make his escape into that city: but meeting with an unwelcome reception, he applied himself first to one son, and then to another, who all proved alike, excepting Gayatho'ddîn Kay Khosraw. This prince not only received him with affection, but went with him to besiege Konyah; and having taken it, placed him once more on the throne<sup>i</sup>.

During this prince's abdication, the emperor Frederic A.D. 1190. Barbarossa, who had taken the cross, arrived in Thrace, in his way to Syria; and having made peace with Isaac Angelus, repaired with his Germans to Kallipolis; where, finding ships ready, they crossed over into Anatolia. At

<sup>f</sup> Nicet. in Alex. Comn. cap. 15. <sup>g</sup> Ibid. in Isaac. Angel. lib. i. cap. 4. <sup>h</sup> Ibid. in Alex. Comn. lib. iii. cap. 5. <sup>i</sup> Abul-Faraj. Hist. Dynast. p. 276.

(C) The emperor died in September, in the fifteenth in- diction, which answers to the year of Christ 1182.

Great suc-  
cess of  
Kitij  
Arslân.

A.D. 1186]

Philadelphia, the inhabitants, who behaved well enough at first, attacked them in the rear, at their departure: but finding they had to deal with a resolute people, they betook themselves to a shameful flight. The citizens of Laodicea, in Phrygia, on the contrary, received these strangers with so much humanity, that the emperor prayed for their prosperity on his knees. In the prosecution of their route, they met with the Turks, who incommodeed them by skirmishing; although they had promised them a passage, as well as the Romans: but they paid dear for their treachery.

*The German emperor defeats the Turks.*

Frederic gave battle near the fort of Filomelion to the sons of the sultân of Kogni, who had been driven from his dominions, and reduced to a miserable condition; and having defeated them, took the fort and burned it. Coming to a second engagement with them at Cinglacion, he gained a signal victory; for as they waited for him at the pasles which they had seized, the emperor encamped in a plain; and having divided his army in the night, he ordered one half to remain in the camp, and the other to feign a flight as soon as day appeared. The Turks believing that they fled through fear, quitted the pasles, and coming down into the plain, entered the camp, where they expected to meet with a rich booty: but the pretended fugitives returning, and those who were in the camp appearing, they surrounded the Turks, and made a horrible slaughter.

*Great slaughter.*

As the emperor was on his way to Kogni, the sultân, who had taken refuge in Taxara, or Kolonia, sent to excuse what had happened, for that he knew nothing of the conduct of his sons, one of whom, named Kopatin (I.), had driven him out of his dominions. The Turks had barricaded themselves in the gardens which were about Kogni; and as they carried light weapons, and were good marksmen, thought they could easily defend themselves against troops heavily armed: but they were deceived by their hopes: for the Germans observing that they took the advantage of shooting from behind the hedges and ditches, the horsemen carried the foot-soldiers behind them, and setting them down when they were near the enemy, supported them in every place where they were able to act. Thus all the Turks perished, excepting a few who escaped. A Mohammedan, who turned Christian, averred that it cost him two hundred pieces of silver to bury those who remained dead upon his field; by which the number of the slain may be judged of.

(L) That is Kothbo'ddin.

Although

Although the Germans were masters of Kogni, they would not go into the city; but were content to lodge in the suburbs, and there take the provisions which they wanted. The Turks, apprehending that the emperor intended to conquer their country, endeavoured to gain his affection by false offers of service: but after he had received some of their children in hostage, with guides, he left their frontiers, and continued his march into Armenia, where he was received with great honours. In a few days he proceeded to Antioch, and soon after was unfortunately drowned in passing a river <sup>k</sup>.

Alexis, who pretended to be the son of the emperor Manuel, disguised his imposture with so much art, that he imitated the true Alexis, even to the colour of his hair, and hesitation in his speech. He made his first appearance in the cities along the Meander: then going to Armale, discovered himself to a Roman, with whom he lodged; telling him, that his father had ordered him to be thrown into the sea, but that he was saved by the compassion of the officers who were charged with that cruel mandate. Going to Kogni, he presented himself before the old sultân, who had not then been driven from the throne, and had even the boldness to reproach him with ingratitude, not to be touched with the disgrace of the son of an emperor, who had been his friend. Khliziaftlan, deceived by some marks of resemblance which appeared in his face, made him presents, and gave him hopes.

A.D. 1191.

*A Greek pretender claims the empire;*

One day, boasting of his birth in the presence of the Roman ambassador, the sultân asked the latter if he was sure that this pretender was Manuel's son? The ambassador answered, it was certain that the son of Manuel had been drowned; and that it was in vain for the impostor to invent a story which would meet with no credit. The false Alexis was highly provoked at this answer; and all the assistance he obtained from the sultân was only letters called müfür, permitting him to enlist soldiers: by which means he drew to his party Almuras, Arsan, and other commanders, accustomed to rapine. In a short time he gathered eight thousand men, with whom, by force or composition, he reduced many cities upon the Meander.

Several generals, and lastly Alexis, the emperor's brother, were sent against him: but they could do nothing effectual, for fear of being betrayed by their soldiers; who shewed more inclination to serve this pretender than their

*slain by a priest.*

<sup>k</sup> Nicet, in Isaac, Angel. lib. ii, cap. 7, 8.

lawful emperor. Nor was the infection confined to the people only ; the principal persons at court were pleased with this illusion : but while the power of this impostor increased every day, and he seemed to be in a fair way of compassing his design, he was suddenly taken off by an unexpected incident ; for having returned from Armale, to Pisfe, and drank more than usual, he was slain by a priest, with his own sword. When his head was brought to the sebastocrator (Alexis), he pushed back the long hair with his horse-whip, and said, that it was not without reason that so many had been disposed to follow him<sup>1</sup>.

*Hejra 588. A.D. 1192.* Kilij Arslân died in his capital, in the year 588, according to Abû'l-Faraj ; which computation gives him a reign of forty years, by our reckoning, from the death of his father Mâffûd ; although Khondemîr allows him but ten years. The author of the Nighiaristân, indeed, doubles that number ; but both are wide of the truth. From the before mentioned account of his age, he must have been seventy-six at his death.

*His character.* This prince was grandson to the first of that name ; and distinguished himself, not only by the wars which he carried on against his neighbours the Greeks, but also by his wisdom, justice, and skill in governing his people. He left his son Gayathô'ddîn Kay Khosraw for his successor<sup>m</sup>.

In consequence of this new nomination, Konîyah, as being the regal seat of the sultans since the loss of Nice, fell to the share of Kay Khosraw, as it had done to Kothbo'ddîn, by the first distribution : and it is, doubtless, to this second appointment of Kilij Arslân, that the partition, mentioned at the beginning of the next reign, ought to be referred.

### S E C T. VII.

*The Reigns of Gayathô'ddîn Kay Khosraw, Rocno'ddîn Solymân, Kilij Arslân III. and of Kay Khosraw a second Time.*

*Sixth sultân, Gayathô'ddîn Kay Khosraw.*

**G**AYATHÔ'DDIN Kay Khosraw, according to our hypothesis, was the sixth sultân of this Seljûkian dynasty. On the death of Kilij Arslân, his dominions stood thus divided among his sons : Mâffûd had for his share Amasia, Ancyra, Dorylæum, and several other cities of Pontus ; Kothbo'ddîn possessed Melitene, Cæfarea, and

<sup>1</sup> Nicet, in Isaac, Angel. lib. iii. cap. 1. <sup>m</sup> Abu'lfed. p. 276.

Kolonia, called Taxara ; Rocno'ddîn was master of Amyn-tus, Dokwa, and other maritime cities ; and to Kay Khos-raw belonged Konîyah, Lykaonia, Pamphylia, and all the country as far as Kottianyum <sup>n</sup>.

Alexis Comnenus, who succeeded Isaac in the empire, A.D. 1195] had scarce been three months on the throne, before news arrived of another pretender, a Cilician, who had taken the name of Alexis ; and was well received by the sultân of Ancyra, with a design to embarrass the emperor, and oblige him to buy his friendship. Oenopolitus the eunuch, who was sent against him, being able to do nothing, he went in person, thinking to make an alliance with the Turks : but they refused to conclude a peace with him, unless he paid them down five hundred pounds of coined silver, and three hundred every year, besides four hundred silk vests. Alexis having destroyed some forts, returned to Constantinople, after two months employed in this expedition, leaving the pretender to increase in power ; and doubtless he would have done a great deal of mischief, if his throat had not been cut in the fort of Zangre.

However, the sultân of Ancyra carried on the war, and A.D. 1196.] besieged Diadibris with all his forces. At the end of four months, troops arrived under three young chiefs, Theodore Uranus, Andronicus Katakalon, and Theodore Kafanus ; but the Turks laying an ambuscade, attacked them at day-break, put them to flight, killed a great number, and among the prisoners took two of the generals, whom they dragged with their hands tied behind their backs as a spectacle to the besieged. The inhabitants, discouraged at the fight, and being in great want of provisions, delivered up the city, on condition of having the liberty to retire with their families and effects. When the war had lasted a year and a half, the emperor made peace with the sultân, and was not ashamed to agree to the terms which he had refused before the place was besieged <sup>o</sup>.

Theodore Mangafes, after his revolt at Philadelphia, and peace made with the emperor, to avoid the attempts of Basilius Vataces, governor of Thrace, fled to Kay Khos-raw, sultân of Kogni, and intreated him to supply him with troops to make war upon the Romans. The sultân, instead of granting his request, only permitted him to assemble some Turks who lived by plunder. Having collected a multitude of these, he invaded the empire, doing

<sup>n</sup> Nicet. in Alex. Comnen. lib. iii. cap. 5.  
lib. i. cap. 4, & 9.

<sup>o</sup> Idem ibid.

incredible damages in Phrygia, especially about Laodicea and Kone, and in Karia; after which exploits he retired with abundance of prisoners and cattle. The emperor fearing that Mangafes might by his advice corrupt that young prince, who had but lately succeeded his father Kilij Arslân, sent ambassadors, who by presents prevailed on him to deliver up that refugee, on condition that he *is delivered up.* should not receive any corporal punishment. This action of the sultân so displeased his brothers, who had divided with him their father's dominions, that they would have made war upon him, if he had not appeased them, by alleging, that he had not betrayed him, but only sent him back for the good of the state; that he was a banished man whom he had settled again in his own country, that he might no longer persecute others or be persecuted himself<sup>p</sup>.

**A.D. 1198.]** Towards the end of the third year of his reign, Alexis, upon a very frivolous occasion, broke the treaty which had been made with Kay Khosroes, sultân of Iconium. This prince stopped two horses which had been sent the emperor by the sultân of Alexandria; and one of them having broken a leg in running, he sent to apologize for both those accidents, and promised to make satisfaction. Alexis, instead of being pacified with this civil excuse, flew into a rage, and threatened vengeance; but at last took revenge upon himself, by ordering the merchants from Kogni, Romans as well as Turks, to be seized, together with their effects, which were soon squandered away. On advice of this outrage the sultân immediately fell upon the cities near the Meander, took Karia and Tantalus, with several others, and would have become master of Antioch in Phrygia, but for a droll accident.

The same night in which he intended to surprise that city, one of the principal inhabitants happening to celebrate the nuptials of his daughter, the guests made a great noise, as is usual on such occasions; Kay Khosroes, as he approached the walls, hearing this confusion of voices, and the word, which the soldiers, who had been informed of his coming, passed to one another, he retired to Lampis.

*His humanity to the Christians.*

There he viewed his prisoners, and enquiring into their names, countries, and after what manner they were taken, asked if any of his soldiers had concealed the married women and maidens with a design to abuse them. Then he ordered the effects to be restored which had been taken

<sup>p</sup> Nicet. in Isaac. Angel. lib. ii. cap. 3.

from them. Finding that their number amounted to five thousand, he ranged them according to their families, and at parting took care that they should be supplied with provisions during the march. For fear also that they should be injured by the cold weather, he took an ax himself to cleave a tree which had fallen. The soldiers running to see him work, he ordered them to follow his example, laying, they might go out of the camp when they pleased to cut wood ; but the Roman prisoners durst not attempt it, for fear of being suspected of a design to escape.

When he arrived at Filomelion, he assigned them houses to lodge in, and lands to maintain them, with corn and other grain. He promised besides to send them back without ransom, when he should conclude a peace with the emperor ; and that, in case he rejected the terms of accommodation, they should remain five years in his dominions without paying any tax ; that afterwards they should pay but a very light imposition, which should never be increased. Having thus regulated matters, he returned to Kogni. Such favourable treatment made the captives forget their country, and drew into the sultân's territories abundance of people who had not been taken in war.

Alexis sent against the Turks Andronicus Ducas, who being very young, contented himself with attacking the troops of Amîr in the night, and presently retiring <sup>9</sup>.

Some time after these transactions war broke out among the sons of Kilij Arslân, on the following occasion. Koth-bo'ddîn being dead, a dispute arose between Rocno'd-dîn and Maffûd, who should succeed to his dominions, which consisted of Melitene, Cæsaria, and Kolonia ; but as Rocno'd-dîn had more spirit than his brother, and understood military affairs better, he gained the advantage, and constrained him to accept of such part of this country as he was pleased to allow : afterwards, having conceived an inveterate hatred against his brother Kay Khosraw, because his mother was a Christian, and burning with desire to possess Kogni, he sent to require him to deliver it up, in case he wished to exempt the rest of his dominions from the hazard of a war.

Kay Khosraw having made peace with Alexis, repaired to his court, dressed in a robe adorned with gold point, just as his father had done before to that of the emperor Manuel, during the disputes which he had with his brothers after the death of their father Maffûd ; but whereas Manuel assisted Kilij Arslân with forces beyond his hopes,

*Attacked by  
Rocno'd-  
dîn;*

*retires to  
Alexis,*

<sup>9</sup> Nicet, in Alex. Comnen.

Kay Khosraw received nothing from Alexis but common civilities. He had scarce returned to Kogni, when he was pursued by Rocno'ddîn, and forced to fly into Armenia, where he was kindly received by Leon, although formerly he had been at war with him. That prince, however, afforded him no assistance against his brother, with whom he said he was allied, because he foresaw that the war would be very bloody. Hereupon Kay Khosraw returned to the emperor, in hopes of being restored by his means; but this second hope being as vain as the first, he continued at Constantinople in a private condition\*. This revolution happened, according to the computation of the Greeks, in the year 1198.

**A.D. 1198.**

*Seventh  
soltân Roc-  
no'ddîn So-  
lymân.*

*The empe-  
ror turns  
pirate  
and as-  
sassins.*

Rocno'ddîn Solymân having deprived his brother Kay Khosraw of his share in the empire, in the same manner as he had expelled his other brothers the whole became again united under one prince.

Not long after this event, the emperor sent Constantine Frankopolis, with six gallies, into the Euxine sea, under pretence of getting up the wreck of a ship which had been cast away near Kerasonte, in returning from the river Fafis; but in reality to rob the merchants who landed their goods at Amintus. Frankopolis following exactly the orders which he had received, spared no vessel whatever; plundering those which carried commodities to Constantinople as well as those which had returned with the price of such as they had sold in that port. They slew some of the merchants, and threw them into the sea; the rest they pillaged in a shameful manner. These presented themselves before the emperor's palace, and entered the great church with tapers in their hands, to demand justice; but their effects having been already sold, and the money confiscated, they could obtain no redress.

The merchants of Konîyah had recourse to Rocno'ddîn: who, by his ambassadors, demanded restitution of what had been taken from them, and at the same time proposed a treaty of peace. The emperor laid all the blame on Frankopolis: however, the articles of peace at length taking place, Rocno'ddîn had fifty minæ of silver to satisfy him and his subjects, besides the promise of a yearly tribute. Some days after, Alexis was convicted of an attempt against the sultân's life; for, he had sent a very polite letter to that prince by a Kassian, whom he had bribed to assassinate him: but the bravo being arrested, the plot was discovered, and the peace broken as soon as made;

\* Nicet. lib. iii. cap. 5.

which rupture occasioned the ruin of many cities of Anatolia.

At the same time Michael, the natural son of John the sebastocrator, a foward and passionate young man, having been sent to collect the taxes due from the province of Mylaffa, revolted : but, being defeated, fled to Rocno'd-din, who received him very civilly, and supplied him with troops ; with which he plundered the cities about the Meander, and committed horrible cruelties.

We are not much better supplied with materials from the Oriental historians, relative to this sultân, than to those who preceded him : what little we have from that quarter is given by Abu'l-Faraj. This author informs us, that Rocno'd-din Solymân took Konîyah from his brother Gayatho'ddin Kay Khosraw<sup>s</sup>; and that in 597, in the month of Ramadân, he forced the city of Malatiyah out of the hands of his brother Moezo'ddin Kayfar Shâh, after a few days siege. Then marching to Arzen Al Rûm (or Arzerûm), which belonged to the son of king Mohammed Ebn Salik ; that lord depending on Rocno'd-din's promise, went to him, in order to treat of peace ; but the sultân imprisoned him, and then took the city. He was the last of his family, which, for a long time, had reigned there<sup>t</sup>. Sultân Rocno'd-din, lord of Rûm, died in the year 600, in the month of Dhulkaada, leaving his son Kilij Arslân, a minor, to succeed him on the throne.

D'Herbelot affords us nothing from the Persian writers concerning this prince, only that he had great disputes with his brother Kay Khosraw ; but that at length peace was concluded between them : that, having reigned in peace twenty-four years, he died in 602 of the Hejra, and of Christ 1205 ; and was succeeded by his son Kilij Arslân, surnamed Azzo'ddin, an infant<sup>u</sup>.

Kilij Arslân III. surnamed Azzo'ddin, was advanced to the throne immediately after the death of his father Rocno'd-din Solymân, towards the end of the year 600. But as soon as his uncle Gayatho'ddin Kay Khosraw heard that his brother was dead, he left the castle where he resided near Constantinople ; and, posting to Konîyah, feized the child, and took possession of the city ; he afterwards stripped him of the rest of his dominions. This revolution happened in 601. D'Herbelot has copied the article of Kilij Arslân III. from Abu'l-Faraj, without adding any

<sup>s</sup> Abu'l-f. p. 276. <sup>t</sup> Ibid. 280. <sup>u</sup> Soliman ben Kilig' Arslan.

\* D'Herb. p. 822. art,

A.D. 1205.

Rocno' d-  
din's ex-  
ploits,

A.D. 1203.

and death.

Eighth  
sultân Kilij  
Arslân III.  
quickly de-  
throned &

thing to it from other Oriental historians. Some Greek writers say, that this sultân, whom they call Yathatines (which is a corruption of his surname Gayatho'ddîn), on the reduction of Constantinople by the Latins, fled along with the emperor Alexis Angelus, otherwise called Comnenus ; and that a few days after, being secretly informed of the death of his brother Azatines (so they miscall Roc-no'ddîn), he departed in disguise, and, repairing to his own people, was proclaimed sultân <sup>w</sup>.

**A.D. 1204.** *and Gaya-tho'ddin Kay Khofraw re-flored.* Gayatho'ddîn Kay Khofraw ascended the throne of Konîyah for the second time in 601, the same year in which the Latins took Constantinople from the Greeks. Abu'l-Faraj, informs us, that, he became very powerful, and reigned with great dignity<sup>x</sup>. This is all we learn from the Oriental authors touching the second reign of this prince ; and the Byzantine historians have not said much concerning it. They do not directly mention the restoration of Kay Khofraw ; but only give an imperfect hint of this transaction.

*State of the empire.* After the shameful flight of the emperor Alexis (who changed his name of Angelus to that of Comnenus), and the election of Baldwin by the Latins ; the latter, in less than one year, reduced all that the Romans possessed both in Europe and in Asia, excepting the cities of Nice and Prusa. The Greek commanders, and other leading men, influenced by the spirit of pride, malice, and corruption, instead of uniting in defence of their country, divided into factions, and formed parties for creating new emperors. The western part of the empire seemed to be quite cut off from the eastern, which sent it no manner of assistance : but, being infected with the same contagion, produced a multitude of commanders, who ruined the country, and formed a monster with three heads.

**A.D. 1205.** *Maurozomus aspires to the empire ;* Manuel Maurozomus, supported by Kay Khofraw, to whom, since the taking of Konîyah, he had promised his daughter in marriage, made all his efforts to usurp the sovereign power, and joined the Turks to ravage the country about the Meander. Theodorus Laskaris, ill-favoured both by his birth and alliance with the emperor, having defeated him, put on the purple buskins ; and was proclaimed emperor through the cities of the East. On the other side, David Comnenus assembled troops at Hæraclæa, a city of Pontus, and in Paphlagonia ; subdued the Iberians, reduced some towns and cities, and made

<sup>w</sup> Georg. Acrop. Niceph. Gregor. lib. i.

<sup>x</sup> Abu'l-F. ubi supra.  
himself

himself the forerunner of his brother Alexis, whom he had a desire of advancing to the throne : but this Alexis, instead of hastening to take possession, loitered about Trebizond. Mean time David having sent a young man, named Synademus, with troops to Nicomedia, Theodore Laskaris advanced at the head of his army to give him battle ; and taking a private road, fell upon him, by surprise, and dispersed his forces. He shortly after defeated Manuel Maurozomus ; cut in pieces part of the Turks whom he commanded ; and took the most considerable of those who were in the van of his army <sup>r</sup>.

In short, Lydia, Philomolpis, Prusa, Nice, Smyrna, Ephesus, and some other cities of the East, were subject to Theodore Laskaris ; who built ships of war, and subdued several islands. However, in making peace with Kay Khosraw, he gave up to Manuel Maurozomus, his father-in-law, part of the country which he possessed ; comprizing the city of Kone) or Koloflus, Laodicea, and all inclosed within the windings of the Meander to its fall into the sea.

David and Alexis, the sons of Manuel, and grandsons of the tyrant Andronicus, had established their dominion in different parts : David in Paphlagonia, and at Heraclia in Pontus ; Alexis at Eneum, Sinope, and Trebizon. Aldobrandini, an Italian, learned in the Roman laws, commanded at Attalia ; and the island of Rhodes was under a particular lord. These numerous commanders, instead of acting in concert, to preserve the cities which they possessed, or reconquer those which they had lost, gave themselves up to a furious spirit of ambition ; and having taken up arms one against the other, afforded their enemies an opportunity of gaining farther advantages.

Kay Khosraw at this juncture laid siege to the city of Attalia <sup>s</sup>; imagining, that it was not in a condition of defending itself ; but Aldobrandini having procured two hundred foot from Cyprus, the unexpected appearance of them, at the beginning of the assault, induced the sultan to retire, after he had been sixteen days before the place <sup>t</sup>.

As we find nothing farther in Nicetas concerning Gayathoddin Kay Khosraw, we must, to finish his reign, have recourse to the succeeding historians ; who, being less accurate in their account of matters, have greatly embarrassed the history of the sultans ; and led those, who have

<sup>r</sup> Nicet. in Baldwin. cap. 5. & 8.

<sup>s</sup> Ibid. cap. 11.

hitherto

hitherto written of them, into very gross mistakes, which we shall endeavour to clear up.

A.D. 1206.

*Alexis re-tires se-cretly to the sultân ; who at-tacks An-tioch ; worrs the Greeks ; fights with Laskaris, and slain.*

Alexis Angelus, the late emperor, hearing that Theodore Laskaris, his son-in-law, reigned at Nice; being assisted by his cousin Michael Comnenus, who was prince of Epirus, crossed over from thence into Asia, and went secretly to Gayathô'ddin, sultân of Konîyah, his old friend and ally, then residing at Attalia, which he had not long before reduced, and begged his assistance for the recovery of his dominions, especially that part of them possessed by Laskaris. The sultân had been very serviceable to Laskaris at a time when he was reduced to great distress, by lending him forces, with which he defeated his enemies, and had also concluded a peace with him: but being urged by gratitude to his old benefactor, as well as interest (Alexis making him great promises), he threatened Laskaris, by his ambassadors, with the utmost extremities of war, unless he immediately resigned his territories to his father-in-law. Theodorus was much troubled at this unexpected message, as fearing both the sultân's power, and the people's inclination to their old emperor; but having sounded the minds of his new subjects, and finding them ready to support him, he refused to comply with this proposal.

Before the return of the ambassadors, Gayathô'ddin, attended by Alexis, marched with twenty thousand Turks, and besieged Antioch on the Meander; a circumstance which Laskaris no sooner understood, than he marched with two thousand men to the relief of that city, which was a strong frontier; and being the key of his dominions on that side, he knew, if taken, would open a way into the heart of them. Laskaris, drawing near to Antioch, sent the ambassador before, who could scarce persuade the sultân, by oaths, that the emperor was approaching with so small a force. However, he drew up his army in the best manner the narrowness of the place would permit; a step which he had no sooner taken than eight hundred Italians of the Roman army began the attack, and breaking through the Turkish ranks, threw them into the greatest disorder. As the Greeks had not courage enough to follow them closely, they were separated from the rest of the forces; so that on their return they were surrounded, and all to a man cut to pieces, though not before they had made an incredible slaughter of the enemy.

A.D. 1210.

The Greeks, disheartened at so great a loss, were on the point of flying, when the sultân, now almost in possession

of

of the victory, descrying the emperor, and trusting to his own great strength, rode up to him, and at one blow with his mace on the head, struck him off his horse. But Laskaris, though stunned, nimbly recovering himself, drew his sword, and while the sultân turned about, ordering his attendants, with an air of contempt, to take him away, he disabled the hinder legs of his mare, which rearing up, threw her rider, who, before he could rise, had his head cut off. This being shewn upon the point of a spear, struck such a terror into the Turkish army, that they immediately fled with precipitation, leaving the Greeks masters of their camp and baggage. Alexis, the author of this war, was taken prisoner, and carried to Nice, where he was confined to a monastery, in which he ended his days. This victory gave the Romans an opportunity of breathing: for, from that time, the Moslems made a peace with them, which they kept inviolably<sup>a</sup>.

## S E C T. VIII.

*The Reigns of Soltân Kaykaws and Alao'ddîn Kay-kobâd.*

OF sultân Kaykaws, furname Azzo'ddîn or Ezzo'ddîn, we find very little mentioned. Abu'l-Faraj only tells us that he died in the year of the Hejra 616, leaving no children but minors; by which means his brother Alao'd-dîn Kaykobâd became his successor<sup>b</sup>. D'Herbelot adds nothing more from his authors than that he died of a consumption of the lungs; only he differs much from Abu'l-Faraj as to the time of his death; for he says it happened in the year 609, after he had reigned no more than one year; whereas the other, fixing his death seven years later, allows him eight to his reign.

Azzo'ddîn Kaykaws having died, without leaving any sons old enough to take the government upon them, the army repaired to the castle of Menshâr, which stands on the Euphrates, near Malatîyah, where his brother Kaykobâd, furname Alao'ddîn, was imprisoned; and, bringing him forth, proclaimed him king<sup>c</sup>.

After the destruction of the Korazmian empire by Jenghîz Khân, and his Mogols, sultân Jalalo'ddin, furname

<sup>a</sup> Georg. Acrop. Niceph. Gregor. lib. i.  
Dynast. p. 289.

<sup>c</sup> Idem ibid.

<sup>b</sup> Abu'l. Hist.

A.D. 1219.

Ninth sultân, Kay-kaws.

Hejra 616.  
A.D. 1219.

Tenth sultân, Kay-kobâd.

Mankberini, eldest son and successor of Mohammed, for some time made head against them with surprising bra-  
 A.D. 1229, very : but being at length obliged to give way to numbers, he retired westward into Armenia ; where, intending to reduce it under his power, he in the beginning of the year 627, invested Khelât or Aklât, the capital of that country, wherein were two brothers of Al Mâlek Al Ashrâf. Having closely besieged the city all winter, and battered it with twenty rams on the side towards the sea, the inhabitants, who were reduced to eat dogs flesh, delivered it up to him, with the castle.

Defeats  
Jalalo'd-  
din ;

disperses  
his army.

On receiving advice of this event, Al Mâlek Al Ashrâf and Alao'ddîn Kaykobâd joined their forces near Abolostayn, and thence proceeded to Akshahr, where the Karazmian met them with forty thousand men ; and coming to a battle, which lasted almost two days, was at length put to flight, with great slaughter. Those who fled escaped to the mountains of Trapezond, where fifteen hundred lost their lives. Jalalo'ddîn escaped alone to Khartabert, and thence to Khoway or Koy. He afterwards sent one of Mâlek Al Ashrâf's brothers in chains to the khalif at Baghdâd, and put one of his slaves Azzo'ddîn Ibek to death : but hearing of the approach of the Mogols against him, under the command of Jurmagûn Nowain, he sent ambassadors from Tabrîz or Tauris, inviting both Ashrâf and Alao'ddîn to assist him with their forces to repel the storm, which, if it passed him, he said would fall on them : but they paid no regard to his intreaties <sup>d</sup>.

A.D. 1232.

Embassy to  
Oktay.

Restored  
the Seljûks

In 630 sultân Alao'ddîn sent ambassadors to Oktay Kaan, offering to pay him homage. Oktay, commending his prudence, told him, that if their master would come to his court, he would receive him with honour, and give him one of the chief employments there, without taking away his revenues.

In the course of the same year Alao'ddîn breaking with Al Mâlek Al Ashrâf, took from him Khelât and Sarmâny. Two years after he likewise forced Roha from him ; in which, for three days, the Rûms flew both Christians and Mohammedans. The remainder they stripped of all their effects ; not sparing the churches. Hereupon Harrân surrendered to him. He afterwards took Rakkah and Bîr. But as soon as his forces were withdrawn, Al Mâlek Al Kamel, lord of Egypt, came and besieged Roha, which he took at the end of four months, and sent all the

<sup>d</sup> Abu'l-f. Hist. Dynasty, p. 306, & seq.

Rûms whom he found there into Egypt, in chains, upon camels. D'Herbelot says that, being pressed on one side by the Mogols, and on the other by the princes of the house of Ayub, he was obliged to withdraw his troops out of their dominions, in order to preserve his own.

This prince returned home loaded with plunder and *fame and empire*; having extended his name and conquests very far eastward<sup>e</sup>. In short, he restored the great reputation of the Seljûkians, which the children of Kilij Arslân had in some degree impaired by their divisions, enlarged the empire to its former limits, and re-established order in the state.

In 634 sultân Alao'ddîn Kaykobâd died suddenly; for A.D. 1236. at a feast which he made for his chief lords and officers, just as he was boasting of the extent of his dominions, he felt a disorder in his bowels, and, being taken at the same time with a flux, discharged such a quantity of blood, that he died in two days, having reigned eighteen years<sup>f</sup>.

*His death,  
and char-  
acter.*

This prince was prudent, temperate, and remarkable for his strength. He kept a very strict eye over his nobles and dependents. He was endued with great firmness of mind, magnanimity, and profound gravity; nor could any sovereign govern better.

This is the famous Aladin I. known to the European writers, who acquired more reputation than all the sultâns of his race, and passed for one of the greatest princes of his time. He generally gained some advantage in all the wars wherein he was engaged; but was obliged at last to acknowlege the Mogols for his masters<sup>g</sup>.

It was under this sultân that both Ortogrol and Othmân, *Rise of* or Ozmân his son, founder of the present Othmân race *Othmân.* and empire, served, with their followers, and laid the foundation of their future greatness<sup>h</sup>.

## S E C T. IX.

### The Reigns of Soltân Gayâtho'ddîn Kay Khosraw and Azzo'ddîn.

ALAO'DDIN being dead, the princes took the oath of fidelity to his son Gayâtho'ddîn Kay Khosraw; who presently after seized Gayer Khân, prince of the Karaz-

*Hejra 634.*

A.D. 1236.

<sup>e</sup> D'Herb. p. 239, & seq. art. Kaikobad.

<sup>f</sup> Ibid. p. 311, & seq. <sup>Eleventh</sup> sultân.

<sup>g</sup> D'Herb. p. 83, art. Alaeddin Ben Kaikhosrau.

<sup>h</sup> Ibid. *Kay Khos-  
rau*

<sup>seq.</sup>

mians. The rest of them fled, with their chiefs, by Ma-latiyah, Kakhtîn, and Khartabert, where they did great mischief; then wasting the country of Somaysat (H), they pushed on to Sowayda; but Al Mâlek Al Nâsser, lord of Halep, assigning over to them Roha, Harrân, and other places beyond the Euphrates, they desisted from farther ravages.

**A.D. 1239.** In 637 the Mogols advanced with a design to invade the Rumean territories; but on Gayâtho'ddin's fending forces into Armenia, they thought proper to desist.

*A Turk-mân prophet does much mischief.*

Next year a Turkmân prophet, called Baba, appeared at Amasia, who drew after him multitudes of people by the strange tricks which he performed in order to deceive them. He sent If-hâk, or Ishaak, a disciple, in a doctor's gown, through the other parts of the country of Rûm, to make proselytes among the Turkmâns; who succeeded so well, that at Somasat he collected six thousand horse, besides foot, chiefly of those people. Thus strengthened, they began to propagate their imposture by force, making war upon all who would not say, "There is no God but god Baba, the apostle of God." They slew a great number of the inhabitants, both Moslems and Christians, of Hesno'lmansûr, Kakhtîn, Gargar, and Somaysat, who refused to follow them; they likewise routed all the troops which opposed them in their way to Amasia.

Hereupon Gayâtho'ddin sent an army against them, in which was a body of Franks; but the Moslems giving way through fear, the Franks placed themselves in the front of the battle, and making a vigorous attack, put the rebels to flight, and killed every man. The two doctors, Baba and If-hâk, were taken alive and put to death.

**Hejra 639.  
A.D. 1241.**

*Moguls take Arzen Alrun.*

In 639 Jormagûn Nowayn advancing into Armenia, as far as Arzen Alrûn, took it by force, killed Senan, its sub-bashâ, with a great number of the inhabitants, and carrying away their children captives, spread desolation through the whole province. Next year sultân Gayâtho'ddin marched towards the Moguls with a great multitude of men, and military stores, such as had not been known before. Besides his own troops, he was assisted by Greeks, Franks, Georgians, Armenians, and Arabs. The two armies met in a place called Kusadag, belonging to Arzen-jân; but, on the first attack, all the auxiliary forces turned their backs and fled. The sultân, astonished at this event,

(H) Or Someysat, the same phrates, to the north of Al with Samosat on the Eu-Bîr.

fled

fled likewise to Cæsarea ; whence carrying his wives and children to Ankûra, or Ancyra, he there fortified himself.

The Mogols, no less surprised at the flight of the enemy, *Siwas sur-*  
*renders.* kept themselfs quiet all that day, not daring to pursue, suspecting it was only an artifice to draw them into ambuscades, because they could perceive no reason that such a numerous army had to fly ; but as soon as they were informed of the truth of the matter, they penetrated into the country of Rûm, and invested Siwâs ; which having surrendered to them, they spared the lives of the inhabitants, but took away all their effects, burnt all the warlike engines they found there, and demolished the city walls. From thence proceeding to Kaysariyah, or Cæsarea, the citizens opposed them for a few days ; but the Moguls, taking the place by storm, put the principal inhabitants to the sword, torturing them in order to discover their riches.

After this exploit they returned, carrying the women and children along with them, without entering any farther into the sultân's dominions. The tidings coming to Malatiyah, where our author Abu'l-Faraj and his father then were, Rašîdô'ddîn, its prince, and many of the inhabitants, fled, for fear of the Mogols, who in their passage flew some of them, near the town of Bajûza, ten Persian leagues distant ; but without coming nearer the city, proceeded to Arzenjân, which they took by assault, and served in the same manner as they had treated Kaysariyah. The sultân finding himself in no condition to oppose the enemy, sent ambassadors to desire peace ; which was granted him, on condition that he should annually pay a large tribute in money, horses, vests, and other things of value<sup>1</sup>.

*Arzenjân forced.**Sultân pays tribute.*

In 642 Gayâtho'ddîn sent a great army to besiege Tarfûs ; but as they were on the point of taking it, news arrived of his death, upon which they retired from before the city in autumn, when there fell very heavy rains.

*Hejra 642.  
A.D. 1244.*

This prince indulged himself in wine, was idle and licentious. He led a life very unbecoming his dignity, giving way to pernicious pursuits. He married the daughter of the king of the Georgians ; whom however he loved to such a degree, that he had her image stamped upon his coin. The reverse of some was a lion, with the sun over its head. The astrologers told him, that in case he had the

*His death  
and char-  
acter.*<sup>1</sup> Abu'l-f. p. 312, & seq.

*His chil-  
dren.*

figures engraved which represented his horoscope, he should succeed in all his designs.

He left three sons, Azzo'ddîn, Rocno'ddîn, and Alao'ddîn. The two first by Rumean women, the last by a Georgian. He declared the eldest his successor, appointing for his tutor and atâbek Jalolo'ddîn Kortay, a person of great integrity and rigid chastity<sup>k</sup>.

The article of Gayâtho'ddîn, given by D'Herbelot, seems to be taken entirely from Abu'l-Faraj, whom he quotes twice, yet, at the end, puts the name of Khonde-mîr, as if the whole was extracted from that author.

*Greeks,  
their er-  
rors,*

The Byzantine historians mention this sultân, whom they call Jathatines; but say, he was the son of Azatines, who succeeded his uncle Jathatines; for all this false genealogy, which is common with the Greek writers, it is evident from their own account, that he is the sultân in question; not only as they make him contemporary with John Ducas, farnamed Vatazes, second emperor of Nice, who began his reign in the year 1222; but they give him just such a character as we find in Abu'l-Faraj; viz. that of a slothful prince, who delighted in drunken and debauched company. They say, moreover, his father excelled, in military affairs, all his predecessors; which character can be applicable only to Alao'ddîn.

*Tartar in-  
vasion ac-  
cording to  
them.*

With regard to the transactions of his reign, those historians inform us, that the Tankhari, a nation of Tartars, having invaded his dominions, and defeated his army, he sent to Vatazes, desiring his advice and assistance. Vatazes, accordingly, entered into a league with the sultân, and had an interview with him at Tripolis on the Meander; which river Gayâtho'ddin passed over a bridge, made in haste with rafts or floats of timber joined. The two princes not only gave their hands to each other, but to all their followers of distinction. They agreed, in the strongest terms, to join their forces against the enemy; but the Tankhari, for a while, suspended the war against the sultân, that they might attack the khalif of Babylon<sup>l</sup>.

*Hijra 645.  
A.D. 1245.*

*Twelfth  
sultân, Az-  
zo'adîn,  
sent for by  
the khân.*

Azzo'ddîn having succeeded by his father's appointment, the great officers and nobles took the oath of fidelity, and he was prayed for in the pulpits.

Next year ambassadors came from the great khân Oktay, requiring the sultân to come and pay him homage: but he

<sup>k</sup> Abu'lif. Hist. Dynast. p. 319.

<sup>l</sup> Georg. Acrop. Niceph.

excused

excused himself; alleging, that as both the Greek and Armenian kings were his enemies, they would seize his dominions in his absence. Mean time he obliged the ambassadors with gifts; and, at length, sent his brother Rocno'ddîn, under the care of Bahao'ddîn, the interpreter, whom he made his atâbek, or tutor. He also appointed for his own wazîr Shamso'ddîn, a learned native of Isfâhân; whose credit was so great, that he married the sultân's mother; an alliance at which, however, the grantees were much offended. This year the great khân died; and, the next, a kuriltay, or grand assembly, was called; at which, besides the Mogol princes, there were present many potentates; and, among the rest, sultân Rocno'ddîn, from the country of Rûm. In this grand council Kayûk, eldest son of the late emperor, was chosen to succeed him.

In 645, Kayûk, the great khân, sent lieutenants into several parts of his empire; appointing Ilijktay Nowayn for the countries of Rûm, Musol, Syria, and Gorj. At the same time he granted the government of Rûm to sultân Rocno'ddîn, and ordered sultân Azzo'ddîn to be removed. Next year Rocno'ddîn and the interpreter Bahao'ddîn, arriving, with two thousand Mogol horse, to put his decree in execution, sultân Azzo'ddîn was advised by his wazîr Shamso'ddîn to oppose it, and withdraw to some castle near the sea. When his atâbek Kortay was informed of this circumstance, he seized the wazîr, and sent him to Bahao'ddîn; who immediately dispatched some of the Mogol chiefs to Konîyah, to make him discover where his treasures were; and these being obtained, they put him to death. After this execution, the interpreter and Kortay meeting, agreed to divide the dominions between the two brothers. Azzo'ddîn was to have Konîyah, Aksera, Ankûra, or Ancyra, Anatolia, and the rest of the western provinces: Rocno'ddîn was to possess Kayfarîyah, Siwâs, Malatîyah, Arzengan, Arzen Al Rûm, and the provinces to the east. They likewise allotted Alao'ddîn, the youngest, a proper portion for his maintenance; and had money coined in all their names, with this inscription, “The great kings Azz. Rocn. and Ala<sup>m</sup>.<sup>m</sup>”

In 652, several ambassadors came, one after the other, to sultân Azzo'ddîn, lord of Rûm; requiring him to go and pay homage to Munkaka Kaan (I). He accordingly set out; but hearing, at Siwâs, that the omera or chiefs

Hejra 645.  
A.D. 1247.

*deposed by  
him.*

<sup>m</sup> Abu'l-f. Hist. Dynasty, p. 319, & seq.

(I) Called also Mongo and Mangu Khân,

were

Hejra 652.  
A.D. 1254.

*Sent for  
again.*

were inclined to place Rocno'ddîn on his throne, he returned in haste to Konîyah, and dispatched Alao'ddîn in his room, with letters, setting forth, that he had sent his brother, who was no less king than himself; but that he could not come, because his atâbek Kortay was dead, and his enemies to the west were at war with him: however, that when he was delivered from the fears of them, he would wait on the khân in person. Alao'ddîn accordingly set out; but died on the way, before he reached the Orda, or place where the khân was encamped.

*Attempt  
against  
Rocno'ddîn.*

Azzo'ddîn, conceiving that he should never be safe while his brother Rocno'ddîn lived, resolved to put him to death. This design being discovered, the omera contrived his escape. They dressed him in the apparel of a cook's boy; and putting a bowl, with meat in it, on his head, sent him out of the palace and castle, along with certain boys who carried viâctuals to a neighbouring house: then, setting him on horseback, they conducted him to Kaysariyâh; where a great number of omeras repairing to him, they got together an army, and marched towards Konîyah against Azzo'ddîn: but the sultân, marching out with what troops he had about him, put them to flight; and Rocno'ddîn, being taken prisoner, was confined in the castle of Dawalu.

*Hejra 653.  
A.D. 1255.*

*Opposes the  
Tartars;*

In the year following, Bayeju Nowayn, being obliged to remove from the plain of Mugân (K), where he used to winter, in order to give place to Hûlakû (L), sent a messenger to sultân Azzo'ddîn, requiring some place to winter in with his troops: but the sultân, instead of complying with his request, pretended that he had deserted from his prince; and, collecting forces, gave him battle at Khano'l Soltân, between Konîyah and Akfera. However, Azzo'ddîn being defeated, Bayeju took his brother out of prison, and put him in possession of all the Rûmean dominions<sup>n</sup>.

*is over-  
thrown;*

It was, doubtless, in this battle that Michael Paleologus was present, as we are told by the Greek historians; whom we must now follow for a time. These historians inform us, that, in the year 1255, Paleologus, who had been imprisoned, on suspicion of some dangerous designs, escaped,

<sup>n</sup> Abu'lfed. Hist. Dynasty, p. 329, & seq.

(K) Or Mokân, a spacious river Kûr, and the Caspian plain in the north part of Sea.  
the province of Adherbijân, (L) Who afterwards reigned towards the mouth of the in Persia.

and

## General History of the Seljûks.

57

and fled to the Turks. It happened, that, while he was at the sultân's court, the Tartars, after having ravaged the greatest part of his dominions, came and besieged the city of Axara. Hereupon the Turks marched out against them, conferring on Paleologus the command of the Greek forces. The Tartars, being repulsed at the first onset by Paleologus, or, as others say, dismayed at sight of such numerous forces, were upon the point of flying, when one of the Turkish generals went over to them, with the troops under his command; an incident which changed the fortune of the field. The Tartars, encouraged by this accession, returned to the charge, and, defeating the Turks in their turn, made a terrible slaughter with their arrows, pursuing them a considerable way. Paleologus, upon this disaster, joined the Peklarpek (M) with his troops; and they two retired, for several days together, with the enemy at their heels, till they arrived at Kaitamona, near which that officer resided.

The Tartars now over-ran the country, and the Turkish forces being dispersed, the sultân fled to the emperor; who received him kindly, but could spare him only four hundred men, under the command of Isaac Ducas, surnamed Murtzuflus. The sultân, in requital, gave him the city of Laodicea: which, however, soon returned to the Turks; because the Romans could not defend it. After all, the sultân not being able to oppose the Tartars, obtained peace, by becoming tributary. Mean time the emperor wrote to Paleologus, inviting him to return; his pardon having been obtained by means of the bishop of Kogni (or Konîyah); and soon after his arrival the emperor died, in 1258°.

Abû'l-Faraj does not mention what became of Azzo'd-dîn, after he was removed from the throne by Bayejû, the Mogol general; neither does he tell us how he recovered it again; but proceeding as if no such revolution had happened, he informs us, that, in 655, this sultân sent an ambassador to Hûlâkû, to testify his submission, and intreat him to drive Bayejû Nowayn out of his kingdom. Hûlâkû, in answer, ordered that he should divide the Rûmean territories with his brother. Hereupon Azzo'ddin returned to Konîyah, and Rocno'ddin went with Bayejû

Azzo'ddin  
opposes the  
Mogols in  
vain.

Heira 665.  
A.D. 1257.

\* Pakhamir, lib. i. cap. 9. Niceph. Gregoras, and others.

(M) Or Beglerbeg; that is, lord of lords, the governors of great provinces.

to the camp. Azzo'ddîn, being still afraid of this Mogol, employed officers in the parts about Malatiyah and Khar-tabert, to raise an army of Kûrds, Turkmâns, and Arabs ; and he took into his service Ahmed Ebn Belâs and Mohammed Ebn Al Sheykh Adi, two commanders of the Kûrds, to whom the sultân assigned the said cities.

Ebn Sheykh Adi, being intercepted on the way to Khar-tabert by Angûrk Nowayn, was slain, with his followers : and the people of Malatiyah, having taken an oath to Roc-no'ddîn, refused to receive Ebn Belâs ; who thereupon treating them ill they killed three hundred of his men. With the rest he fled by Klaudiya (N) towards Arned ; where he was slain by the lord of Mayaferkîn. Azzo'ddîn appointed in his room one Ali Bahâdr ; who, being a resolute man, the citizens, through fear, admitted him. And he did them great service ; for he cleared the country of the Al Jâzi, a tribe of Turkmâns, who used in their incursions to kill the inhabitants, and carry off their children. These he defeated, and took their commander Jutabeg prisoner.

*Malatiyah  
submits.*

Mean while Bayeju Nowayn, advancing with his forces, obliged all the castles, which had been delivered up, to submit to Rocno'ddîn. Then going to the city of Abolostayn, he slew about six thousand of the inhabitants, and made the women and children captives.

On his approach to Malatiyah, Ali Bahâdr fled to Kâkhtah ; and the citizens, going to meet him with presents, submitted to Rocno'ddîn ; who appointed one of his slaves to govern them, named Fakro'ddîn Ayyaz : but as soon as Bayejû had gotten beyond the borders of Rûm, in his way to Irâk, Ali Bahâdr returned ; and, being denied admittance, besieged the city. At length, provisions growing very scarce, some of the common people opened a gate, by which Ali entered with his Turkmâns. Having thus recovered possession of Malatiyah, he cast sultân Rocno'ddîn's governor into prison, and put a few of the leading men, who opposed him, to death.

*Dreadful  
famine  
there.*

At the same time the famine was so great in the district of this city, that cats, dogs, and leather, were eaten, for want of food. A friend of the author saw in a village a company of women in a house cutting pieces of flesh out of a corpse which lay before them, and broiling them to eat. Likewise another, who baked her dead child ; imagining,

(N) The ancient Claudiopolis, on the Euphrates, below Malatiyah.

that

that his flesh would be better food than that of vermin. In short, Ali Bahâdr, though he subdued the town, could not behold the calamity ; but retired to sultân Azzo'ddîn.

In 657, Hûlâkû sent for Azzo'ddîn, sultân of the Rûms, Hejra 657.  
A.D. 1259. and his brother Rocno'ddin ; who obeying his summons, he went to meet them, expressing great satisfaction at their coming. Then he ordered Azzo'ddîn to reign over the country from Kayfariyah to the borders of Greater Armenia ; and Rocno'ddîn to command from Aksera to the sea-coast bounding the territories of the Franks. After this appointment he began his march for Syria ; and, when he drew near the Euphrates, the two brothers, taking their leave, returned with joy to their own dominions <sup>p</sup>.

Although the two sultâns went home in good harmony ; A.D. 1259. yet, according to the Greek historians, they did not long continue on this friendly footing. After the death of Theodorus Laskaris, Michael Paleologus, associate in the empire with his son John, having strengthened the frontier places with garrisons, sent an embassy to the Turks to notify his advancement ; and, not long after, setting out with the young emperor on a new progress, he received, at Nymphæum, an embassy, with presents, from the sultân ; whose affairs were in a very bad condition : for, being threatened with an invasion from the Tartars (or Moguls), every individual, instead of exerting himself for the public safety, thought only of saving his own family, and the governors every where revolted.

Paleologus, upon intimation of this disorder, gave the sultân an invitation to come and reside at his court, promising to let him return when his affairs were settled. The sultân's apprehension was occasioned by the news which he received of the arrival of Mâlek (O), with a formidable army. This Malek had fled, it seems, to the emperor before ; and Azzo'ddîn was afraid he might escape, and frustrate the design he had of re-establishing his affairs <sup>q</sup>. In another place the same author informs us, that the reason of Azzo'ddîn's applying to the emperor was, because Rukratîn had assembled fresh forces <sup>r</sup>. However that be, the sultân accepted of the offer ; and, relying on the friendship of Paleologus, retired, with his wife, children,

*Azzo'ddîn  
retires  
to Michael  
Paleologus.*

<sup>p</sup> Abu'l-Faraj. p. 332. & seq.  
Ibid. lib. xiii. cap. 22.

<sup>q</sup> Pakh. lib. ii. cap. 7. 10. 24.

(O) Who this Mâlek was, we are quite at a loss to know, the author having said no more

about him. Perhaps he was the sultân's brother, mentioned a little lower down.

his mother (who was a Christian), and his sister, to Constantinople<sup>s</sup>.

*His ill reception at Constantinople:*

Paleologus received him with a great appearance of friendship, and promised in time to furnish him with troops, to recover his kingdom. Meanwhile he suffered the sultân to live entirely at liberty, to sit in his presence, to have his guards, and wear the purple buskins. In July 1261, Constantinople being recovered out of the hands of the Latins, he returned thither from Nice, with his colleague John. Next year he sent ambassadors to Khalau Hûlâkû, prince of the Tartars, in Persia, and another to the sultân of Ethiopia (rather Egypt). As for Azzo'ddîn, he was at Constantinople; where, strolling about to view the streets and public places, which were almost unpeopled, he led a debauched life, with his followers, expecting the performance of the emperor's promise: but all Michael's friendship was only dissimulation; for, being very intent on making an alliance with the Tartars, he sent the sultân's wife and children to Nice, under pretence of greater security; at the same time he actually promised Mary, his natural daughter, to Khalau, who died before she arrived at his court. He afterwards concluded an alliance with Apagan (P).

A.D. 1266.

*makes his escape by a stratagem.*

The sultân, after a tedious residence at Constantinople, having discovered that the emperor was treating with his enemies, wrote to an uncle who dwelt towards the Euxine sea, on the north side, intreating him to effect his deliverance, by exciting Constantine, king of Bulgaria, and Nogas khân of the Tartars, against Paleologus: in which case, he said, he would endeavour to deliver that prince into their hands. The sultân's uncle having agreed to this proposal, Azzo'ddîn or Azatines, pursuant to leave obtained, repaired to the emperor, who was then in the West, under pretence of visiting that part of his dominions. On their return, within a day's march of mount Hemus, Paleologus, to his great astonishment, understood that the Bulgarians and Tartars had passed the straits, ravaging the country, and massacring the inhabitants. The emperor, who had not forces to oppose them, left the sultân, with his baggage, in the night, and, getting to the sea-side, passed in a bark to his capital. Azatines, with those who had care of the baggage, retired to the fort of Ainé.

<sup>s</sup> Pakh. lib. ii. cap. 24.

(P) Abaga or Abaka Khân, son and successor of Hûlâkû.

Presently

Presently the enemy, besieging the place, it was at length agreed, that the sultân, and his attendants, should be delivered up; on condition that they withdrew, and suffered the rest to retire, with the baggage, to the port. These terms they accepted: and the next day came succours by sea; with whom they returned to Constantinople. The emperor, enraged at their conduct, punished the chief of them; and, imprisoning the wife, mother, daughter, and sister, of the sultân, with their children, confiscated all their effects<sup>u</sup>. The Greek historians say, that Azatines never returned into his own dominions; but died, soon after his escape, in the country to the north of the Caspian sea.

Historians, both eastern and western, disagree so much with regard to this sultân, that their accounts can hardly be reconciled. The Greeks and Abu'l-Faraj agree in making Azzo'ddîn sultân of Koniya; and, from all circumstances of the history, he must have been so, at least for a term of years: but D'Herbelot, after the Persian historians, makes Rocno'ddîn the sultân; possibly, because he was supported by the Mogols, and continued his reign after Azzo'ddîn was expelled; yet he recites from them only two transactions of his reign. He informs us, that Rocno'ddîn Solymân, having sent his brother Alao'ddîn Kaykobâd to the court of the great khân of the Mogols, to transact the affairs of the Seljûkians, that prince gained the favour of the khân by his address; and returned with such ample powers, that Solymân, finding himself almost wholly deprived of his authority by Kaykobâd, bribed one of his domestics to poison him: that Abâka Khân, being informed of this ill office which Solymân had done his brother, ordered him to be taken off in the same manner, in the year 664, after he had reigned twenty years. He left for his successor his son Kay Khosraw, who had his confirmation from the same khân<sup>w</sup>.

*Historians  
disagree  
in several  
respects,  
with re-  
gard to  
these two  
sultâns.*

Hejra 664.  
A.D. 1265.

It is evident, from the testimony of Abu'l-Faraj, a subject of the Seljûkian empire, strengthened by that of the Greek writers, that Azzo'ddîn immediately succeeded his father Gayatho'ddin. It appears also, that soon after Rocno'ddîn's being set up by the Mogols, and the monarchy divided between them, they both reigned at the same time for several years, each in his respective territories: that, at length, Azzo'ddîn, being expelled by the

<sup>u</sup> Pakh. lib. ii. cap. 24. lib. iii. cap. 3. 25. lib. xiii. cap. 22.  
<sup>w</sup> D'Herb. p. 822. art. Solymân Ben Caikhosiou.

Mogols or Tatars, Rocno'dîn reigned alone over the whole. It seems therefore but just, that Azzo'ddîn should be reckoned among the sultans, as well as Rocno'ddîn; and the rather, as we find him named first on the coin mentioned by Abu'l-Faraj: but whether we divide the reigns of the two brothers, ending that of Azzo'ddîn with his last abdication, or make but one reign of both, it must be observed, that Khondemir (or whatever author D'Herbelot took these few particulars from) disagrees with Abu'l-Faraj in two or three very essential points: 1. According to him, there were no more than two brothers, Rocno'dîn and Alaoddîn; whereas Abu'l-Faraj affirms there were three, of whom Azzo'ddîn was the eldest. 2. He says, that Alao'ddin was sent to the khân by Rocno'ddîn. Abu'l-Faraj says, Azzo'ddîn sent both him and Rocno'ddîn on that embassy. 3. He affirms, that Alao'ddîn returned into Rûm, and was there poisoned by Rocno'ddîn. Abu'l-Faraj asserts, on the contrary, that Alao'ddîn died on the road to Tartary.

With regard to this Alaoddîn, which-ever death he died, he may have been one of the Alao'ddîns mentioned in the Turkish history, under whom the father of Othmân served; for he was a king or sultan of the Seljûkian dominions, which came to his share, as appears by the above mentioned coin.

Anatolia  
over-run  
by the fugi-  
tive Turks.

In the reigns of these two sultans, the Roman empire, which, ever since the death of Gayathô'ddîn Kay Khosraw, slain by Theodorus Laskaris, in 1210, seems to have been free from the depredations of the Turks, began to be invaded by them with greater fury than ever; not so much from inclination, which governed their former invasions, as necessity, which obliged them to it in their own defence: for as the dissensions between the two brothers gave encouragement to the governors towards the borders of the Seljûkian dominions to declare themselves independent; so, on the invasion of the Mogols, the Turks, to avoid them, retired westward, in great multitudes, under different commanders; who, the better to secure themselves against those formidable enemies, and gain new possessions in the place of those they had abandoned, fell, with all their force at once, on every side of the Roman territories in Asia, which then were in a most defenceless state; and, in the compass of a few years, subdued the whole, as will be shewn more at large in the next reign.

Kay Khosraw III. son of Rocno'ddîn Solymân, being but an infant when he ascended the throne in 664, Abaka Khân,

Khân, who married his mother, appointed Pervaneh Kâshi his tutor (or atâbek). This sultân reigned eighteen years; at the end of which, in 682, he was killed, by order of Ahmed Khân, who succeeded Abaka Khân; and Maßûd, son of Kaykaws, was afterwards appointed his successor by Argûn Khân, who succeeded Ahmed\*.

Thirteenth  
sultân Kay  
Khofraw  
III.

This is all that D'Herbelot furnishes from the Oriental authors, relating to this prince, whom he reckons the twelfth sultân; nor does Abu'l-Faraj mention any of the sultâns after Azzo'ddin, uncle to Kay Khofraw. However, we meet with a passage, which we shall cite, as it relates to Pervaneh, the sultân's tutor, and the affairs of his kingdom.

That writer informs us, that, in the year 675, Bendokdâr, sultân of Egypt, excited by some fugitives, resolved to invade the territories of Rûm; which design king Leûn, son of the king of Armenia (Hatem), being informed of, sent notice to the Mogul commanders who were in that country. But this advice being represented as false, by Berwânah, who wished well to Bendokdâr, and hated the Armenian king, they paid no regard to it: so that the Egyptians came upon them at a time when they were so overcome with liquor that they could not mount their horses: and as, by their yasa, or laws, they are obliged not to fly till they have faced the enemy, they gave them battle; in which all the great Mogul officers were slain, besides most of their men, and two thousand out of three thousand Gorj, who were with them. The Egyptians likewise lost a great number on their side. Berwânah fled to a castle for security. Bendokdâr, after his victory, encamped in a place called Kaykobâd, near Kayfariyah, where he remained fifteen days, without committing hostilities, or plundering the country. Nor did he enter that city more than once; saying, that he came not to destroy the country, but to deliver its lord from slavery.

Hejra 675.  
A.D. 1276.

Sultân of  
Egypt in-  
vades Rûm;

As soon as Abâka Khân was informed of this misfortune, he assembled forces, and marched into the country of the Rûms: but Bendokdâr, knowing himself unable to withstand him, had retired into Syria before he arrived. Berwânah went to meet the khân, who received him without any shew of resentment, and took him with him in his return to the Tak. (Q); under pretence of consulting what

retires on  
the khân's  
approach.

\* D'Herb. p. 239. & 127. art. Caikhosru Troisieme, & Argoun Khan.

(Q) Al Tâk is the place of encamping, or where he encamped.

number of forces would be sufficient to guard the country of Rûm against the Egyptians. Being arrived in the camp, the khân made a magnificent feast, wherein he plied Ber-wânah with mare's milk (R), for he drank no wine. At length, the latter going out to draw water, Abâka gave the sign to his attendants, who followed, and cut him in pieces. This was the fate of a traitor: nor did Bendokdâr long survive him; for he died at Hems, in Syria, in his return to Egypt; some say of a wound received by an arrow, in the engagement with the Mogols; others, by poison, infused by one of his domestics, in the mare's milk, which he called for (S), to drink <sup>y</sup>.

*Miserable  
state of the  
Greeks in  
Asia.*

Having nothing farther to say of the East, let us turn westward, and view the miserable condition of the Greeks; unable to resist the power of the Turks, who, like an inundation, suddenly overwhelmed them. As we have already mentioned the defenceless state of the empire at this juncture, it will be proper to shew by what means it came to be reduced to such a weak condition. To do this the more effectually, it may be necessary to take the matter a little higher. Although, on the accession of Theodorus Laskeris to the throne, the empire of Nice was confined to the narrow bounds of only three cities, Nice, Prusa, and Philadelphia; yet affairs were managed with such prudence, that the state was secure against all its enemies. The better to oppose the Franks, who had taken Constantinople, and were masters of the sea, the ministers made peace with the Turks; paying them yearly a large sum, and then turned all their forces against the former. After they had done with them, they applied themselves to fortify the mountains, in spite of all the endeavours of the Turks to prevent them. They built forts, committing the care of them to the natives of the country; and thus secured the empire on that side.

As the people who inhabited those mountains were inclinable to change sides, and did not care to run any risk by resisting the enemy, the emperors attached them to their interest, by exempting them from certain taxes, and bestowing considerable bounties on the principal persons

<sup>y</sup> Abu'l-Faraj. p. 358. & seq.

(R) The chief liquor used by the people of Tartary; it is called kumis, and is strong and pleasant.

(S) He was fourth sultân of

the Bahriyan mamlûks, who were slaves from Tatary. He was called also Bibars Al Salehi, *Famous for his Victories,*

among them, who, by those largesses, became very rich. Their zeal for their country increased with their wealth : so that they made it their business to surprise the enemy in the night, carrying off much plunder; and chose rather to prevent their coming, than wait for them. The care which was taken of the fortresses had this happy effect ; and that those who guarded them might not be tempted to desert them, there were troops in the neighbourhood, ready to support them <sup>2</sup>.

By these prudent regulations, the affairs of the Greeks A.D. 1260.  
were so prosperous in the East, that when Michael Pal-  
eologus returned from Nice to Constantinople, upon its  
being taken from the Latins in 1260, Asia Minor, Paph-  
lagonia, Bithynia, the Greater and Capatian Phrygias,  
with Karia, were under the obedience of the Romans,  
and paid them tribute <sup>3</sup>.

*to what  
owing.*

But after Michael had removed the seat of his empire, and the inhabitants, especially those who had been in command, were returned, the people who possessed the mountains were exceedingly weakened ; and, no longer receiving any succours, were themselves obliged to sustain the weight of the war. To make the matter still worse, the affairs of the empire (in Europe) falling afterwards into a bad state, Michael Palcologus, by the advice of Kadenus, go-  
vernor of Conistantinople, stripped those people, who were rich, of their effects, and, allowing each forty crowns pension, ordered the rest of the revenues arising from the lands, which amounted to considerable sums, to be brought to the treasury : which ill treatment diminished their strength, and damped their courage.

The emperor, in all likelihood, was the more easily induced to take this step, as he apprehended no danger from the side of the Turks ; whom he kept at peace by continual treaties, and who were too much employed by the Tartars to give him any disturbance. But that which seemed to promise most security, proved most pernicious to his interest ; for shortly after, by an unforeseen event, the Turks crowding westward, to avoid the army of the enemy, and being too numerous for the country, in order to invade the Roman empire ; or, to speak in the words of our author, the most valiant among the Turks, finding, after being vanquished by the Tartars, that they had no other ressource but their arms, retired into the mountains,

*Turks  
forced  
westward.*

<sup>2</sup> Pakh. lib. i. cap. 2, 3.

<sup>3</sup> Dukas, cap. 2.

and committed robberies. With this view, they assembled in great numbers, and attacked the Romans; who, being weak, were obliged to submit.

*Seize the mountains.*

They would have suffered themselves to be quite driven out of the country, if the pensions which they still received had not restrained them. The desire of preserving that little which was left, induced them to defend the places and implore the assistance of Roman troops, when they were hard pressed: but then they never exposed themselves in fallies, or battles in the open field; and as soon as those salaries were retrenched, some of the soldiers joined the enemy, and the rest deserted their posts.

The Turks, having thus become masters of those parts, made incursions through the country, plundering it at pleasure; and extremely incommoded the Roman forces, who were continually harassed between them in the East, and the Franks in the West<sup>b</sup>.

A.D. 1266.

*The country defenceless:*

As the emperor had not forces enough to divide them, and thought it of the greatest importance to preserve that part of his dominions which lay in Europe, he employed them chiefly against the last enemy, who threatened Constantinople itself. Thus the East came to be neglected; and, being destitute of troops, as well as garrisons, was exposed to the ravages of the Turks: so that about the time sultân Azzo'ddîn made his escape from Ainum, the affairs of that country were in dreadful confusion, especially about the river Meander, where the Turks had seized many towns and monasteries: but John, the despot, repairing thither in time, saved the chief of them, and secured Tralles, Karyster, and other advanced places. He likewise prevented the ruin of the Magedonians, those expert archers, who were in danger of being subdued, for want of the forces which had been called away to the defence of the West. The Turks, intimidated by the vigour with which the despot proceeded, offered him their prisoners, and demanded a peace, which was granted.

*Oppressed by taxes;*

But while the emperor by his arms saved towns on one side, he lost whole nations and provinces on the other, by his exactions; for he laid such heavy taxes on the Mardiandines, Bucellarians, and Paphlagonians, either to pay his foreign troops, or keep those people in subjection, that he quite ruined the country, and obliged the inha-

<sup>b</sup> Pakh. lib. i. cap. 5, 6.

bitants to deliver up the fortresses, and put themselves under the dominion of the Turks, in hopes of better usage <sup>c</sup>.

The affairs of the Franks likewise requiring the presence of the despot in Europe, the country about the Meander, as well as the rest of the East, became exposed again to the depredations of the Turks. The mountain, defended by the forts of Abala, Kaafta, and Mazedon, and the once famous province of Karia, also laid open to their incursions. Trakhium, Stadia, Strabilon, and the lands lying opposite to the island of Rhodes, which, but a little time before, had been reduced under the power of the Romans, were become the retreat of the enemy, from whence they made their inroads. The people inhabiting the northern coast of Asia Minor, the Mariandines, Molinians, and the generous Enetes, were oppressed in a deplorable degree : the fortresses of Kromitus, Amastris, and Tios, which are near the sea, had nothing left of their ancient splendor ; and must have been destroyed, but for the advantage of their situation, which made it easy to relieve them. In short, Anatolia was so over-run by the enemy, that the Sangarius served as the frontier, and there was no possibility of travelling to Heraclea by land. This wretched state of the East was owing to the treachery of the men in command ; who, that they might have the better opportunity to enrich themselves, made the emperor believe the losses which had happened in those parts were so inconsiderable, that it was not worth his while to cross the sea to repair them : which false report, was what contributed mostly to its ruin <sup>d</sup>.

However, no steps were taken, for several years, to put a stop to the progress made by the Turks, till Michael, reflecting on the ruin of Karia, Antioch, and the neighbouring country, and on the necessity there was of sending succours to Kaystro, Priene, Milesus, and Mageddon, detached Andronicus, his son, and associate in the empire, with a considerable army, accompanied by a great many persons of distinction. In his march along the Meander, he beheld the ruins of Tralles, formerly a famous city ; and, being charmed with the beauty of its situation, resolved to rebuild it, and give it the name either of Andronicopolis or Paleologopolis. As the masons were at work, they found a prophecy cut on a piece of

A.D. 1267.  
is over-run  
by the  
Turks.

A.D. 1280.

*Tralles  
rebuilt.*

<sup>c</sup> Pakh. lib. iii. cap. 21, 22, 23.

<sup>d</sup> Ibid. lib. iv. cap. 27.

marble, declaring, that, in time to come, a prince should raise this city out of its ruins, and build it with greater magnificence than ever.

*A false oracle.*

Andronicus, applying the oracle to himself, in hopes of the long life which was promised to its restorer, undertook to rebuild it, and set about the business with great earnestness. But this prophecy was no other than an illusion, which proved the death of an infinite number of people. When the walls were finished along the Meander, no fewer than thirty-five thousand adventurers came to inhabit the place. However, they were scarce warm in their houses, when they found themselves suddenly besieged by an army of Turks, commanded by Mantakhia, surnamed Salpace; which, in their language, says our author, signifies a *strong man*. As the foil afforded no springs, and there were neither fountains, cisterns, nor wells, in the place, Libadarius, the grand cartulary, who commanded there, knew not what measures to pursue. The inhabitants would have been content, though reduced to eat vermin, and even dead bodies, could they have found drink with such loathsome food. Many died for thirst; and others, to avoid that death, went to beg relief from the enemy, who drove them back, or put them to death.

*The city is quickly destroyed.*

Those within relying on the oracle, and the hopes of succour, the Turks resolved to make a last effort; and, approaching the wall, sapped it under cover of their bucklers. When they had fixed the shorings, they once more summoned the besieged to surrender; and, on their refusal, set fire to the wood: a breach being thus made, they took the city by storm, and put all the inhabitants to the sword. They had before taken Nissia; which, in like manner, fell into their hands, for want of forces to relieve it. What is most strange, the young emperor was at Nympheum all the while they were performing those two exploits: after which they ravaged and plundered Anatolia without controul.

*A.D. 1281.*

*Bithynia laid waste.*

The Turks, encouraged by these successes, crossed the river Sangarius, and laid waste the country; and the emperor Michael, raising all the forces he could assemble, in haste set forward to stop their inroads. When he beheld the dreadful desolation which they had made, he was struck with the deepest anguish. On this occasion he told the patriarch of Alexandria, that the attempts of certain persons to excite his subjects against him, by condemning his conduct, had obliged him to neglect the care of the provinces,

vinces, in order to look to his own safety ; and that the governors, to whom he had intrusted those distant parts of his dominions, had concealed the distress they were in, either because they had been gained over by presents, or through fear of being punished for their neglect.

They found so great a quantity of fruit under the trees, *The frontiers strengthened ed.* that it served to subfist one half of the army. The Turks retired as fast as the emperor advanced : who wanting the necessary conveniences for pursuing them in the hilly countries, whither they had retreated, was content to secure the frontiers, by repairing the old forts, and building others in those places where the Sangarius was most narrow and fordable. He likewise gave orders to fortify the river, for a certain space, with trees ; whose branches were so thick and closely intermixed, that a snake could not make its way through them<sup>e</sup>.

Maffûd, surnamed Gayatho'ddîn, was the son of Az-zo'ddîn Kaykaws, son of Gayatho'ddîn Kay Khosraw. This prince had but little authority left him in the dominions which his predecessors had conquered in Asia Minor, and the Greater Armenia : for, in effect, those countries were entirely subject to Argûn Khân, from whom he received the investiture of them<sup>f</sup>. D'Herbelot, who gives this short account of him, at the end of an article relative to a different prince, neither mentions the time when he began nor ended his reign : but in the table or list of the sultans of Rûm, his death is placed in 687. It must be observed, that there was an interregnum of one year, at least of some months, from the death of Kay Khosraw, to the death of Ahmed ; and it does not appear when Argûn Khân invested Maffûd : but supposing it to have been in his first year, or 683, then Maffûd must have reigned but four or five years at most<sup>g</sup>.

This is all the information which has yet come to our hands, from the Oriental historians, concerning this prince : as for the Greek writers, their memoirs are so confused and imperfect, that we can deliver nothing with certainty from them. We find no more relating to Rukratin, or Rocno'ddîn, than what has been already taken notice of, although he must have reigned several years after his brother's expulsion ; nor any mention of Kay Khosraw, who reigned after him for the space of eighteen years. They tell us, indeed, that the son of Azetines, or Azzo'ddîn,

<sup>e</sup> Pakh. lib. vi. cap. 20, 21, 29.  
Maf-soud, fil. de Mohammed, sub. fin.

<sup>f</sup> D'Herb. p. 562. art. Maf-soud.  
<sup>g</sup> Ibid. p. 800.

who retired to Constantinople, and whom they call Mâlek, did, a long time after his retreat from thence with his father, recover his dominions. We cannot positively say that this Mâlek was the Maſſûd of the Oriental authors, although there are circumstances in his story which favour that opinion.

*Obtains the kingdom.*

The historian who gives the best account of this matter, is Pakhamîr. He says that Mâlek, whom he likewise calls Malek Masur, fled, along with his father Azatines, from the castle of Aine into the country beyond the Euxine sea. There they wandered together for some years; till after the death of Azatines, he crossed the sea into Asia Minor, and, arriving at Thymenum, gained the favour of Argûn, khân of the Tatars. By these means he became master of the country, as his proper inheritance; and reduced to his obedience the principal Turkish commanders. But Amur, father of Ali, having assembled a considerable army of Tatars, fell upon Mâlek, and reduced him to such extremity, that he resolved to go with his wife and children, and submit himself to the emperor. He repaired first to Heraclea of Pontus, and then to Constantinople<sup>b</sup>. The story thus far is related somewhat differently by the same author, in another place. He there says, that Mâlek, a long time after his father's death, crossing the Euxine, stopped at Kastamona; where, having gained the goodwill of the Tatars, he made an attempt to recover his father's kingdom; but having been defeated by Amur, he retired to Heraclea, and thence to Constantinople<sup>i</sup>.

*Recovered it again.*

The emperor Andronicus, who succeeded Michael, being then at Nympheum, Mâlek left his wife at Constantinople, and crossed over into Asia. But when he was near Endromit, he began to suspect the emperor's friendship; and observing that his conductor had too watchful an eye over him, complained openly of it, and quitted him; declaring, that if any body offered to stop him, he would repulse him vigorously. He retired to the Turks; and having, in a short time, acquired a more illustrious reputation, and more considerable forces than he had before, Amur became so much afraid of him, that he came with his seven sons, and humbly submitted to him. But while he lay prostrate at Mâlek's feet, to implore his clemency, that prince reproached him with his former treachery; and having taken a glass of wine, as if to drink, extended

*Slays Amur.*

<sup>b</sup> Pakh. lib. x. cap. 25.

<sup>i</sup> Ibid. lib. xiii. cap. 22.

his hands : on which signal those in waiting drew their swords, and slew Amur, with his sons.

However, one escaped, named Ali, who resolved to perish rather than not revenge the death of his father and brothers. With this view he gathered a considerable number of Turks ; and ranging the country after the manner of robbers, it was Mâlek's ill fortune at length to fall in his way ; for as his horse ran full speed, he threw his *Is slain by Ali.*

Ali was so elated at this success, that, assembling some troops, he began to ravage the Roman territories ; into which the river Sangarius, by a wonderful accident (T), gave him admittance. Ali and Nastratius his brother, had been a long time with the Romans as hostages ; and having gained the affections of the Turks, who dwelt about Kaſtamona, they committed many acts of hostility against the people who inhabited the borders of the Euxine sea, and the river Sangarius, without daring to advance farther <sup>k</sup>.

Mâſſûd was succeeded by his nephew Kaykobâd. Kaykobâd, the last sultân of Rûm, was the son of Faramorz, son of Kaykaws ; and succeeded his uncle Mâſſûd, under the authority of Gazân Khân, who confirmed or invested him in the dominions of his ancestors, in the year 687 (U) ; but having revolted against that prince some

A.D. 1288.

---

Fifteenth  
Sultân  
Kaykobâd.

\* Pakh. lib. x. cap. 25.

(T) The accident which gave Ali a passage over the Sangarius, was this. In the month of March, that river, deserting the foundations of the banks, made by the emperor Michael Paleologus, resumed its ancient bed, where the emperor Justinian had built a bridge ; and although the river Melân took its place, yet it had not water sufficient to fill its channel. Afterwards the Sangarius, being greatly swelled with the rains, changed its course a second time, carrying with it such a vast quantity of gravel,

mud, and earth, that it might be crossed on foot. Those who garrisoned the fortifications, seeing themselves exposed, by this alteration, to the inroads of the enemy, withdrew. A month after, the river took its usual channel ; as if it had left it only to disperse the garrisons, and favour the incursions of the enemy (1).

(U) D'Herbelot, in another place, p. 363, art. Gazan Khân, puts it in 702, which is two years after the end of his reign, and of the Seljûkian dynasty.

(1) Pakhamir, lib. xiii. cap. 22.

years

years after, the Mogols deprived him of all his dominions; then seizing his person, put him to death; and, at the same time, an end to this last branch and dynasty of the Seljûkians!.

This happened, according to the table of the Seljûkian princes given by D'Herbelot, in the year 700 of the Hejrâ, or of Christ 1300. The Greek historians make no mention of this sultân, with whom they had no transactions: the Turks, whom they were at that time engaged in war with, having been the Seljûk commanders; who, taking advantage of the distractions caused by the Mogol invasion, threw off their dependence on the sultân.

*Philantropenus rebels:*

In order to repress their progress in the Roman territories, the emperor Andronicus made Alexis, surnamed Philantropenus (who was his cup-bearer, and second son of Tarkoniates, the protovestriary,) governor of Asia Minor and Lydia. Philantropenus, having then under his command the troops of Kandia, and at length all the armies of the East, displayed so much valour, and gained so many victories, that, during his government, which continued a long time, he restored the affairs of the empire in the East; and at the same time, by his great liberality and address, gained the affection both of the Romans and their enemies. In all his expeditions he acquired much wealth; but gave the greatest part of it away in presents and rewards. Of this liberality we shall give an instance: near Meladun there was a fort, called the Fort of the Two Little Hills, where the principal wife of Salampaces, lately deceased, had retired with inestimable treasures. As it was not possible to take the place by force, Philantropenus, making use of art to gain his purpose, thought to deceive that lady by secret promises of marriage. After she had rejected his proposal, perceiving that there were posts driven into a little lake which washed the walls of the fort, he ordered planks to be fastened to them, with ropes, and built towers on them; at the same time covering the rest of the lake with vessels filled with soldiers, and military engines, he quickly became master of the place, and all the riches, which he distributed among his followers. These

A.D. 1296. *defeated by Libadarius,* persuaded him to revolt; but Libadarius, governor of Neokastrum, Lydia, and Sardes, marching against him at Nympheum, he was betrayed by the Kandiots; they seized him at the head of his army, and delivered him into the hands of that commander, who immediately ordered

<sup>1</sup> D'Herb, p. 240. art. Caikobâd.

his eyes to be put out. His troops, which were very numerous, consisting of Turks as well as Romans, fled; while Libadarius, with his small force, made a great slaughter of them.

The Turks, some time after, to revenge the disgrace of this defeat, assembling in great numbers, laid waste the whole country, from the Euxine sea to that of Rhodes. To put a stop to these disorders, the emperor sent over John Tarkoniates with money and troops, although he was an obstinate abettor of the schism which then prevailed in the church. Tarkoniates, by his conduct, justified the emperor's confidence in his integrity: he brought the soldiery to a proper regulation, by preferring poor men of merit to rich cowards; and obliging those to do duty, who, presuming on their wealth, despised the orders of their commanders. By this discipline, in a short time, he raised a numerous army, and equipped a powerful fleet, with which he had such extraordinary success, both by land and sea, that he soon restored the affairs of the East. But they were ruined again, by the negligence and bad conduct of those who succeeded him; for the money, appointed for payment of the soldiers, being misapplied, the troops dwindled away by degrees, and left the country open once more to the incursions of the enemy.

*Relapse  
anew.*

Among the commanders who headed different armies of Turks, and invaded the empire in different parts at the same time, Othmân was one; who, from a small beginning, in a few years laid the foundation of a mighty empire, which rose out of the ruins of the Seljûkian dynasty.<sup>m</sup>

<sup>m</sup> Abu'l-f. Excerpt. ad fin. Vitæ Saladin. edit Schultens, p. 57.

## C H A P. VIII.

*The History of the Moguls and Tartars from the Time of Jenghiz Khan.*

## S E C T. I.

*A Description of Western Tartary, as divided at present among the three Branches of Mungls or Moguls.*

*Division of Tatary.* **G**REAT Tatary or Tartary, is divided into East and West. The Eastern Tatary is possessed by several nations, who being subject to the Manchews, at present masters of China, go by that general name. The Western Tatary, which is considerably more extensive than the other, is in like manner occupied by a great number of nations or tribes of people, who are called Mungls or Mungals by themselves, and Moguls or Tatars indifferently by other nations.

These Mungls or Moguls, after various revolutions, the most remarkable of which will be related in the following history, became latterly divided into three great bodies, under different sovereigns. One retained the name of the Mungl simply; the second took that of Kalkas; and the third assumed the appellation of Aluths or Eluths: and among these three Mungl powers is all the Western Tartary divided: so that at present Western Tartary may be said to fall under a tripartite division. However, it must be observed, that as the country of the two first of these three Mogul branches, as well as that part properly called Eastern Tartary, are subject to China, therefore some authors, particularly the Jesuits, who have lately given us the history and description of that empire, divide Great Tartary in general into nearly two equal parts, by assigning Mount Altay for the western limit of Eastern Tartary.

## S E C T. II.

*Country of the Mungls properly so called.*

*Country of Mungls.* **T**HE country of the Mungls or Mungals, called by the European geographers, Mongolia, is bounded on the east by Eastern Tartary; on the south by the Chinese wall;

wall; on the west and north-west by the Kobi or Great Desart, and country of the Kalkas, from which it is divided by the Karû, or limits fixed by the late emperor of China Kang-hi; and on the north by the Kalkas, and part of Eastern Tartary. This is a very large region, situated between the 124<sup>th</sup> and 142<sup>d</sup> degrees of eastern longitude, and between the 38<sup>th</sup> and 47<sup>th</sup> degrees of latitude: so that it is length, from the borders of Eastern Tartary in the east, to the parts over-against Ninghya, in China, to the west, about three hundred leagues; and about two hundred in breadth from north to south, although in some places it is narrower<sup>a</sup>.

The part of Tatary, within this division, has been the scene of the greatest actions performed both by the eastern and western Tatars. Here the great empire of Jenghîz Khân and his successors had its rise; here the empires of Kitay and Karakitay were founded; and here the present empire of the eastern Tatars or Manchews (now in possession of China) had its beginning. Here, for several ages, bloody wars subsisted, and many battles were fought, which decided the fate of these monarchies. Here all the riches of the southern Asia, at several times, were amassed and dissipated. Lastly, in these desarts, for a time, arts and sciences were cultivated, and many populous cities flourished: but at present they are all destroyed<sup>b</sup>; nor do any signs of wealth remain, which may serve to evince the once opulent condition of the country.

These territories of the Mungls are full of mountains, *Mountains and rivers.* especially in the south parts adjoining to China, and interspersed with rivers. Among these may be reckoned the Whangho, which, passing out of China, surrounds the country of Ortûs, and then enters the empire again in the province of Shensi; the Shantû, which enters Pe-che-li towards the sea; and the Sira Muran, which, rising to the north of the Shantû, runs east, and then turning south, passes through Lyau-tong by the name of Lyau. There are several lakes in this country, but none remarkable for their magnitude.

The countries of the Mungls are divided into several territories or districts, according to the tribes which possess them. But since they have put themselves under the protection of the emperor of China, they have been divided into forty-nine districts called shassaks, that is *banners or Division into standards.*

<sup>a</sup> Du Halde's Descript. of China and Tartary, vol. ii. p. 249. 261.  
Engl. fol. edit.      <sup>b</sup> Collect. Trav. 4to, vol. iv. p. 367.

*Standards*, under so many princes or chiefs. The situation of these territories may be considered as they respect the four gates in the great wall of China, viz. Hi-fong-kew, Kû-pe-kew, Chang-kay-kew (these three in the province of Pe-che-li), and Sha-hew-kew, in Shan-si.

*First course.*

*Karchin.*

Passing north from the gate Hi-fong-kew, we soon arrive in the countries of Karchid, Tumet, Ohan, Nayman, and Korchin.

Karchin, which begins at the said gate (A), is divided into two districts, called standards; the most remarkable place here is Chahan Suberhan Hotun. It is by far the best belonging to the Mungls; for, as the present princes of it were originally Chinese, they have brought thither many of their countrymen, who have built towns, and improved the lands. Here are likewise mines, some of excellent in, with large forests of fine timber; by which the great ancestor of the present family got immense riches. Karchin is forty-two great French leagues from north to south, but much larger from east to west: and here are the emperor of China's fine houses of pleasure, near which the late Kang-hi frequently hunted, and usually spent his summer, especially at Je-ho, about forty-leagues from Pe-king<sup>c</sup>.

*Korchin.*

Korchin (Y) is divided into ten standards, including the countries of Turbeda and Chaley or Chalayr. The principal residence of the Korchin Tatars is along the river Queyler (Z), and their possessions extend to the Sira Muren; but they have neither springs for drink, nor wood for fuel, which they supply by wells, and dung of cattle. The principal point of Turbeda is Haytahan Pira; the Chaley Tatars dwell by the Nonni Ula. So that Korchin, from north to south, contains almost four degrees, extending six leagues to the north of Haytahan; but it does not exceed three degrees four minutes from east to west.

*Nayman.*

The country of Nayman contains but one banner or standard, and begins from the south side of Sira Muren; its principal north point being Topin-tala<sup>d</sup>.

*Ohan.*

Ohan is chiefly inhabited along the river Narkoni Pira, where some rivulets, as the Shaka-kol fall into it. On this side the latitude of 41 degrees 15 minutes are seen the ruins of a city called Orpan or Kurban Suberhan Hotun, on the little river Nûchûka or Nuchaka, which falls into

<sup>c</sup> Du Halde, *ibid.* p. 249, & seq.

<sup>d</sup> *Ibid.* 249. 264.

(A) Karchin signifies the *Black Tribe.* (Z) Lat. 46° 17', long. 4° 22' east of Pe-king.

(Y) That is the *Red Tribe.*

the Talin Ho. Nayman and Ohan, though far less, are yet much better than Korchin, being interspersed with shrubby hills, which furnish wood for fuel, and abound with game, especially quails. These three countries, with Turbeda, are sandy, and extremely cold.

Tumet is divided between two banneret princes, and inhabited chiefly beyond the river Subarhan, where appear the ruins of Modun Hotun. This country extends southward to the great wall of China; eastward to the palisade inclosing Lyau-tong; and northward to Halha or Hara Paychang.

2. From the gate Ku-pe-kew we enter upon the territories formerly part of Korchin and Onhiot, but now converted to a forest, where the emperor hunts, and has several fine summer-houses. Farther north are the countries of Onhiot, Kechikten, Parin, Sharot, Uchû Muchin, Arukorchin, and Abuhanar.

Onhiot is divided into two standards of two princes, on the river Inkin.

Parin, divided also into two standards, has its principal habitation on the Hara Muren, which falls into the Sira Muren. This territory is larger than Onhiot, but in other respects like it, the soil being but indifferent. The princes of these countries are allied to the imperial family of China, and are regulos of the first and second order.

Kechikten or Kesikten, is divided into two standards, and has its principal habitation on a small river, which runs north-east into the Sira Muren.

Uchu Muchin or Utſi Muſin, has two standards along the Hulakar or Hulgar Pira; its prince is a prime regulo.

Sharot, divided into two standards likewise, is inhabited chiefly towards the confluence of the Laban Pira and Sira Muren.

Arukorchin has but one banner, which resides on the river Arukondulen.

Abuhanar has two standards, and is best inhabited about the Taal Nor or lake of Taal.

Within this seconf division, almost due north from Ku-pe-kew, we meet with some towns, and the ruins of several considerable cities, as Ilan Hotun, Poro Hotun, Kurtu Palhassun, and Chau Nayman Sume Hotun, all upon the river Shanghtu or Shantu. The last of these places seems to have been the city of Shantu, called by the Chinese Kay-ping-fu, whose ruins Gerbillon saw in 1691. It was

<sup>e</sup> Du Halde, p. 249, & seq.

<sup>f</sup> Ibid. vol. ii. p. 335.

built by Koblay Khân, the fifth Mungl emperor, and grandson of Jenghîz Khân, who removed the imperial seat thither, in order to be nearer his new conquests; and served as the summer residence of his successors in China, who in winter lived at Khân-balik, or Pe-king.

*Third course.*

3. Passing out of the gate Chang-kya-kew, we enter on a country which was conquered by the emperor Kang-hi, and is his property. These lands, and all the rest along the Chinese wall as far as Hi-fong-kew, are occupied by farmers belonging to his majesty, the princes, and several Tatar lords. Here are Mungl Tatars also of different countries, ranged under three standards, and commanded by officers appointed by the emperor, therefore not reckoned among the forty-nine Mungl banners.

Farther to the north of Chang-kya-kew are the countries of the Mungl princes of Whachit, Sonhiot, Sabahay, and Twinchûz.

*Whachit.*

Whachit is divided into two standards near the river Chikir or Chirin Pira.

*Sonhiot.*

Sonhiot has two standards, and the principal habitation is near a lake.

*Abahay.*

Abahay is divided into two standards, which encamp about some lakes or meers, the southernmost whereof is called Siretu-huchin.

*Twinchûz.*

Twinchûz contains but one banner or standard near the Orgun Alin or mountain Orgun.

*Fourth course.*

4. From the gate of Sha-hu-kew we enter on the emperor's lands. In this country Hûhû Hotun or Khûkhû Hotun is most remarkable. Here inhabit the chiefs of two Tatar banners, called also Tumet, who are appointed by the emperor. Hûhû Hotun is the capital of all the country of the proper Mungls, where the emperor's governor, and the kûtûktû, or high-priest of those people, reside.

*Hûkû  
Hotun.*

Beyond the territory of Hûtû Hotun lie the countries of the Mungl princes of Kalka-Targar Maumingan, Urat, and Ortos.

*Kalka  
Targar.*

Kalka Targar is watered by the little river Aypaha Mûren, and contains but one banner.

*Maumim-  
gan.  
Urat.*

Maumingan has but one banner.

Urat or Virat is divided into three standards, and is mostly inhabited along the river Kondolen<sup>2</sup> or Quendolen.

*Ortûs.*

The Mungls called Ortos or Ortûs are bounded on the south by the great wall, which in that part, and indeed

\* Du Halde, vol. ii. p. 264.

throughout

throughout Shen-fi, is only of earth, and fifteen foot high. On the three other sides they are hemmed in by the Whang-ho, or *Yellow River*, which passing out of China, near the fine city of Ninghya, makes a great sweep, and enters the empire again near Pau-te-chew. These Mungls are governed by several petty princes under six standards, and pride themselves in the number and largeness of their tents, as well as multitude of their flocks. They had beyond the great wall, on the Whang-ho, a city called Toto, which seems by the ruins to have been pretty extensive; though at present they have no skill in building, nor take any delight in that art<sup>b</sup>.

Although the several tribes or branches of the Mungls lead a roving life, yet they have their respective limits fixed by custom, beyond which they must not pass to settle; for such transgression is reckoned an act of hostility among them.

*Limits set  
tled.*

### S E C T. III.

#### *The Country of the Kalka Mungls.*

OF all the Mungl nations depending on China, the most numerous and famous are the Kalkas, who take their name from the river Kalka, written also Khalkha, and Halha. They possess above two hundred leagues of the country from east to west, and the banks of the finest rivers in this part of Tartary. They dwell beyond the Mungls, northward, and have the Aluths, or Eluths, on the west. Their country, according to Gerbillon the Jesuit, extends from Mount Altay in the west, to the province of Solon in the east; and from the 51st degree of latitude to the southern extremity of the great Kobi, or Desart, which is reckoned to belong to them; for they encamp there during the winter, when they stand less in need of water, which is rarely to be met with in their territories, and generally bad.

The Desart above mentioned, called Kobi, or Gobi, by the Mungls, and Sha-mo by the Chinese, surrounds China, and is larger and more frightful towards the west (Y).

*Great  
Kobi, or  
Desert.*

<sup>a</sup> Du Halde, p. 253. 265.

(Y) This is the great desert which, till lately, our geographers had but very imperfect notions of, of which Marco Polo has given us such frightful ideas; and of

Gerbillon passed it in four different parts. From its eastern extremity to the mountains north of the great wall, it extends about a hundred leagues, not including the country beyond the Kerlon; which, though thinly inhabited, abounds with water and pasture. The Kobi is much larger from north to south, and above a hundred leagues over. In some parts it is quite bare, without trees, grass, or water, excepting certain ponds and marshes made by the rains, with here and there a well of bad water.

*Kalkas  
cr. gis.*

The Kalkas are the descendants of the Mungls, who, about the year 1368, were expelled from China by Hongvū, founder of the Ming family, which the Manchews succeeded, and, retreating northward beyond the Great Desert, settled chiefly along the rivers Selinga, Orkhon, Tula, and Kerlon; where, after being long accustomed to the delicacies of China, they returned to the roving and sordid life of their ancestors<sup>1</sup>.

*The Kalka  
Pira.*

The Kalka Pira is not much frequented by the Kalkas, although they take their name from thence. It flows from a famous mountain called Suelki, or Siulki, eighty-four leagues from Parin to the north-north-east, and sixty-four from Tsitsikar, the capital of Eastern Tartary to the west. After passing through a lake called Pu'ir, it changes its name to Urson, and runs due north into a larger called Kulon Nor.

*The Kerlon.*

The Kerlon, Tula Twi, and Selinga, though less famous for their origin among these people, are yet more esteemed for their clear and wholesome waters, abounding with trout and other good fish, as well as for the fruitful, large, and populous plains they glide through. The Kerlon, or Kerulon, running from west to east, falls also into the lake Kulon Nor, which discharges itself into the Saghalian Ula by the river Ergona, or Argun, the boundary of the Manchew empire on that side. The Kerlon, which is about sixty feet broad, and not deep, washes the richest pastures in all Tartary.

*The Tula*

The river Tula, or Tola, runs from east to west, and in most places is larger, deeper, and more rapid, than the Kerlon, has finer meadows, and more woods; the mountains, also, on the north side are covered with large fir. This river having joined itself to the Organ, Orkhon, or Urkon, which comes from the south-west, runs towards the north, and, after being increased with several others, as the Selingha Pira, at length falls into the greatest lake

<sup>1</sup> Du Halde, *China*, vol. ii. p. 259.

in all Tartary, called Baykal, or Paykal, in that part of Siberia belonging to the Russians.

The Twi Pira, whose waters resemble those of the *The Twi* the Kerlon, makes its way through fertile plains, and *Pira*. after a pretty long course, loses itself in the ground near a little lake, without appearing any more<sup>k</sup>.

The river Selingha has several sources; the chief branch, *The Selin-* called Wersh Selingha, issues from a lake, named by the *ga.* Mungls Kosogol. Its course is nearly in a line from south to north, through very fertile plains; and after receiving many other rivers, falls into the lake Baykal. Its waters are good, but do not afford plenty of fish; both its banks from its springs, till within one day of Selinghinskoy (a city of the Russians built on its south side) are in the hands of the Mungls; but the neighbouring country, from that city to the lake, belongs to the Russians.

The Orkhon above mentioned, formerly called Kalassui, *The Ork-* runs north-north-west into the Selingha; and on its banks *hon.* the khân of the Kalka Mungls, and their khutûktû, or high-priest, usually make their abode.

The river Altay, at present called Siba, has its spring *Altay, or* towards the frontiers of the Kalmûks, or Eluths, in the *Siba.* mountains called Uskun-lug-tugra, to the south of the springs of the river Jenisea, and running from thence east-north-east, loses itself to the north of the Kobi, or Desert, and south-south-east of the springs of the Orkhon. A petty khân of the Mungls usually resides about the Siba.

The Tîan, or Jan Mûren, has its source in the moun- *Jan Mû-* tains which cross the Kobi; and running south-south-east, *ren.* falls into the Wang-ho, on the frontiers of Tibet. Two petty khâns dwell on its banks.

The river Argun, or Ergona, rises in the country of *The Argun.* the Mungls, from a lake called Argun Dalay, or Kulon Nor. Its course is nearly east-north-east; and having run about a hundred leagues, it falls into the great river Amur<sup>l</sup>, as the Russians call the Saghalian Ula.

The princes of the Kalka Mungls usually inhabit the banks of the rivers already described, with those of Hara, or Kara Pira, Iben Pira, which falls into the Orkhon, Karaujir, Ira Pira, Patarik Pira, and the Tegurik Pira, towards the source of the Irtish, and city of Hami, or Khamil, in Little Bukharia.

\* Do Halde, vol ii. p. 250, & seq.

ghazi Khan, Hist. Turk. &c. p 515, & seq.

<sup>1</sup> Bentink ad. Abu'l-

*Ruins of cities.*

*Para Hotun.*

There were formerly several cities in this part of Tartary possessed by the Kalkas. The missionaries who surveyed Chinese Tartary, by order of the emperor Kang-hi, met with the ruins of a large square city, two leagues in circuit, named Para Hotun, that is, the Tiger's City, from the cry of that animal, which was thought a good omen. Not far from thence is a place called Kara Usson, with a small lake and fine spring, in a fertile plain abounding with deer, mules, &c. all wild. There may be other monuments in these quarters of the early times of the Mungls under Jenghiz Khân, and his four immediate successors; but there do not appear to be any footsteps of Karakoram, the capital of the whole empire during that time; at least those missionaries were wholly at a loss about it, supposing it to be Kara Usson above mentioned, although the situation does not agree with that which authors have given of Karakoram.

*Karakoram city.* However, Gaubil, a Jesuit, who settled at Pe-king some time after his brethren returned from Tartary, by consulting the Chinese historians and astronomers, found out the situation of that city, which they call Ho-lin. It was in being before the time of Jenghîz Khân, having been the residence of the khân of the Kara-its, the famous Van Khân, or Ung Khân; but when Jenghiz Khân took it from that prince, it was a very inconsiderable place. The conqueror much improved it, and his son Oktay Khân rebuilt and made it a famous city<sup>m</sup>: with this account the Chinese history agrees. So that when Abu'l-Faraj, who says it is the same with Ordubâlik, affirms that it was built by Oktay<sup>n</sup>, it is to be understood of the improvements of that prince, who built a magnificent palace there in the year 1225<sup>o</sup>. Yet Rubruquis, the Minorite friar, who was at Karakoram in 1253, says it had then only a mud wall; and that the place itself, and the khân's palace, compared with European edifices, were but poor buildings; however, he allows it to have been very populous, and to have contained a great many palaces, temples, &c<sup>p</sup>.

*Now ruined.* Karakoram stood to the north of the great Kobi, or Sandy Desert, and near the lake Kurahan Ulen, marked by the Jesuits in their map of Tartary, although they looked for it at Para Hotun, four hundred and

<sup>m</sup> De la Croix Hist. Gengh. Can. p. 27. 362.  
<sup>n</sup> Hist. Dynast. p. 310. 320.  
<sup>o</sup> Abu'lghazi Khan, Hist. Turk, &c. p. 354. 513.  
<sup>p</sup> Purch. Pilgrim. vol. iii. p. 39.

twenty miles distant to the north-east. It was the imperial seat of the khâns till Kublay removed it to Shang-tu, already mentioned, which continued to be the place of their summer residence as long as the Mungls were in possession of China; but after their expulsion, about the year 1568, it is probable Karakoram became again the capital of the khâns; although, according to De la Croix, they resided ever since the time of Oktay (Jenghîz Khân's immediate successor) at Ulug Yurt, a city not far distant<sup>9</sup>, if it be not the same place. Here Alchi Timûr, the thirteenth from Kublay, ascended the throne in 1405, and we find it subsisting in the time of Aday, the fifteenth successor; but after that period we are told no more is found of Ulug Yurt in the Oriental authors<sup>1</sup>. Yet neither the time nor occasion of the destruction of that city, or of Karakoram, is mentioned by any historian yet known to us.

Tartary, according to Regis the Jesuit, abounds with all sorts of game, even of the kinds common in Europe; as *Store of game.* hares, pheasants, deer, and the like: the yellow goats are seldom seen in the plains except in large herds. They are of the shape and size of common goats, only their hair is yellow: they are likewise extremely fleet, which makes it difficult to catch them. The wild mules go in small *Wild mules.* herds, but cannot be brought to carry burthens. Their flesh is of an agreeable taste; and, in the opinion of the Tartars, as nourishing and wholesome as the wild boar's (Z). This last animal frequents the woods and plains beyond the river Tula, and is traced by the earth it turns up *Wild boar.* to come at the roots on which it feeds.

The wild horse and dromedary are natives of this region. These are found chiefly in the western parts of great Tartary, although sometimes they are met with in the territories of the Kalkas, bordering on Khamil in Little Bukharia. The wild horses go in large droves; and when they meet with tame ones, surround and force them away; they are so very fleet, that the swiftest hunters can seldom reach them with their arrows.

<sup>9</sup> Hist. Genghis Can, p. 386.      <sup>1</sup> Ibid. p. 401.

(Z) Gerbillon, in his second journey into Tartary, saw a young wild mule, of a kind which propagates. This was a female, had large ears, a long head, slender body, and long legs; its hair was ash-colour, and its hoofs and feet uncloven, like those of other mules. Collect. of Voyag. and Trav. 4to. vol. iv. p. 686.

*The haute-han.*

The hautehan is an animal which resembles an elk ; the missionaries saw some, which, when killed, were bigger than the largest ox. They are found only in particular districts, about Mount Suelki, in boggy grounds, where they delight to resort, and are very easily killed, their great weight retarding their flight.

*The chelison.*

The chulon, or chelison, is about the size of a wolf, and seemed to Regis a sort of lynx. It has a long, soft, and thick hair, of a greyish colour, and their furs are valued at the courts both of China and Russia.

Tartary is infested with tigers and leopards. The tigers found eastwards are surprisingly large and nimble. Their skins are commonly of a fallow red, striped with black lists ; some are white with black and grey lists. The skins of the leopards are whitish, spotted with red and black. Although they have the head and eyes of tigers, they are not so large, and have a different cry.

*Deer-hunting.*

The deer, which multiply exceedingly in the deserts and forests, differ in colour, size, and shape of their horns, according to the different quarters of this vast region ; and some are like the deer of Europe. One way of hunting them, termed the stag-call, is thus ; the huntsmen, carrying some stags-heads, counterfeit the cry of the hind, which brings the largest stags towards the place from whence they hear the cry ; they then stop and look about, till perceiving the stags heads, they tear up the ground with their horns, and immediately run forward, but are shot by some who lie in ambush. The emperor Kang-hi took great delight in this diversion. The intrepidity of Tartarian horses in encountering tigers is surprising ; yet it is owing wholly to use ; for they are as fearful of them at first as other horses. The Mungls are very expert in taming and breaking, as well as catching them running with the slip-knot of a cord. They understand their distempers, but use such remedies as would no more agree with the horses of Europe than their food. They are of a middle size, yet some of them are as large as ours ; but the Tartars wisely prefer strength and hardness to either largeness or beauty.

*The tael-pe.*

The Kalkas are not rich in fable-skins, but have plenty of squirrels, foxes, and a creature as small as an ermine, called tael-pe ; of whose skins at Pe-king they make mantles to resist the cold. These animals are a kind of land-rats, and dig in the earth a range of as many little holes as there are males in the company ; one of whom always keeps watch above, but retires under-ground at any body's approach.

approach. When the hunters discover their nest they surround it, and opening the earth in two or three places, throw in lighted straw to frighten them out; thus they take great numbers, so that their skins are very cheap.

The rivers in the country of the Mungls do not afford *The fish.* any great variety or plenty of fish, like those of eastern Tartary. The sturgeon, which they sometimes find in the Tula, comes from the lake Baykal; and the Ursun, falling into the Saghalian Ula, or Amur, receives from thence the fish which is found in the eastern rivers. In the same river you meet with an amphibious animal called turbegha, resembling an otter, but the flesh is tender, and almost as delicious as that of the roe-buck<sup>s</sup>.

As to uncommon birds, there are bred vast numbers of *Shankar bird.* an extraordinary beauty in the plains of Grand Tartary. That mentioned by Abû'lghazi Khân seems to be a kind of heron, which is found in the country of the Mungls towards the frontiers of China. It is all over white, except the beak, wings, and tail, which are of a very fine red. The flesh is delicious, and tastes somewhat like that of the wood-hen. However, as the bird which that author speaks of is very rare, Bentink thinks it may be the stork, which is very scarce all over Russia, Siberia, and Great Tartary; yet some are found in the Mungls country near China, which are generally white<sup>t</sup>.

### S E C T. IV.

#### *The Countries belonging to the Eluths, or Eluth Mungls.*

THE countries belonging to the Aluths, or Eluths, nicknamed Kalmûks, are to be considered, as that nation is at present divided into three branches, the Dson-gari or Jongari, the Koshoti, and the Torgaüti.

1. The Eluths Jongari, who are the most considerable branch of the three, posseßs the larger half of what Europeans call the Western Tartary; extending from the Caspian sea and river Jaïk, in 72 degrees of longitude, from Ferro, to mount Altay, in 110 degrees; and from the 40th to the 52d degree of latitude. Whence it may be computed about one thousand nine hundred and thirty miles in length, from west to east; and in breadth, at most, from south to north, six hundred and fifty miles.

<sup>s</sup> Du Halde's China, &c. vol. ii. p. 255.  
500, & seq.

<sup>t</sup> Hist. Turks, p.

It is bounded on the north by Russia and Siberia, from which it is separated by a chain of mountains ; on the east, by mount Altay ; on the south, by the countries of Karazm and the two Bukhârias ; from which also it is separated partly by another chain of mountains, and some rivers, particularly the Sir ; and on the west by the river Jaïk and the Caspian sea, or rather by Turkestan, which lies between.

*Mountains  
Tubra Tu-  
busluk.*

There are in the country of the Eluths or Kalmûks, three considerable chains of mountains, viz. the Tubra Tubusluk, the Uskuluk Tugra, and the Altay. The first, which makes its northern frontier, and is called also Ulugtâg, or *the Great Mountain*, begins at the eastern bank of the Irtish, to the north of the lake Sayfan, through which that river passes, and runs due east, as far as the Selinga, which it coasts northward to the lake Baykal ; then turning east, it proceeds to the Amur, or Saghalian Ula, about Nerchinskoy ; and follows the course of that river, on the north side, to the eastern ocean.

*Uskuluk  
Tugra.*

The second branch, called Uskuluk Tugra, bears also the name of Kichik-tâg, or *the Little Mountain* : it commences in the confines of Turkestan and Great Bukhâria, to the south of the river Sir ; and running nearly east, makes the bounds between Great Bukhâria and the country of the Eluths. It continues its course on the same line, till, arriving to the south of the springs of the Jenisea, it strikes off to the south-east ; and falls in with the frontiers of China, as far as the province of Lyau-tong. There forming an elbow to the north-east, it separates that province, and Korea, from the country of the Mungls ; and ends at last on the shore of the sea of Japan, about the 42d degree of latitude.

*Mount  
Altay.*

The mountain Altay, (by some called Kaltay, and in Abu'lghazi Khân's history Kut) is a branch of the Uskuluk Tugra, taking its rise to the west of the source of the Jenisea. It runs almost in a strait line from south to north, along the western bank of that great river, at a distance of one or two days journey, till it joins the Tugra Tubusluk, in about 50 degrees of latitude.

*Rivers.*

*The Tekîs  
and Ili.*

Though this region of the Eluths is bounded by mountains, yet it is watered by very few rivers which descend from them. The most considerable known to us are the Tekîs and Ili, the Chui and Talas. The Tekîs rises in the mountain bounding Little Bukhâria on the north ; and having run about seventy miles north-east, falls, by several mouths, into the Ili, which has its source in the same hills,

hills, and runs north-west about a hundred and fifty miles; then, shaping its course north a hundred and fifty miles farther, falls into the lake Palkati, in about 48 degrees of latitude. On this river the khân of the Eluths has his chief residence or camp, which is called Harkas, or, as others spell it, Urga.

The Chui and Talas descend from the above mentioned mountain; and running north-west about a hundred and eighty leagues each, fall into different lakes, the Chui into Kalkol, and the Talas into Sikiriik Nor<sup>a</sup>.

*Chui and  
Talas.*

Besides the rivers already described, we meet with none of any great consequence, except the Irtish; nor does more than a part of it run through this country.

This river, which is the most considerable in the north of Asia, hath its rise from two lakes, thirty miles asunder; in about 45 degrees 15 minutes of latitude, and 113 of longitude, on the west side of mount Altay, and to the north of the province Khamil, or Hami, in Little Bukhâria, inclining to the east. The rivers formed by them run westward. The northern stream is called Khar Irtish; the southern, Khor Irtish: these about thirty miles distance from their sources uniting, form the river called Irtish, Irtis, or Erchis. Having run west about fifty leagues, it makes the lake Sayfan, that is, *of the Nobility*, forty miles long, and twenty broad. Passing out of the lake it runs northward, as far as Uskamen, the first Russian fort and settlement on this river, in the borders of the Eluths country on that side. The rest of the Irtish belongs to Siberia; where, after passing by the capital Tobolskoy, it joins the Obi, a little above Samara.

Strahlenberg places the sources of the Obi, or Ubi, also *The Obi* in the country of the Eluths. It is formed like the Irtish, by the confluence of two rivers, the Khatun and Ba, from which last it derives its name. The Ba or Bi, takes its rise in a lake, to which that author gives the names Altun Nor, Altun Kurke, Altin, and Teleskoy; perhaps the same called in the Jesuits map Kirkir. But both maps seem to have been made, in this part, from very doubtful information.

The vast region of Tartary, being situated under the *Soil and produce.* finest climate in the world, is every-where of an extraordinary fertility. But though almost all the great rivers of Asia have their springs in the mountains of this country, yet the land being perhaps the highest any-where on earth,

<sup>a</sup> Hist. Turks, &c. p. 522. 524. 526.

it is, in several parts, destitute of water; so that it is inhabitable only near the rivers and lakes. Verbiest, the Jesuit, in the country of the Mungls, about eighty leagues to the north of the great wall, towards the source of the river Karga, found the ground to be three thousand geometrical paces, or three miles higher than the sea-coast nearest Peking. Hence it is that Great Tartary appears so much colder than other countries in the same latitude. At midsummer the north-east wind is so piercing, that one must cover himself well in the night; and often in August one night produces ice the thickness of a crown-piece. In summer, at the depth of four or five feet below the surface of the earth, clods are found quite congealed, and even entire heaps of ice; which Verbiest ascribes to the salt-petre with which the soil is impregnated.

*Great fertility.*

The same extraordinary elevation of the earth is also the reason why there are so many deserts in Grand Tartary; but these deserts are not altogether so frightful as Europeans fancy them. For excepting the vast Kobi, or Gobi, before mentioned, and a few other small sandy deserts, all the rest afford excellent pasture; producing rich grass in abundance; but, for want of water, it soon decays at the root, and as withered grass quite chokes up the young, the inhabitants, in spring, set fire to the old herbage, which sometimes spreads above a hundred leagues round. In less than fifteen days after this conflagration, the new grass shoots up every-where to the height of a span; which proves the great fertility of the soil: and so much of this vast country, as is supplied with water, is sufficient for the support of four times the number of its present inhabitants, if it was but well cultivated. None, besides the Mohammedan Tartars, till their lands; while the Eluths, and most part of the Mungls, subsist entirely upon their cattle: this is the reason why they can have no fixed habitations, being obliged to change their quarters, according as the seasons change. Yet, though the soil is so luxuriant, Great Tartary does not produce a single wood of tall trees, of any kind whatever, excepting in some few places towards the frontiers: all the wood, found in the heart of the country, consist in shrubs, which never exceed the height of a pike; and these are very rare<sup>w</sup>.

*No forest trees.*

*The khân's residence.*

The khân of the Eluths dwells continually under tents, although he possesses Little Bukhâria, with its dependencies,

<sup>w</sup> Hist. Turks, p. 381, & seq. also Collect. Trav. 4to. vol. iv. p. 393.

wherein there are a good many towns; only when his affairs call him thither, he resides at Yarkien, or Yarkan, the capital of that country. He has continued about the river Ila and Tekis for some years past; that he might be near at hand to watch the motions of his cousin Ayuki Khân, as well as the Mohammedan Tartars and Mungls, between whom the Eluths are situated. His camp is a great curiosity; distributed into several quarters, squares, and streets, a league in compass, and able, at a minute's warning, to send into the field fifteen thousand horse. The quarter where the khân resides, is in the middle of the camp. His tent is made of kitayka, a strong sort of callico; which, being raised very high, and of all sorts of lively colours, exceedingly delights the eye at a distance. In winter the tent is covered with felt, which makes it impenetrable by the weather. His wives are lodged in little wooden houses, which may be taken down in an instant, and set on waggons, when they are going to decamp \*.

Although, according to the account of the missionaries who surveyed Chinese Tartary, there are no plants to be met with in that region: yet we are assured, by a certain curious author, that, in the parts above the rivers Orkhon and Selingha, towards Selinghinskoy, rhubarb grows in great abundance; all that Russia furnishes foreign countries with, comes from about this city.

The animals in this division of Western Tartary are much the same with those to be found in the two other parts; unless we except one called by Bentink, the glutton, which abounds in the country of the Eluths. It is a carnivorous beast, not quite so tall as a wolf, and peculiar to the mountains of northern Asia: the hair, which is strong and long, is of a very fine dark brown all over its back. This beast is exceedingly mischievous; for it climbs the trees, and watching the game which pastes underneath, leaps down on its back, where it fastens with its claws, and makes a great hole; while the poor creature, quite spent with anguish and struggling to get rid of its enemy, at length falls on the ground, and becomes his prey. It requires three stout dogs to master this beast, small as it is. The Russians greatly value its skin, which they use for muffs, and borders of bonnets <sup>y</sup>.

2. The Eluths Koshoti possest all the kingdom of Tan-  
*Eluths  
Koshoti.*

\* Abu'lq. Hist. Turks, &c. p. 543, & seq.  
Abu'lq. Hist. Turks, p. 528.

<sup>y</sup> Bent. ap.

gut, and are subject to the Dalay Lama, or great pontiff of Tibet, who governs them by two khâns; of whom one has the government of Tibet, the other of Koko Nor.

*Koko Nor country.*

The country of Koko Nor, or Kokonol, is so called by these Eluths from a lake of the same name, termed by the Chinese Si-hay, that is, *the Western Sea*. It is one of the largest in all Tartary, being above twenty great French leagues in length, and more than ten in breadth; situated between the 36th and 37th degrees of latitude, and between the 16th and 17th of longitude, west of Peking<sup>2</sup>.

*Extent and size.*

This country lies between Tibet on the west, and China on the east, bordering on the provinces of Shen-si and Sechwen. It is pretty large, extending from north to south above seven degrees. It is separated from China by mountains, so high and steep, that they serve almost every where instead of the great wall. Those to the south, which separate it from the kingdoms of Pegu and Ava, are frightful and inaccessible, inhabited by a savage people. They also make so strong a barrier to China, by their great length and breadth, that the entrances on that side are left unfortified.

*Eluths Torgauti.*

3. The Eluths Torgauti are the least considerable of the three branches. They dwelt formerly towards Turkestan, and were subject to Kontaish: but about the beginning of the present century, Ayûka, or Ayûki, one of his cousins, flying from his court, under pretence that he was in fear of his life, passed the river Jaïk, with the tribe of the Torgauti, and put himself under the protection of Russia. In winter Ayûka Khân usually encamped with his ordas in the sandy ground about Astrachân, to the east of the river Wolga, between it and the Jaïk; and in summer he often went to reside on the banks of this river, about Saratof and Zaritza. Although the Koshoti, and Torgauti Eluths have their own khâns, yet Kontaish preserves a kind of sovereignty over, and draws considerable supplies from them, when he is at war with his neighbours the Mungls, Chinese, or Mohammedan Tartars<sup>3</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> Du Halde's China, vol. ii. p. 265.

<sup>3</sup> Bentink, ap. Abu'lghazi's Hist. Turks, &c. p. 538, & seq.

C H A P. IX.

*Of the Mungls, or Moguls, and their several Branches.*

S E C T. I.

*Their Name, Persons, Manners, Customs, Way of Living, Habitations, Language.*

THE Moguls, or rather Mungls, derive their name from Mungl Khân, one of their ancient emperors; and one branch of them still retain it, called, by our authors, Mungals or Mongals, of which the word Moguls, commonly used by the Asiatics, as well as Europeans, is a corruption. These people are frequently confounded with the Tartars; a mistake which may be owing to the following causes: first, the people of the north of Asia having been known, for many ages, by the name of Tatars, to the inhabitants of the southern countries, particularly the Chinese and Persians; these latter, seeing the Mungls come from the same quarters, and no way different as to features, language, and manners, from the Tartars, considered both as the same people, under different names (A). Secondly, there were, in the army of Jenghîz Khân, when he invaded those countries, tribes of Tatars as well as Mungls; which made those nations, who were acquainted with the Tatars before, give both names, indifferently, to the followers of that conqueror. Lastly, the Tatars having been very serviceable to Jenghîz Khân in the battle against Vang Khân, or Ung Khân, which put him in possession of the sovereignty, he, in order to reward them, joined their name <sup>b</sup> with that of the Mungls, in the title which he thereupon assumed, styling himself Grand Khân of the Mungls and Tatars.

Name  
Mungls,  
and Ta-  
tars,  
whence:

Whatever was the cause of introducing this custom, it is certain that it obtained, and still continues in force: for most authors, by Mungls and Tartars, mean the same

*used indif-  
ferently.*

<sup>b</sup> De la Croix, Hist. Gengh. p. 63.

(A) The Chinese say Kalka well as Kalka Mungls and Tartars and Eluth Tartars, as Eluth Mungls.

people (B). It must be confessed, it would be much better to lay aside a practice which tends to create great confusion, and at least to confine the name of Tatars, to those commonly called Mohammedan Tatars, to whom another custom has in effect appropriated it. After all, those names should be applied only for distinction sake, neither of them being strictly due to the people who enjoy it; for as the name of Tatars is given to many tribes who are not Tatars, so that of Moguls extends to many who are not Moguls: the name of the conquering, or most powerful tribes having passed to the conquered or less powerful tribes.

*Three  
Mogul  
branches.*

The Moguls or Mungls are, at present, divided into three great branches; the Mungls, properly so called, the Khâlkas, and the Aluths, or Eluths. The first branch retains the ancient name of the nation, which has been already accounted for. The Kalkas, which may also be written Khâlkha, and Halhâ, derive their name from the river Kalka, already described, which runs through their country. Whence the Eluths, Aluths, or Aluts, derive their name, it is not so easy to determine. These are the people commonly known by the name of Kalmâk, or Kalmûk, whose etymology is also unknown to us. All we are certain of is, that it is a nick-name given to them by the Mohammedan Tatars, in hatred of their idolatrous religion; or for some other cause. The Russians took it from those Tatars, and from the Russians it came in use among Europeans; while the name of Eluth was unknown to them. They consider it as an affront to be called Kalmûks, and say, they have a better title to the name of Mungls than their neighbours, who at present enjoy it; as these latter are sprung from that part of the Mungls and Tatars who were expelled China, by Hongvû, the founder of the Ming family, in 1368<sup>c</sup>.

*Mungls in  
general.*

Although the two last branches have, for distinction sake, or some other reason, assumed different names from the first, yet they still retain the appellation of Mungls, which they highly honour; as the Jews did that of Israelites, to denote their origin and descent. As all these tribes have the same customs, language, religion, and form of government, what may be said of one branch, will serve for the other two: for this reason we shall connect together, under the general name of Mungls, what materials

<sup>c</sup> Abu'lq. Hist. Turks, &c. p. 259, & seq.

(B) And, after all, they are, being the descendants of the in effect, the same people: as Huns, or Turks.

the best travellers, and other authors, afford us, concerning these three branches; only distinguishing what may be peculiar to each of them.

The Mungls, in general, are of a middle size, but exceeding robust and well-set: they have large and broad heads, flat faces, and complexions of a dark olive colour, pretty near that of American copper; very black and sparkling eyes, but too far asunder, and opening but a little, although they are very long: the bridge of their nose is quite flat, and almost level with the face, so that there is nothing of a nose to be seen but the end, which is very flat also, with two great holes, which form the nostrils: their ears are very large; their beards very thin: hair black, and strong, like horse-hair; but they shave all off, excepting a lock on the crown of the head, which falls down the back, and is let grow to its natural length. To make amends for this want of beauty, they have very pretty mouths, with small teeth, as white as ivory, and are perfectly well limbed. Their women have much the same features, only not so large; but then they are commonly of a good size, and well-shaped <sup>d</sup>.

Gerbillon, the Jesuit, says they are quite rude and unpolished in their manners; yet honest and good-natured: the Eluths, in particular, do harm to nobody, if not first provoked; and although extremely brave, yet they do not live by robbery, like their neighbours the Mohammedan Tatars, with whom they are continually at war. The proper Mungls and Kalkas are nasty and slovenly in their tents and cloaths, living amidst the dung of their beasts; which serves them for fuel, for they have no wood. They excel in horsemanship and hunting; and are dextrous archers, either on foot or on horseback. In general, they lead a wretched life; and being averse to labour, prefer grazing to every other occupation <sup>e</sup>.

Regis, another of the missionaries, observes, that the utmost ambition of the Mungls is to preserve the rank of their families. They value things only for their use; having no regard to their rarity or beauty: are naturally of an easy cheerful temper, always disposed to laugh, and never disturbed with melancholy. Indeed, they find little occasion for care; having generally neither neighbours to manage, enemies to fear, nor lords to please. Perplexed with no difficult affairs, nor business, they divert them-

<sup>d</sup> Bent. ap. Abu'lg. Hist. Turks, &c. p. 533, & seq.  
Halde ibid. p. 256.

<sup>e</sup> Du

felves

**selves wholly with hunting, fishing, and other bodily exercises.** However, these people are capable not only of **and genius:** the sciences, but the greatest undertakings; witness their subduing China, in 1264; which they governed, even in the opinion of the Chinese, with great judgement and address.

**their dress,** As to their dress, according to Bentink, they wear very large shirts, and calico drawers; their habits are commonly made of callico, called kitayka, or some other light stuff, which they line with sheep-skin: and sometimes they wear entire garments of the same materials. They fasten their garments, which reach to the ankles, with leathern straps about the waist. Their boots are exceeding large, and usually made of Russia leather: their bonnets small and round, with a fur of four fingers breadth. The women's dress is nearly the same, excepting that their garments are longer, their boots generally red, and their bonnets flat, with some little ornaments <sup>f</sup>. Regis says, they know how to dress those skins, as well the skins of stags, deer, wild-goats, &c. which serve the rich for under-garments in the spring: yet, for all their care, you smell them as soon as they come near you; whence the Chinese have given them the name of Tsau-ta-tse, that is, *Stinking Tatars* <sup>g</sup>.

**winter and summer.** The Eluths wear much the same kind of cloaths with the proper Mungls and Kalkas. In the southern provinces they use no shirts in summer, contenting themselves with a kind of sheep-skin doublet, without sleeves; which they put on next their skin, with the woolly side out, tucking their shirt within their breeches; so that all the arm is left bare up to the shoulder. In winter they wear a sheep-skin over the doublet, which reaches to the calf of the leg, and turn the woollen side inward. These upper skins have sleeves so long, that they are obliged to turn them up, when going about any work. Their bonnet is red, and commonly adorned with a tuft of silk or hair, of a bright red. Their women go habited much after the same manner; their callico shift making all their cloathing in summer, and a long sheep-skin gown, with a bonnet, the same with their husbands, covering them in winter.

**Red colour esteemed.** Red is the colour in greatest esteem with the Tatars; and how ill clothed soever their princes may be, in other respects, they never fail to have a scarlet robe for state oc-

<sup>f</sup> Bent. ap. Abu'lq. Hist. Turks, &c. p. 505, & seq.  
Hinde, ubi supra, p. 254.

<sup>g</sup> Du

cafions.

casions. Their chiefs would rather be without a shirt, than a scarlet coat; and the women of quality do not think themselves well dressed, if the scarlet gown be wanting. The very meanest people affect to wear red cloaths, although the cloth be ever so ordinary. This whim has spread even among the inhabitants of Siberia. In short, all over the north of Asia, a man may do more with a piece of red cloth, than four times its value in silver.

The arms of the Mungls consist in the bow and arrows, *Mungl arms.* the pike and sabre, which they wear after the Chinese manner: and they always go to war on horseback.

These people live entirely on their cattle; which consist of horses, dromedaries, oxen, cows, and sheep. Their horses are very good and spirited: their oxen larger than those of the Ukraine, and the tallest in the world. Their dromedaries are large and strong. Their sheep are very large also, but have very short tails; which are buried in a case of fat, weighing several pounds, and hanging perpendicular: the wool of them is very long and coarse; they have a bunch or rising on the nose, like the camels, and hanging ears, like hounds<sup>b</sup>. This observation is to be understood properly of the Eluths; for although the Mungls and Kalkas have the same sort of cattle with them, yet they are far inferior, both for goodness and appearance, except the sheep; whose tails are about two spans long, and near as much in compass, weighing commonly between ten and eleven pounds: it is almost one entire piece of very rank fat. They, above all things, *Their diet.* abhor swine; and the Eluths never either either eat them or poultry. They, in general, eat nothing but horse-flesh and mutton; not esteeming that of bullocks or cows so good. They are also fonder of mare's than cow's milk, being much better and richer. Indeed, the cows, after their calves are taken from them, will suffer none to draw their teats: they likewise quickly lose their milk; so that necessity has introduced the use of mare's milk.

Gerbillon says, that, in summer, the Mungls feed on milk; using indifferently that of cows, mares, ewes, goats, and camels. Their drink is water, boiled with the worst sort of Chinese tea, in which they put cream, butter, or milk. They make a spirituous liquor from sour milk, which is distilled after fermentation. The rich lay mutton to ferment with their sour milk. This liquor is strong and

*Drink spirituous liquors.*

<sup>b</sup> Abu'lgh. ubi sup. p. 536.

nourishing, and they delight to get drunk with it. They also smoke a great deal of tobacco<sup>1</sup>. Bentink informs us, that the Kalmûks have a way of making the milk sour in two nights time; after which, pouring it into an earthen pot, they stop it very close, and putting a funnel to it, set it on the fire for distillation. This spirit is as clear and good as that which in Europe is distilled from grain; but to make it so, it must be set twice over the fire. They call it arak, in imitation of the Indians their neighbours, who give all their strong liquors that name.

*Kosmos, or  
Kumis.*

Rubruquis tells us, that, in the time of Mangu Khân, the Mungls, besides wines which came from foreign countries, made excellent drink of rice, millet, and honey; being well-flavoured, and high-coloured, like wine: but that their chief liquors were the kosmos (C) and karakofmos; which, according to that author, are made by the following process. For the kosmos, they fill a great skin-bag with mare's milk, and beat upon it with a club, which has a knob at the end, as big as a man's head, but hollow. As soon as they beat, the milk begins to ferment like new wine, and turn sour: they continue this labour till the butter comes: then tasting the whey, if it be pretty sharp, it is fit to drink; for it is pungent on the tongue like rape-wine, and leaves a flavour like that of almond-milk. It intoxicates weak heads, is very pleasant, and diuretic.

Karakofmos, or black kosmos, is the drink of great lords, and made thus: they beat the milk till the grosser part subsiding, like white-wine lees, the purer remains at top, like new whey. The settlings are given to servants, who sleep very sound after it. This, says our author, is a very pleasant and wholesome liquor<sup>k</sup>.

*Great  
drinkers.*

The inhabitants of Great Tartary, in general, are fond of strong liquors; for when they can get any, they never let it rest while they are able to stand. When they choose to make merry, each brings what liquor he can procure; and then they set themselves to drink night and day, never stirring till every drop is exhausted. They are no less fond of smoking; which customs prevail most, in proportion as they live more northerly<sup>l</sup>.

*Their traf-  
fick.*

These people, having no manufactures, exchange their cattle with the Russians, Bukhârs, and other neighbours,

(C) By other authors called Kumis, or Kimis.

<sup>1</sup> Du Halde, ubi sup. p. 256.  
p. 5, & seq.

<sup>k</sup> See Purch. Pilgr. vol. iii. p. 403. 536.  
<sup>l</sup> Abu'lgh. ubi supra, p. 403. 536.

for what they want ; nor is it possible commerce could flourish there as it did in the time of Jenghîz Khân, so long as the vast regions they inhabit remain divided among several princes ; some of whom will always oppose the designs of others. Besides, the rapine of the Mohammedan Tartars, who rob the karawâns, keep off the merchants of the West. However, on the side of Siberia, China, and the Indies, they may arrive in perfect safety. Those from China, resort in great numbers to the Mungls, bringing them rice, bohea-tea, which they call karachay, tobacco, cotton, cloth, and other ordinary stufis ; besides several sorts of household utensils, and other necessaries.

As the heathen Tatars lead a very harmless life, they *No slave trade.* are not so earnest to procure slaves for their service as the Mohammedan Tatars. Besides, having no need of more than their own families to guard their cattle, which are all their riches, they do not care to burthen themselves with useless mouths. Hence it is, that none except the khâns and the tayk, are allowed to have slaves. When they take any from their enemies, all, except those whom they keep, are distributed among their subjects, in order to augment their number ; which, at the same time, increases their revenue. On the contrary, the Mohammedan Tatars often make war with their neighbours, on no other reason but to procure slaves ; selling those they do not keep. Which practice prevails so much with the Chircasian, Daghestân, and Nogay Tatars, that, when they cannot meet with grown people, they steal children to sell ; and, if they cannot get other people's, do not scruple to sell their own ; especially their daughters, if beautiful ; as they do their wives, on the slightest disgust. In short, the trade of slaves being all their wealth, they spare neither friends nor foes, when they find a fair opportunity of carrying them off<sup>m</sup>.

The Eluths are not restricted in the number of their *Polygamy.* wives, besides concubines, whom they chuse out of their slaves : and whereas the Mohammedan Tatars must not contract within certain degrees, the Pagan may marry any of their kindred, except their natural mothers. In this particular, our author supposes they are restrained rather by the age of their female parents than by any law ; because it is not unusual, among the Eluths and Mungls, for the father to take his daughter to wife ; and they abandon their wives when they draw near forty, confi-

<sup>m</sup> Abu'lq ubi supra, p. 412, 505, & 536.

Inherit-  
ance.

dering them thenceforth as no other than servants, to whom they give victuals, for taking care of the house, and tending the young wives who succeed in their places.

The children born of concubines are equally legitimate, and capable of inheriting: only if the father has been khân, or chief of some tribe, the issue of the wives succeed before those born of concubines. The offspring of common prostitutes are looked on with contempt by everybody: and very rarely succeed their fathers, especially if people of distinction; because there is no knowing if the person, such a woman lays the child to, be the real father. Polygamy is not so inconvenient to the inhabitants of Tatar, as it is to the rest of the Asiatics; their wives being of great use, and little expence, to them. For the old ones manage the housewifery, take care of the cattle, and, in short, provide entirely for the subsistence of the family; so that the husband has nothing to do but sleep, and follow his diversions.

Great filial  
respect.

Nothing equals the respect paid by children, of all ages and conditions, to their fathers, who are considered as kings of their families: but they pay little attention to their mothers, unless under some particular obligations to them. They must lament a father for many days, and deny themselves all sorts of pleasure during the whole time: the sons must even abstain from the company of their wives for several months. Nothing must be spared to render his funeral honourable; and at least once a year they must pay their devotions at his tomb, calling to mind the infinite obligations which they owe to him: but the Mohammedan Tatars are not so exact in their duties paid to the dead <sup>n</sup>.

Burials  
and graves.

The Mungls burn their dead, and inter their ashes on some eminence; where, raising a heap of stones, they place thereon little banners <sup>o</sup>. The greater part of the Pagan Tatars bury along with the deceased his best horse and moveables, such as wooden porringers, for his use in the other world. In many parts, towards the borders of Siberia, there are to be seen little hills, under which are found skeletons of men, accompanied with horse-bones, and many sorts of small vessels, besides jewels of gold and silver. Likewise the skeletons of women, with gold-rings on their fingers. As this finery does not agree with the condition of the present inhabitants, they are doubtless

<sup>n</sup> Abü'lq. ubi supra, p. 406, & seq.  
p. 256.

<sup>o</sup> Du Halde's China, &c.

the graves of the old Mungls, who died after their return with the plunder of the southern countries of Asia, into these deserts, where they buried vessels of gold and silver, with other riches, as long as they had any left. The Swedish prisoners in Siberia, as well as the Russians, used to go in troops to plunder those tombs, which lie far within the lands of the Eluths : but a great number of them having been slain by those people, all farther expeditions were forbidden, under severe penalties. This behaviour of the Eluths, otherwise so very peaceable, shews that they consider them as the tombs of their ancestors ; for which all the Pagan Tatars have an extraordinary veneration.

On this occasion it may be proper to mention what *Ancient sepulchres.* frier Rubruquis, who, in 1225, was at the court of Mangu Khân, writes, concerning the sepulchres of the Komanians, or people of Kipchâk. They build a large tomb over their dead, and set his image upon it, with its face towards the east, holding a drinking-cup before his belly. On the monument of rich men they erect pyramids, or little conic houses. In some places the author met with vast brick towers : in others, stone pyramids, although there are no stones found in the neighbourhood. Near the grave they generally leave one of the defunct's horses. At one he saw sixteen horse-hides hung up on high posts, four towards each cardinal point; with kosmos (or kimis), set for the deceased to drink, and flesh to eat : but could never learn that they buried treasures with the corpse. He observed other kinds of sepulchres towards the east : namely, large stone floors, or pavements, some round, others square ; with four tall stones erected at the sides, facing the cardinal points <sup>p</sup>.

The Mungls dwell either in tents, or little moveable *Their tents.* huts. Regis, speaking of the Mungl tents, says, they are round, and covered with a thick grey or white felt, supported within by poles, with one end tied round a hoop. They thus form the superficies of a broken cone ; with a round hole at top, to let out the smoke, which ascends from the hearth, placed in the middle underneath. While the fire lasts they are warm enough, and then grow cold again ; and, in winter, would, without care, freeze in their beds. To avoid this, as well as other inconveniences, they have their tent-door very narrow, and so low that they cannot enter without stooping. They have

(p) Purch. Pilg. vol. iii. p. 6, 7, 8.

also the art to join these loose pieces so nicely, as to keep out the piercing blasts of the north wind <sup>q</sup>.

*moveable houses;*

The Eluths, according to Bentink, have, in summer, great tents of ketayka, a sort of callico; and, in winter, sheds made of boards, and covered with felt; which they can set up and take down in less than an hour's time. The huts, or houses, used both by them and the Mungls, are made round, with great poles of light wood, joined together with leather thongs (D), for the more easily fitting up and removing them. They cover them on the outside with a thick felt, for defence against the cold and bad weather. In the middle of the roof, which is conical, they leave an opening, which serves both for a window and chimney: the fire-place being directly underneath, and the sleeping places round the hut against the wall. The chiefs, and persons of distinction, have huts larger and more convenient<sup>r</sup>.

*carried on waggons.*

*Ancient houses,*

These moveable habitations are occasionally carried on waggons, with four wheels.

Their houses, in the time of Rubruquis, were thirty feet in diameter, stretching on each side five feet beyond the wheels. Over the felt they laid mortar, marle, or bone-ashes, to make it appear white; adorning the roof with beautiful pictures, and hanging before the door a felt painted with birds, trees, and beasts. That traveller counted twenty-two oxen drawing one cart, eleven on a side. The axle-tree was as big as the mast of a ship, and the driver stood at the door of the house. Their household stuff and treasure were kept in square wicker chests, rounded at top, and covered with felt, greased over, to keep out rain. They were adorned with paintings, or feathers, and fixed on carts, carried by camels, for crossing rivers; but never taken down like the houses.

*how placed.*

These houses, when set on the ground, are placed with the door facing the south, to avoid the north winds, which are very piercing all over Great Tartary. Then they range the chest-carts at a little distance, on each side, forming two walls. One rich Mungl had one or two hundred such carts with chests; so that such a man's court looked like a great village<sup>s</sup>.

<sup>q</sup> Du Halde, ubi supra, p. 254.      <sup>r</sup> Abu'lgh. Hist. Turks, &c. p. 409.      <sup>s</sup> Purch. ubi supra, p. 3. & seq.

(D) In the time of Rubruquis, they were interwoven with wickers; and the foundation (or floor) of the same materials.

The fixed habitations of the Eluths, which are but few, *Fixed habitations.* excepting the roof, which is in the form of a dome, are built in all respects like the moveable huts; without either chambers, windows, or garrets: the whole consisting of one single room, about twelve feet high. But these houses are not near so large and convenient as those of the Manchews, who build them square<sup>t</sup>.

In that part of the country between the Jaik and Sir, *A deserted town.* which is inhabited by the Eluths, towards the borders of the Kassatcha Orda, who possess the other part, the Russians, about 1714, discovered a town, quite deserted; in the midst of vast sandy grounds, eleven days journey to the south-west of Yamisha, and eight to the west of Sem-palat. It is about half a league in compass, with walls five feet thick, and sixteen high: the foundation freestone, and superstructure brick, flanked with towers in several places. The houses were all built with sun-burnt bricks, and side-posts of wood, much after the common fashion in Poland. The better fort had several chambers. There were likewise great brick buildings, with each a tower; which, in all likelihood, served for temples. These buildings were in pretty good condition, without the least appearante of violence having been used to them.

In most of the houses was found a great quantity of *Writings found there;* writings in rolls. One fort was in China ink and silk paper, white and thick. The leaves were two feet long, and nine inches broad, written on both sides; and the lines ran from the right to left across the page. The second fort was engrossed upon fine blue silk paper, in gold and silver. The lines were written length-ways, from right to left; and varnished over. The first fort were found to be in the Mungl language: the second in that of Tangut or Tibet; both treating of religious matters. Since that period, two other towns were discovered, deserted in the same manner by the Eluths; probably on account of their wars with the Mungls. The discovery made in 1721 was much of the same kind: some rustics, sent from Tobolskoy, by the governor of Siberia, privately to look for ruins and ancient sepulchres, found certain images of gold, silver, and brass, in all the tombs: and, having advanced a hundred and twenty German miles toward the Caspian sea, met with the ruins of splendid buildings; among which were some chambers under ground, the floors and sides of which consisted of shining stone. They saw here and there black

*relating to  
devotion.*

<sup>t</sup> Abu'lgh. ubi supra, p. 419.

ebony chests; which, instead of treasure, contained writings or books. Of these they carried away only five leaves; one whereof, being tolerably well preserved, was made public (E). The learned of Europe, to whom the emperor Peter I. also communicated these writings, were much puzzled about them; but were immediately known by messieurs Freret and Fourmont, of the academy of Inscriptions at Paris, to be the language and character of Tibet. They found it to be a funeral sermon, with a moral on the life to come, extremely well handled <sup>u</sup>.

**Language.** The language spoken by the numerous tribes of Mungls is simply called the Mungl tongue. They have indeed several dialects; but understand each other very well <sup>w</sup>. The characters found on the ancient monuments are the same with those in present use; but different from the Manchews, which are no older than the family now reigning. They have not the least resemblance of the Chinese letters, and are no more difficult than the Roman. They are written on tables with an iron pencil: for which reason a book is a great rarity among the Mungls. The emperor Kang-hi, to please them, had some of their authors translated, and printed at Pe-king. But the chief book among them is the Kalendar, published by the mathematical tribunal in that capital, and engraved in Mungl characters.

**Learning.** The Mungls, in the flourishing times of their empire, cultivated arts and sciences; which they learned from the southern nations of Asia, whom they conquered. Among the rest, astronomy, geography, and other parts of mathematics, are much indebted to the labours of their countrymen. But, with their dominion out of Tatary, they lost their love for learning; and, at present, are involved in their ancient ignorance. However, as they are studious to preserve the knowledge of their genealogies, tribes, and other matters appertaining to their own history, they still retain a method peculiar to themselves of computing time, and settling the dates of events <sup>x</sup>.

<sup>u</sup> Abu'lgh. Hist. Turks, &c. p. 556. & seq. <sup>w</sup> Du Halde, ubi supra, p. 256, & seq. <sup>x</sup> Ulug. Beigh Epoch. Celebr. p. 6.

(E) In the Acta Eruditorum, Leipzick, the 25th of June, vol. xlvi. p. 375. July 1722, the same year, p. 414. and in the literary news of

## S E C T. II.

*Religion of the Mungls.*

THE Mungls, before the time of Jenghîz Khân, were, *Mungl religion,* in all probability, strict deists; since that conqueror, at the head of his Yassa, or laws, ordained the belief of One God, the creator of heaven and earth: but, in the reigns of his successors, the lamas of Tibet found admission into Tatary; and, by degrees, so corrupted the inhabitants, that, at present, all but the Mohammedan Tartars profess the religion of Fo, called in their language Fo-shaki; which, besides the doctrine of the transmigration of souls, teaches the belief of a future state, purgatory, invocation of saints, worship of images, confession, pardons, absolution, and other doctrines, so very conformable to those of the Romish religion, that it seems the counterpart of it, as well in essentials as ceremonies, even to crossing, the use of beads, and holy water. They have not, indeed, any thing so absurd as transubstantiation, but they have an article of faith equivalent to it; for they believe, that the god Fo, whom they call God Incarnate, not only assumes a human form, and actually resides in Tibet, *that of Tibet.* where he is worshipped as the true Deity, or Sovereign both of heaven and earth; but that he communicates his divinity to his chosen servants, who officiate, in the several parts of his spiritual dominions, in his stead. These are the vicars or deputies of the Tibetan god, and are called, in the Mungl language, khûtûktû. There are several of them in Great Tatary. The Mungls have one, who resides among and presides over them. The Khalkas another. The khûtûktû, or vicar of the Mungls, has his abode at Khûkhû Hotûn, mentioned before in the geography of their country; where he lives in great state, and receives the adorations of the Mungls, who make pilgrimages, to visit him, with as much devotion as the Romanists express in their pilgrimages to Rome.

Gerbillon the Jesuit, who was at Khûkhû Hotûn in *The khûtûktû of the Mungls;* 1688, with the emperor Kang-hi, saw the khûtûktû, who was then about twenty-five years old: for although they believe he never dies, yet they say he from time to time disappears; in which interval, his soul, being separated from his body, immediately enters that of some child, who is discovered

discovered by the lamas, or priests : hence they are called Fûsheki, or the Living Fo (F), and worshipped as God on earth. He was flat-faced, and very long visaged ; sat in an alcove, at the end of the temple, on two large cushions, one brocade, the other yellow fattin. There were several lamps on each side ; but only one lighted. He was covered all over with a gown or mantle of yellow damask, so that nothing could be seen but his head, which was quite bare. His hair was curled, and his mantle edged with a parti-coloured galoon, four or five inches broad, like a priest's cope ; which that vestment nearly resembled. All the civility he shewed the emperor's ambassiators was, to receive standing their compliments, or rather adorations : for when they had advanced within six paces of him, they cast their caps on the ground, and prostrated themselves thrice, striking the earth with their foreheads. After this ceremony, they kneeled by turns at his feet, when he put his hand on their heads, and made them touch his chaplet, or beads. - The ambassiators then paid a second adoration, and, the pretended immortal being first seated, took their places in alcoves, one on each side. Some of their retinue also, after paying their adorations, received the imposition of hands and touch of the beads. Then an entertainment was made ; and while the counterfeit god reached a cup of Tatarian tea, served in plate, our author observed, that his arms were bare up to the shoulders ; and that he had no other cloaths underneath but red and yellow scarfs, wrapped about his body. The collation being over, and the tables removed, they conversed for some time. The living idol spoke no more than five or six words, and those very softly, in answer to the ambassador's questions ; but was continually rolling his eyes, looking earnestly, now at one, then at another ; and sometimes vouchsafed to smile. In this temple were no images, as in other temples ; but portraits of their deities, painted on the walls. In a chamber they saw a child, of seven or eight years old, with a lamp burning beside him, dressed and seated like the khû-tûktû, and seemed designed for his successor. When

(F) The Chinese is Ho-Fo. In Tibet he is called Lama Konju ; and, by the Chinese and Tatars, God the Father, according to the Jesuit Grueber. See Collect. of Voyages

and Travels, in quarto, vol. iv. p. 653. He is called also Lama Lamalu ; that is, the Lama of Lamas ; and Dalay Lama, or the Great Lama ; being the pope of those countries.

*his beha-  
viour.*

the

the ambaffadors took their leave of this mock deity, he neither moved from his seat, nor paid them the least civility<sup>y</sup>.

The khütüktû of the Kalkas is not subject to the Dalay *Khütüktâ* Lama of Tibet, though originally a deputy from him to *of the Kalkas*; them and the Eluths; but having tasted the sweets of spiritual command, he made bold (towards the year 1680) to set up for an independent deity. This scheme he executed with so much address, that there is scarce any mention made at present of the Dalay Lama among the Kalkas; who believe their living Fo to be no less divine and immortal than him of Tibet. The court of China had a great share in this new apotheosis, in order to divide the Kalkas from the Eluths; a division which they saw could not well be effected so long as both nations continued attached to the same head of religion; who would, at all times, in case of difference, endeavour, for his own sake, to reconcile them<sup>z</sup>. The emperor Kang-hi, therefore, at the intreaty of the khütüktû, assisted the Kalkas against Kaldan Pojuktu, khân of the Eluths, in 1688: but before the Chinese forces arrived, Kaldan had made great ravages in the country of the Kalkas; and, among the rest, destroyed the magnificent temple, which the khütüktû had built near the river Tula, with yellow varnished bricks.

This living Fo, who was the chief occasion of the war by his cruelty and injustice, was named Chemitzun Tamba Khütüktû, and brother to the khân of the Kalkas, called Tushetu Khân. After his temple was destroyed, and Kaldan was repulsed by help of the imperial troops, he went and dwelt in tents, on the banks of the Iben Pira, a little river which falls into the Selinga. As the veneration which the Kalkas had for him drew crowds of people thither, the place, in a little time, might be called a large city of tents, the hurry being much greater there than anywhere else in that part of Tartary; for it is resorted to by the Russians, and other nations, for the sake of trade, as well as by the priests of all ranks, from Hindostân, Pegu, Tibet, and China. Gerbillon saw this khütüktû, in 1691, at an audience of the emperor Kang-hi; who obliged that pretended god to pay him homage. He was a corpulent man, and the only fat Kalka our author had ever seen; of a middle stature, and though upwards of fifty, had a very ruddy complexion. He was dressed in a long

<sup>y</sup> Du Halde, China, &c. vol. ii. p. 279.  
Turks, &c. p. 503.

<sup>z</sup> Abu'lgh. Hist.

gown,

gown of yellow fattin, with a border of rich fur, and a collar of the same. Over his shoulder he wore a great linen scarf of a dark red. His head and beard were shaved. His bonnet was a kind of mitre of yellow fattin (G), with four red corners turned up, and faced with extreme fine black sable. He had on red boots peaked at the toes, a narrow galoon running along the seams, he was followed by two servants, and conducted by the president of the tribunal of the Mungls. Being afterwards sent for by the emperor, he, notwithstanding his pride, put on the habit of ceremony appointed him by his Chinese majesty, and received a present of about three hundred and thirty pounds<sup>a</sup>.

*Lamas, or  
priests,  
their cha-  
racters.*

These khútükts are attended by lamas, or priests, who have a great ascendant over the people, and are held in high veneration by them; although the Jesuits tell us, that they are commonly not only ignorant, but also great libertines, debauching women with impunity. They sing their prayers, which they scarce understand, with a solemn yet harmonious air; and this chanting constitutes almost the whole of their religious worship. They make no sacrifice or offering; but they give absolution to the people who demand it bare-headed, on their knees; and are so bigotted to them, that the missionaries say, there are very little hopes of converting them to the Romish faith. It is generally believed that they can call down hail and rain. They pretend also to the knowlege of medicine, which they practise. Their drefs is like that in which the apostles are painted; and they wear a mitre and cap like bishops. They do not live in community in Tartary; but in some places have a kind of prebends, consisting of the lands and flocks of those whom they succeed. They go from tent to tent, and repeat certain prayers, for which they have a salary<sup>b</sup>.

### S E C T. III.

#### *Government of the Mungls.*

*Aymaks, or  
ordas.*

IN order rightly to understand the nature of government in use among the Mungls, it must be observed, that each of the three great branches is divided into ay-

<sup>a</sup> Du Halde, ubi sup. p. 338, & seq.  
& p. 263.

<sup>b</sup> Ibid. p. 252, & seq.

(G) The colour of yellow denotes being in the interest of the emperor of China, whose livery that is.

macks

macks or tribes. Every aymak is composed of a number of families, who usually encamp together, and never separate without acquainting their chief, that he may know where to find them. When an aymak or tribe is assembled, whether to fight their enemies, or for any other particular reason, it is called *orda*, or, as the Europeans term it, a *hord*.

Every tribe or branch separated from it has its particular chief, who is called *tayki*, or *tayghi*; which dignity descends regularly to the eldest son. These are their nobility; and riches being equally divided among them, there is no difference between one head of a tribe and another, but that of merit, or the number of families in his *orda*. These chiefs of tribes are subject to some *khân*, whose vassals they are, as also by birth his generals and counsellors. *Khân*, or *Hân*, is the title given to the sovereign of any state, great or small: thus several petty Mungl princes are styled *khâns*, though tributary to the *khân* of the Kalka Mungls, who is himself under the protection of the emperor of China; and this last monarch, originally coming from Tartary, is also called *khân*; being considered as the great *khân* of the Manchews, proper Mungls, and Kalkas, who are subject to him. It is not permitted to any of the family, except the reigning prince alone, to assume the title of *khân*<sup>d</sup>; that which belongs to the princes of the blood being *tayki*<sup>e</sup>.

When a *khân* dies, all the princes of the reigning family, and heads of tribes, which are under the dominion of that house, meet at the usual residence of the defunct, where they proceed to the election of a new monarch. They only examine who is the eldest among those princes, without regard to the seniority of the several branches of the family, or to the children of the deceased; and they never fail to elect him who appears to be oldest, unless some extraordinary personal defect be found in him. It is true, force and usurpation may set this order aside; but this case happens much seldomer among the Pagan than Mohammedan Tartars<sup>f</sup>.

The Mungls, for some considerable time after their dividing into three great branches, continued independent under their respective *khâns*; but at present only the Eluths retain an absolute sovereignty, the Mungls and

<sup>c</sup> Du Halde, ubi sup. p. 397. & seq.      <sup>d</sup> Ibid. p. 391.      <sup>e</sup> Souci. Obs. Math. p. 160. Not. 2.      <sup>f</sup> Ibid. p. 398.

*The Mungls submit to the Manchewrs.*

Kalkas having become subject to the Manchews, now reigning in China.

After the descendants of Jenghîz Khân, towards the middle of the fourteenth century, were driven out of China, the princes of his house seized on certain territories, and formed different hords; however, the title of khân remained to their chief, called Chahar Khân, descended from Hubelây, or Kublay. To this prince the other Mungl tribes (who had continued in Tartary), and even the Eluths themselves, were tributary, till about the beginning of the seventeenth century; when his subjects, unable to bear his cruelties and irregularities, called in the founder of the Manchew monarchy in China, who obliged him to quit the title of khân for that of vang, and entirely subdued the Mungls about the great wall.

*Their go-  
vernment.*

These new masters, after their conquest of China, conferred on the most powerful of them the titles of vang, pey-le, pey-tse, and kong, answering to those of regulo, prince, duke, and earl; divided them into forty-nine standards, and settled a revenue on each chief; fixed the bounds of their lands, and established laws, by which they are governed to this day. There is a grand tribunal at Pe-king (called that of the Mungls), to which appeals are brought from the judgment of the princes themselves; who are obliged to appear when cited. The Kalkas, since their subjection, are under the same regulation.

*The Kalka  
Mungls  
submit to  
Kang-hi.*

It does not appear at what time that part of the Mungls called Kalkas assumed the name. These had at first a khân, who, as well as the other Mungls and Eluths, was tributary to the Chahar Khân above mentioned; but the Kalkas increasing greatly in process of time, and the descendants of Kublay, who had only the title of tayki, growing numerous, the more powerful among them became by degrees independent on each other, and of the khân himself, to whom they paid only a slight homage. Before the year 1688 they are said to have amounted to six hundred thousand families, divided into seven standards, under so many chiefs, on three of whom the Dalay Lama of Tibet conferred the title of khân; although the taykis allowed them no greater superiority than the first place in assemblies; but, in the year above mentioned, Kaldan Po-juktu, khân of the Eluths, having invaded their territories, to revenge himself on the khûtûktû, both for his usurpation, or revolt from the Dalay Lama, and the death of a khân, which he had concerted; the Kalka khâns, after half

half their subjects had been destroyed by the enemy, implored the assistance of the emperor of China, Kang-hi ; to whom, after the war, two of them submitted immediately, with their subjects. These he divided into shasfaks, or standards, like the Mungls, conferring new titles on their princes, and appointing them lands for their maintenance.

Tushetu, or Tushektu, the most powerful of the khâns (H), after his defeat by the Eluths, fled ; but was not followed by many of his people ; most of whom retired into the woods, on the north side of the river Tula ; and afterwards, submitting to the emperor, were divided into three standards, under so many princes<sup>g</sup>. However, we are told by other authors, that this submission, procured by the intrigues of the lamas, was merely nominal ; for that his son Tushidtu Khân, who in 1720 had his urga, or camp, on the river Orkhon, twelve days' journey to the south-east of Selinghinskoy, was very powerful, and had several petty khâns, who dwelt about the springs of the Jenisea, and the Great Kobi, or Desert, tributary to him. The emperor of China sends him every year magnificent presents, and the attention with which he is treated, shews that he is feared more than any of the neighbouring princes ; for should he ever come to an agreement with the Eluths, the union might endanger the present family reigning in China<sup>h</sup>.

The Eluths, who at first were tributary to the Chaher Khân, as well as the Kalkas, at length became independent also ; and are at present the most numerous of all the great branches into which the Mungls are divided. These people grew very formidable in the last century. After having subdued Little Bukharia, under the famous Kaldon Pojuktu, before mentioned, they ruined the Kalkas, and even threatened to attack China itself ; but he was overthrown at last, although with much difficulty. Since which time they keep themselves within their proper bounds, and have not been so troublesome to their neighbours as before.

The khân (called Kontayki, or *the Great Lord*) is a potent prince, being able to bring into the field above a hundred thousand men.

<sup>g</sup> Du Halde, vol. ii. p. 251. 259.  
Hist. Turks, &c. p. 505, & seq.

<sup>h</sup> Bentink ap. Abu'lghî

(H) His territories extend- and Tula, as far as Mount  
ed along the Selinga, Orkhon, Kentay.

*Arms of  
the Eluths,*

The arms of the Eluths are chiefly great bows, with sizeable arrows; which they draw very true, and with great force: it having been observed in the dispute which the Russians had with them in 1715, on account of some settlements on the river Irtish, that they pierced men quite through the body with their shafts. They have also great arquebusses, six feet long, with barrels an inch thick; and yet the ball they carry is hardly an inch in diameter. They fix them on rests, and never miss at six hundred yards distance; firing them off with a match. When they march they carry them across their backs, fastened to a strap; and the rest hangs on the right-side. As they never go to war but on horseback (having no infantry), they all use lances, and most of them coats of mail, and iron caps. Their commanders wear sabres, like the Chinese, the handle behind, and the point before, that they may draw backwards, which is the more convenient way. Most of the inhabitants of Tatary hang their bows at the left-side, in a sort of case, when they take horse; but they carry their quivers at their backs. The left-hand is the place of honour with most of the Oriental nations; particularly the Mohammedan Tatars.

*Way of  
fighting;*

They shoot their arrows with as much skill flying as advancing; for this reason they chuse rather to provoke their enemies at a distance than come to close fight with them, unless they have much the advantage. They have not the method of fighting in lines and ranks: but, upon going to action, divide themselves, without any order, into as many troops as there are ordas, which compose the army; and in this manner each advances, led by its chief, to charge the enemy, lance in hand. The Tatars have been ever very expert in fighting flying, as Quintus Curtius, and other ancient authors, relate. In this the swiftness of their horses is of great advantage: for often, when they are supposed entirely routed, they return, and fall upon their enemy with redoubled vigour; and when their adversaries are eager to pursue them, without preserving order, they run an imminent risk of being defeated. The Eluths are extremely brave, and want nothing but European discipline to make them formidable<sup>i</sup>.

*Ensigns or  
colours:*

Each aymak has its particular ensign or banner; which is usually a piece of kityka, or some other coloured stuff, an ell square, fixed upon the top of a lance, twelve feet long. The Eluths and Mungls exhibit the figure of a dro-

<sup>i</sup> Bent. ap. Abu'lgh. Hist. Turks, &c. p. 535.

medary, cow, horse, or other animal, putting under it the name of the tribe : and as all the branches of the same tribe still retain the figure represented in its ensign, adding thereto only the name of the branch for whose use it is designed, these ensigns serve them, in some measure, instead of a genealogical table <sup>k</sup>.

The present inhabitants of Great Tatary in general, who have exactly preserved the manner of living of the ancient Mungls, carry their whole substance along with them wherever they go : hence it comes, that when they happen to lose a battle, their wives and children commonly remain a prey to the vanquisher, with their cattle, and generally all they possess in the world <sup>l</sup>.

The Tatars of all denominations pay two tythes annually of all their effects; first to their khâns, and then to their heads of tribes. The Eluths and Mungls, not cultivating their lands, give the tenth of their cattle and the booty which they take in war.

With regard to the government of the other two branches of the Eluths, the Torgäuti and Koshoti : the first, who separated from the Jongari, in the beginning of the present century, put themselves under the protection of the Russians ; and still make use of it, although they possess a considerable extent of country, to the east of the kingdom of Astrakhân, and river Jaik. In other respects they live under the same form of government with the rest of the Eluths, divided into aymaks, or tribes, with their taykis, and a khân over all.

The Eluths Koshoti have been settled in the country of Koko Nor ever since the Mungls were driven out of China. They are subject to eight taykis, or *princes*, who have their respective territories, but are leagued together for their mutual preservation. They are all of the same family, and dignified by the emperor of China with the titles of regulo, or petty king, prince, duke, and earl : they are all vassals to the khân, who resides at Tibet, or rather to the great lama ; on whom one of the ancestors of that khân bestowed Tibet about the year 1630, after he had conquered it from the lawful prince : but after the defeat of Kaldan, khân of the Jongari Eluths, by the troops of the emperor of China in 1691, the emperor Kang-hi sent to invite these eight taykis to become his vassals. The chief in rank among them, accepting the invitation, was

<sup>k</sup> Bent. ap. Abu'lgh. Hist. Turks, &c. p. 401.  
P. 537.

<sup>l</sup> Ibid.

made tsing vang, or prime régulo. Some of the others submitted to pay him homage by proxy; and the emperor chose to win the rest by presents, and allowing them a trade custom-free <sup>m</sup>.

## C H A P. X.

*History of the Mogul or Mungl Empire, founded by Jenghîz Khân.*

## S E C T. I.

*The Reign of Temujin till elected Grand Khân.*

*Mogul empire,* **T**HE empire of the Moguls, whose history we are now entering upon, is one of the most surprising phænomena which has appeared on the theatre of this world; and what deserves more than any other to attract the reader's admiration, whether he considers its rise, its extent, or the rapidity of its progress. It was thought that the Arabs had carried conquest to its utmost height; and that no human power could ever exceed the efforts of that people, who in the compass of seventy years, subdued more countries than the Romans had conquered in five hundred: but the Moguls have far transcended the Arabs, and from as small a beginning acquired a much larger empire in less time; for Jenghîz Khân, in a few years, extended his dominions, from a very confined territory, to more than one thousand eight hundred leagues from east to west, and above one thousand from north to south, over the most powerful as well as wealthy kingdoms of Asia: hence he is with justice acknowledg'd to be, the greatest prince who ever filled the eastern throne; and all historians have bestowed on him the highest titles, as well as greatest encomiums, that ever monarch acquired.

We have already given an account of the Mogul tribes, and their ancient history, to the time of Jenghîz Khân: we shall therefore in this place, only touch on such matters preceding the time of that conqueror, as more im-

<sup>m</sup> Du Halde, vol. i. p. 29, & seq. and vol. ii. p. 265.

mediately

mediately relate to him, and may be necessary to complete his history. A.D. 1163.

According to the tradition of the Moguls, Jenghîz Khân was of divine descent, since his family can be traced no farther back than Alankû or Alankawa; who being compressed by a spirit, brought forth three sons, who from thence obtained the surname of Niron (I), which their posterity enjoyed; those of her former children being called Dirlighin, to denote that they had no miraculous original. As Jenghîz Khân descended in a right line from Buzenjir (K), the third of Alankû's celestial offspring, and his predecessor in the ninth degree, some authors call him the Son of the Sun (L). According to Fadallah (M), who wrote his life, his descent from Alankû is as follows: 1. Buzenjir Khân. 2. Bûka Khân. 3. Tutumiten Khân. 4. Kaydu Khân. 5. Baysankar Khân. 6. Tumena Khân. 7. Kabal Khân. 8. Purtan Khân. 9. Yesukay Behadr. 10. Jenghîz Khân<sup>n</sup>.

Among these princes three or four were particularly famous; Buzenjir, surnamed the Just, was khân of Kotan. Bafankar or Bassikar (as Abû'lghazi Khân calls him), was a prince of great conduct, and conquered many provinces. Kabal or Kabul Khân, made himself the admiration of all Asia by his courage; he had six sons, in whom the name of Kayat, which had been lost for three thousand years, was revived<sup>o</sup>. Bisukay or Yessuki Behadr, the father of Jenghîz Khân, was remarkable for having brought under his command the greater part of the chiefs of the Mogul nations, with the king of Karakatay or Karikitay, who disturbed his repose. He vanquished them, although they were frequently assisted by the king of Kätay, which comprised the northern province of China.

After these exploits, having received an affront from the tribe of Su Moguls or Tatars, he entered their country, which he pillaged, and being met by Temujin Khân, lord

<sup>n</sup> De la Croix Hist. Gengh. p. 9, & seq.  
Hist. Turks, &c. p. 55, & 63, & seq.

<sup>o</sup> See also Abu'lgh.

(I) This, the Oriental authors say, is a corruption or contraction of Nûraniyân, which signifies *Children of Light*.

(K) Abû'lghazi Khân's translators call him Budensir Mogak,

(L) According to Abû'lghazi Khân's history, something as

bright as the sun fell into Alankû's chamber, and assumed the shape of a man.

(M) This is the first and most eminent of all the authors who have written of Jenghiz Khân, and his successors.

of several tribes, who came to drive him thence, he put him to flight, after a bloody battle, and returned with honour to his country-seat, where he commonly resided, called Dilon Ildak, in Yeka Mogulistán. To commemorate this victory, he gave the name of the vanquished khân to a son, of whom Olon Ayka, the first of his wives, was soon after delivered, calling him Temujin. As he was born with congealed blood in his hands, Sûghujin, the khân's relation and first minister, foretold by his skill in astrology, that he should overcome his enemies in battle, and at length attain the dignity of grand khân of all Tatary. On the death of Sûghujin, Pifûka chose his son Karashér Nevian, a man of exalted parts and learning, to educate Temujin; who had scarce attained his ninth year, when he would apply himself to no other exercise than that of arms<sup>r</sup>.

Yefukay at length was unfortunately taken prisoner by the khân of Kitay; but after a long imprisonment, making his escape by bribing his guard, he resolved to be revenged for his confinement. With this view he married Temujin, though not thirteen years old, to the khân of the Naymans daughter; but died before he could execute his design.

Hejra 559.  
A.D. 1175.

*State of  
Asia.*

Before we proceed, it will be proper to acquaint our readers with the state of Tatary, and the neighbouring countries, at the time of this prince's death. The whole region between Mount Altay and the Eastern Tatary was divided among a great number of aymaks or tribes, who had each one or more khâns, according as it was more or less numerous, and subdivided. Among these, that of Kara-its was most powerful, whose prince assumed the title of grand khân: to him most of the other tribes, and among the rest the Moguls, were tributary; but according to the Chinese historians, both one and the other paid tribute to the emperor of Kitay or Katay.

*Empire of  
Kitay;*

China was divided into two parts: the nine southern provinces were in the hands of the Chinese emperors of the Song family, who kept their court at Hangchew, the capital of the province of Che-kyang: the five northern provinces, except part of Shen-si, with the adjoining parts of Tatary, were possessed by the Kin, a people of Eastern Tatary, from whom the Manchew, at present masters of China, are descended. This great dominion was named Kitay or Katay, and divided into two parts; that which

belonged to China was properly called Kitay, and the part appertaining to Tatarie was named Karakitay; in which some even include the territories of the Moguls, Kara-its, and other nations, mentioned in this history.

The western part of proper Kitay was possessed by a prince of Turkish extraction, who had lately formed an empire there, called by the Chinese Hya and Si Hya; whose capital city was Hya-chew, at present Ning-hya, in Shensi, from whence the kingdom took its name. To the west of Hya lay Tangut, a country of great extent, and formerly very powerful; but at that time reduced to a low state, and divided among several princes; some of whom were subject to the emperor of Hya, and others to the sovereign of China.

All Tatarie to the west of Mount Altay, as far as the Caspian Sea, with the greater part of Little Bukharia, which then passed under the general name of Turkestan, was subject to Gurkhân, Kurkhân or Kavar Khân, to whom the Oygûrs, Vigûrs or Igûrs, and even the Karazm Shâh, who reigned over Great Bukharia, Karazm, and most part of Irân or Persia, were tributary. This Gurkhân had been prince of the Western Kitâ or Lyau, who, driven out of Kitay by the Kin, settled in Little Bukharia, and the country to the north, between Turfân (about which the Oygûrs inhabited), and Kashgar, where they founded a powerful state in the year 1124.

This was the state of the north part of Asia at Pisukay's <sup>at Pisukay's  
death.</sup> decease; at which time between thirty and forty thousand families, all from the same stock, were subject to his dominion. But Temujin being so young, the Tayjuts first, and then two thirds of the rest, deserting him, went over to one Burgani Kariltuk. All the Kataguns, the Jipjuts, the Jaygherats or Jagerats, and the Nirlons, excepting a few families, joined him to a man. The Markats, who never would submit to Yesughi or Pisûka Bahadr, submitted to him. They who continued faithful to Temujin were the descendants of his great-grandfather, half the tribe of the Markats, and several families of other tribes. Temujin, when scarce thirteen years old, took the field against those revolters, and fought a bloody battle; but as it did not prove decisive, he was obliged to temporize till the fortieth year of his age <sup>q.</sup>

Pisûka's death threw things into confusion; for soon after it the khâns of Tanjut Merkit, and several other Ni- <sup>Temujin's  
succeeds;</sup>

<sup>q</sup> Abu'lghazi Khan Hist. Turks, p. 66, & seq.

ron tribes, his relations, whom he had subdued, with his cousin Jemuka, revolting, attacked Temujin; who, encouraged by his mother, erected his standard, which displayed a horse's tail, and marched along with her at the head of his forces, which engaged the enemy with success.

This affair is related more particularly in the Chinese history; which takes notice, that Temujin being very young, his mother Ulun governed in his minority, and brought back several of his vassals, who had gone over to Taychot and Chamuka, two princes, enemies to his family. These having formed an army thirty-thousand strong, of soldiers chosen out of seven hords, came back to attack Temujin: but he being assisted by his mother and by Porji, a young lord of the hord of Orla, only thirteen years old, after a bloody battle, in which those three performed wonders, Taychot was slain, and Chamuka put to flight. This action made a great noise all over Tatary, much to the advantage of the young Mogul prince; who discovered on this occasion generosity in rewarding his officers and soldiers. Almost all Taychot's hord, which was very numerous, and possessed a large country, submitted to the victor; and Potû, lord of the country about the river Ergona or Argun, became his faithful ally, marrying his sister Tumulun; upon whose death Jenghîz Khan gave him his daughter to wife<sup>1</sup>: but after this victory, fortune turning against Temujin, he was defeated, and fell several times into the hands of his adversaries; from which, however, he always found means to escape.

A.D. 1176.

*loses his wife.*

In his fourteenth year he espoused Purta Kujin, daughter to the khân of the Kongorats, and kinswoman to Vang or Ung, khân of the Kara-its, by whom he had a daughter; but next year, while he was engaged in an expedition from home, the Merkits entered Niron Kayat, which belonged to one of his tribes; and having defeated the few forces who guarded it, carried off all that was valuable, with the princess Purta Kujin, who was big of her second child. Her they sent to Vang Khân, and her husband's enemies pressed him to marry her; but though she was very beautiful, he declined it, saying he could not marry his son's wife. He spoke thus, because, at the time when he formed a league of amity with Yesukay, he called Temujin his son.

*The Mongols revolt;* As soon as the Mogul prince heard of his wife's captivity, he sent an ambassador to Karakoram, to demand her of the

<sup>1</sup> Gaubil, ubi supra, p. 2.

khân, who immediately granted his request. Being delivered of a son on the road, she wrapped him in paste, and so carried him in her lap, without hurting his tender limbs, to the palace of her husband, who called him Juji (N). Two years after this event, his own tribe of Niron Kayat, seduced by Tukta Bey, khân of the Merkits, his most powerful enemy, took up arms against him, and he was himself made prisoner by the tribe of Tanjut or Tayjut. He had however the address to escape again from the hands of his enemies. Reflecting in the sequel on the bad posture of his affairs, he offered the khâns all they could desire to procure an accommodation; but their design being entirely to ruin the house of Yesukay, they rejected his proposals, and seized the greater part of his dominions. In consequence of this disaster, resolving to take refuge under the grand khân, he sent a nevian or prince of his court to Karakorom, to implore the protection of Vang Khân, who readily granted it; in consideration, as he said, of the signal obligations which he lay under to his father Pisûka. Upon this occasion Temujin married his mother Ulun Ayka to Buzrak, an eminent man, whom he placed on his right hand above all the princes; and leaving the regency of his kingdom to his uncle Utejekin, departed with Karashen and all his faithful servants, escorted by a guard of six thousand men, for the court of the grand khân<sup>o</sup>; of whom it may be proper to give some account.

The predecessors of this prince, whose original name was Togrul, had been powerful lords in Mogulistân, Je-layr, Tûrkestân, and Karakitay. Some of his ancestors had even assumed the title of emperor; but their greatness in time decayed. His family, one of the most illustrious in Karakitay, contained six great tribes of Derlighin Monguls; among whom were the Kara-its, who made war with their neighbours. Mergûs, the grandfather of Togrul, whose tribe resided at Karakorom, was one of the most considerable and valiant khâns of the Kara-its, but at the same time unfortunate; for several khâns of Karakitay having combined against, and twice vanquished him, one of them, named, Nawr, his relation, drew him into an ambuscade, took him prisoner, and sent him to the king of Kûrga in China, who caused him to be sewed up in a sack, and left to expire on a wooden ass.

<sup>o</sup> Mirkhond Marakashi, ap. De la Croix, ubi sup. p. 16, & seq.

(N) That is, in the Mogul language, *happily arrived.*

retires to  
Karako-  
rom.

Vang  
Khân's  
descen-  
t.

A.D. 1178.

*Female courage.*

Kutuki, the widow of Mergûs, enraged at the treachery of Nawr, yet feigning to be angry with none but the king of Kûrga, fifteen months after sent to tell the former that she passionately desired to divert herself in his company, and that if he retained the affection which he professed for her before her marriage with Mergûs, she would not scruple to make him her husband. Nawr falling into the snare, the lady immediately set out, attended by waggons laden with great vessels made of ox-hides, filled with kammez or kimis, a hundred sheep, and ten mares, which were ordered to be dressed. The khân met the princess with all the demonstrations of joy; and having drank plentifully of the liquor which she presented him, she gave the signal to her attendants; these opening the great barrels, there came forth armed men, and cut to pieces Nawr (whom she had already stabbed), with all his domestics. After this execution she made her retreat, without the least suspicion; and for such an heroic action was highly esteemed by all the princes of that age.

*Vang Khân's fortune.*

Mergûs Khân had two sons by his princess, Koja Boyruk and Gûrkhan. The first at his death left several children, the eldest of whom was named Togrul: at ten years of age he accompanied his father in the wars, and was in that expedition where his grandfather was taken by Nawr, and with much difficulty escaped. As he had more merit than the rest of his brothers, he succeeded his father; a circumstance which exposed him to their hatred. Having afterwards frequent quarrels with his brothers and cousins, he put some of them to death; which rigorous treatment incited his uncle Gûrkhan to make war upon him. Vang Khân, being vanquished, and dispossessed of his dominions, fled to Pîfûka, Temujin's father; by whose assistance he recovered his throne, and pursued Gurkhân even to the kingdom of Kashîn<sup>1</sup>.

*Prester John.*

This Vang Khân (or, as it is commonly written, Ung Khân) was the prince who made so great a noise in the Christian world towards the end of the twelfth century, under the title of the Prester John of Asia, which the Nestorians first conferred on him: and there are four letters extant, said to be sent by him to Pope Alexander III. Lewis VII. of France, the emperor of Constantinople, and the king of Portugal. That to the king of France, of which there is a French copy, begins, "Prester John, by the grace of God, the most powerful monarch, king of all

<sup>1</sup> Fadlallah apud De la Croix, p. 21. & seq.

Christian kings, wisheth health, &c." He boasts of his great wealth, and the vast extent of his dominions; speaking of seventy kings who serve him, and boasting of the tribute which he extorts from an Israelitish king, who is lord of many dukes and Jewish princes. He invites the king of France to come and see him, promising to give him great dominions, and make him his successor. He proceeds to name the different kinds of people and rarities that are in his kingdoms. He calls himself a priest, because he performs the sacrifice of the altar; and a king, as he executes the office of a sovereign judge. He speaks of St. Thomas according to the fabulous notions of the Indians; and, at the conclusion, desires the king to send him "some valiant cavalier of French génération<sup>u</sup>."

But it is not difficult to discover that this letter is spurious, and written, not by Vang Khân, but the Nestorian missionaries; who were very numerous, and had been established there in the year 737, by means of those of Musol and Basrah. These, by their emissaries, had spread a report all over Christendom, that they had converted the greater part of the inhabitants of Tatary, and even the great khân himself; who, they said, was actually become a priest, and had assumed the name of John. They invented these fables to make their zeal more conspicuous, and render their sect more respected. There is also a letter of the pope, which styles him, a most holy priest; although, in reality, there is not the least appearance that he was a Christian; but only, that he permitted Christians to live in his dominions, with their bishops; and that some of his subjects had embraced their religion.

All that can be allowed as true, is, that this prince was A.D. 1182.  
the most powerful khân of the country north of Kitay; and that a great many sovereign princes paid him tribute. Abu'l-Faraj observes, that he was lord over all the eastern Turks; for, in his time, the greater part of the inhabitants of Tatary were called Turks. Vang Khân was a native of the tribe of Kara-its, whose dependents were the inhabitants of Jelayr and Tendûk, who possessed most part of that region. The capital of this kingdom was Karakorom, situated about ten days journey from the place where Temujin first kept his court, and about twenty days from the borders of China. This city, after Vang Khân's reign, became the residence of the Mogul emperors, and

Vang  
Khân's  
power.

<sup>u</sup> Math. Paris, apud eund. p. 24. & seq.

A.D. 1182. had the name of the Ordúbaleg given it by Oktay Khân, the successor of Jenghîz Khân<sup>w</sup>.

*Temujin  
elevated.*

This prince was in his twentieth year when he arrived at Karakorom, where he was received with great marks of affection by the grand khân, whom he assured of his obedience, professing to devote himself entirely to his service. Vang Khân, on the other hand, promised him his protection, and to force the Mogul khâns to return to their duty. He sent lords to threaten them with war, if they continued hostilities against Temujin; and daily heaped honours on his royal guest; called him his son, and even placed him above the princes of his own blood; increased the officers of his retinue; and committed the conduct of his armies to him, in the war he had with the khân of Tendûk. Temujin displayed his courage on this occasion, and humbled some Mogul khâns, who refused to pay Vang Khân the usual tribute: but this success and favour of the sovereign created him many enemies among the courtiers<sup>x</sup>.

*Marries  
his daug-  
ter.*

This enmity was increased by another accident. The princess Wifûlûjine, daughter to the grand khân, charmed with the valour and person of the young Mogul prince, fell in love with him; and rejected the offers of Jemûka, khân of the tribe of Jajerat, who had, with much earnestness, asked her in marriage: but Vang Khân having given her to Temujin, Jemûka was so enraged, that he vowed revenge, and stirred up many persons, as envious as himself, to join with him; yet the credit which that young prince had with the grand khân, who had made him his prime minister, and the great number of his friends, for a long time defeated all their contrivances. However, Vang Khân, who wanted nothing but firmness, at last suffered himself to be seduced by calumnies.

*Tatars  
reduced.*

The Chinese history informs us, that the hord of the Tatars, who usually encamped along the Onon, having revolted against the emperor of Kitay, this monarch ordered all his tributary princes to assemble near that river, and march against them. To-li, lord of the Kara-its, and Temujin, having distinguished themselves on this occasion, the first was made a vang or wang, which answers to khân; whence afterwards called by his subjects Vang Khân; and Temujin was gratified with a considerable post in the army.

<sup>w</sup> De la Croix, p. 26. & seq.  
p. 28. & seq.

<sup>x</sup> Abu'l-Faraj, apud eund.

To-li's brother, afterwards fled, in discontent, to the A.D. 1184.  
Naymâns, and prevailed on their khân to attack him. This invasion obliged him to fly to the countries of the Whey-hu, to the west of the Whang-ho, or Yellow River, which runs through China. In this distress Temujin lent his troops to Vang Khân; who, marching to the river Tula, defeated the Merkits or Markats, who were neighbours and allies of the Naymâns; then joining Temujin, both together attacked the Naymâns, and routed them: but although Vang Khân obtained much plunder in these actions, he gave none to his benefactor, who notwithstanding concealed his resentment.

Next year Temujin assembled a formidable army of Kara-  
its, with intent to restore the grand khân: nor was that of  
the confederate khâns less considerable. After skirmishing  
some time, Temujin, at the head of his troops, began a  
general battle, the most bloody, perhaps, that was ever  
fought. At last the leaders of the enemy gave way, and  
fled, followed by their troops; of whom the pursuers  
made a terrible slaughter. The grand khân entered victori-  
ously into Karakoram, in 1179, and was re-established  
on his throne.

Abu'lghazi Khân does not mention this restoration of A.D. 1201.  
Vang Khân by Temujin, but speaks of his dethrone-  
ment as an event which happened in the reign of Yeffu-  
kay Behadr<sup>y</sup>. That author leaves Temujin in a state of  
inaction for the space of twenty-seven years. He tells us,  
that, after the battle which he fought when but thirteen  
years old, finding himself not able to reduce the tribes  
which had revolted, to Burgari Kariltûk, he was obliged  
to temporize till the year Bars, or the Tiger; when enter-  
ing into the fortieth year of his age, a man belonging to the  
revolted tribes informed him, that the Tayjuts and Nurons  
were joined with the Bayjuts, the Markats, and the Ta-  
tars, intending to surprise him. On the receipt of this  
intelligence, Temujin, who had already considerably aug-  
mented his forces, and acquired great experience in war,  
reviewed the thirteen tribes, which were then under his  
obedience: when he ordered the baggage and cattle to be  
placed in the middle of the camp; and putting himself at  
the head of his troops, proposed, in that posture, to wait  
for the enemy: but, at their approach, he ranged his  
thirty thousand men in a line, to cover, by so large a  
front, his baggage and beasts. Having in this manner en-

Temujin  
subdues the  
revolted  
tribes.

gaged his foes, he gained a complete victory, with the slaughter of near six thousand slain on the spot, and a great number taken prisoners.

*His severe revenge.*

Immediately after the battle, he ordered seventy large caldrons of water to be put on the fire, and caused the chiefs of the revolted to be thrown in headlong, when the water was boiling hot. He afterwards marched to the habitations of the revolted; and having plundered them, carried away the men, cattle, and all other effects. He condemned to slavery the children of the chief men of the tribes; and distributed the rest among his troops, as recruits<sup>z</sup>.

*Confederates against him,*

Prince Chamaka or Jemûka, envying the reputation of Temujin, excited several princes; the chief whereof were those of Hatakin, Sachihu, Kilupan, and Tatar, to seize on both him and Vang Khân. Te-in, lord of the Honkirs or Kongorats, who had been forced into the league, retired to his own lands, and sent notice to Temujin, who had married his daughter. Hereupon Temujin and Vang Khân took the field, when least expected, and defeated the confederates in several battles. The Moguls were considerably reinforced by the accession of the Ulutay, Mangu, Chalar or Jalayr, Honkirats, and I-ki-lye-tse. These five hords, which furnished excellent officers, and sprung from the five sons of Laching Patûr, sixth ancestor of Te-in, dwelt along the Onon, Kerlon, Ergone, Kalka, and other neighbouring rivers. At this time Temujin and Te-in formed a treaty, famous in the history of the Moguls; by virtue of which the chief of each family was to take his first wife out of the other: which treaty was strictly observed, as long, at least, as the descendants of Temujin reigned in China<sup>a</sup>.

*A.D. 1202.*

*Raised by Jamûka.*

In 1202, Jamûka having assembled the confederate princes near the river Tulu Pir, they elected him their chief, and took an oath of allegiance. This league was exceedingly strengthened by the accession of Boyrak, king of the Naymâns. Temujin, who was assisted by the princes of his house, and his allies, had in his army four generals, called Palipankula, or the *Four Intrepids*, named Muhuli, Porchi, Porokona, and Chilakona. Besides these, there was a stranger called Say-i, who was skilled in the art of war; and, being a fire-worshipper, was called Chapar.

<sup>a</sup> Abu'lghazi Khan, p. 69. & seq.  
p. 5. & seq.

a Gaubil, ubi supra;

Next year Temujin joined Vang Khân, near the mountain Kau, where Jamûka and his allies had assembled their forces : but Jamûka, fearing the success of a battle, chose rather to render the Kara-it prince jealous of Temujin, by suggesting to him that he was not be trusted. Vang Khân hereupon secretly decamped in the night, and retired first to the river Hafwi, and thence to Salî, between the Tula and Onon. They had scarce separated, when the khân of the Naymâns attacked several parties of the Kara-its, and plundered the habitations of that hord. On this insult, Vang Khân dispatched couriers to Temujin, desiring the aid of his Four Intrepids ; who, on their arrival, defeated the Naymâns, and recovered the booty. This seasonable assistance produced a firmer union than ever between the two ; and each promised a daughter in marriage to the other's son.

Mean time Ilaho, Vang Khân's son, who had long envied Temujin's reputation, by the instigation of Jamûka, persuaded his father, ever wavering and distrustful, that the prince of the Mungls had betrayed him. In this belief he resolved to destroy Temujin secretly : with which view he invited him to his camp, with his son Chuchi or Juji, and the princess his daughter ; under pretence of accomplishing the double marriage before agreed on. Temujin indeed set forward ; but returning, sent an officer to defer the ceremony till another opportunity. Soon after, being informed of the whole plot, he sent to his allies, and took proper measures to prevent a surprize <sup>b</sup>.

The reason of Temujin's sudden return is not mentioned in the Chinese history ; nor does Gaubil inform us in what manner he came to know of the plot : but both are related by Abû'lghazi Khân. According to this author, Vang Khân, at the same time that he invited Temujin, under pretence of making a more strict alliance by the marriage, sent to tell Menglik Izka, Temujin's father-in-law, that, as nothing stood between him and the crown but his wife's son, he would assist him to put that prince to death, and then divide his possessions between them. As Vang Khân was an intimate friend of Posuki, and owed great obligations to him, Temujin, after having received his ambassador with honour, proceeded towards his court : but meeting on the road with his father-in-law, who discovered the grand khân's proposal to him, he turned back, and dismissed

*how discover'd.*

<sup>b</sup> Gaubil p. 6. & seq.

ed the ambassador, with an apology to his master for putting off his visit for the present.

Five or six days after the ambassador's departure, Badu and Kishlik, two brothers, who kept the horses of one of Vang Khân's chief domestics, came and informed Temujin, that the grand khân, finding he had missed his point, was resolved to set out instantly, and surprize him next morning, before he could suspect any danger. They said they heard their master communicate this design to his wife, the day before, when they went to carry milk to his house; and, without delay, came to give him notice<sup>c</sup>.

**Temujin stands upon his guard.** Temujin was then, according to De la Croix, encamped at some distance from Karakoram, by Vang Khân's order; who had sent him from court, under pretence that his presence was necessary in the army; but, in reality, to remove him from his own guards: for all the soldiers adored him for his courage and liberality. Although the Mogul-prince could hardly believe what Badu and Kishlik had told him, he thanked them for their affection; and having consulted Karashar, with the rest of his friends, it was resolved that they should lie in ambuscade. As the slaves had assured him that he was to be feized in his tent, he ordered all things of value to be removed out of it; that all his domestics and officers should quit their's; and that fires should be left burning all night in the camp. After which precaution, he marched, with all his troops, to take possession of a narrow lane or pass, called Jermegah, two or three leagues distant.

They had scarce departed from the place, when Vang Khân's forces arrived, commanded by Sankûn and Jemûka. The prince rode full speed up to the illuminated tents, and, with his followers, shot a prodigious number of arrows at Temujin's; not doubting but the cries of the wounded would soon bring out the person they wanted to dispatch: but hearing no noise, they entered the tents; where, to their surprize, they found not a living creature. Hereupon, concluding that he had fled through fear and guilt, they followed him by the tract of his troops, in great hurry and disorder.

**Defeats Vang Khân.** Mean time Temujin had posted himself at the foot of a mountain, in a narrow pass, which was covered by a wood, with a brook before him: but when he saw the enemy advancing in disorder, although much inferior in force, having only six thousand men against ten thousand, he

<sup>c</sup> Abu'lghazi, ubi sup. p. 49. 72. & seq.

crossed the stream, and attacked them with such impetuosity, that, after a very slight resistance, they fled. In this fight they lost a great number of soldiers and officers : prince Sankûn, who, with the rest, escaped to Karakorum, was wounded in the face with an arrow. This action happened when Temujin was forty years of age, and had been eighteen years in Vang Khân's service<sup>d</sup>.

According to the Chinese history, when Vang Khân perceived that his plot was discovered, he openly attacked Temujin on all sides ; but the Mogul prince got the advantage in four battles, in the last of which he fought with Vang Khan himself ; Ilako, being wounded with an arrow, retired from the engagement. Temujin afterwards encamped at the lake Tong-ko, from whence he sent an officer to reproach Toli in the following manner : " When your uncle Kior defeated you at Hala-when, you lost your possessions. My father defeated Kior in Ho-si, and restored you. When your brother armed the Naymans against you, and you were obliged to retire westward, I sent my troops, who defeated the Markats, and hindered the Naymans from destroying you. When you were reduced to such great misery, I gave you part of my flocks, and every thing else that I had ; yet you sent me nothing of all the great plunder which you got from the Markats : although it was by the help of my officers that you became so rich, and my four generals brought you out of the distress in which you were involved. You know what I have done to prevent the ill designs which the confederate princes so often formed against you : will you, after so many obligations, attempt to destroy me in so base a manner ? "

The rupture between Temujin and Vang Khân put most of the princes of Tatary in motion : the first was joined by his brother-in-law Hafar Whachin, prince of the Hong-kirats (or Kongorats), and Putu, prince of I-ki-lye-tse ; Queli, Vang Khân's brother ; Chapar, and several other lords. After many consultations with his four generals, the army advanced ; and being arrived at the river Panchuni, or Long-ku, whose water was very muddy, Hafar caused a horse to be killed. Then Temujin, taking up some of the water, drank it ; and, invoking heaven, promised to share with his officers, during his life, both the sweet and the bitter ; wishing, in case he ever should be so unhappy as to violate his oath, that he might become as

*Sends to  
reproach  
him.*

*All Tatary  
in motion.*

<sup>d</sup> De la Croix, p. 37, & seq. Abu'lghazi, p. 74.

A.D. 1202.

*League of Panchuni.**Meets the Kara-its.*

the water which he drank. All his allies and officers followed his example. This ceremony bound them exceedingly firm to his interest; and the families of those who drank the water on that occasion, valued themselves much on account of their fidelity<sup>e</sup>.

Temujin having marched from that river in quest of the enemy, the two armies met between the Tula and Kerlon, or Kerûlon; and though that of Vang Khân was by far the most numerous, yet, after a bloody contest, Temujin gained a complete victory; after which, he was joined by the greater part of the vanquished troops. Vang Khân escaped with great difficulty; and many of his own officers would have killed him. He was pursued, however, and taken by one of the parties sent after him; but the same day escaped, and retired into the territories of the Naymâns; where an officer of that country knowing him, caused the unfortunate prince to be slain. His son Ilaho (or Ilako Sanghin) retired first into the kingdom of Hya; from whence being driven, and flying to the country of Kiu-tse, between Turfân and Kashgar, he was killed, by order of its prince<sup>f</sup>.

With this account the western historians agree, but relate the several incidents more circumstantially.

*His dominions seized.*

Temujin, when informed of Vang Khân's death, without loss of time seized his dominions, as his right by conquest; and Sankun being no-where to be found, he remained peaceable possessor of all the Kara-it territories. About the end of the year he returned to his own country, where he was received with acclamations by all the Mogul khâns, who came to pay their acknowledgements to him, for having delivered them from the tyranny of Vang Khân, whom they called the persecutor of their nation.

*Hakembû submits.*

After this event, Hakembû, a brother of Vang Khân, offered his service to Temujin, and a daughter in marriage. The grand khân received him favourably, gave him the employment he desired, and accepted of his daughter with joy; at the same time telling him, "that he owed him a kind treatment, in return for that which his brother had given to him in his misfortunes. That although both Vang Khân and prince Sankûn had, without cause, conspired against his life, yet he never blamed them, but imputed all their persecutions to Jemûka; nor had he on that score less respect for their memories than if they had always continued his friends." Temujin fully designed to

<sup>e</sup> Gaubil. Hist. Gentch. Kan, p. 8.<sup>f</sup> Gaubil, ubi sup. p. 10.

have

have married his daughter ; but perceiving that the captain A.D. 1203.  
of his guards, whom he much esteemed, had fallen in love with that princess, he gave her to him for a wife.

Tayyân, khân of the Naymâns, one of the most considerable princes of Karakitay, was alarmed and uneasy at his son-in-law's surprising fortune, notwithstanding the harmony which had long subsisted between them. While his thoughts were employed on this subject, Jemûka, who had escaped out of the late battle, with the remains of Vang Khân's army, and most of the officers, arrived at his court ; and being known to be a man of great abilities, was very well received. As he possessed the most insinuating wit, and was skilled in all the arts of courts, he endeavoured to excite his jealousy against Temujin. He represented him as a man of unbounded ambition, who quarrelled with princes, for a pretence to invade their dominions ; as well as the most ungrateful and perfidious wretch ; alleging that he contrived to deprive both Vang Khân and Sangun of their empire and lives, at the same time that they loaded him with their favours. Tayyân Khân knew this charge to be mere calumny ; yet, urged more by his own fears than Jemûka's solicitations, he resolved to make war on Temujin. For this purpose he proposed a league with some other khâns, whose interest it was to put a stop to the new emperor's growing greatness : into which Tuktabey, and the other Merkit khâns, the khân of the Virats, and he of the Kerit, who was a relation of Vang Khân, presently entered ; and Jemûka engaged for the whole tribe of Jajerats (or Joygherats) <sup>s</sup>.

Among the rest, Tayyân khân had likewise invited Alaku (or Alakus) to join with him and prince Jemûka, in order to curb the power of Temujin. This Alakus was chief of the White Tata, who dwelt on the south-southeast of the mountain Altay. These Tata are different from the Tatars ; that name being sometimes given by the Chinese to the people in general inhabiting beyond the great wall ; and at other times to certain particular hordes, whereof some were called Tata of the Waters, situate almost due north of Korea ; others White Tata, of whom we are speaking. Their chief, Alakus, was a descendant of the ancient Turkish princes ; and having had a very great esteem for Temujin, he detained the messenger who came from Tayyân Khân, and gave the Mogul prince notice of the proposal. When he received this intelligence,

Jemûka  
stirs up  
the other  
khâns.

The plot  
discovered.

<sup>s</sup> De la Croix, p. 60, & seq.

his brother Kanchekin, pressing him to take speedy and vigorous measures, he mounted his horse ; and, followed by his choicest soldiers, marched to the mountain Hang-hay, where Tayyân was encamped with his Naymâns ; who, though much more numerous, were defeated, and their khân was slain. On which occasion many hords declared for the victor, who before were restrained by fear. This event happened in 1204 ; and next year Temujin began to make incursions on the territories of the king of Hya.

*The Naymans reduced.*

The kingdom of the vanquished being thus subdued by Temujin, who brought under his obedience a great tract of land, he returned to Karakoram ; where, during the winter, his court was filled with ambassadors, who were sent by their masters, either to congratulate him, ask his protection, or submit to his government. Almost all the Kalmûk tribes in the eastern parts put themselves under his protection ; but, to the north, some khâns, jealous of their liberty, and even some Mogul tribes, refused to solicit his favour. Tukta Beg, who was once a very powerful prince, could not bear to see the sudden grandeur of the new emperor, endeavoured all he could to foment their hatred against him. On the other hand, Temujin, considering him as his worst enemy, resolved to turn his arms against this khân, who had so highly injured him : accordingly, early in the spring, he set out at the head of a powerful army against the Merkits (or Markats).

*The Merkits defeated.*

Tukta Beg was not insensible of the provocations he had given Temujin ; yet his envy flattering him with hopes of success one time or other, he also made great preparations of war ; and was joined by some Tanjuts (or Tayjuts), with prince Kashluk : but when he heard that Temujin approached his capital city Kashin, with such an army as was never seen before in Mogulistân, he was intimidated ; and he, with his eldest son, fled to Boyruk, Tayyân Khân's brother, to whom Kashluk, his nephew, had already retired for shelter <sup>b</sup>.

The grand khân after this flight found none in the field to oppose him. However, the city of Kashin seemed resolved to stand a siege : but although, at first, the inhabitants made a vigorous resistance, yet they were in a short time obliged to surrender ; and Temujin, having put all to the sword who had been in arms against him, rased the fortress. After this exploit, he took an oath of fidelity from all the tribe of Kashin, as well as others of the Mer-

<sup>b</sup> Abu'lk. ap. De la Croix, p. 74, & seq.

kit tribe ; and all the khâns whom he pardoned sware to obey him.

The grand khân, having finished the conquest of Mo-gulistân, returned to his capital Karakoram ; where, reflecting on the great number of his acquisitions, he judged it proper to regulate his empire. With this view he called a general diet, which he appointed to be held on the first day of spring the next year, when the sun entered Aries ; to which were summoned all the great lords, both the Mogul and Tatar. In the interim, to establish good order in the army, he divided his soldiers into several tomâns, hezarehs, fedehs, and dehehs ; that is, bodies of ten thousand, one thousand, one hundred, and of ten men : with their respective officers, all subordinate to the generals who commanded the tomâns ; and these were to act under one of his own sons. He next turned his thoughts to legislature, and ordered a code of new laws to be drawn up, which he communicated to his privy-council, before he exposed it in the general diet.

At length the princes of the blood and great lords met at the place appointed, dressed in white. Then the grand khân, cloathed like the rest, sitting on his throne, with his crown on his head, was complimented by the whole assembly, who wished the continuance of his health and prosperity. After this salutation they confirmed the Mogul empire to him and his successors ; adding all those kingdoms and nations which he had subdued, the descendants of whose vanquished khâns were deprived of all right or title to any of their dominions. When he had thanked them for these marks of love and respect, he declared his resolution to add to the ancient laws some new ordinances which he commanded them to observe <sup>i</sup>.

After this session, in the tenth month of the year 1206, A.D. 1206. the princes of the family of Temujin, the chiefs of hords, and generals of the army, assembled at the source of the river Onon. All the troops were divided into nine bodies ; each of them having erected a pavilion and displayed a standard, they acknowledg'd Temujin for their sovereign, by exclaiming, Chinghîz Kohân (O). Then he nominated Muholi and Porchi his two chief generals and prime minis- and ac-  
knowledged.

<sup>i</sup> Mirkhond, Khondemir. Abu'l. ap. De la Croix, p. 76, & seq.

(O) Which is not a Mongol word ; but a sound expressing the cry of a bird, to which they ascribe extraordinary qualities, and made its appearance the presage of good luck.

Hejra 602.  
A D. 1205.

Military  
regula-  
tions.

**A.D. 1206.** ters. From this event the Chinese history commences the empire of the Mongol (or Mungl) conqueror <sup>k</sup>.

Abu'lghazi Khân, conformable to the Chinese historians, gives Temujin the empire and name of Jenghîz Khân at the same time : but De la Croix places those events three years apart ; the first in 1202, just after the defeat and death of Vang Khân (in which year Abu'lghazi places both), the latter in 1205. They likewise relate them with different circumstances.

*Boyrak  
Khân de-  
feated.*

**A.D. 1208.**

The year 1206 was farther memorable for the entire defeat of Pologu (or Boyrak), brother of Tayyân, khân of the Naymâns. His son Kushluk, and Toto (or Tokta Bey), lord of the Markits, retired to the river Irtish ; where the former had still a powerful party : but in 1208, Chinghîz Khân, having attacked them both, slew Toto with his own hand, and Kushluk fled into the kingdom of the Kitans. This victory enabled him to subdue the rest of the hordes, which still resisted.

## S E C T. II.

### *Jenghîz Khân invades the Kingdoms of Hya, Kitay, and Turkestan.*

*Jenghîz  
Khân in-  
vades  
Hya.*

THE grand khân, having finished the conquest of Mogulistân, or that part of Tartary inhabited by the various tribes of people comprehended under the name of Moguls and Tatars, (extending from the borders of what is called Eastern Tatary to Mount Altay in the West), began to think of invading the countries to the south of Tartary : which, unlike the deserts he had already subdued, where no works of stone appeared to stop the progress of an enemy, were full of fortified cities, and strong places, as well as inhabitants.

**A.D. 1209.** Jenghîz Khân, who had, in the year 1205, made incursions upon the territories of the king (or emperor) of Hya, in 1209, attacked his dominions, with design to reduce them under his obedience : but, after having forced several posts near the great wall, Li-gan-tsven, to save his capital, which Jenghîz Khân was preparing to attack, submitted to become his tributary.

Almost at the same time that prince conquered the countries of Krekir and Kashin ; which last name, we are told,

<sup>k</sup> Gaubil, ubi supra, p. 11, & seq.

formerly

formerly the region of Tangus bore<sup>1</sup>: but where those countries lay is difficult to determine.

The same year, Parchukorte Tikîn, prince of Igûr, styled *The Igurs revolt.* Idikût, slew the Kitan (P) officers, who were in his city; and, going in person, put himself under Jenghîz Khân's protection: who gave him a daughter in marriage<sup>m</sup>.

Idikût was of an ancient family among the chiefs of the Igûr tribe, for above five hundred years standing. They first possessed the country where the Selinga rises. In process of time they subdued the country of Kau-chang, Igûr, or Kyau-chew, being the same with that of Turfân, in little Bukhâria. The Chinese geographers agree, that the country of Igûr (Vigûr, or Oygûr), was situated where Turfân now stands; but seem unacquainted with its extent. The same author farther inform us, that the Igûrs understood the Chinese characters, and had the books of Kong-fu-tse, or Konfusius: that they honoured the Spirit of heaven, had many bonzes among them, and followed the Chinese kalendar. The chief city, where Idikût resided, was called Ho-chew; the ruins of which still remain, seven or eight leagues to the east of Turfân<sup>n</sup>. To the north of this last city lay Bishbâlig, which all the Oriental writers make the capital of the Igûrs; whose territories, according to Abu'lghazi Khân, extended to the Irtysh: for they were divided into three branches; some living in towns, others in the fields<sup>o</sup>.

Jenghîz Khân, being now at peace with all his neighbours, and strengthened by the accession of so many princes, who either submitted to, or joined in league with him, resolved to shake off the yoke of the Kin; to whom at this time the Moguls were tributary, as they had been before to the Kitân. Some time before the Mungls and other hordes of Tatar had acknowledged that prince for their sovereign; Tay-ho, emperor of the Kin, sent Yong-tsi, a prince of the blood, to the city of Tsing-chew (now called Khûkhû-hotun), to receive from them the annual tribute. On this occasion Yong-tsi slighted Temujin, and advised framing some pretence to put him to death: but the emperor rejected the proposal; which coming to Temujin's ears, he resolved to be revenged on its author.

<sup>1</sup> De la Croix, p. 92.  
P. 13. 38. & 40.

<sup>m</sup> Gaubil. p. 13.

<sup>o</sup> Abu'lgh. p. 35.

<sup>n</sup> Gaubil.

(P) These were the Western Kitân, or Layau, settled to the east of Kâlhgar, then subject to

Gurkhân, king of Turkestan and the Kitân; whose country was from them called Karakitay.

A.D. 1210.

Jenghiz  
refuses to  
pay tribute.

Wang-Yen-King, emperor of the Kin, dying in the tenth month, Yong-tsi, who succeeded him, sent, the following year (1210), an officer to order Jenghîz Khân to pay the tribute. That prince demanded, whom he came from ? and being told, from Yong-tsi, then emperor, he absolutely refused ; saying, he was himself a sovereign, and would never acknowledge Yong-tsi for his master. “ It is said, (added the khân, by way of sneer), that the Chinese ought to have the Son of Heaven for their master ; but at present, they know not how to chuse a man.” Having spoken these words, he mounted his horse, and rode towards the north. Yong-tsi was extremely nettled at these sarcastic expressions. Jenghîz Khân had other reasons to be displeased with the Kin. Among the rest, Ching-pu-hay, a prince of his house, had been slain in 1206 ; to revenge which injury the Mungls waited for an opportunity : besides, their khân was told, Yong-tsi intended to have him seized. These considerations determined him to go and encamp along the Kerulon ; where he assembled a formidable army, composed of veteran troops. From thence he ordered Chepe Noyân, and Yelu Kohay, to march towards the borders of Shan-si and Pe-che-li : who, having observed the country, and gained some spoils, returned to the main army <sup>p</sup>.

With a  
great army  
invades  
the Kin.

The Kin had considerable forces in Lyau-tong, which was the bulwark of their empire. In the same province, and countries depending on it, there still remained also a great number of Ki-tân, and many princes of the family of the Lyau, whom they had deprived of the empire. But as Yong-tsi grew jealous of them since the rise of Jenghîz Khân, he commanded double the number of Nyu-che (or Kin) families to be put in all places where they were settled, in order to watch their motions. After this precaution, which occasioned a general discontent among the Kitân, the emperor published every where, that the Mungls intended to attack him, raised powerful armies, and posted troops in all the fortified places on both sides of the great wall, from the Whang-ho to Lyau-tong.

A.D. 1211.

In the spring, and first month of the year 1211, Arslân, prince of the Karlucks in the west, came with a body of troops, to offer his service to Jenghîz Khân, and Idikût, prince of Igûr, to consult about the preservation of his country. The army began its march southwards, in the beginning of the second month ; on which motion Yong-tsi sent

<sup>p</sup> Gaubil, p. 13, & seq.

make proposals of peace ; but they were rejected, Chepe with the choicest of the troops forced the posts of the great wall, to the north-west and north-east of Tay-tong-fū, whilst others seized the fortresses without the barrier. Mūhūli took the posts about Pau-gan, and Yen-king, in Pe-che-li. Chapar surprised the garrison of Ku-yang-quan (Q) an important place : and Jenghīz Khān defeated a considerable body of the Kin, near Swen-wha-fū ; which city he took, with the fortresses about Tay-tong-fu, then called Si-king, or the *Western Court*, all in Shan-si : in short, the Mungls made incursions as far as the capital.

Hasar Wha-chen, prince of the Honkirats (or Kunku-<sup>The Kitān</sup>  
rats), Jenghīz Khān's brother-in-law, who had been sent <sup>revolt.</sup> to the frontiers of Lyau-tong, to sound the intentions of the Kitān lords, and attack the Kin on that side ; found the prince Yelu Lyew-ko at the head of a hundred thousand men, ready to declare in favour of his master. In testimony of his sincerity, that prince, ascending the mountain Kin sacrificed a white horse and black ox, broke an arrow, and took an oath to be faithful to Jenghīz Khān. Lyew-ko, who was of the royal family of the Lyau, a good officer, and had many vassals, provoked at the indignities which the Kitān daily received from the Kin, took arms, as soon as he heard that the Mungls intended to make war upon them. The khān, to prevent Layew-ko from being seduced again, made him very advantageous offers, and conferred on him the title of king ; furnishing Wha-chen and Chepe with good troops to assist him. Lyew-ko ordered himself to be proclaimed king wherever he came ; and, having taken many places, marched against the Kin army, over which he obtained a signal victory. After this event, many Kitān lords shook off their yoke, and several cities submitted. After which achievements, he reduced Tong-king, or Lyau-yang, a city of Lyaū-tong. This great success swelled the reputation of the new Kitān king : and induced the Kin to raise numerous forces, to save that province <sup>9</sup>.

In 1212, Jenghīz Khān subdued Whan-chew (R) ; and A.D. 1212.  
Mūhūli, the fortresses without the great wall, near the

Whang-ho. <sup>Jenghīz</sup>  
<sup>Khān</sup>

<sup>9</sup> Gaibil. p. 14, & seq.

(Q) A fortress nine leagues of Ku-yang-quan. Gaibil.  
north-north east of Pekin ; and (R) A city of Tatary, north-  
Yen-king is three or four north east of Pe-king, between the

Whang-ho. When the Mungls had reduced all the strong places between that city and the river, they prepared to besiege Tay-tong-fû. Yong-tsi, in order to check their progress, sent Hûjakû, or Ki-shelye, and Wan-yen, at the head of three hundred thousand men. The khân, by advice of Mûhûli, marched to meet this army, which was encamped near the mountain Yehû, where they were attacked by the Mungls; who, notwithstanding the superiority of their numbers, defeated them. In autumn he invested Tay-tong-fû; where, although the governor Hujûkû fled, he met with more resistance than he expected. At last, having in a vigorous attack lost many men, and been dangerously wounded by an arrow, he raised the siege, and retired into Tatary: after which, retreat, the Kin retook Paugan, Swenwha-fû, and even Kûyang-quan.

**A.D. 1213.**

**Progress in  
Kitay.**

Jenghîz Khân, being cured of his wound, re-entered China in 1213; recovered Swen-wha-fû and Pau-gan; defeated an army of the Kin, after a bloody battle, near Whay-lay; and one of his generals took Kû-pe-kew. After this battle, the khân, not able to enter Pe-che-li by Kûyang-quan, stormed the fortress of Tse-kin-quan, and took I-chew and Cho-chew. However, Chepc, in his return from Lyau-tong, passed on to Nan-kew (a place of importance), and took Kûyang-quan, which is not far distant. On the other side, in the seventh month, a great battle was fought at the mountain U-whey-lin, near Quanchan-hyen; wherein the Kin were overthrown, with great slaughter.

**The em-  
peror mur-  
dered by  
Hûjakû.**

In the eighth month, Hûjakû, generalissimo of the Kin troops, who had been cashiered in 1212, for misde-meanors, and restored, seized on the person of Yong-tsi; and, soon after, caused him to be murdered. The true cause of the successes which attended the Mungls was, that general's hatred to those who were the occasion of his disgrace. After being replaced, he was ordered to encamp to the north of the court: but, instead of endeavouring to stop the enemies progress, minded nothing but hunting, nor regarded the emperor's order. At length he marched with his army to the imperial city, under

4<sup>d</sup> and 43<sup>d</sup> degrees of latitude, now destroyed. But Gaubil more justly places it almost north of Pe-king, or north north-west. It seems to

have been Poro-hotun, whose ruins are seen about twenty miles south-by-west, from those of Shan-tu, one of the ancient capitals of Tatary.

pretence

pretence of preventing a conspiracy which he had discovered. Being arrived before it, he sent horsemen to the palace, to cry aloud, that the Mungls were at the city gates: he next put to death those he suspected; and, having disposed his troops in different quarters, the officers both civil and military assisted him; not imagining that he had a design to dethrone their prince: but as soon as he had secured the gates of the city, he seized the palace, and confined the emperor; then deposed and put him to death. After this step, finding he could not get himself declared emperor, he enthroned San, a prince of the blood. These distractions determined Jenghîz Khân to besiege the imperial city. Chepe, after having taken Ku-yang-quan, departed with fifty thousand chosen horse to join the army. But the van-guard, coming to the river Tsau (S), and, endeavouring to pass the bridge, was entirely defeated by Hûjakû; who was carried in a car, being hurt in the foot. Next day, being prevented from marching in person, by his wound, he ordered Chu-hukau-ki to advance with five thousand troops, to oppose the enemy; but that general coming too late, Hûjakû would have put him to death; an execution which the emperor, knowing him to be a good officer, would not suffer. Then Hûjakû said to him, "If you defeat the enemy, I will spare you; if you are defeated, you shall die." Kau-ki marched against the enemy; but a north wind arising, which blew the sand into his soldiers' eyes, he was obliged to re-enter the city with loss. Being convinced that Hûjakû would put him to death, he ran with his troops to that general's palace: who, being apprised of his design, mounted his garden-wall; but, falling, broke his leg. The soldiers having killed him on the spot. Kau-ki carried his head to the gate of the imperial palace, and surrendered himself to the mandarins, in order to be condemned to death: but the emperor published an edict, wherein he charged Hûjakû with several crimes, and commended Kau-ki: whom he appointed generalissimo in his room.<sup>The assassin.</sup>

Li-gan-tsven, king of Hya, finding himself pressed by the Mungls, demanded assistance of the Kin; who refused <sup>The King hard pressed.</sup>

\* Gaubil. p. 18, & seq.

(S) A canal, whose waters, coming from Chang-pang-chew, passed by the imperial

city; from which the bridge could not be far.

it,

A.D. 1213. it, as having occasion themselves for more troops than they had. Hereupon the Hya, after they had made a treaty with the Mungls, before mentioned, in 1210, declared war against the Kin; with whom they had been at peace for fourscore years, and attacked Kya-chew, in Shen-si. The same year, Li-gan-tsven dying, Li-tsun-hyu, his relation, succeeded him. This prince, more successful than his predecessor, reduced King-chew, at the end of 1213.

Since the time at which Jenghîz Khân began to invade the Kin empire, many Chinese officers, who had been taken prisoners, entered into his service. He shewed a great esteem for these, and gave them parties of their own nation to command. As he now resolved to attack the enemy on every side, he mixed the Chinese and Tartarian troops together, forming out of them four armies. One he ordered to encamp to the north of Yen-king, the imperial city; another to ravage the country to the north and east as far as Lyau-tong; the third, under three of his sons, was to destroy all to the south and south-west, as far as the Wang-ho; while he himself, with Tuley, his fourth son, marched through Pe-che-li to Tsi-nan-fû, the capital of Shan-tong.

*Great des-  
truction.* The Kin, for their defence, sent their best troops to guard the difficult passes of rivers and mountains; obliging all people fit to bear arms to retire into the cities. The khan being informed of this regulation, ordered his generals to take all the old men, women, and children out of the villages and unfortified towns, and place them in front of the army. The people from the walls, on hearing the voice of their friends and relations, refused to defend themselves. The desolation was general throughout Shan-si, that part of Ho-nan to the north of the Whang-ho, Pe-che-li, and Shan-tong. The Mungls plundered and destroyed more than ninety cities, reduced to ashes an infinite number of towns and villages, took all the gold, silver, and silk they met with, and massacred thousands of infirm people; carrying into slavery a great number of young women and children. The spoil which they took in cattle was inestimable; and in all those spacious countries there were but ten cities which the Mungls could not subdue; among which in Pe-che-li were Yen-king, the imperial city, Tong-chew, Ching-ting-fû, and Tay-ming-fû. All this devestation happened in 1213.

A.D. 1214. Next year Jenghîz Khân, being returned from Shan-tong, assembled all his troops in one body, and invested Yen-king, in the fourth month, pitching his camp on the north

north side. His generals pressed him to scale the walls, A.D. 1214. and ruin the city; but the khân having had other views, instead of following their advice, sent an officer to inform the Kin emperor, that his master was willing to return into Tartary: however, that, to appease the anger of the Mungl troops, it was necessary to make them considerable presents; adding, that he ought to consider Yen-king was almost the only place which remained in his possession to the north of the Whang-ho. One of the Kin ministers, provoked at this message, proposed to march out and fight the army of Ta-che (T) : saying, that many of the Mungl soldiers were sick; and that they were not in a condition to withstand a vigorous attack<sup>s</sup>.

Another minister opposed this advice: saying, that they had every thing to fear, if they lost a battle; and but little good to expect from a victory. He added, that the troops in the city had nothing in view but to quit it, as most of them had families of their own: that the best measure therefore was to accept of peace; and when the Mungls were retired, they should be better able to consult what was proper to be done. The emperor, approving this counsel, sent a lord to the Mungl camp, to negotiate a peace; wherein it was stipulated, that a daughter of the late emperor Yong-tsi should be given to Jenghîz Khân; with five hundred young boys, and as many girls, three thousand horses, silk, and a great sum of money. As soon as the conditions were performed, the khân raised the siege; and, departing by the way of Ku-yong-quan, commanded all the children, whom he had taken in the four provinces of Shan-tong, Honân, Peche-li, and Shan-si, to be massacred.

After the retreat of the Mungls, the emperor San declared to his council, that he resolved to remove his court to Pyen-lyang (U), in Honan. Tu-shi-ni, a wise and faithful minister, represented, that, in such case, the northern provinces would be lost. He observed, that Lyau-tong being very strong by situation, it was easy to maintain themselves there: that no more was to done, than to make new levies, fortify the court, fill the garrison,

The emperor removes the court.

<sup>s</sup> Gaubil, p. 20, and seq.

(T) One of the names given by the Chinese to that large region, at present possessed by the Mungls and Kalkas. Gaubil.

(U) Called also Nan-king, or the Court of the South, and still Pyen.

A.D. 1214. and recruit the troops of that province. Most of the grandees were of his opinion : but the emperor said, that as the treasury was exhausted, the troops weakened, and cities round the capital destroyed, Yen-king was no place of security. Accordingly he departed, with his family and some troops ; leaving the prince, who was to be his successor, to encourage the inhabitants.

*Its bad  
conse-  
quence.*

The Kin monarch had soon occasion to repent of this impolitic step. Being arrived at Lyang-hyang (a city five leagues south-west of Pe-king) he demanded from his troops their horses and cuirasses. The major part of them, refusing to obey, flew their general, and chose three others in his stead : after which election they returned, and seized the bridge of Li-kew. From thence Kanta, one of their generals, sent a courier to Jenghiz Khân, who was then encamped at the city Whan-chew, in Tatary, to offer himself and his troops for his service. As soon as that prince was apprised of the emperor's retreat, he was much incensed ; complaining that he had been deceived by the Kin, and thereupon resolved to enter China. With this view he sent his general Mingan, with a great force, to join Kinta, and besiege Yen-kin. When these tidings reached the emperor, he ordered his son to leave that city, and repair to Pyen-lyang. This step also was against the advice of his ministers, supported by the example of Ming-whang, or Hivn-tsung, a Chinese emperor of the Tang race. The departure of the prince discouraged the garrison, not only of Yen-king, but of other strong places<sup>t</sup>.

*State of  
China.*

The rapid conquests of the Mungls, and retreat of the Kin emperor, gave great uneasiness to the Chinese monarchs of the Song race ; who were then masters of the southern provinces of China, called by some authors Manji, viz. Quan-tong, and the isle of Haynan, Quang-si, Yun-nan, Se-chwen, Quey-chew, Hû-quang, Kyang-si, Che-kyang, Fo-kyen, and almost all Kyang-nan, where the Kin had a few cities. In Shen-si they possessed the country of Hang-chong-fû, besides some places in the district of Kong-chang-fû, and on the borders of Sech-wen. The great wars which they had carried on against the Kin, had forced them to make a shameful peace, whereby they were to pay a yearly tribute in silk and silver. It was resolved therefore, at this juncture, to refuse paying tribute any longer : but the pro-

<sup>t</sup> Gaubil, ubi supra, p. 23, & seq.

posals made by the king of Hyā, to join forces against the Kin, were rejected. A.D. 1214.

The Kin possessed in Lyau-tong an army of one hundred thousand men, who had retaken many places, subdued the preceding years by king Lyew-ko ; and, among the rest, Lyau-yang : but in the ninth month, Mūhūli, followed by the general Wîr, of the hord of Shan-tsū, entered that province, in order to succour the prince, and cut off the communication with Pe-che-li. The numerous army of the Kin, being filled with traitors, dispersed ; and the inferior officers killed their general. King Lyew-ko recovered Lyau-yang ; and Pe-king, now called Mugden, surrendered to Mūhūli. This general put to the sword a great number of soldiers, under pretence that they came in too late ; but restrained the slaughter, on being told, that such a conduct would hinder many other places from yielding. Towards the end of the year, the city of Tong-chew, and important post, to the east of Yen-king, surrendered to the Mungls. The emperor of the Kin having been obliged to lay taxes on the people, this measure furnished several lords with a pretence, some to throw off their dependence, and others to submit to the Mungls.

In 1215 many of the Kitān advised Lyew-ko to declare himself emperor, independent of the Mungls : but that prince rejected the proposal, as contrary to the oath which he had taken, to be Jenghîz Khân's subject. At the same time he sent his son Sye-tû to the khân, with ninety waggons loaded with rich presents ; and a list of the families which had submitted to him, amounting in all to six hundred thousand. Towards the end of the year he came in person, to do homage to the Mungl sovereign. Mean time the emperor of the Kin, being informed of the distress Yen-king was in, sent a great quantity of provisions, with forces for its relief : but the first convoy, under the escort of an inexperienced general, arriving at Pachew, his army was defeated ; on the news of which disaster, the other generals fled, and left all the provisions a prey to the enemy\*.

The two generals who commanded in Yen-king, were Wan-yen Chang-whey and Mo-nyen Ching-chong ; the former of whom, being destitute of all hope of succours, proposed to the latter to die for their country. Mo-nyen, on whom the troops immediately depended, declining

*Conquests  
in Lyau-  
tong.*

A.D. 1215.

*Lyew-ko's  
fidelity.*

\* Gaubi!, p. 25, & seq.

A.D. 1215.

this proposal, Chang-whey retired in a rage. On the first day of the fifth month he addressed a memorial to the emperor, wherein he touched on matters of government; and mentioned the crimes of a bad minister, whom his master made use of, meaning Kau-ki, who flew Hûjakû: he finished his epistle by confessing himself guilty of death, for not being able to save the imperial city. This step being taken, he with a composed air, assembled his domestics, and divided all his effects among them: then ordering a cup of poison to be filled, he commanded the mandarin who was with him to leave the room, drank it off, and died immediately.

*The capital taken.* The same evening the emperor's wives, knowing that Mo-nyen was preparing to leave the city, acquainted him, that they would go out along with him. He seemed pleased with the proposal; but said he would go before, to shew them the way. The ladies, confiding in his promise, returned to the palace: but Mo-nyen, unwilling to be troubled with their company, marched off, and left them behind. On that general's departure, the Mungl army entering the city, a great number of the inhabitants and mandarins perished in the disorder which ensued. A troop of soldiers set fire to the palace, which continued burning for a whole month. Jenghîz Khân, who was then at Wan-chew, in Tatary, sent to compliment the general Mingan on the occasion: ordering him to dispatch into Tatary the silks, gold, and silver, found, in the imperial treasury. When Mo-nyen arrived at Pyon-lyang, the emperor, though extremely troubled at the loss of his capital city, did not speak to him about it, and bestowed upon him a very considerable employment: but shortly after he was put to death, for having been engaged, as it was said, in dangerous designs. On the other hand, having read Chang-whey's petition, he declared him vang, or wang, that is king.

*Honan invaded.*

San-ke-pa being sent with ten thousand horse to besiege Ton-quan, a strong pass in the mountains, between Shen-fî and Honan, marched through the territories of the king of Hya; who still continued the war against the Kin, and this year wrested from them the city of Lin-tau-fu. He took his route by Si-gan-fû (the capital of Shen-fî); but failing in his attempt on Ton-quan, marched to Yü-chew, in Ho-nan, through private roads, full of deep torrents, over which they made bridges with their pikes and halberds. At last arriving, after many difficulties, in sight of Pyen-lyang, capital of that province, the Kin troops fellied,

fallied, and obliged him to retire to Shen-chew, on the Whang-ho; which being frozen, San-ke-pa crossed it, and escaped. The emperor San afterwards sent to desire peace of Jenghîz Khân, who proposed such hard condition, that he could not accept of them. Mean time Mûhûli and Wîr, in Lyau-ton, dispersed, with much address and courage, several parties which endeavoured to shake off the Mungl yoke<sup>w</sup>.

In 1216, the Mungls took their measures so properly, A.D. 1216.  
that Ton-quân was forced in the tenth month: after  
which reduction, they posted themselves between the city  
Yû-chew and the mountain Song.

Mûhûli, after the parts of Lyau-tong towards Lyau-yang had been conquered, ordered Chong-ping, one of the generals in that province, to march into China, and join the other troops; but being informed that he was a traitor, caused him to be put to death. Chang-chi, in order to revenge his brother's death, revolted, and took King-chew, with most of the other cities of the province, included between the great wall of China, the river Lyau, the wooden pallisade, and the sea. He afterwards caused himself to be proclaimed king; and in 1216, declared for the Kin, who gave him the command of their troops in Lyau-tong. Mûhûli, who had retaken Quang-ning-hyen the preceding year, at the end of this, besieged King-chew. Chang-chi had veteran troops; and the place being very strong, Mûhûli ordered Wîr to attack an important post on a neighbouring mountain, while another general should be ready to cut off the troops detached from the city to succour it. Wîr having obeyed his orders, Chang-chi fallied out with part of the garrison: hereupon Monkû-pûwha placing himself between that post and the city, informed Mûhûli, who lay towards Quang-ning. This general, marching all night, by break of day came and attacked Chang-chi on one side, while Monkû charged him on the other; so that he was entirely defeated. Yet escaping back to the city, he defended it gallantly for more than a month; when an officer of the garrison seized and delivered him to the Mungls; who cut off his head, and took possession of the place.

The Mungls, after a great struggle to get footing in Honan, at last abandoned that province; and passing the Whang-ho, under the conduct of Sa-me-ho, surnamed Patûrû, or the *Courageous*, marched towards Ping-yang.

*Many  
places  
taken.*

*A rebellion  
quashed by  
Mûhûli.*

<sup>w</sup> Gaubil. p. 27, & seq.

A.D. 1216. fū, in Shen-si : but Stu-ting, who commanded the troops in that quarter, having gathered those from the dependent places, met and defeated them.

This is the account of Jenghīz Khān's first expedition into Kitay, transmitted to us from the Chinese historians ; which differs in many particulars from that which is given by the western Asiatics.

*Kuchluk  
reduced.*

A.D. 1217.

In the year 1216, Jenghīz Khān, after resting for some time in the palace which he had built near the river Lūku, in Tatar, went and encamped near the Tula; from whence he detached Supātay against the Markats, who had raised fresh troops, and always supported the king of the Naymāns. This prince, after his defeat, had endeavoured to stir up several tribes of the Kitān, Naymāns, and Markats, against the Mungls. Chepe therefore was detached, in the year 1217, towards the river Irtish, where he vanquished Kuchluk, son of Boyruk, late king of the Naymāns, who had taken up arms again. After this victory, he directed his march westward ; but the Chinese history mentions no particulars of this expedition. At the same time Chuchi (or Juji), the emperor's eldest son, took his journey towards a country very remote from China, to the north-west. The history does not name this country ; but mentions some people, or tribes, whom he subdued ; as the U-se-han, Ha-na-fa, Kū-lyang-û-ke-she, and Tay-mi-hoynirkhān.

*Expedition  
westward.*

Jenghīz Khān, having now resolved to carry his arms westward, declared Mūhūli, whose great qualities he publicly extolled, generalissimo of the troops, and his lieutenant-general in China : he conferred on him likewise the title of king, and made it hereditary in his family. On this occasion he caused the Chinese and Tatar troops to be drawn out, with their standards displayed, and ordered them to obey Mūhūli as himself ; delivering to him, at the same time, a royal seal of gold, that its impression might be affixed to all his mandates. That general, the same year, marched with his troops towards China, where, in a short time, he subdued many cities in Shen-si, Pe-che-li, and Shan-tong. Li-chew having held out to the last extremity, Mūhūli intended to have put all the inhabitants to the sword ; but, at the intreaty of Chau-tsin, one of his best officers, a native of that place, who offered to sacrifice himself, to save his mother, brothers, and the rest of the citizens, they were spared <sup>x</sup>.

<sup>x</sup> Gaubil, ubi supra, p. 32, & seq.

At the end of the year 1217, Jenghîz Khân put himself A.D. 1217.  
at the head of a powerful army, in order to march into  
the West. Before he set out, he declared the prince Tye-  
muko, called also Wa-che, his fourth brother, regent of  
the empire. Among the chosen generals who accompanied  
the khân there were several Chinese; and he formed  
companies of soldiers, who had the art of throwing huge  
stones against cities. His first enterprize was against  
Kuchluk, who had put in motion all the countries to the  
north-west of Turfân, as far as the rivers Sihûn and Jihûn  
on one side, and on the other as far as the Obi and Irtîsh.  
He was leagued with the Markats, and princes of Kicha,  
a great country to the north and north-east of the Cas-  
pian Sea; besides those of the Kangli, who inhabited  
the country to the north-east of the territories of Sa-  
markand.

An army of three hundred thousand men, said to be the remains of the Kitân, of whom there were many tribes taken.  
about Turfân, having advanced with design to oppose the khân's passage, he entirely defeated them. Ko-pau-yu, one of the Chinese generals in the Mungl army, having been desperately wounded in the battle, Jenghîz Khân honoured him with a visit in his tent. When recovered, he was sent to besiege Bishbâleg, which was taken, with the other cities in that country. At the same time Gon-chor, a lord of the tribe of Yong-ku, in the western parts of Tatary, subdued the city and country of Almâleg. Kosmeli, one of the great officers of the last khân of the western Lyau (or Kitân), understanding that the Mungls were come to make war on Kuchluk, persuaded the chief of the city of Afân, and those of other tribes, to submit to Chepe. Jenghîz Khân, being informed of this circumstance, sent for Kosmeli, and gave him the command of a body of the van-guard. Kuchluk being defeated in the sequel, Kuchluk slain.  
his head was cut off by the khan's order; and exposed to view in all the towns and villages of the Naymans, and Kitân, through which they passed. Intimidated by his fate, those tribes, together with the Kangli (or Kankli), acknowledged Jenghîz Khân for their sovereign<sup>1</sup>.

The more western historians of the Mungl affairs nearly agree with the Chinese, in their account of these transactions; and them we shall now chiefly follow in recording the exploits of Jenghîz Khân, in great Bukhâria and Persia, with which the Chinese seem to have been but imperfectly acquainted.

<sup>1</sup> Gaubil, p. 24, & seq.

## S E C T. III.

*From the Invasion of Karazm to the Death of Soltân Mohammed.*

A.D. 1218.

*Jenghiz Khan's emissary to Mohammed Karazm Shâh.*

JENGHIZ KHAN, having established peace in his dominions, and completed the reduction of all the Turkish tribes under his obedience, resolved to cultivate amity with his neighbours, particularly sultân Mohammed Karazm Shâh : for this purpose, at the end of the year 1217, he sent Makinut Jalâzi, his ambassador, to acquaint the sultân, that, having become master of all the countries of his empire, he was desirous to enter into a treaty of amity with him, for their mutual interest ; and that the sultân would consider him as his father : in which case he proposed to look on the sultân as his son. Mohammed, having heard the ambassador's proposal, took him aside, and asked him, if it was true, that Jenghîz Khân had conquered Kitay ? and, at the same time, made him a present of a rich scarf adorned with jewels, which he then wore, to induce him to be more open and sincere. Makinut protested before God, that what he had related was fact ; adding, that he would soon find he told truth, in case he should have any difference with him. At this answer the sultân was greatly enraged : “ I know not, (said he,) what your master means, by sending to tell me that he has conquered so many provinces ? Do you know of how great extent my empire is ? or upon what ground he pretends to be greater than I ; expecting that I should honour him as my father, and be content to be treated only as his son ? Has he then so many armies ? ”

*Peace concluded.* The ambassador, perceiving how disagreeable truth was to the Karazmian monarch, began to soothe him ; saying, “ I know very well that you are more powerful than my sovereign ; and that there is as much difference between you two as between the true sun and a mock one : but, on the other hand, you know that he is my master, and that I must obey his orders ; however, I can assure you, that his intentions are very good.” This flattery pacified the sultân, so that he consented at last to every thing which the ambassador proposed, and a treaty of peace was concerted \*. He returned with presents both for his master

\* Abu'lgh., p. 97. De la Croix, 119.

and himself, and several merchants of Karazm, loaded A.D. 1218.  
with the choicest commodities, accompanied him, with a  
design to traffick in the dominions of Jenghîz Khân.

After this accommodation, such harmony subsisted for some time between the two empires, that a man might have travelled from one to the other, with gold and silver in his hand, without the least danger: but as two great neighbouring princes cannot possibly live long without distrusts and jealousies, sultân Mohammed soon became uneasy at Jenghîz Khân's greatness; and, after his reduction of Gazna, he treated the Mungls with less respect than before: at the same time his subjects committed such acts of hostility as obliged Jenghîz Khân to complain. Yet this complaint did not alter his intention to keep the peace<sup>a</sup>; nor could even the importunity of Naffer, the khalif of Baghdâd, draw him from that resolution. Mohammed, having cut off the heads of one hundred princes, to make himself master of their treasures and dominions, wanted the khalif to grant him the privileges which the Seljûkian and other sultâns had enjoyed before; particularly that of establishing his seat in Baghdâd, to govern and be named in the public prayers, in the same manner as he was; but Naffer refused to comply with his proposals, alleging, that former sultâns had some right to those privileges, for great services done to the khalifat; whereas he had no occasion for Mohammed's assistance, nor had that prince done any thing to intitle him to such powers."

Sultân Mohammed received the khalif's ambassador very honourably; but was so far from abating any thing of his demands, that he called a general council of the muftis, mûlas, kâdîs, imâms, sheykhs, and other lawyers, to depose him; and having nominated another khalif, set out with a great army to take Baghdâd: but, fortunately for Naffer, this army was almost totally destroyed by the frosts and rains of a severe winter, which obliged the sultân to return home. However, the khalif fearing in the end to be reduced to extremities by that powerful prince, resolved to make an alliance with Jenghîz Khân; and excite him to invade Mohammed on one side, while he attacked him on the other. Part of his council were against this measure: alleging, that it was contrary to the Mohammedan law, to bring the enemies of God into the country of the faithful, as such a step might occasion the ruin both of the Musulman religion and empire: but the khalif's

*Mohammed  
quarrels  
with the  
khalif  
Naffer.*

<sup>a</sup> Abu'lgh. p. 100. De la Croix, p. 125, & seq.

A.D. 1218. zeal for the faith could not make him change his sentiments.

*Naffer's  
embassy to  
Jenghiz  
Khân for  
assistance.*

An envoy was sent into Tatary, with his credentials impressed on his head (X), to prevent discovery : and having been admitted to a private audience, Jenghîz Khân told him, the treaty which he had just then concluded would not permit him to make war upon the sultân at that juncture : but that he knew the restless spirit of Mohammed would not suffer things to remain long in the posture they were then in ; and that, on the first occasion given, he would not fail to declare war against him. The Mohammedan historians greatly blame this conduct of the khalif : and although it does not appear that he ever gave any assistance to Jenghîz Khân, yet his having excited him to make war on a prince of their religion, was sufficient to intail their reproaches upon his memory <sup>b</sup>.

Meantime sultân Mohammed, careless of preserving the good harmony on his side, gave much occasion of discontent, by sending, or permitting, his soldiers to enter the borders of the Mungl empire, and commit depredations. At last, he seized a province which belonged to Kashluk, but had become the khân's by right of conquest : and one day, by his order, his soldiers attacked the Mungl troops, which guarded the borders of the country of Ardish. Yet all these injuries could not provoke Jenghîz Khân to declare war against Mohammed : on the contrary, as his aim was to enrich his subjects by commerce, and polish their manners by an intercourse with strangers, he resolved, if possible, to live at peace with him, and even cultivate a firm alliance.

*Munglam-  
bassadors,  
and mer-  
chants,*

The good order and perfect security for travellers, which Jenghîz Khân had established in his dominions, drew thither merchants from all parts ; and, among the rest, from Great Bukhâria, which was subject to sultân Mohammed. Upon the arrival of some of these latter with very rich commodities, the khân sent for them : but they set so extravagant a price on their goods as excited his indignation.

<sup>b</sup> Ebn Katur. Nissawi. Mirk. ap. la Croix, p. 132, & seq.

(X) This was done with the point of a needle and indigo, in the same manner that the arms of pilgrims are marked at Jerusalem ; so that when his head was shaved, the credentials appeared. Histæus, prince of

Miletus, when at the court of Darius, king of Persia, made use of the same device, to excite Aristagoras, his son-in-law, to revolt ; as we learn from Herodotus, lib. v.

tion. Having shewn them above a thousand chests, with A.D. 1217. all sorts of valuable commodities, he told them, they might see by what was before them, that it was not the first time he had bought such merchandizes; and dismissed them without making any purchase. Afterwards, sending for other merchants of the same country, who dealt in the same commodities, he began to cheapen several parcels: and they, warned by what had happened to their countrymen, left the price to his own discretion. This moderation pleasing Jenghîz Khân, he not only ordered them to be paid double the value of their goods; but also gave them leave to sell the remainder of them in his camp, without presenting the chief men with the least trifle.

At the departure of these merchants for their own country, the khân took that opportunity to put in execution what he had before projected. He sent with them four hundred and fifty merchants of his own subjects, to trade in the sultân's dominions: accompanied by Mohammed of Karazm, Ali Khoja of Bokhâra, and Yusef of Otrar, three officers of his court, in quality of ambassadors to that monarch, with a very friendly letter.

The ambassadors, having passed through Mogulistân, Karakitay, and Turkestân, at length arrived at Otrâr, called by the Arabs Farab, a city of great trade, seated to the north of the river Sihûn, now called Sîr, at the west end of Turkestân, but subject to sultân Mohammed. They immediately went to salute the governor, cousin-german to the mother of the sultân, who had given him the name of Gaghir Khân. The merchants likewise paid him their compliments, and offered him some presents: but one of them, an old acquaintance of his, happening inadvertently to call him by his former name Inaljik, he was so offended, that, without farther ceremony, he ordered both ambassadors and merchants to be arrested; and then dispatched a courier to inform the sultân, that certain strangers were arrived at Otrâr, who indeed pretended to be merchants and ambassadors; but that, having strong reasons to suspect they came on some ill design, he had caused them to be arrested, till he knew his pleasure concerning them. Mohammed, without enquiring farther in the matter, sent orders that they should be immediately put to death: which sentence Gaghir Khân executed to slain at Otrâr by the governor.

This affair is somewhat differently related by the authors made use of by La Croix.

A.D. 1218.

*Jenghîz  
Khân's re-  
sentment.*

Although the perfidious governor took all possible precautions to conceal his crime, that it might not come to the knowledge of Jenghîz Khân ; yet one of the merchants had the good fortune to escape the massacre, and carried the news of it to that prince ; who, at the recital of a fact so unexpected, as well as execrable, fell into an extreme rage ; and having given immediate orders for assembling his troops, sent a message to the sultân, importing, that since by so infamous an action he had violated all the engagements which were between them, he, from that instant, declared himself his mortal enemy, and would take vengeance on him by a rigorous war <sup>c</sup>.

*Makes re-  
gulations in  
his army.*

After Jenghîz Khân had assembled the forces of his empire, he wrote to the foreign princes who were either his friends or tributaries, acquainting them with the reasons of his marching against the Karazm Shâh, and desiring them to join him with their troops ; with which being reinforced accordingly, his army amounted to seven hundred thousand men. Before he set out on this expedition, he ordered levies to be made and sent him from time to time. He likewise established some new laws for regulating his soldiery.

He appointed the proper arms which each soldier was to carry ; consisting of the sabre, the bow, and quiver full of arrows, and the battle-ax. The officers used helmets and breast-plates either of leather or iron, or else an entire suit of armour or coat of mail ; even the private soldiers were allowed to wear armour if they were able to buy it. Persons of substance were obliged to arm their horses, so as that arrows could not wound them. It was likewise ordained that the soldiers should, on all occasions in the field, do nothing but what was conformable to the military laws, under penalty of the most rigorous punishment. Lastly, he commanded, that in case he died in the expedition, the books, in which the laws were written, should be read in the presence of his children at the election of a grand khân ; that such election should be made pursuant to those laws ; and that the new khân might regulate his conduct by them <sup>d</sup>.

Hejra 616.

A.D. 1218.

*Begins his  
march.*

Every thing being now ready for the war, the khân detached his son Juji, or Tushi, with a large body of troops towards Turkestan, in order to dislodge the friends of Kuchluk, who still remained in that country ; and when

<sup>c</sup> Abu'lgh. p. 100, & seq. La Croix, 144.  
<sup>d</sup> Abu'lkair ap. La Croix, p. 151, & seq.

this

this service was performed, he marched with his army to attack the dominions of sultân Mohammed <sup>e</sup>. Since it is from the date of this expedition, that the great irruption of the Mungls, or Moguls, and Tatars, into the southern parts of Asia is reckoned to commence, it will be proper to acquaint our readers with the state of this part of the world at that remarkable juncture.

The Indians were governed by many kings; the most powerful of whom was the king of the Patans (Y), who reigned in Multân and Dehli. The fouthern part of China, then called Manji, had its own emperors of the Song race; and the northern part, named Kitay, or Katay, was under the Mungls; as were also both the Eastern and Western Tartary, with most of Turkestan. The rest was possessed by sultân Mohammed, who was also master of Great Bukhâria and Karazm, where the monarchy was first established, and from whence the family took the title of Karazm Shâh. Besides these, his dominion extended over the greater part of the empire of Irân, or Persia at large; containing, among the rest, Khorassân, with the frontiers of India, Pârs, or Proper Persia, Irâk Ajemi, and Azerbijân. Georgia, and the adjacent countries, had their particular princes, who were independent: as for Armenia, its king paid tribute to the shâh of Karazm. The khalif Nasfer reigned in Baghdâd over Irâk Arabi, or Chaldea, part of Jazireh, or Mesopotamia, the three Arabias, and some countries of Persia, contiguous to his other dominions. The atâbek princes of Muful, or Mosul, the descendants of the great Nûro'ddin, prince of Syria, possessed almost all the rest of Jazireh. The successors of Salaho'ddin (or Saladîn) were also very powerful, Egypt, with part of Syria having submitted to them. Anatolia, or Asia Minor, was for the most part under the power of the Seljûkians, called sultâns of Konia, or Icônum; and of Rûm, or the Romans; and the empire of Constantinople was at this time in the hands of the French <sup>f</sup>.

Historians do not mention the places through which the Mungls marched in their way to the Karazmian dominions; nor even the month in which Jenghîz Khân left

Sultân Mohammed  
worsted by  
Juji.

<sup>e</sup> Abu'l. p. 103.

<sup>f</sup> La Croix, p. 155, & seq.

(Y) These people are of Persian extraction, and their kings of the family of Gaur; who succeeded that of Gazni in the empire of Persia and the Indies; to which last their possessions were at length confirmed.

A.D. 1218. Mogulistân in the year of the Hare. Meantime sultân Mohammed made great preparations to oppose him; and, having raised four hundred thousand men (a great army, though inferior to that of the enemy), marched towards Samarkand, and from thence to Khojend, in order to meet the khân: but being informed at this last place, that Juji was returning from Turkeftân, he changed his design, and directed his course to attack the Mungl prince before he could join his father. Having at length, by forced marches, arrived on the borders of that country, he turned off towards the river Kablt, in order to cut off Juji's retreat. Being arrived between that river and the Kamzi, he found a great number of men; who, as he was informed by a wounded soldier, had been slain the day before by the Mungls; upon this intelligence, he hastened his march, and overtook them next morning. The generals, who accompanied Juji, advised him to make an orderly retreat; inasmuch as the khân had not commanded him to fight with the sultân's whole army; and he was not strong enough for such an undertaking: they added, that, in case the sultân should pursue them, he could only act by small detachments, against which they might easily defend themselves, without running so great a hazard as that of a general battle.

The prince rejected this advice as unworthy of his courage and character; after this he ranged his troops in military order, and led them with confidence to the charge. In the height of the confusion Juji pierced twice or thrice through the enemies ranks; and, having encountered sultân Mohammed, gave him two or three strokes with his sword, which the other parried with his buckler. The Mungls, animated by the example of their prince, performed wonders that day; so that, notwithstanding the superiority of the enemy, they were on the point of flying; if the sultân, finding that his presence could not revive the courage of his soldiers, had not called out to them to stand their ground only for a few minutes, till night came on to part them. They obeyed this command; and thus saved him from the shame of seeing his whole army fly before a small part of the Mungl forces.

*More particular account.*

Juji, content with the honour acquired in that one engagement, caused great fires to be lighted in several places of his camp, and retired silently in the night. Next day, the enemy, imagining that he still waited for them on the field of battle, marched out again to renew the fight; but finding he had decamped, they retreated likewise. The prince,

prince, having rejoined his father with the troops under A.D. 1218. his command, was joyfully received, and loaded with presents for his gallant behaviour<sup>a</sup>. This is the account given by Abû'lghazi Khân; but, according to la Croix, Jenghîz Khân himself was in the battle, and his whole army engaged in this action.

According to Abû'lghazi Khân, Jenghîz Khân was still on his march to Great Bukhâria; where at length arriving, after he had been joined in the way by Arslân, khân of the Karlikhs, Idikût, khân of the Vigurs, or Oygûrs, and Saknâk, lord of Amâlik, or Almâlig, he turned first on the side of Otrâr; but understanding that sultân Mohammed had left the country open to him, and distributed his troops into the places of strength, he detached his two sons, Ugadoy, or Oktay, and Jagatay, with a considerable body of forces to besiege Otrâr; and his son Juji, with another party towards Najan. He also ordered two of his generals, Alan Noyan, or Nevian, and Suktu Buka, with fifty thousand men, towards Farnakant, or Fenakant, and Khojend, reserving to himself the gros of his army; with which he continued his march, accompanied by his son Taulay, or Tuli, towards Great Bukhâria<sup>b</sup>.

The first city which Jenghîz Khân found in his passage was Zarnuk (Z), under the walls of which his soldiers encamped with so horrible an outcry, that the inhabitants in terror shut the gates: but Hajîb, one of his officers, being sent to advise them to submit, by demolishing their castle, and sending to the camp all their young men capable of bearing arms to serve in his army, they flocked in crouds, loaded with presents, to put themselves under the protection of Jenghîz Khân; who received them very graciously, and gave to their city the name of Kûtlûk Bâlek, after which he permitted all the elderly men to return.

From hence the khân marched to Nûr, situate between Samarkant and Bokhâra, a city which acquired the name of Nûr, or Light, on account of the many holy places within it, resorted to from all parts by crouds of devotees. The inhabitants, after having been several times summoned to surrender, at last agreed to open their gates; but Jenghîz Khân, to punish them for daring to form even a thought of resisting him, allowed them to keep only such

<sup>a</sup> Abu'lgh. p. 103. <sup>b</sup> La Croix, p. 163. Abu'lgh. p. 106, & seq.

(Z) Situate on the south side of the Sihûn, or Sir, in Great

Bukhâria, not many leagues southward of Otrâr.

cattle

Jenghîz  
Khân ad-  
vances.

Zarnuk  
surrenders.

Nûr sub-  
mits.

cattle and provisions as were necessary for their subsistence; and gave all the rest for pillage to his soldiers.

*The sultân  
flies.*

The khân made no stay here, being desirous to penetrate as soon as possible to Bokhâra, the center of the sultân's dominions; and he knew that prince had retired thither with the greater part of his riches: but Mohammed, too wise to wait his coming, left twenty thousand men to defend the place, and retired secretly to Samarkant with all his effects. His flight was owing, in a great measure, to certain anonymous letters dropped among his troops; insinuating, that his best officers intended to quit his service. These letters, which occasioned great confusion in the sultân's army, were written by Badro'ddîn, formerly one of his officers, to be revenged on him for putting his father, uncle, and brothers to death. Jenghîz Khân, to whose court Badro'ddîn had retired, permitted him to make use of that artifice, after having been informed that there was a misunderstanding between sultân Mohammed and his mother; and that several commanders had left him, to follow that princefs. The khân even offered his assistance to this queen, and a settlement in any part of his dominions; but she did not care to trust to the promises of an infidel prince.

*Bokhâra  
described.*

Bokhâra lies one day's journey to the north of the river Jihûn, or Amû, very advantageously for trade, and in a delightful country. Besides the city walls, which were very strong, it had an outward inclosure, twelve leagues in compass; which surrounded not only the suburbs, but also many pleasant seats and farms, watered by the river Soghd: from whence the ancient Soghdiana took its name. Arts and sciences flourished no-where more than in this city, to which students flocked from all parts; and we are told that the word Bukhâr, in the Mungl language, signifies a *Learned Man*. Among the many who have rendered it famous was Ebn Sîna, commonly called in Europe Avicenna, of Afhana; who was bred in this university, and was master of all the sciences at eighteen years of age. He was afterwards called to court, and made prime minister, yet still followed his studies; and is said to have written above a hundred volumes. He died in 1036, at the age of fifty-eight<sup>1</sup>.

*Hejra 616.  
A.D. 1219.*

*The city  
besieged.*

The Mungls arrived in the plain of Bokhâra towards the end of July 1219, and continued encamped before the city during the following winter. In March 1220 the

<sup>1</sup> Abu'lgh. p. 108, & seq. Fadhlallah apud La Croix, p. 206.

Mungls forced the outer wall, destroyed the suburbs, and began to besiege the city in form. Soltân Mohammed had left in the town a very numerous garrison, under the command of three generals, Kuk Khân, Siunj Khân, and Kuchluk Khân. At the approach of Jenghîz Khân these three generals made a sally in the night with all the garrison, consisting of twenty thousand men; but being repulsed with great loss, their courage failed them; and, instead of remaining to defend the inhabitants, they entered the city by one gate, and passed out by another on the opposite side, with their families, and almost all their soldiers, hoping to escape by the darkness of the night unperceived by the enemy: but their design being discovered, thirty thousand Mungls pursued, and overtaking them at the river Amû, after a bloody dispute, almost all of them were cut to pieces<sup>k</sup>.

Mean time Jenghîz Khân, informed of the confusion which the inhabitants of Bokhâra were thrown into by the flight of their garrison, ordered the city to be attacked on all sides: but while the engines were getting ready for that purpose, next morning all the magistrates and clergy, attended by the principal citizens, went out and presented the keys of the city to Jenghîz Khân; who granted them their lives, on condition that they gave no shelter to any of the sultân's soldiers, and expelled all who could be suspected of being in that prince's interest. The castle being strong, all the young people, who were displeased with the surrender, retired thither with the governor; a brave man, who was resolved to hold out to the last extremity.

Jenghîz Khân, having taken possession of Bokhâra, entered on horseback into the great mosque, and asked merrily, if that was the sultân's palace. On being answered, that it was the house of God<sup>l</sup>, he alighted; and, giving the principal magistrate his horse to hold, mounted the gallery where the ecclesiastics usually sat; then, taking up the Koran, threw it under the feet of his horses. As soon as he was seated, his soldiers began to eat and drink in the temple, without the least regard to the place; and then he retired to his camp. There, in a few days, he assembled all the principal men of Bokhâra, and ascending a pulpit erected for that purpose<sup>m</sup>, began his speech by praising God, and recounting all the favours he had received from

The khân's behaviour in the jami.

<sup>k</sup> Fadhlal. apud de La Croix, p. 210. Abu'lgh. p. 110. <sup>l</sup> La Croix, p. 212. <sup>m</sup> Abu'l, p. 111, & seq. <sup>the</sup>

**A.D. 1220.** the Deity. He represented to the inhabitants the perfidious behaviour of their sultân towards him, in commanding his merchants and ambassadors to be assassinated ; he added, that God had chosen him to punish Mohanîmed for all his cruelties, and to rid the earth of such tyrants. As to them, he testified his satisfaction for their having freely furnished his army with necessaries, and promised that his soldiers should not touch any goods, which they made use of in their houses ; but commanded them to deliver up all which they had hidden, threatening otherwise to oblige them by torture.

*Bokhâra  
burned.*

The inhabitants, dreading his vengeance, carried to his officers not only the goods which they had hidden, but those also which they had in use. This compliance satisfied him for that time : but, understanding afterwards, that several of the sultân's soldiers were concealed in the town, he ordered it to be set on fire ; so that there remained nothing of that great city, excepting the sultân's palace, called Ark, constructed of stone, and some few private houses built with brick, all the rest having been of wood. He afterwards sent to search the palace and houses, and caused all the soldiers he found in them to be slain. Bokhâra continued in this state for some years ; but at length the khân ordered it to be rebuilt, not long before his death. The castle, which had held out for some time after the city was yielded, surrendered also at discretion, and was demolished ; but the governor and garrison had their lives spared.

*Otrâr be-  
sieged;*

The reduction of this place gave Jenghîz Khân much satisfaction, which was increased by the arrival of the princes Jagatay and Oktay from Otrâr, which city they had reduced <sup>n</sup>. Sultân Mohammed had left Gaghir or Gayer Khân, with fifty thousand men, near that place, to oppose Jenghîz Khân, in case he turned on that side ; and when he understood that prince had detached two of his sons to besiege it, he sent a farther reinforcement of ten thousand men, under the command of Karaja Hajîb, one of the lords of his court. With these sixty thousand soldiers the governor shut himself up in the city, and made all the necessary preparations for a vigorous resistance, by strengthening the fortifications, and laying in plenty of provisions. The Mungls began the siege with their battering engines, and attempted to fill up the ditch : which

<sup>n</sup> Mirkh. Fadhl. apud La Croix, p. 211. & seq. Abu'lgh. p. 110. & seq.

aim, after much obstruction, they accomplished ; and then A.D. 1220. placed their machines against the walls with more advantage : but the besieged, by their frequent fallies, in which they often burned the engines, and otherwise damaged them, so successfully kept off the Mungls, that for several months they made very little progres. This obstinate defence inclined the princes to turn the siege into a blockade ; but as it was necessary to consult their father on the occasion, and he returned no other answer than, that they must fight, his orders were obeyed with such indefatigable pains and ardour, that, in less than a month, the besieged saw all their towers and batteries beaten down, their engines broken, and breaches made in their walls : in short, they were obliged to retire behind their inner works.

The siege had now continued five months, when Karaja *and taken,* Hajib, seeing things reduced to this desperate condition, told Gayer Khân that it was time to think of capitulating, since it was not possible to defend the place much longer ; and, if the surrenders was deferred, the enemy would not listen to any agreement : but the governor, who was conscious of being the sole occasion of the war, and that there would be no mercy shewn him, absolutely rejected the proposal, and resolved to hold out to the last extremity. He had likewise, by his address, infused into the people such aversion to the Mungls, on account of their being infidels, that he gained over both the inhabitants and garrison to his sentiments. Hajib, finding he had, by this step, made himself liable to suspicion, with the consent of the officers under him, in the night, caused the gate called Dervasi Sufi, of which he had the guard, to be opened, and retired, with his ten thousand men, into the Mungl camp : but the princes, pursuant to a maxim among them, that a man who was capable of betraying his natural lord, would make no scruple of betraying them also upon occasion, ordered him, with all his followers, to be slain. After this massacre, they entered Otrâr by the same gate by which the deserters had issued.

The governor, seeing the city taken, retired with twenty thousand men into the castle ; all the rest of the garrison, being driven out of the town, were put to the sword. Gayer Khân, finding the castle too small for such a number of men, endeavoured to free himself by frequent fallies, which incommoded the enemy extremely : but the princes redoubling their efforts, as the defence of the besieged became more obstinate, the castle, after a month's resistance,

*The castle  
reduced.*

**A.D. 1220.** resistance, was at last taken sword in hand, and all the garrison slain. The narrow places, which were fortified, held out longer, being difficult of access; and the very ruins of the houses, which were beaten down, afforded means for the remainder of the Karazmian soldiers to fight under cover: but the besiegers, still pouring in fresh troops, cut them all off by degrees<sup>o</sup>.

*The go-  
vernor  
slain.*

Gayer Khân, seeing all lost, retired with two men to a terrace of his palace, and there defended himself desperately. As Jenghîz Khân had given orders to take him alive, the execution of them cost the lives of many Mungls. At length his two companions were slain; and although he was in want of arrows to shoot at those who endeavoured to get up to the place where he was, yet he still defended himself a long time with great stones, which his wife brought him for that purpose. At last, being surrounded, he was taken prisoner, and brought before the princes, who ordered him to be loaded with chains; and in their march to Bokhâr, at a place called Kuk Saray, he was put to death, pursuant to orders received from their father. The castle of Otrâr was rased, but the city walls were rebuilt; and the old men, women, and children, who had been turned out by Gayer Khân, permitted to return. It was likewise forbidden, under severe penalties, to the garrison who were left there, to molest the inhabitants.

*Slaughter  
at Saganâk.*

As Jenghîz Khân perceived it was necessary to reduce several other cities situated on the Sir, before he could undertake the conquest of Great Bukhâria; when Otrâr was taken, he sent orders to Juji, or Tushi, to begin with the siege of Saganâk. As soon as he arrived before the town, he sent Haji Haffan, a Mohammedan, to summon the inhabitants to surrender, with a promise of kind treatment: but although he had the governor's parole for his security, in a tumult raised by the chief officers, he was torn in pieces. Juji, upon the news of this assassination, persuaded his soldiers to swear revenge, and never ceased assaulting the place until he had taken it. All the officers and soldiers, with more than one half of the inhabitants, paid with their blood for Haffan's murder; the rest of them, with the city itself, would have been destroyed, if it had not been found necessary to preserve it for carrying on the war to advantage. Juji likewise, to honour the memory

<sup>o</sup> Mirk. Abu'lk. Fadhl. apud La Croix, p. 164, & seq.

of his unfortunate officer, and remind the people of their A.D. 1220. barbarity, ordered a stately monument to be erected for him in the most eminent place of the city.

In taking this revenge, the Mungls lost more men than *Uzkant* the place was worth ; but the severity they used produced *yields*. a good effect, by obliging several cities to yield without resistance : thus the inhabitants of Uzkant, intimidated by the sufferings of Sagnâk, came out to meet the prince, then two days journey distant, with magnificent presents, and delivered up their town without opposition : the governor, and such as would have defended the place, retired to Tonkat. Juji forbade his soldiers to offer those who staid the least insult, or take any thing which belonged to them. From thence he marched to Alshâh, a very beautiful city, *Alshâh* situated near the river Sihun, now Sir, four days journey to *taken*. the north of Khojend. This place refused to surrender to Juji, who therefore besieged it ; and, having taken it, caused a great number of the inhabitants to be slain, for daring to defend themselves <sup>b</sup>.

After the reduction of Alshâh, the prince marched to *Jund* *be-* *Jund*, a city on the borders of Turkestan, and at a small *sieged*. distance from the Sir. The governor Kûtlûk Khân possessed great riches, and had promised to make a brave defence, if attacked ; but as soon as he heard the Mungls were advancing towards him, he crossed the Sir with his treasures, and retired through the desert into the kingdom of Karazm. However, the inhabitants resolved to defend the place to the last extremity ; and although part of them would have surrendered, on the promise of good treatment, offered by Jitmûr, a commander sent from Juji or Tushi, yet the majority declared against submission ; and he would have certainly lost his life like Hassan, if those who approved his proposals had not helped him to escape. Jitmûr, who was an excellent engineer, and had observed the strength of the place, judging that it would cost much time and men to take it by force, proposed laying bridges over the ditch, which was full of water ; and, scaling the walls by surprize, in a part where the besieged thought themselves most secure.

The matter was referred to a council of war ; where, *Taken by* although Elak Nevian recommended force, as the best way *stratagem.* of taking cities, yet the rest approved of Jitmûr's stratagem ; and to second it, resolved to amuse the besieged

<sup>a</sup> Abu'lgh. p. 113, & seq. La Croix, p. 171, & seq. Abu'lgh. p. 114.

A.D. 1220. with three false attacks on the weakest part of the town. The attacks began a little before night with great shouts; and as soon as the battering engines began to play, all the garrison ran on that side, and abandoned their other posts. When it was dark Jitmûr caused his bridges to be laid across the ditch, and two wooden ladders to be raised against the wall, one of which he mounted himself, followed by his men, who soon fastened so great a number, that the troops entered the town, and seized a gate without much noise. The army, being thus let in, seized the principal posts, while the besieged, quite confounded and dismayed, abandoned the care of the places assaulted, and fled where they could to hide themselves.

*The inhabitants spared.*

Thus was Jund taken without any loss on either side: for the Mungls, not having lost any men of their own, destroyed none of the inhabitants, excepting two or three, who were put to death for having abused Jitmûr, when he summoned them to surrender. They were stript, however, of all their effects; and, to keep them in obedience, a strong garrison was placed in the city, Ali Koja, a Mungl officer, although a Mohammedan, being appointed governor <sup>a</sup>.

*Tonkat besieged,*

After the reduction of this place, Juji, or Tushi Khân, dividing his army into two bodies, detached Elak Nevian, with fifty thousand men, to subdue the countries of Ilâk, Alshâsh, and Khojend; and ordered the rest of his troops to keep the open country, to facilitate the taking of this last city, which was a place of great importance. That general marched with such speed into Ilâk, that several towns surrendered without opposition. Among those which resisted, Tonkât, called by Abû'lkair, Daro'l Ilm, or the Palace of the Sciences (Z), was the most considerable. It depended on Alshâsh, and served to secure the frontiers of Ilâk; it was also a common mart for the merchants of both countries. This city was rather a place of pleasure than of strength, full of springs, gardens, and delightful walks; insomuch that it became a saying, that God never made a more delicious dwelling than Tonkât. The garrison was composed of Kanguli, native Turks, a brave people; and the bey, named Ilenko Mâlek, who was lord of the place, answered resolutely, when the Mungls sum-

<sup>a</sup> Mirk. Abulk. ap. La Croix, p. 177, & seq. Abu'lgh. p. 114, & seq.

(Z) On account of an academy of arts and sciences founded there.

moned him to open the gates ; but on the first attack re- A.D. 1220.  
tired into the castle with the principal inhabitants.

The besieged resisted vigorously for three days ; while Elâk Nevian, who thought it necessary to take this place before he attempted Khojend, gave several assaults to the city : having, on the fourth, made a breach in the walls, the terrified defendants desired to capitulate, but the Mungl general forced them to surrender at discretion. Thinking he had cause to be displeased with the garrison, they were put to the sword, and the inhabitants compelled to quit the town, that their houses might be more conveniently plundered. Ilenko Mâlek had the good fortune to escape before the surrender. The Mungls built there a considerable magazine for warlike stores, and then marched towards Khojend.

Khojend, or Kojend, was situated along the south bank of the river Sîr, in a fruitful and beautiful country, large, and well fortified. It traded chiefly in musk and other odiferous commodities ; was seven days journey north from Samarkant, and the key of Bukhâria on that side : in short, a city in high esteem on many accounts, particularly for the bravery of its inhabitants ; and the valour of the chief, who at this time commanded in it, made it still more renowned. This illustrious person was Timûr Mâlek, sovereign prince of the place, and a khân ; who paid tribute to the Karazm Shâh, and had often commanded his armies. As soon as Elâk Nevian invested Tonkat, the khân, who expected to be the next attacked, omitted nothing which might be necessary for its defence ; laid in stores, broke down the bridges, spoiled the roads, and caused the corn, fruits, and cattle, of the circumjacent country to be carried away. The Mungl general began the siege of Khojend by building a bridge of communication a little below the city ; part of his army took post on the other side of the river, and he began to play his battering engines against the city, exposing himself to innumerable dangers.

On the other hand Timûr Mâlek contrived a thousand methods to destroy the enemy's machines. He had twelve kerûd, a kind of large boats or barks, six of which he sent armed on each side the river, to discharge stones, darts, and arrows into the Mungl camp, which killed and wounded abundance of men. The garrison was likewise supplied, from time to time, with recruits, by means of a marsh,

Timur  
Mâlek.

<sup>1</sup> Mirk. Abulk. ap. La Croix, p. 182, & seq. Abu'lgh. p. 114.

**A.D. 1220.** which hindered the besiegers from surrounding the city; so that the khân was in hopes to have wearied them out: but as Elâk Neviân received fresh troops from prince Juji, he, with redoubled assaults, so harassed the besieged, that they despaired of resisting him much longer. On this occasion Timûr Mâlek had recourse to stratagem. A little before the siege he had caused a kind of fortress to be built, at the farther end of the city, in an island of very difficult access, in which he placed a thousand soldiers; and then sent certain persons into the Mungl camp, who, under pretence of being deserters, should advise them to attack that fort, with an assurance, that as soon as it was taken the city must surrender. The general, suffering himself to be deceived, turned his engines on that side; but the castle being extremely high, as well as strong, and at too great a distance from the shore, after several days battering to no purpose, their stones and other materials began to fail. This want of missiles delayed them much, and the difficulty of supplying themselves a great deal more, as they were obliged to go above three leagues for that purpose.

*His brave  
defence.*

However, this difficulty did not discourage the Mungls, who cheerfully underwent that labour; but when a great quantity of stones were brought together, the general employed them another way to reduce the fort; and instead of throwing them against it, ordered them to be cast into the river, so as to form a jetty or bank, by which they might approach nearer with their engines. The work was interrupted greatly by the besieged, who, by their engines, fallies, and barks, often threw down the pier, and destroyed all that was above water. In short, Timûr Mâlek opposed this enterprize by all sorts of contrivances; but when he found he could dispute the passage of the channel with the Mungls no longer, he retired on board his barks with all his men. To destroy the bridge of communication, which was an obstacle to his escape, he one night caused a sally to be made, and while the commanding officer attacked those who defended the head of the bridge, several barks, filled with tar and other combustible matter, set fire to the pontoons of which it was composed; and opened a way for the khân and the rest of his fleet, which drove swiftly down the stream.

*Quits the  
place.*

*Battles his  
pursuers,  
and escapes  
down the  
river.*

As soon as the Mungl general was informed of Timûr Mâlek's escape, he ordered him to be pursued by a great body of horse, who followed the barks along the river, and attacked

tacked them from time to time, often advancing into the water to fight them hand to hand. In these engagements many men were killed on both sides; but the bloodiest disputes happened when any rocks or sand-banks on the north side the river obliged the fleet to approach the south shore <sup>8</sup>.

Some authors relate, that the Mungls contented themselves with observing the motions of Timûr Mâlek, in his passage down the river, imagining that he could not escape, as a chain had been drawn across the channel at Farnakant, or Tonkat; but the khân found means, by instruments which he had brought for the purpose, to cut the chain in the night, and pass through, though not without great loss of men. However, at length coming to a place where the river was extremely narrow and shallow, he was obliged to quit his barks, and endeavour to escape by land. Meanwhile the barks, neglected by the Mungls, escaped with the khan's family to a town on the river belonging to sultân Mohammed. Timûr Mâlek himself fought his way from one eminence to another. His followers being at length all cut off, and finding himself closely pursued by three Mungls, he let fly an arrow at the foremost, which hitting him in the eye, so intimidated his companions, that they all stopped, and let him escape to a neighbouring town called Kent. There, assembling a small body of men, he went and surprised Farnakant, and having cut the throats of the Mungl garrison, returned to sultân Mohammed, who loaded him with praises, and conferred on him the government of that city (A).

<sup>8</sup> Abulk. Fadl. ap. La Croix, p. 186, & seq.

(A) He afterwards fought against the Mungls when they entered Karazm, till seeing all lost on that side, he retired into Persia; from thence, in a religious disguise, he retired into Syria; and when the Mungls were become masters of Persia, returned thither, and submitted to the reigning prince; who allowed him to retire to Khojend, where he found but one son living, who had permission from Batû, khân of Kipchâck,

to recover his father's estate. This permission making those who had possessed it his enemies, they found out the man whom Timûr Mâlek had wounded in the eye; which man one day shot him dead with an arrow, under pretence that he spoke disrespectfully to a prince of the blood, who had expressed himself contemptuously of the great actions he had performed.

A.D. 1220

Khojend having surrendered the day after Timûr Mâlek's departure, Elâk Neviân settled matters in that city, and then went along with prince Juji, or Tûshi, to rejoin the grand khân, whom they found encamped within a days journey of Samarkant.

*Samarkant described.*

Samarkand, supposed to be the Marakandus of the ancients, was at this time the capital of Great Bukhâria, and seventy furlongs, or three leagues in compafs; though in the time of Alexander it was more than twelve. It was likewise inclosed with an outer wall, which was more regularly built, and better fortified, than those of Bokhâra. In it were twelve iron gates, a league distant from each other; and at every two leagues there was a fort, able to contain a great body of troops; the walls were likewise strengthened with battlements and towers, and surrounded with a very deep ditch, through which an aqueduct was laid, conveyed thither by leaden pipes, from a little river called Sogd, and thence into the city, which stood on the south fide of it; so that every great street had a canal of water running through it, and every house a fountain as well as garden. Besides, there was a rising ground from whence several rivulets descended, forming jettées and cascades. The inner city or inclosure had four gates, but the walls were defenceless; within it stood the great mosque or temple, and palace where the prince used to reside. As within the outer inclosure there were ploughed lands, fields, hills, and an infinite number of gardens; so in viewing the city from the top of the fortrefs, one could see nothing but trees and the roofs of houses.

*Its present state.*

At present it is the seat of one of the three Uzbek khâns, who reign in Great Bukhâria, the other two residing at Bokâra and Bâlkh. Its public struc&tures and market-places are very handsome, being built and paved with very fine stone. It carries on a great trade with Great Tartary, Persia, and India, furnishing Hindostân, in particular, with the best fruits, especially excellent melons. The finest silk-paper in the world is made here, and an academy of sciences contributes to render it famous<sup>t</sup>.

*The city besieged:* Soltân Mohammed in order to secure this city against the Mungls, had sent thither one hundred and ten thousand men, under thirty generals: sixty thousand were Turks, commanded by officers of great reputation; the

<sup>t</sup> Abu'lgh. p. 116. Fadhl. Moham. Nissavi, Yakut. Al Hamavi, Abu'lF. ap. La Croix, p. 196, 219.

rest were Tajis (B) men, brave enough to face lions or elephants ; of which last there were twenty. Besides, the inhabitants, joined to those who had retired thither for shelter, were so numerous, that the city, though so extensive, could scarcely contain them. On the arrival of so powerful a reinforcement, they surrounded the town with a broad ditch, which they dug till they came to water, and caused the troops to encamp behind it, as an entrenchment. On Jenghîz Khân's approach, the enemy made a furious fallay; but they being driven back to the city, after a bloody action, he went the next day, and encamped under the walls. When the engines were ready, he caused several places to be attacked at the same time, to terrify the besieged : but they not only sustained the shock with great resolution, but made repeated fallies, in which they cut off a great many Mungls; who, in a general assault, which was given from morning till night, could not gain one inch of ground. In all probability the besiegers would not have taken the city, if discord had not been kindled between the principal inhabitants and the commanders of the troops : the former, headed by the mufti and kadi, joined by several lords, who were desirous to save their estates, seized one of the gates, and carried the keys to Jenghîz Khân, imploring mercy for the besieged : but that prince would grant it to none, excepting those of their party ; who on the return of their deputies, the number of fifty thousand put themselves under their protection.

Mean while the governor Alub Khân had seized those places in the city which were of most difficult access ; and, expecting no quarter, resolved to defend it to the last against the Mungls ; who having entered by the gate which was delivered to them, attacked him vigorously in his strong-holds. Alub Khân sustained their assaults for four days, with extraordinary courage : but having, by this time, lost all the posts but that in which he in person defended, he, on the fifth, accompanied by the principal officers, and one thousand chosen horse, suddenly broke through the Mungl camp, and escaped. The remainder of the garrison, to the number of thirty thousand, losing all courage, on the governor's retreat, were soon over-

(B) Taije, according to Fadl-allah, signifies a Turkman : they were natural-born Persians, who could not speak the but the Persian and Turkish dictionary of Nimetallah says,

A.D. 1220.

powered, and all put to the sword ; among whom was the prince of the Kangûli himself, with five or six inferior princes. The khân ordered the city to be plundered ; and made a present to his generals of thirty thousand inhabitants, with their wives and children. The rest were pardoned, and permitted to live in the city as before, paying him a tribute of three hundred thousand dinârs, or crowns of gold <sup>u</sup>.

*The sultân pursued.*

When Jenghîz Khân was about to besiege Samarkant, he sent a detachment of thirty thousand troops to pursue sultân Mohammed ; who, he was informed, had fled by way of the river Amû, to the country of Termed. These troops were commanded by Hubbe Neviân, Suida Behadr, and Amîr Tûker, who held the rank of princes ; and the orders they received, were to treat all those cities kindly which should open their gates ; but to plunder such as resisted, and carry the inhabitants into captivity : to pursue sultân Mohammed, even to Dârbend in Shîrwân, and force their way through the territories of all such princes who should oppose their passage : in short, to subdue all the countries bordering on the Caspian sea, and then to rejoin him in Kipjâk, or Kapchâk.

*Affair of Herat.*

These three generals departed in June 1220 ; and, led by a false report, marched towards Bâlk : but hearing no news of the sultân, Tûker advanced still towards India ; and the other two struck off to Herat, the capital of Khorassân. The governor Amîn Mâlek, a relation of the sultân, being in no condition to resist so sudden an invasion, sent to tell them he was a servant of Jenghîz Khân. Upon this declaration, the generals, without halting, or committing the least disorder, proceeded towards the city of Zâveh, situate between Herat and Nishâbûr. Tûker, some time after, having returned from the borders of India, arrived in the country of Herat, where he committed some hostilities, not knowing, or pretending not to know, that the governor had submitted to his colleagues. The prince Amîn Mâlek sent a messenger to them, to complain of the injury. Mean time some troops, belonging to the city, joining the country people who had taken arms, formed an army so superior to Tûker's, that he was defeated, and killed with an arrow. After which defeat, the remainder of his troops went and joined the other two generals <sup>v</sup>.

<sup>u</sup> La Croix, p. 221. Abu'lgh. Hist. Turks, p. 116, & seq.  
<sup>v</sup> La Croix, p. 229, & seq. Abu'lgh. p. 123.

When Hubbe and Suida arrived at Zâveh, the inhabitants shut the gates against them; nor would the governor, by any persuasion, supply them with provisions, of which they were in want. This refusal so incensed the Mungls, that they immediately began to attack the city, with such fury, that, notwithstanding the vigorous resistance of the besieged, they took it in three days, though not without great loss; which they revenged by putting to the sword all who fell into their hands, and plundering the houses. The army from hence marched to Nishâbûr, being informed by a spy that the sultân was there. But Mohammed had left that place some time before, and gone into Persian Irâk, by persuasion of his grandson Amedo'ddîn; whose father Rocno'ddîn being prince of that rich and populous province, he might then be enabled to revenge himself on Jenghîz Khân. But Amedo'ddîn deceived both the king and himself; for Irâk was not by much so powerful a country as Khoraffân, which contained the most populous cities, as well as most beautiful and wealthy provinces.

On the approach of the Mungl generals to Nishâbûr, three lords were sent to meet them, and, in the name of the governor, made their submission; promising to pay the money demanded, besides tribute, to furnish all sorts of refreshments, and not to assist or succour their enemies. The generals, satisfied with these marks of obedience, continued their pursuit of sultân Mohammed; who, from Nishâbûr, went to Baftâm, a very pleasant and strong city of Tabarestân; where he delivered to the emîr Omar, one of the stewards of his household, ten coffers, sealed with the royal signet, filled with jewels of an inestimable value. None, excepting two more then present, knew what was in these coffers, which he ordered Omar to carry immediately to the strong fortres of Ardahân. From Baftâm, he proceeded to Irâk, and stopped at Maradawlet Abâd, a town depending on Hamadân, where his son Rocno'ddîn came to meet him with some troops: which, being joined with those the sultân had levied in the way, made above twenty thousand horse.

Meantime the Mungls followed him with so much diligence, that they surprised him at Farzîna, not far from Maradawlet, where they cut to pieces the greater part of his army: yet both Rocno'ddîn and the sultân escaped; the first fled to Kermân, and Mohammed, with a small number of officers, retired through bye-ways into the province of Ghilân; and from thence to Estâdâd, the strongest

*The sultân overtaken.*

A.D. 1220.

strongest city in all Mazânderân, and most difficult of access. There he might have lain concealed, if a lord of that country, to revenge his uncle's death, had not, with a small party of Mungls, found out the road he had taken. But being near Estâdâd, he learned from some peasants that the sultân was in a town near the Caspian sea, where he daily assisted at the publice prayers, promising an entire reformation, in case God would deliver him from the present danger, and re-establish him in his throne.

Flies to A-  
biskûn;

But while he flattered himself with the vain hopes of good effects from a late repentance, intelligence was brought him that the Mungls, with the Persian lord at their head, approached the town. The sultân, on this advice, abandoned his prayers to provide for his safety. He had scarce embarked in the vessel which he had provided for the purpose, when the enemy appeared on the shore; and finding they had missed their prey, endeavoured in vain to reach him with their arrowes. The miserable monarch, overwhelmed with affliction, fell ill of a pleurisy, which obliged him to stop at an island called Abiskûn, in the Caspian Sea, and at length carried him off in spite of the skill of his physicians. A few days before his death, prince Jalâlo'ddîn, being informed that he was in this island, went secretly thither, with two of his brothers. On his arrival, the sultân said to him, "Prince, you are the person among all my children who are the most able to revenge me on the Mungls; therefore I revoke the act which I formerly made, at the request of the queen my mother, in favour of my son Kothbo'ddîn." Then he appointed him to be his successor, and commanded the other princes his sons to obey him. After this declaration he expired, under the covert of a little tent, which had been set up for him. The first gentleman of his bed-chamber washed his body, and wrapped it in a shirt; having no other linen for its interment. But some years after sultân Jalâlo'ddîn caused his bones to be taken up, and carried with great pomp into the fortress of Ardahân.

dies there.

## S E C T. IV.

*The Conquest of Karazm, Great Bukhâria, and Irân  
(or Persia at large), till the Defeat of Soltân Jalâ-*  
*lo'ddin Mankberni.*

THE Mungl generals, who had been in pursuit of him, *Kingdom of Karazm.* believing that he had put to sea with design to retire into the country of Karazm, or some neighbouring territory, gave notice of his flight to Jenghîz Khân, then at Samarkant; who caused search to be made for him all over that kingdom, and in every other place where he judged him likely to be found. He afterwards sent three of his sons, Juji, Oktay, and Jagatay, with a numerous army, to attack the capital of Karazm. This is the country called by the ancient Greeks Khorasmia. It has on the west the Caspian sea; on the north Turkestân; on the east Great Bukhâria, from whence it is separated by deserts; and on the south the province of Khorassân, in Persia. There is in it, to the north, a vast lake, then called the lake of Karazm, and at present Arâl Nor, or *the Lake of Eagles.* The river Amû, called by the Arabs Jihûn, which divided Great Bukhâria from Persia, ran into it; and, after a progress of fifty or sixty leagues to the north-west, parted into two large branches, both of which, after a long course between the west and south, discharged themselves into the Caspian sea. Most of the cities and towns of this kingdom were situated on this great river, all built of brick, and some very beautiful, especially on the south side. Those which were farthest up in the country were of least consideration. The capital city was called Karazm by the natives, Korkanj by the Persians, and Orkanj, or Urghenj, by the Mungls; which name it still retains. It stood on the south side of the most northern of the two branches of the Amû, which, about a hundred years ago, forsook its ancient channel, and now falls into the Lake of Eagles. The country of Karazm, whose name extended to all the other provinces which composed the empire of sultân Mohammed and his predecessors, abounded with learned men, skilled in philosophy and the sciences. Poetry reigned there; and few Orientals were more polite than the inhabitants. They applied themselves much to music; or rather were naturally musicians. In short, it became a common saying *Its capital described.* over

over the East, with regard to their children, that they discovered something of harmony even in their crying.

The Mungl princes had orders to march to the capital of Korazm, and besiege it; that, by the reduction of it, the rest of the cities might be struck with terror, and the

**Hejra 618.**  
**A.D. 1221.**

**Queen  
Turkhân  
Khâtûn.**

**Her great  
power.**

country reduced at one blow. They had made great preparations for this purpose, expecting to meet with a vigorous resistance, as it was the metropolis of the Karazmian empire, and the constant residence of the queen-mother Turkhân Khâtûn, ever since the death of her husband Takash. This princess was daughter of Hankâshi, a Turkish king, who dying without issue, his subjects submitted to sultân Mohammed; who thus extended his empire far among the Turks inhabiting Tartary. She was a woman of superior wit, and wrote finely. For these reasons she had almost an absolute authority in the sultân's dominions. She took the title of protectress of the faith, and of the world; also that of the queen of women. She protected the weak against the powerful; administered justice impartially; and examined matters with such application, that her judgments were always right. She was very charitable to the poor. But these good qualities were obscured by her cruelty. She loved to shed blood: and when, on the approach of the Mungls, she resolved to quit the kingdom, she put to death twelve children of sovereign princes, whom she kept prisoners; among whom was the son of Togrul, the last of the Seljûks of Irân, whom Takash her husband had before put to death. She afterwards caused Omar Khân to be slain, who conducted her to the castle of Elâk, in Mazânderân. She hated Jalâlo'ddîn, and had even prevailed on her son Mohammed to disinherit him, in favour of his brother Kothbo'ddîn, whom she loved; but when she was informed that he had cancelled his will, she took no care to strengthen Karazm; and the same cause made her resolve to abandon the country, as soon as she heard that the Mungls were advancing.

**Jalâlo'd-  
dîn's mis-  
fortunes.**

Her departure bred great confusion in the capital. Some lords assumed the reins of administration in behalf of Jalâlo'ddîn; but by the time that prince arrived, the most considerable persons in the kingdom had formed a conspiracy against him, in favour of Kothbo'ddîn. This obliged the prince to retire from Karazm, with only three hundred horse out of seven thousand, whom he had brought thither; yet with these few he defeated seven hundred Mungls, who attacked him near Nesa, in Khorâfân; and then directed his way to Nishâbûr, in the same

same province. There Jalalo'ddin, who had assumed the name of sultân, gave orders for raising an army; but hearing the enemies were on their march towards him, after a month's stay, he left that city, in order to avoid them; yet had the ill fortune to meet with two of their parties. The first he defeated; the last, which was more numerous, surrounded him: and though he escaped out of their hands, yet they killed two of his brothers, who were with him, and almost all his men. But we shall leave him for a time, to attend the siege of the capital of Karazm<sup>x</sup>.

At the unexpected approach of the Mungl princes, the factions of this city re-united for their mutual safety, and gave the management of affairs to a lord of that country, and relation of the queen, named Himar Takîn. As this lord had no intelligence of their march, and believed them still at a great distance, he had given the inhabitants liberty to let their cattle graze in the meadows near the town; a circumstance which gave the van-guard of the Mungls an opportunity, on their arrival, to surprise the greater part of them. The Karazmians, upon this occasion, made a sally with ten thousand men, and coming up with the enemy, who retired leisurely towards a garden belonging to the city, attacked them with great vivacity; but when they were so far engaged as not to be able to retreat, the Mungl troops, placed in ambush on both sides of that garden, coming out of their concealment, fell upon them in the rear; while the rest charged them in front so vigorously, that scarce one hundred of them escaped the slaughter. After this action, the Mungls marched as far as the suburbs of the city, where they put to the sword all they found in arms; and, after plundering, set it on fire. Next day the whole army encamped before the place, and laid siege to it in form.

As there was no danger of any army coming to relieve the city, they made no intrenchments or lines. When all things were ready for an attack, the princes summoned the governor to surrender; and told him, that, if he refused, he was to expect no quarter. This menace having no effect on Himar Takîn, the Mungls gave a general assault, which was sustained by the besieged with equal bravery. The very women did the duty of soldiers: and not only assisted those who defended the walls, but, mounting on horseback, put themselves among the troops which

<sup>x</sup> La Croix, p. 257, & seq. Abu'lgh., p. 318.

A.D. 1221.

sallied out; for the women in those countries can ride and draw the bow, as well as the men. The Mungls, though still repulsed, never failed repeating their assaults, till at length they had no stones left to supply the engines; and were forced to batter the town with the trunks of mulberry trees, cut in pieces.

*Bravely  
defended to  
the last ex-  
tremity.*

As the ditches were filled with water from the river, the besiegers were obliged to divert the stream into a new channel; and this was a work of time. However, the canal was at length finished; and the river being turned into it, the ditch was soon filled up with earth, straw, and faggots, in spite of all opposition. This obstruction being removed, the batteries were redoubled, and several breaches made. A general assault ensued, in which the Mungl standards were planted on the walls; but such was the courage of the besieged, that they quickly tore them down again; drove back the assailants; and even repaired their breaches.

This ill success bred a misunderstanding between Juji and Jagatay; each reproaching the other with being too careful of his own safety. This dissension retarded the operations of the siege; and Jenghiz Khân hearing of it, ordered them to resign the whole command to Oktay. Then the face of things began to change; although the besieged were not less intrepid, yet they had not such success in their sallies as before. On the other hand, the Mungls, having made new breaches, gained the outworks in a furious assault, and erected their standards on the towers, while the besieged, unable to pull them down, retired into the city, to the places they had fortified. Many of these were at length taken, together with the citadel itself; yet still the governor rejected the proposals made by Oktay to surrender, because no mention was made of giving liberty to the inhabitants.

*Terrible  
slaughter.*

The Mungls, enraged at this refusal, set fire to the houses on every side, which consumed great numbers of people, and immense riches. As this was a loss to the besiegers themselves, they soon forbore, and applied themselves to attack the several quarters of the city: while the Karazmians had so intrenched themselves, that one quarter succoured another; and when one was forced, the defendants found shelter in the next. The attacks continued night and day, with extreme fatigue on both sides. At last, the brave Hîmar Takîn was killed by an arrow; yet still the remainder of the citizens held out to the utmost extremity; and when they saw they could no longer resist, they

they set fire to the houses which remained, to disappoint their enemies of the plunder. The Mungls, in revenge, put to the sword all the Karazmians they met with, amounting to a hundred thousand; and Oktay found it very difficult to put a stop to the slaughter. The rest of the inhabitants were ordered to evacuate the town; and, with their wives and children, were condemned to slavery.

Among those who fell a sacrifice on this occasion, was Sheykh Hasreti Kubru, furnamed Nâjmo'ddîn, whose rare example deserves our particular notice. Oktay, who had a great respect for this person, from the report of his piety, sent first to offer a passport for himself and ten, then for a thousand of his friends; but he refused to accept of that bounty, unless all the Mohammedans in the city were permitted to share it with him: sending the prince for answer, that he was obliged to take his lot with the rest, by ties too strong to be so easily broken. Accordingly he was slain among the thickest of the enemy, after he had defended himself with the utmost bravery.

The capital of Karazm was taken and ruined towards the end of the winter; after which catastrophe, fear seizing the rest of the people, all the other cities, as Kât, Ferâbr, Dargân, or Durûn, and Zamâkshâr, surrendered without making any resistance. Then leaving troops in the country, to keep it in subjection, Oktay departed, with the remainder of his army, to join his father<sup>r</sup>.

In the mean time Jenghîz Khân, after having tarried all the spring at Samarkand, delighted with the country, began to think of pursuing his conquests. He left Samarkand about the same time that his three sons marched for Karazm. On his approach, several towns opened their gates to him; among which was Nakshâb; where, pleased with the air and soil, he passed most part of the summer. Then advancing towards Termed, by way of Kolûga, or the Iron Gate, a passage cut in the rocks, he was some weeks on his march to that city, which is the last belonging to Great Bukhâria, towards Tokhârestân. It was situated on the river Amû; and, being very commodious for trade, had a port much frequented by barks. Soltân Mohammed had conquered it, not long before, from Bah-râm Shâh, who was among those princes put to death by the queen-mother, at her leaving Karazm. It was dependent on Kash, or Kesh, although it had a great many places under its jurisdiction. The walls of Termed were

<sup>r</sup> Abu'lg. p. 119. La Croix, p. 247, &c seq.

**A.D. 1221.** cased with bricks; and it had a castle, defended on one side by the river; so that the inhabitants believed themselves strong enough to amuse the Mungls till the arrival of sultân Jalâlo'ddîn, who had given them hopes of coming to their relief.

**Cruel massacre.**

Jenghîz Khân, being informed of their resolution, blocked them up close, by very deep and wide lines, which he ordered to be thrown round the place. For eleven days the besieged defended it, with the utmost bravery: but their walls being by that time battered down, and Jalâlo'ddîn not appearing to succour them, the Mungls stormed and took the city; with a most wanton butchery of all the garrison and inhabitants, excepting some young people reserved for slavery. The grand khân caused the town to be razed, and then went into winter-quarters. Among the towns which had submitted on this side were those of Langherta, Samanda, and Badakshân. The two first were plundered, and very ill treated, by the ravaging Tatars: but the last city was only stripped of its wealth; consisting chiefly in hyacinths and rubies, with which the hills in its territory abound. They likewise produce fine azure, good bezoar, and excellent crystal of the East <sup>2</sup>.

**Affairs of Khoraffân.**

Before the army went into winter-quarters, Jenghîz Khân sent a detachment of twenty thousand of his best troops to Hubbe Nevian and Suida Behadr, for the ensuing year. The two generals were on the northern borders of Khoraffân when they received their master's orders: but, not to be idle while the expected supplies were on the road, they divided their troops; Hubbe marching towards Mazânderân, and Suida directing his course to Helvâs. After they had ravaged those countries, they returned to Khoraffân, where Aynanje Khân, one of sultân Mohammed's officers, with some troops, gave the Mungls much uneasiness. Suida forced him to fight; but was defeated. The Mohammedan lord, in the pursuit, meeting, near Nak Shivân, with a brigade of Tatars, who were retiring into that place, fell on, and drove them into the ditch, where they were all drowned. After this exploit, being joined by other disbanded troops, he levied contributions, and with the tax-money of Nîsa provided for his little army; but retired to the mountains, on the arrival of the expected reinforcements, which were commanded by two Nevians, Jaffer and Ika, each at the head of a toman;

<sup>2</sup> Fadlal, ap. La Croix, p. 257, & seq. Abu'lgh. p. 121, & seq.

who had orders, in the first place, to reduce Nesa, as it was a hindrance to the conquest of Khoraffân.

A.D. 1221.

Nesa, or Nifa, was situate on the borders of the desert towards Karazm : it had, in times past, served as a frontier between the Turks and Persians. When the Mungls had invested the city, they sent to offer very reasonable terms to the governor : but during the treaty some Karazmians imprudently shot at the besiegers ; and, having slain Balkûsh, their lieutenant-general, they resolved to revenge his death. They battered the walls with twenty great engines ; and, in fifteen days, made a breach ; which the inhabitants not being able to repair, the Mungls in the night stormed the walls, and became masters of the place. Next day they ordered them to turn out into the plain ; where, surrounding them, they shot at them with darts and arrows, like beasts in a chace. Thus all were slain, natives, strangers, and peasants, who had retired thither for safety, to the number of seventy thousand. Shahâbo'd-dîn, one of the sultân's ministers of state, and his son, who had taken shelter there, with their treasure, were brought in chains before the Neviâns ; who, having emptied their coffers, ordered their hands to be struck off.

*Nesa taken,  
and its in-  
habitants  
slain.*

Three days after, they went and besieged the citadel of Kaendar <sup>Kaendar</sup> accounted the strongest place in all Khoraffân, in <sup>fortress be-</sup> <sup>sieged.</sup> the road from Nesa to Nishâbûr. It was governed by Mehemmed Nisâvi (C), to whom it properly belonged : and hither had retired Nezâmo'ddîn, one of the greatest lords of the country, with all his treasure. This nobleman, three days before the arrival of the enemy, talking to the governor about the place, which he deemed impregnable on account of its situation, said to him, "We will wait the Tatars coming here :" but when he saw they attacked it on the weakest side, was so affrighted, that he desired Nisâvi to let him down with ropes into the plain, and had the good fortune to escape. The Mungls battered this city a long time ; but the besieged made so brave a defence, that the general, despairing to take it with the troops he had with him, offered to raise the siege, on condition of receiving cloaths, and other things, which his soldiers stood in need of. This demand the governor thought proper to comply with ; but the difficulty was to find officers, who would venture to accompany the bearers of the presents ;

(C) Author of the Life of sultân Jalâlo'ddîn, often cited in this history.

A.D. 1221.

believing, that the enemy were cruel enough to revenge on them the shameful retreat they saw themselves obliged to make. After many had refused the employment, two venerable old men undertook it; but had no sooner discharged their commission than the Mungls were so inhuman, says our author, as to imbrue their hands in their blood. At last the two Nevians raised the siege, and ravaged the country<sup>a</sup>.

*Damegân deserted;*

After this miscarriage, Suida came to meet them, and all three went to join Hubbe Nevian, who was engaged in another expedition. They marched by the desert, and other roads, to attack Damegân, the capital of Kumâs: a considerable city, situated in a great plain, washed by many streams of rock-water, for their excellency called the waters of Khofraw, or Kosroes; because that king had them conveyed by fine aqueducts into the town, and would never drink of any other. Finding Damegân entirely deserted by the inhabitants, who had fled to the woods and mountains with their best effects, and nothing left to gratify their avarice, they invested Amol (D), which they took, as also several other towns in the eastern Tabarestân.

Hubbe Nevian, in this expedition, acquired no less reputation than the other generals. He not only reduced all the Western Tabarestan, which is called Mazânderân, but even seized on the queen mother, Turkhan Khâtûn, who had retired thither, with her immense riches. As Jenghîz Khân had spies or correspondents in every part of the Karazmian empire, he learned by one of them, that she was lodged in the fortress of Ilâl, and immediately sent a courier to acquaint Hubbe with the news; ordering him to run all hazards to take that place. The general had for three months battered it in vain: when Jenghîz Khân, who was informed how things stood, judging that it might be more easily reduced by famine, ordered him to build a strong wall without his lines, whose gates should be kept shut in the night; and to guard all places strictly, that the besieged might receive no supplies. This work was performed accordingly: and, although the governor had no thoughts of yielding, and pretended that he stood in need of nothing; yet in three weeks more, provisions having en-

*Ilâl besieged;*

*surrenders.*

<sup>a</sup> Nissavi in Jalal. ap. La Croix, 268. Abu'lgh. p. 121, & seq.

(D) A city of Mazânderân, about one day's journey from near the borders of Ghilân, and the Caspian Sea.

tirely failed, many of the garrison, as well as inhabitants, being already dead, for want of water, the queen was forced to capitulate.

Hubbe Neviân, knowing the extremities to which Ilâl was reduced, would not grant any thing to the queen more than her life. As soon as the Mungls took possession of the place, they seized her treasure, and treated her as a captive. She was sent to Jenghîz Khân, under a strong guard, with her women, grandchildren, and all the lords who had retired with her into the fortrefs. She sacrificed herself to the hatred she bore sultân Jalâlo'ddin. Instead of desiring success to his arms, she did nothing but wish all sorts of misfortunes might attend him ; and, although she might have safely retired under his protection, some days before the place was besieged ; yet, deaf to all arguments, she protested that the lowest condition, and most rigorous treatment from the Mungls, would be more agreeable to her than all the marks of friendship she could receive from the son of Ayjeak, her mortal enemy. Such were the sentiments of this implacable grandmother ; and the treatment she met with was such as her malice and cruel disposition deserved : for Jenghîz Khân caused her sometimes to be brought into his presence when at table, and threw her scraps of meat he had eaten of, as if she had been a dog. They put to death her great grandchildren, before she arrived at court, and left only the youngest alive to console her. Nor did that comfort remain with her long ; for one day, as she was combing his head, a person came and snatched him from her arms. This, she said, was the most sensible loss she had till then felt, and her grief was indeed most poignant. The young princesses, her great grand-daughters, were not so unfortunate ; for not only their lives were spared, but they were married to Mungl lords of the first rank.

After Hubbe Neviân had left the fortrefs of Ilâl, he went directly to Ray, or Rey, the ancient Ragau, or Rages ; a city which seemed able to make a vigorous defence ; but the Mungls took it with a great deal of ease, by means of the dissension, on account of religion, which subsisted among the inhabitants : for being divided into two factions, one of which followed the doctrines of Abû Hanîfah, and the other those of Shâfay, the kazi of the city, who was of the last party, went with the chief persons of his sect, and offered Hubbe the place, in the name of the Shâfays ; who delivered him two gates, by which the Mungls entered. The other party, who had fortified them-  
Ray taken

*Queen-mo-  
ther seized.*

*Her cruelty  
punished.*

A.D. 1221. selves, made some resistance, more out of hatred to the Shâfsays, than to the Mungls themselves : but the general forced them to yield, and, induced by the ill opinion which the kâzi had created in him of the Abû Hanîfa sect, put them almost all to death : so that not above one half of the inhabitants of Rey were left alive.

**Kom taken.** Hubbe and Suida remained for some time at Rey, invited by the beauty of that city, which was one of the four most considerable in all Irâk ; the three others being Hamadân, Kom, and Ispâhân. When the season permitted them to take the field, they again parted : Hubbe marched towards Hamadân, and Suida took the route of Kazvîn. Kom was taken and cruelly treated ; but Hubbe struck up a peace with Majedo'ddîn who commanded in Hamadân.

**Other cities reduced.** From hence Hubbe led his troops to reduce other parts of Irâk ; and, in a short time, reduced Dinewar, or Day-nûr, Sûvan, Holwân, Nahawend, and several other cities in that province ; by which conquests he acquired great riches. As for Suida Bahadr, who was gone to besiege Kazvîn, which is situate between Rey and Abher, on the confines of Ghilân and Mazanderân, he carried it by storm, and put to the sword fifty thousand persons in this city, Deylem, and other neighbouring countries <sup>b</sup>.

**General hunting at Termed.** Mean while Jenghîz Khân, after the reduction of Termed, to keep his soldiers in action during the winter, ordered a great hunting to be performed in the plains of that city. The huntsmen having marked the outward circle, which is called Nerke, the several officers with their troops took their posts round it. Then, at the sound of martial instruments, they all pushed forward at once, moving towards the centre, driving the beasts before them, which happened to be within the inclosed space ; but it was forbidden to kill or wound any animal, whatever violence it offered. At night they encamped, with all the order observed in war. Thus they marched for some weeks ; when the beasts, finding themselves pressed by the circle contracting, ran for shelter among the mountains and forests ; from whence they soon after fled on scent of the hunters, who opened the very burrows with spades, or sent in ferrets, to dislodge the animals : but, the compass of the ground still growing less and less, the beasts, for want of room, began to mix with one another ; and, becoming furious, leaped on the weakest, and tore them to pieces. Nor was it without great toil and difficulty that the soldiers

<sup>b</sup> Fadhl, ap. La Croix, p. 272, & seq. Abu'lgh. p. 130, & seq.

could

could drive them forward with their shouts. At length, A.D. 1223. when the troops were arrived at the inner circle, called Jerk, which inclosed a small spot of ground where all the animals might be seen together, the drums, timbrels, and other instruments, were ordered to strike up at once; the sound of which, joined to the shouts and cries of the hunters, so affrighted them, that they lost all their fierceness; the lions and tigers grew tame as lambs; the bears and wild boars, like the most timid creatures, seemed dejected and amazed.

The grand khân, attended by his sons and principal officers, first entered the Jerk with his sword and bow, and began the slaughter by striking the fiercest beasts; some of which became furious, and endeavoured to defend their lives. Then retiring to an eminence, where a throne was erected for him, he beheld the attack. When the princes and lords had given sufficient proof of their courage and agility, the young soldiers entered the circle, and made great havock among the poor beasts. At last the khân's grandsons, attended by several young lords, approaching the throne, intreated him, in a speech, to give those which remained their lives and liberty; which request he granted, and then sent back his troops to quarters, after the chace had continued four months.

In the end of March, Jenghîz Khân broke up his camp; and passing the Amû, marched rapidly towards Bâlk<sup>c</sup>; *Bâlk besieged, and taken.* against which he had taken great disgust, for giving shelter to sultân Jalalo'ddîn; who from thence infested the Mungls with his troops, while they were employed in reducing Great Bukhâria. The inhabitants, unwilling to hazard a siege, determined to surrender; and the great lords of the country, who had retired thither, went with the city officers to meet Jenghîz Khân, carrying with them an immense quantity of rich presents: but he rejected their offers; and said, those people, who had so kindly received his enemy, could not have a sincere friendship for him.

Meantime the Mungl army marched to the city; and the inhabitants, knowing it had been agreed to open the gates, suffered the van-guard to enter without resistance. They were all ordered to go into the plain; where the young people being set a-part in order to be sold for slaves, the greater part of the old men were beheaded. After which execution the city was plundered, and the walls were demolished. The Mungls were greatly en-

<sup>c</sup> La Croix, p. 260, & seq.

A.D. 1221. rished by the spoil of Bâlk ; for it had always been a place of much trade. Besides, it was full of monuments of exquisite workmanship, and every thing which could serve to adorn so great a city ; having been the abode of many persons famous in all arts. The public buildings were spacious and regular ; the karawânserays or inns, the mosques, and colleges, very magnificent. There were reckoned to be twelve hundred temples, besides small chapels, and two hundred public baths, for foreign merchants and other strangers.

*The city described.*

Balk is situate eight leagues distant from the river Jihûn or Amû, and four from the mountains, in a most fertile plain, planted with sugar-canæs and lemon-trees. Its suburbs were watered by the river Dahak, which falls into the Amû, about twelve leagues from the city ; at present one of the three capitals of the Usbek Tatars inhabiting Great Bukhâria : although Bâlk properly belongs to Khorassân, the adjoining province of Irân or Persia at large.

*Talkhân,  
its strength.*

After Jenghîz Khân had reduced Bâlk, he sent his son Tuli or Tawlay, with an army of eighty thousand men, into Persia, to pursue sultân Jalâlôddîn, and another large detachment towards India ; then marched himself to besiege Talkhân, a place extremely strong by its situation, and dependent on Tokhârestân. It was situated towards Marû, in Khorassân, which Tuli was ordered to besiege. The city formerly had been very flourishing ; but there remained nothing then except the citadel, which being very large, they gave it the title of a city or fortres. It stood on the top of the mountain Nokrekûb, or the *Silver Mountain*, from the mines of that metal which it contained, and was built by a prince of Tokhârestân.

*Besieged,  
and at  
length  
taken.*

Besides the natural strength of the place, the garrison were provided with all sorts of stores and provisions for a long siege ; whereas the Mungls had neither ground nor trenches to shelter them, making use of blinds to ward off the darts and other missiles. The besieged killed so great a number of them, that the khân repented his having meddled with this place ; yet, not able to bear a disappointment, and fearing, through his losses, that he had not troops enough to reduce it, he sent couriers for Tuli to return, under pretence of the excessive heats. Mean time he let his army rest for some weeks, and then ordered the rocks to be scaled on all sides, by means of grappling-irons, long nails, hooks, ladders and ropes, in order to oblige the besieged to divide their forces. The Mungls made several attempts to get up, in which they were frustrated by the watchful

watchful garrison, who killed great numbers of them; yet were they supported in mounting the ladders with so many engines, that at length a good body of them made a lodgement on the top of the mountain. This circumstance so astonished the besieged, that, running hastily to repulse them, they imprudently left some posts unguarded, which the Mungls immediately seized, and entered the town. The garrison, returning in confusion to drive them out again, were overpowered and put to the sword by their stronger enemies; who, to revenge the death of their companions, and the hardships they had suffered during a seven months siege, exercised all the cruelties imaginable. Thus the fortress was taken without Tuli's assistance, who did not arrive till after its reduction. Let us now see what conquests that prince made during his expedition in Khoraffân.<sup>d</sup>

Tuli Khân, after a long march into Khoraffân, having learned that Jalâlo'ddîn had quitted Nishâbûr, according to his father's orders, returned to besiege Marû Shâh Jan, or Marû Shahi Sehân, which was very powerful, and then governed by Bukha Al Mulk, appointed by sultân Mohammed, in place of Mâser Al Mulk, who was expelled on account of his father's disgrace. While Tuli was besieging the city of Khoraffân, which is near to Marû, sultân Mohammed informed Bukha that he ought not to oppose the Mungls, but endeavour to procure favourable terms for the city. On the receipt of these orders the governor abandoned the place, and retired to Wazîr, in Karazm; part of the garrison likewise dispersed themselves in the neighbouring fortresses. Tuli, being informed of all that had passed, sent two general officers with troops to take possession of Marû: at their approach Sheykh Al Islâm, father of Bukha Al Mulk, met them with a numerous train and magnificent presents, and delivered them the keys of the city. The Mungl generals, satisfied with this submission, turned their arms another way. Mean time Bukha Turkmân, who had been captain of sultân Mohammed's guides, and, at the time of the commander of Marû's retreat, had retired into a neighbouring forest, with the Turkmân's belonging to the garrison, returned to that city, soon after the departure of the Mungls, followed by Tâjiks, Turkmâns, and others, who had fled at the enemies approach. These men conferred on him the government

*Marû surz  
rendered.*

*Seized by  
Mâsar.*

<sup>d</sup> Mirkhond. Fadhl. ap. La Croix, p. 283, & seq. Abu'lghas. p. 121.

A.D. 1221. of Marû, and obliged the inhabitants to acknowlege him in that quality. About the same time Mâsar or Mâjer Al Molk, who, since his dismission from that post, had resided in the province of Irâk, being informed that sultân Mohammed was dead, mounted a swift mule, and made all the haste he could to Marû, where Bukha Turkmân refused him admittance: but Mâser having found means, some days after, to get in by stealth, Bukha immediately assembled the inhabitants, and declared that, for love of peace and the public good, he was willing to resign the command to their old governor, and live among them as a private man: which proposal was joyfully accepted.

Tuli having subdued the rest of Khoraffân, paid a visit to Marû, where he arrived on the first of Moharrâm, in the year 618. The inhabitants endeavoured at first to keep him at a distance by a vigorous sally, but having lost above a thousand of their men, they returned much disappointed. The siege having lasted three weeks, the prince began to be impatient; and drawing out his whole army, divided it into two hundred troops, placing those who were armed with bucklers in the front: but just as he was going to give the assault, Mâsar al Molk desired to capitulate.

He was obliged, however, to furrender at discretion. Tuli having feized the treasure, and all that could be found of any value in the city, ordered all the inhabitants into the fields. Then the tradesmen being separated from the rest, the latter, amounting to one hundred thousand persons, were put to the sword. This was the fourth time that Marû had been plundered, and each time above fifty or sixty thousand inhabitants were slain. It stood in a sandy plain, which produced salt, and watered by three delightful rivers. The government was conferred on Amîr Zîyao'ddîn, a lord of that country, with orders to search for the inhabitants who might have concealed themselves, and put them in possession of their lands again; but after Tuli's departure, he was slain by Barmâz, his lieutenant; and the country fell again into confusion.

*Nishâbur besieged,*

After the death of sultân Mohammed, the army under Hubbe Neviân and Suida Behadr had subdued all the western parts of Khoraffân, by taking a great number of cities; only Nishâbur was left unmolested, having sworn fidelity to them at the beginning of their expedition: but the inhabitants, when they saw sultân Jalâlo'ddîn's great distress, not only supplied his troops with provisions, but also gave him money to raise forces. Although this step was taken so secretly that it came not to the knowlege of those

those generals ; yet Jenghîz Khân got information of it by his spies : at which he was so enraged, that he immediately wrote to prince Tuli, to lay aside all his other designs, and punish that rebellious city. On receipt of these orders Tuli quitted the country of Marû, and marched to Nishâbûr ; whose inhabitants, expecting no mercy, resolved to defend themselves to the last extremity.

Prince Tafar, who commanded the van-guard, having been killed in a sally at the beginning of the siege, Tuli ordered the army to encamp at Tushanian, a town to the east of Nishâbûr, for convenience of constructing engines, which being finished, he battered the city with above twelve hundred at once. The defendants behaved with surprising intrepidity ; but after three days siege, a secret passage being discovered, by the falling of a wall, the Mungls entered by that breach, and surprised the place, making a terrible slaughter of the inhabitants. The greater part of those who escaped the sword died in caves and vaults, which they had made to save themselves. An infinite number of young people were made slaves, and the city itself, after being plundered, was utterly destroyed to the foundations. It is related that they spent twelve days in counting the dead ; and that, including such as were slain in some other places dependent on Nishâbûr, one million seven hundred and forty-seven thousand persons were computed to have lost their lives.

When prince Tuli had destroyed Nishâbûr and Tus, or Mashâd, which stood in its neighbourhood, he led his army towards Herât, on a false information, that sultân Jalâ-lo'ddin had retired thither. Having arrived in twelve days at Herat, he sent and summoned the governor Shamfo'ddin to surrender : but this officer, who had armed one hundred thousand men, for the defence of the place, instead of yielding, caused the envoy to be killed. He afterwards made furious sallies for seven days successively ; and so many men were killed on both sides, that the blood streamed like rivers. Tuli lost in that time above one thousand seven hundred officers besides private soldiers : but on the eighth day, after a long and obstinate contest, Mâlek Shamfo'ddin was mortally wounded with an arrow ; which accident having sunk the courage of the besieged, they retired in confusion, followed by the Mungls, who entered the city with them. Tuli, who headed them, took off his casque, and summoned the inhabitants to

*Prodigious  
massacre.*

\* Mirk, ap. La Crox, p. 292, & seqq. Abu'lgh. p. 133, & seqq.  
surrender,

A.D. 1221.

furrender, telling them he was the son of Jenghîz Khân ; that they should be well treated, and pay but half the taxes which they paid to sultân Jalâlo'ddîn. These proposals, having been liked by the inhabitants, were accepted : but the soldiers, rejecting them, were immediately disarmed by prince Tuli's order, and all put to the sword, to the number of twelve thousand. He then nominated Mâlek Abû Beqr governor of the city ; and, with sixty thousand men, set out for Talkhân, whither his father had recalled him.

*The city described.*

Herat (called also Heri and Eri) has always passed for a very strong city, and, at present, serves for a bulwark against the Usbecks. The country in which it stands, is the Aria of the ancients ; and, according to Mîrkond, the famous Persian historian, it was founded by Alexander the Great.

*Jalâlo'ddîn's distress.*

During these transactions, the sultân Jalâlo'ddîn having escaped out of the hands of the second party of Mungls, in his retreat from Nîshâbur, he, with much difficulty reached the fortress of Kâhera ; where, in despair, he would have taken refuge with his troops, and waited the coming of the Mungls, had not the governor convinced him that such a conduct was unbecoming a prince of his character. This bold remonstrance rouing his courage, he repaired to Bost, a city in the province of Sejestân, or Sîstân, where he made shift to raise about twenty thousand men : but, when he had learned the strength of the Mungl army, he knew not what course to take. At length, urged by the extreme danger he saw himself in, he resolved to oppose his enemies at all hazards, and left Bost, with a design, if possible, to get into Gâzna, the capital of Zâblestan, twenty-four days journey distant, before the Mungls could arrive in its neighbourhood ; which design he effected. In this city, which had been the metropolis of the Gâzni empire, a lord, named Kerber Mâlek, commanded during the absence of sultân Jalâlo'ddîn : and although, just before, the people, as in other places, divided by the great lords, had thrown off their obedience, yet was that prince received with all the marks of the greatest affection ; while he, dissembling his resentment, deferred to a more proper time the punishment of their disloyalty.

*Bambyân besieged.*

Jenghîz Khân, having received information that Jalâlo'ddîn was at Gâzna, hastened his march, in order to

surprise him ; but he was stopped in the way by the garrison of Bâmiyân, which he had hoped to take without opposition. These people, in expectation of being attacked, ruined all the country for four or five leagues round the city ; while the peasants had carried away the stones, and every thing else that might be of use to the besiegers : so that they had extraordinary difficulties to surmount. They had scarce begun to attack the place in form, when couriers arrived with news both of the defeat of his troops by sultân Jalâlo'ddîn, and the revolt of Herât. This intelligence made him redouble his attempts. After he had detached forces upon those two expeditions, he caused a mount of earth to be raised before the city, in a place where he designed to make the fiercest assault. Wooden towers were likewise built, equal in height to the walls, to plant his engines on, and covered with raw hides, to prevent their being damaged by the wild-fire of the besieged.

In spite of all his efforts, the besieged made such furious *Vigorously defended* <sup>2</sup> fallies, overthrowing whole squadrons of the enemy, as well as towers, with their engines, that had not Jenghîz Khân been provided with such a great army, he must have been forced to raise the siege. To increase his mortification, an express came with an account of the defeat of his general Kûtûkû, by the sultân. The khân, enraged, swore to be revenged on Bâmiyân : but his fury cost the life of a son of Oktay ; who, exposing himself, to please his grandfather, was slain with an arrow. The emperor, who loved him tenderly, could not forbear mixing his own tears with those of the mother, who appeared almost distracted <sup>2</sup>.

Jenghîz Khân, by this accident rendered more impatient than ever, lavished his treasure to encourage his soldiers ; who, night and day continuing the assault, at length destroyed the walls in many places, and became masters of Bâmiyân, after the bravest of the officers and soldiers of the garrison had been slain in its defence. The mother of the young prince, who had been killed, entering the city with the troops, behaved more like a fiend than a woman ; and caused the throats of all the inhabitants to be cut. She even gave orders to rip up the bellies of women with child, for fear an infant should be left alive. In short, the cattle and all other creatures were killed, to gratify the rage of this blood-thirsty

<sup>2</sup> Nissavi in Jalal, Mirkond, Fadhl. ap. La Croix, p. 301, & seqq.  
monster.

**A.D. 1221.** monster. So that, ever since, Bâmiyân, whose buildings were also demolished, has borne the name of Maubâlîg, which, in the Mungl language, signifies the *Unfortunate Town*. Bâmiyân was situated on a mountain, in the province of Zâblestân, ten days journey from Bâlk, and eight from Gazna <sup>b</sup>.

*The  
Mungls de-  
feated  
by the  
Jolâms,*

Two or three days after Jalâlo'ddin had reached Gâzna, as before related, he learned, that there were Mungl troops in that neighbourhood who besieged the city of Kandahâr, and had orders to watch his motions. At the same time Amîn Mâlek, lord of Herât, who was come out to observe them, with ten thousand Turkish horse, being not far off, the sultân sent to invite him to assist in relieving that fortress. Amîn Mâlek hereupon joined Jalâlo'ddin with his forces; and, it being resolved to attack the enemy in the dead of night, the troops marched, and surprised the Mungls, who had already taken the town. They, finding themselves attacked on one side by the succours, and on the other by the governor of the citadel, suffered themselves to be killed, almost without resistance; so that very few escaped the sword of the Karazmians.

The sultân, having repaired Kandahâr, returned to Gazna; where he was reinforced by thirty thousand men, brought by three Turkish lords of his father's court, who dwelt in this country. As soon as Jenghîz Khân heard of the slaughter of his troops before Kandahâr, he immediately dispatched the general Kûtûkû, with eighty thousand men, against Jalâlo'ddin; who, on notice of their march, put himself at the head of his army to meet them; and found them just beyond a town called Birwân, within a day's journey of Gazna, where they were intrenching themselves. Kûtûkû, perceiving troops, flushed with the late success, advancing towards him with so much vigour, thought it best to defer fighting; but when he saw they intended to attack him in his intrenchments, he marched out to meet them. The Mungl van-guard was at first defeated by Jalâlo'ddin's, commanded by Amîn Mâlek; but being supported by fresh troops, they, in their turn, routed the Karazmians. The sultân then advanced at the head of his main body, and attacked the Mungls in the centre, where Kûtûkû himself was posted. The shock was terrible, and for some hours the victory was doubtful: but at last the Mungls fled in disorder to the mountains. A

<sup>b</sup> Abu'lk. ibid. p. 310, & seq.

great number were slain, as well as taken prisoners : and, A.D. 1221.  
it is said, Jalalo'ddin, after reproaching these latter with  
their cruelties, caused nails to be thrust into their ears, to  
revenge the miseries which his subjects had so long suf-  
fered from the Mungls and Tatars<sup>1</sup>.

This is the account given by Nissavi, who wrote the life  
of Jalalo'ddin, and Fadhlallah; but Abû'lghâzî Khân, from  
other authors, represents matters in a different manner.

Jenghîz Khân, impatient to revenge these disgraces, as *Diffension among Jalalo' ddin's genera- rals.*  
soon as Bâmiyân was reduced, marched with so much pre-  
cipitation, that he hardly gave his soldiers time to refresh  
themselves. Gazna (then called Daro'l Mûlk, or *the Royal  
City*), being a very strong place, and provided for a long  
siege, the khân directed his course thither, expecting to  
find Jalalo'ddin : but that prince had left the city fifteen  
days before, and might have stood his ground against his  
pursuer, if an unfortunate accident had not happened in  
his army, after the battle of Birwân. When the booty  
came to be divided, the three Turkish lords pretended  
that the most valuable spoils belonged to them, on account  
of the succours which they had brought. The troops of  
Amîn Mâlek, who were united with the sultân's, insisted  
that the custom of war should be followed, and the booty  
equally divided. The quarrel began about a very fine  
Arabian horse, which one of the three Turkish com-  
manders demanded, and the others refused to give up.  
Certain it is, the auxiliary troops retired ; and their de-  
sertion proved extremely prejudicial to Jalalo'ddin's affairs.  
The chief reason for his quitting Gazna was, to give his  
disunited troops time to rejoin him. He did all that was  
possible to bring the three Turkish commanders to listen  
to reason : he wrote and sent to them several times ; re-  
presenting the ruin which must attend their separation,  
and the advantages which might arise from their union.

They at length suffered themselves to be persuaded by *The sultân overtaken.*  
the sense of danger, but it was too late : for Jenghîz Khân, informed of what was in agitation, sent sixty thousand  
horse to seize the passes, and prevent their joining the  
sultân ; who, finding himself deprived of this powerful  
aid, retired towards the river Sind, or Indus. There he  
halted, in a part where the stream was most rapid, and  
the place confined, with a view both to take from his sol-  
diers a desire of flying, and prevent the Mungls from  
bringing up all their army to engage at once. Ever since

<sup>1</sup> Nissavi, Fadhl, apud La Croix, p. 303, & seq.

A.D. 1221. his departure from Gazna he had been tormented with a severe colic; yet, at a time when he suffered most, hearing that the enemy's van-guard was arrived at a place called Herder, he quitted his litter, and mounted on horseback: then, marching in the night with his chosen troops, surprised the Mungls; and having cut them almost all to pieces, returned to his camp with a considerable booty.

*Battle at  
the Indus.*

Jenghîz Khân, finding by this event, that he had to do with a vigilant enemy, proceeded with great circumspection. When he approached the Indus, he drew out his army in battalia: to Jagatay he gave the command of the right wing; the left to Oktay; and put himself in the center, surrounded by six thousand of his guards. On the other side, Jalâlo'ddîn prepared for battle: he first sent the boats on the Indus farther off, reserving only one to carry over the sultâna his mother, the queen his wife, and his children: but unluckily the boat bulged, when they were going to embark; so that they were forced to remain in the camp. The sultân in person assumed the command of the main body. His left wing, drawn up under the shelter of a mountain, which prevented the whole left wing of the Mungls from engaging them at one time, was conducted by his chief wazîr; and his right wing by Amîn Mâlek. This lord began the battle, and forced the enemy's left wing to give ground, in spite of all the troops which sustained them. The right wing of the Mungls likewise wanting room to extend itself, the sultân made use of his left as a body of reserve; detaching from thence squadrons to sustain the other troops. He himself, at the head of the main body, charged that of Jenghîz Khân, with so much resolution and vigour, that he put it into disorder, and penetrated to the place where the khân had at first taken his station; but that prince had retired from thence, to give orders for all the troops to engage.

*The sultân  
defeated.*

This disadvantage had like to have lost the Mungls the battle; for the report being spread all over the army, that the sultân had broken through the main body, the troops were so discouraged, that if the khân had not immediately rode from place to place to shew himself, they would certainly have fled. In short, what gained him the battle, was the orders which he gave to Bela Neviân to cross the mountain, if practicable, and attack the sultân's left wing; which the khân observed had been much weakened by the several detachments. Bela, accordingly, conducted by a guide, marched betwixt rocks and dreadful precipices; and,

and, attacking that disabled wing behind, obliged it to give way. A.D. 1222.

The sultân's troops, which were in all but thirty thousand, much fatigued with having fought ten whole hours against more than three hundred thousand men, were seized with a panic, and fled. In this confusion, his eldest son was taken prisoner. One part of the troops retired to the rocks, on the banks of the Indus, where the enemy's horse could not follow them. Many others, closely pursued by the Mungls, threw themselves into the river, some of whom happily crossed over; while the rest, placing themselves round their prince, continued the fight, through despair.

Meantime Jenghîz Khân, desirous to take Jalâlo'ddîn alive, ranged his forces in form of a bow, of which the river represented the string. The sultân, on this occasion, considering that, as he had scarce seven thousand men left, if he continued the fight any longer he should certainly fall into the enemy's hands, began to think of providing for his safety. He knew he had but one course to follow, and that a very dangerous one, which was, to cross the Indus; and yet he resolved to venture it, rather than suffer himself to be taken: but before he put this resolution in practice, he went to embrace and bid adieu to his mother, wives, children, and friends. Having, with tears in his eyes, broken from those dear objects of his affection, he put off his armour and arms, excepting his sword, bow, and quiver: then mounting a fresh horse, he spurred him into the river; and notwithstanding the rapidity and breadth of the stream, the beast carried him safely over. In gratitude for which service, the sultân caused him to be kept with care ever after; nor would, for the four or five years following, ride him in any dangerous action.

When he was in the middle of the river, he stopped to insult Jenghîz Khân, who was come to the bank to admire his courage, and emptied his quiver of arrows against him. Several brave Mungl captains would have thrown themselves into the river to swim after Jalâlo'ddîn; but the grand khân would not permit them, telling them, this prince would defeat all their attempts. Then, putting his finger on his mouth, and turning towards his children, he said, "Any son should wish to spring from such a father. He who dares defy such dangers as this prince has now escaped, may expose himself to a thousand others; and a wise man, who has him for his enemy, must be always on his guard."

Mehemed

A.D. 1221. Mehemed Nissâvi, author of Jalâlo'ddîn's life, reports, *Drowns his family.* that the sultân, pierced with the shrieks of his family, who begged him to deliver them from being slaves to the Mungls, commanded them to be all drowned; and that his orders were immediately executed: but other historians, who have given a very full relation of all that passed in the battle, assure us, that Jenghîz Khân, presently after it, having caused all the sultân's wives and children to be brought before him, ordered the males to be killed; among whom was his eldest son, then but eight years of age. He afterwards employed divers to recover the treasure which Jalâlo'ddîn had thrown into the river.

*Exploits in India.*

This prince, as soon as he was landed safe in India, ascended a tree, to pass the night secure from wild beasts. Next day, as he walked melancholy along the banks, to see if any of his people appeared, he perceived a troop of soldiers, with some officers, three of whom proved to be his particular friends. These, at the beginning of the defeat, had found a boat, in which they sailed all night, with much danger, from the rocks, shelves, and violence of the current. Soon after, he was joined by three hundred horse, who informed him of four thousand more, saved by swimming over two leagues from thence: the sultân went to meet them, and promised to provide for their necessities. Mean time Jamâlarrazad, an officer of his household, who was not at the battle, knowing that his master and many of his people had escaped, ventured to load a very large boat with arms, provisions, money, and stuff to clothe the soldiers, and cross over to him; for which eminent piece of service Jalâlo'ddîn appointed him great steward of his household, and surnamed him Ektiâro'ddîn, that is, *the Chosen, or, the Glory of the Faith.* And from this time things succeeded happily with the sultân. He fought several battles in Hindostân, and was at first victorious; he also made conquests and alliances. But at length the Indian princes becoming jealous of his prosperity, they conspired against and obliged him to repass the Indus. Others say, his return to Persia was voluntary, in order to recover what he could of his dominions, in the absence of Jenghîz Khân. But we must leave him at present, to return to the conqueror <sup>x</sup>.

<sup>x</sup> Fâdhl, Nissâvi Marakesh. apud La Croix, p. 317. & seq.

## S E C T. V.

*Conquests in Irán, from the Battle of the Indus to Jenghîz Khân's Return into Tartary.*

THE victory at the Indus cost Jenghîz Khân twenty thousand men; and since he invested Talkhân, he had lost no fewer than two hundred thousand men; yet he neglected not to send advice of his success to the governors of provinces, and particularly to Hubbe and Suida: who having now finished the conquest of Persian Irâk, he ordered them to enter Azerbejân, the ancient Media Atropatia, in the spring of the year 619. They, being then in winter-quarters at Senoravend, a city of that province, which they had taken by storm, sent immediately for a supply of troops from Khorassân.

Persian  
Irâk sub-  
dued.

Hejra 619.  
A.D. 1222.

The two generals, having received this reinforcement, marched to Ardebil or Ardevil, a strong city, and of great trade, within two leagues of the mountain Savelân; which, after some little resistance, surrendered at discretion. The Mungls killed the greater part of the people; and, after plundering, burnt the city. From hence they marched to Tabriz or Tauris, the capital of Azerbejân, whose governor, being a man of courage, rejected all their offers. He fatigued them with numerous sallies, and drew them frequently into ambuscade. But at last, being forced to a pitched battle, was defeated: yet he escaped to the city, and might have held out a long time, if the inhabitants had not compelled him forthwith to make proposals to the Mungl generals, who readily consented to them; for fear the Georgians, who were esteemed the most valiant people of all Asia, should declare for the inhabitants. After this exploit, being informed, that there were some commotions at Ispâhân, they returned to Irâk: but the author of them having been slain by his party, they did not punish the inhabitants.

The Georgians, expecting to be attacked in their turn by the Mungls, were resolved to prevent them; and, though it was the midst of winter, entered Azerbejân, in quest of the troops which the two generals had left in that country; but finding them more numerous than they expected, and having been worsted in two encounters, they returned to Teflis, from whence they sent to ask assistance from all their neighbours; but none would afford them any.

Ardebil  
and Tauris  
yield.

A.D. 1222. In revenge, they sent strong parties to molest all those who favoured the Mungls. Mean time Hubbe and Suida sent troops to oppose them; and, as soon as the season permitted, marching from Irâk, with all their forces entered Georgia: but, finding all the passes secured, they proceeded no farther. However, on their return to Azerbejân, they took and plundered Marâgha, which, they were informed, had afflusted the Georgians.

*Marâgha taken.*

From hence they went into quarters of refreshment at Ardebîl; where advice arriving of a revolt at Hamadân, Hubbe marched thither to appease it. The governor Jamalo'ddîn, seeing himself forsaken by the rest of the mutineers, sent the Mungl rich presents, with offers of submission; but the general insisted that he should surrender at discretion. He was about to comply, when a captain, named Fakîhi, heading the troops which were in the city, had the boldness to make a sally; but being repulsed and pursued, a great number of the enemy, entering promiscuously with his soldiers, seized the gates, and became masters of the place. The victors afterwards reduced Salmas and Kûy, in the western part of Azerbejân; Nâkshîvân, in the province of Al Rân; and Ganjeh, which is now the capital.

*Georgians defeated.*

Here the Mungls being informed that an army of Georgians were advancing to attack them, it was resolved that Hubbe should lie in ambuscade with five thousand men, while Suida marched with the bulk of the army as if he meant to give them battle. This stratagem had the desired effect; the Georgians being charged both in front and rear at the same time, thirty thousand of them were cut in pieces. They who escaped spread a report through the country, that the Mungls were coming to besiege Teflîs, which threw the inhabitants into the utmost terror. However, the soldiers knowing the difficulty of the passes, ran to guard them; and the Mungls, disheartened at the many narrow defiles, immediately retreated<sup>1</sup>.

*Mungl detachments.*

It is now time to know what Jenghîz Khân was doing in Khorassân. This prince, after the battle with Jalalo'ddîn, through the severity of the winter, was obliged to take up his quarters on the borders of Hindustân, and repose his harassed army. On the approach of spring he sent out troops to make new conquests. Eighty thousand were detached toward Herât; which had revolted, under the command of Ilenu Neviân; and twenty thousand,

<sup>1</sup> Fadhl. apud La Croix, p. 323. & seq.

under Bela, or Bala, marched towards Multân in India, to A.D. 1222. oppose the sultân, if he appeared on that side. Oktay was sent, with the troops under his command, to conquer Gazna; and Jagatay was supplied with sixty thousand men, in order to secure the provinces of Send and Kermân against Jalâlo'ddîn; but the sultân returned into the latter as soon as he heard that Jenghîz Khân had marched into Mogolistân, upon advice that Shidaskû, khân of Tangût, had taken the city of Kampion from his governor, and that the Kitayans were inclined to revolt.

On this intelligence Jenghîz Khân sent orders to his brother Utakîn, and marched with the troops that remained with him as far as Kandahar, which he took. *Kandahâr taken.*

Some time after the reduction of this fortress, Multân, a city of India, was subdued by Bela Neviân, who had orders to conquer Lahûr also; but as he was informed there was in that place a stronger army than his own, he did not go thither. A Patân prince, named Kobâdia, had sent those forces; thinking he had more reason to provide against the Mungls than against Jalâlo'ddîn: for although the sultân was then in arms on his frontiers, yet he had only a few troops with him, and could only make a flight irruption into the territories of a prince named Râna, whom he flew for having insulted him in his distress.

Ilenku executed the orders he had received concerning Herât with much cruelty. The people of this country, after they had made peace with Tuli Khân, revolted, on the appearance of Jalâlo'ddîn, killed the governor Abûbekr, with those of his party, and elected Mubarezzo'ddîn in his room. Kûtuktû received immediate orders to chastise them, but was prevented by his defeat at Birwân; so that the khân had been obliged to defer his vengeance till this time. Ilenku had orders to ruin all the country; and it employed him six months to execute his commission. The Mungls boasted, that they had destroyed in this expedition above one million six hundred thousand persons. *Slaughter at Herât.*

Oktay, whose orders were to punish Gazna, no sooner arrived in that country than he exercised all sorts of Gazna besieged, cruelties. Not that this prince was naturally bloody, but and taken. he knew his father to be so, and that he hated those people to whom he owed the loss of his armies. After he had subdued all the places of least strength, he invested the capital Gazna, then called Dâro'l Mulk, or the Royal City, because it had been the metropolis of the Gazni sultâns. This city was provided with all things necessary to sustain a siege, had a strong garrison, with a brave and experienced

A.D. 1225. experienced governor. The inhabitants, expecting no mercy from the khân, were resolved to make a desperate defence. They made frequent sallies on the besiegers, several times destroyed their works, and broke above a hundred of their battering-rams; but one night, after an obstinate engagement, in which Oktay fought in person, to encourage his soldiers, who began to be intimidated, one side of the city walls fell down, and filling up the ditch, a great number of Mungls easily entered sword in hand. The governor, seeing all lost, at the head of his bravest soldiers, charged among the thickest of his enemies, where he and his followers were slain. However, Gazna was not entirely ruined, nor did all the inhabitants perish; for after the pillage had lasted four or five hours, Oktay ordered it to cease, and taxed the people who were left alive at a certain rate, to redeem themselves and the city. This prince continued here till the whole province was reduced, and then went to rejoin his father in Tartary.

*Jagatay enters Kermân.*

*Sickly climate.*

Meantime Jagatay having entered Kermân, the ancient Karamania of Persia, took, by degrees, all the cities in that province. After he had reduced Tîz, one of the first cities, with some other places, which he destroyed, he proceeded to Kelânjer, a country bordering on Hindustân, where, intending to pass the winter, the soldiers, by the help of their slaves, built houses, cultivated gardens, and kept flocks of sheep, as if they intended to make a settlement; but when the scorching winds began to blow, to which they were not accustomed, almost all of them fell sick, while the greater part of those who lived became so weak and languid that they were not fit for service. By this distemper the country of Fârs, or Pârs, which is the proper Persia, and that part of Khûzestân which belonged to Kayâf's'ddîn, sultân Jalâlo'ddîn's younger brother, escaped for this time the invasion of the Mungis. Jagatay, by removing his troops from one place to another, gradually restored them to health; and finding the slaves which the soldiers had taken were a burthen, ordered the throats of the greater part of them to be cut. Then having committed the care of the conquered countries to one of his lieutenants, he, pursuant to his father's orders, directed his course to Bâlkh, where the general rendezvous was appointed<sup>m</sup>.

<sup>m</sup> Fadhl Nissavi, ap. La Croix, p. 331, & seq. Abu'lg. p. 139.

Jenghîz Khân, after the reduction of Kandahâr, decamped, and continued his march towards the Jihûn or Amû. He passed the rest of the summer in a delightful place, to the south of that river, where he informed himself concerning the antiquities of Bâlkh, and particularly about Zeridesht Behrâm, or Zoroaster, the famous philosopher, who instituted fire-worship. Here he received letters from the khân of Tangût, promising submission, and to become tributary, provided the khân would pardon what was past. To prevent his forming any more enterprises, an answer was sent, that his offers were accepted. He afterwards crossed the Amû in order to keep in awe all those who had any inclination to rebel. Then having sent notice to the generals, dispersed through the provinces, to follow him, he proceeded to Bokhâra. There again he had a conversation with the learned about the Mohammedan religion; to every article of which he assented, except the necessity of making a pilgrimage to Mecca.

The khân returns to Bokhâra.

Having passed the winter at Bokhâra, he proceeded to Samarkand, where he spent most part of the year; and intending to hold a general diet the next year at Tonkât, sent mandates to the princes, governors, and generals, to repair to that place. As Hubbe and Suida had instructions to return by Dârbend, round the Caspian Sea, they no sooner received his orders than they entered Shîrwân, and took Shamâkiya, the capital, which they treated with rigour for its resistance, and then changing their measures, they spared both the country and people. This lenity they practised in order to obtain of the king a passage by Dârbend; but that prince, fearing their design was to seize that fortress, and drive him out of his kingdom, denied their request under various pretences; till at length the generals, finding they made use of intreaties to no purpose, proceeded to threats, which procured a grant of their demands, and officers to conduct them on their march.

Hubbe and  
Suida pass  
through  
Dârbend.

The Mungl generals, in viewing Dârbend, admired its natural as well as artificial strength, and confessed it was not to be forced. There is between the sea and the mountains, a space, about a quarter of a league wide, which is enclosed by two walls, built of gravel and shells pounded together, a composition harder than any stone, and six foot thick. They are founded on the rock, and reach from the sea to the mountain; so that all passengers were

A.D. 1223.

obliged to pass through by the iron gates (E) which were in these walls<sup>a</sup>.

*Defeat the  
Daghes-  
flans.*

The Alâni, at present called the Tartars of Dâghestân, were extremely surprised at the unexpected appearance of the Mungls, and fearing they had some design on their liberty, broke up the roads and destroyed the provisions. The generals, provoked at this conduct, took and ruined their chief city Tarku. They afterwards surprised Terki, the capital of the Cherkassians, who were joined with them, as well as the Kalmûk Tartars, bordering on the Wolga and Caspian Sea. However, foreseeing that if these three nations raised all their forces, they should not be able to withstand them, the Mungl generals sent messengers to assure the Kalmûks, that they were of the same nation with themselves; that they asked nothing but to return to their own country; and desired them to be arbitrators of the war. The Kalmûks, moved by these reasons, and more perhaps by presents, recalled their troops, so that the Alâni and Cherkassians, seeing themselves deprived of their assistance, soon lost courage, and gave way to their enemies.

*Enter Kip-  
jâk.*

The generals, having crossed the Wolga, by favour of the Kalmûks, entered into Kipchâk, or Kapshâk; but being obliged to pass the winter there, as they arrived late in the year, their long stay gave rise to feuds between them and the inhabitants. The Mungls fortified their camp, and sent to Tushi Khân, who was not far off, for assistance. That prince detached the greater part of his troops, who having joined the others in spite of the enemy, formed a considerable army, which, without much trouble, constrained those people to submit. Mean time Tushi, being obliged to repair to court, left Hubbe and Suida to command in Kipchâk during his absence, with orders to attack the Nogays, who had offended him, and were the only people unsubdued in Kipchâk. By means of the frozen rivers the Mungls had an early passage to Astrakhân, situate in an island of the Wolga, near the Caspian Sea, which they subdued. The war lasted six months; at the end of which the Nogays acknowledged

*Astrakhân  
taken.*

<sup>a</sup> La Croix, p. 339, & seq. Abu'lq. p. 142.

(E)<sup>b</sup> Thence called Demîr bend, or Derbend, signifies in Kâpi by the Turks, and Bâbal-Persian, *the fastenings of the abwâb*, that is, *the gate of gates*, or *the shut gates*. gâtes, by the Arabs. Dâr-

Tushi Khân for their sovereign, and Jenghîz Khân for their grand khân. The generals continued in this country till Tushi returned from the diet in autumn 1224, and then left it with the troops they had brought thither.

If Jenghîz Khân was severe to those who offended him, he was kind and bountiful to such as did him any service. *The khân's bounty.*

When he left Samarkand he freed the people of that province for several years, from paying the usual tribute, because their behaviour had pleased him ; and, to give the lords some particular marks of his affection, he remitted, for their lives, the taxes due from the nobility to their prince. The joy produced by this generous treatment was damped with seeing the queen Turkhân Kâtûn, followed by her ladies, and they by all the great officers of sultân Mohammed, who had been taken, led in triumph before the grand khân's army, who was going to pass through those countries where she was still beloved. After them the sultân's throne and crown were borne in state<sup>o</sup>.

The grand khân having crossed the river Sihûn, or Sîr, arrived at Tonkat in the beginning of the year 601 ; which city he had chosen to hold the diet in, because it was agreeably situated, and was able to furnish all things necessary for so numerous an assembly. The princes and generals being returned from their respective expeditions, Jenghîz Khân, with carelessness, received his sons, who kneeled down, kissed his hand, and made him presents, which were very considerable ; but those of Tushi, or Juji, were by far the most valuable ; for, besides other rare particulars, there were a hundred thousand horses, white, dappled-greys, bays, black, and spotted, of each sort an equal number. In return the grand khân opened his treasures, and loaded them with gifts. He gave public feasts for a whole month ; but the most sumptuous banquet was on their return from a general hunting, in which several thousand beasts of all kinds had been slain : the falconers furnished variety of birds. Their liquors, besides balperinj, or metbeglin, griut, or beer, and kammez, or kimis, consisted of excellent wines from the southern countries, and sherbets, which they had learned to make from the Persians.

When this great feast was ended, preparations were made for holding the diet in the plain of Tonkat ; which, though seven leagues in length, could scarcely contain all the tents and attendants of the great personages ; who,

Hejra 601.  
A.D. 1224.

*Comes to  
Tonkat.*

<sup>o</sup> La Croix, p. 348, & seq.

A.D. 1224. besides the governors, came from the most distant provinces of Kitay, Mogulistân, Karakitay, Turân, and Irân. The greater part of them also had brought thither their moveable houses. When the khân's quarters were marked out, which took up near two leagues in compass, and the streets, squares, and markets were appointed, they pitched the tents for his household. That erected for the diet, was capable of containing at least two thousand persons; and, to distinguish it from the rest, it was covered with white. It had but two gates, one named the Imperial, for the khân alone to enter at; the other called the Public Gate; which last had guards for state. A magnificent throne was erected for the emperor; nor did they forget to place on an eminence the black felt carpet, on which that prince was proclaimed grand khân: which emblem of the poor state of the Mungls at that time, was held in great veneration by them, as long as their empire lasted.

*with great pomp.* There appeared a great deal of magnificence in their dress and equipages, especially their saddles, and other horse furniture, which were set with precious stones and gold. On the top of most tents were placed streamers of the richest silks, of divers colours; which afforded a very gay prospect. Although the affairs which were to settle in so vast an empire were very numerous and complex, yet Jagatay, the keeper of Jenghîz Khân's laws, had put them in so good a method, that all things were regulated without any trouble. The khân, who loved to speak in public, took an occasion to make a speech in praise of those laws, to which he imputed all his victories and conquests. As a farther proof of his greatness, he ordered all the ambassadors who had followed the court, as well as all the envoys and deputies from the countries he had subdued, to be called in; and having given them audience at the foot of the throne, dismissed the assembly.

*Tushi returns.* After the session, Tushi Khân, among the rest, took leave of his father, in order to return to Kipchâk; the grant of which kingdom the khân confirmed to him. On his arrival there, the two generals, Hubbe and Suida, put their troops into his hands, and returned to court, where they were received with great honour<sup>p</sup>.

*Mungl Daughters.* The Chinese account of this western expedition differs in many particulars from that which we have given. Their authors, however, justly observe, that since the time the

<sup>p</sup> La Croix, p. 353, & seq. Abu'lgh. p. 144.

Mungls first issued out of their sandy deserts, they did did nothing but plunder, kill, burn, and destroy kingdoms. They accuse them of all sorts of crimes, the greatest of which was that of extirpating royal families root and branch; so that both men and spirits (says the history), burst with vexation, and called for vengeance. Other Chinese authors relate, that, in the first fourteen years of the Mungl empire, there were slain one thousand eight hundred and forty-seven myriads, (or eighteen millions four hundred and seventy thousand people), by the founder Jenghîz Khân<sup>r</sup>.

A D. 1224.

## S E C T. VI.

*Conquest of the Kingdom of Hya, and the Progress made in that of Kitay, till the Death of Jenghîz Khân.*

SOON after the diet of Tonkat was dissolved, Jenghîz Khân departed with all his court; obliging the captive queen to attend him continually, mounted on a chariot, and loaded with irons, as the proud monument of his victories in the West. But while the conqueror is on his journey to the East, let us return thither, and see what was doing during the time he was absent from his own dominions. The emperor had left the government of them all to his brother Wa-che, who managed affairs with great prudence and dignity. In 1220, the princess Tyau-li repaired to the regent's court, to give notice of the death of her husband Lyew-ko, king of Lyau-tong. Wa-che received her with magnificence, and sent her back, with troops, to govern in that country till the return of the khân; which trust she discharged with great ability.

On the other hand, Mûhûli, his lieutenant-general in China, acquired much reputation in the war which he maintained against both the emperor of the Kin, and the king of Hya. In 1218, Chang-yau, a general of the army, assembled a large body of troops to revenge the death of another general, his friend, murdered by an officer who was his enemy. Coming to Tse-kin-quan, a famous fortress in the mountains of Pe-che-li, he was attacked by Mingan, and fought bravely; but, his horse falling, he was taken: and, being brought before the vic-

Affairs of  
Lyaut  
and of  
Kitay.

A.D. 1224. tor, refused to kneel ; saying, as he was a general himself, he would rather die first. Mingan, admiring his greatness of soul, dismissed him with honour, and treated the other officers well ; yet, at the same time, ordered Chang-yau's father and mother to be put to death. The son, hearing this doom, after debating the matter with himself, to save their lives, offered to enter into the Mungl troops ; and few officers were equal to him, or did the khân more service.

*Cities recovered.*

Mûhûli, accompanied by his son Pûlû, or Polû, recovered the places in Shan-sî, which the Kin had retaken, and fortified. Tay-ywen-su, the capital, sustained three assaults ; but the officers, perceiving that they could neither defend the city, nor cut their way through the Mungls, killed themselves. The officers of other places followed their example, rather than fall into the hands of Mûhûli's troops. The emperor of the Song, (or the Southern China) who had already declared war against the Tartars of Nyu-che, or the Kin, refused to make peace with them, and, by edict, exhorted his subjects to drive them out of China. Hereupon the Kin emperor sent his son and heir against the Song ; which war was carried on with various success.

*Changyau's exploits.*

In the beginning of the year 1219, Chu-yu Kau-ki, minister of the Kin, built a little city within the inclosure of Kay-fong-fû, in Honan, and fortified it very strongly. In April, Chang-yau, having been nominated to the command of a body of troops by Mûhûli, took several cities in the district of Pau-ting Fu ; and then went to attack Kya-gu, the murderer of his friend, who was intrenched on a mountain ; but not being able to force his works, he cut off his supplies of water, and obliged him to surrender. Chang-yau tore out his heart, and sacrificed it to the manes of his friend. Afterwards, retiring with his people to Man-ching, a little unfortified city to the north-west of Pau-ting Fu, the Kin general, named U-tsyen, came and besieged him ; but Chang-yau, ordering all the useless men to mount the walls, fellied with the bravest of his soldiers, and cut his way with great slaughter through his enemies. Having escaped this danger, he found himself surrounded by a body of reserve. At the first onset two of his teeth happened to be struck out with an arrow ; but becoming rather more furious, although he had lost almost all his men, he broke through them ; and, with the few soldiers who were left, plundered four little cities which were in his road. Afterwards, receiving some reinforcements,

ments, he acquired great fame by the conquests which he made in the districts of Ching-ting Fû, and Pau-ting Fû, in Pe-che-li. A.D. 1224.

In the course of this same year, the Mungls, by their arms, made Korea tributary; and, at the end of it, the Kin emperor put to death his prime minister Kau-ki, who was accused of being, by his bad advice, the cause of all the evils which the empire suffered. In August 1220, Mûhûli, arriving at Man-ching, near Pauting Fû, sent a party to the pass of Tau-ma-quan, a fortress in the mountains. These having defeated a detachment of the Kin, the governor of Ching-ting-fû submitted, and delivered that important place to Mûhûli, who ordered his army to set at liberty all the prisoners they had made, forbidding slaughter and plunder under the severest penalties<sup>1</sup>.

The Kin, after the death of Kau-ki, took proper measures for defending their dominions. He was succeeded by Su-ting, who had both experience and skill in military affairs. This minister had found means to raise an army of two hundred thousand men in Shan-tong, with which he frustrated the designs both of the Chinese emperor and king of Hya, in Shen-si, who were forced to raise the siege of Kong-chang Fû. The army which the Kin had in Shan-tong, being encamped at Wang-ling-kan, the general sent twenty thousand foot to attack Mûhûli, who lay near Tsi-nan Fû, the capital of that province, which he had taken. The Mungl general having had notice hereof, advanced against this detachment, which he defeated. Afterwards he attacked the enemy's army drawn up on the river side, and after a furious battle, routed him entirely.

Mûhûli, after this victory, made several conquests, and invested Tong-chang Fû; but perceiving it was very strong, converted the siege into a blockade. In May, 1221, the garrison, wanting provisions, attempted to retreat; but the officer who commanded the blockade, entirely defeated them, killing seven thousand, and then took possession of the city. Mûhûli, from Tong-chang Fû, marched to Tay-tong Fû in Shan-si; then passing the Wang-ho, forty leagues west of that city, entered the country of Ortûs, and spread terror through the kingdom of Hya; so that its king was obliged to submit to the Mungl general. He committed no hostilities this year against Hya, but attacked the Kin. He blocked up Yan-

<sup>1</sup> Gaubil, p. 42, & seq.

A.D. 1224. gan, a city of Shen-si; but found it too well fortified and provided to be quickly taken. He slew more than seven thousand of the enemy; subdued Kya-chew, which he fortified, and some other places.

*Mûhûli's  
death and  
character.*

In 1222 Mûhûli made many conquests in the district of Ping-yang Fû, and the year following attacked Fong-tyang Fû in Shen-si. He afterwards repassed the Whang-ho, and having driven the Kin out of several posts in Shan-si, as well as recovered Pû-chew, he set out upon another expedition; but fell sick at When-hi-hyen. Perceiving himself near his end, he sent for his brother Tay-fun, and earnestly recommended to him the reduction of Pyen-king as a matter of great importance. After having laid this injunction upon him he expired, aged fifty-four years, forty of which he had served in the army with success.

Mûhûli was considered by all the Mungls as the first captain of their empire, and Jenghîz Khân had an entire confidence in him. The great dignity to which he was advanced did not lessen his military ardour; and in all the grand enterprises he underwent as much fatigue as the meanest soldier. The khân, before he was proclaimed emperor, retreating to his camp by night, after a defeat, and not able to find it for the snow which had fallen, being much fatigued, lay down upon some straw to sleep, when Porchi and Mûhûli took a covering, and held it over him all night in the open air. This action gained them much reputation, and rendered their families in great esteem among the Mungl princes.

In September 1224, Sun, the emperor of the Kin, died, and was succeeded by his son Shew-su, who immediately made peace with the Hya.

A.D. 1225.

*The khân  
returns.*

In the beginning of the year 1225 the emperor Jenghîz Khân, having passed through Tartary, arrived at the river Tila, after near seven years absence in the West; and it is easy to judge what impression his return made in the minds of the neighbouring powers, whether friends or enemies. Tyauli, queen of Lyau-tong, came to meet that monarch, with the princes her nephews. That lady, who had a well cultivated understanding, fell on her knees to acknowledge Jenghîz Khân, and make him compliments on his great conquests. The emperor, in his turn, condoled her on the death of the king her spouse; praising the manner in which she governed her kingdom, and promised his protection to her whole family. Tyau-li, after returning thanks, besought him to nominate Pi-tu king of Lyau-tong,

tong. The khân could not help admiring the justice and prudence of this lady; for Pi-tu was son of Lyew-ko, by another venter, but his mother was dead; and Tyau-li had several children by the same king. As Shen-ko, the eldest, had all the qualifications proper for governing, the emperor was of opinion that they should reign in conjunction; but the queen persisting in her request for Pi-tu, the monarch nominated him, and had the goodness to relate to her the great exploits he had performed in the West. The emperor kept Shen-ko at his court; and ordered a great lord to conduct the queen and the new king into Lyau-tong<sup>a</sup>.

Li-te, king of Hya, had afforded shelter to two great enemies of the Mungls, of which the khân loudly complained: but that prince, far from making satisfaction, took those obnoxious persons into his service. At this new provocation Jenghîz Khân marched in person, and in February 1226 took Yet sina. After this conquest, the Mungls forced all the fortresses, which were very numerous, between that city, Ninghya, Kya-yu-quan, and Kan-chew. Sû-chew, Kan-chew, and Si-lyang Fû, were also taken. The king of Hya died in July, of grief, to see his dominions become a prey to the Mungls. In November the khân took Ling-chew, to the south of Ning-hya; and then encamped thirty or forty leagues to the north of the former.

Oktay, his third son, accompanied by Chahan, marched into Honan, and laid siege to Kay-fong Fû, capital of that province, the residence of the Kin emperor; but they were obliged to relinquish the enterprize. However, in 1227, marching into Shen-si, they took most of the fortresses that were in the districts of the metropolis Si-ngan Fû; then advanced towards the places and forts which the Kin had in the territories of Fong-tfyang Fû and Han-chong Fû. Oktay having gone into Tartary, and left the command to Chahan, the Kin, who concluded his designs were to re-enter Honan, offered new proposals of peace to Jenghîz Khân; which being rejected, they made a last effort. They resolved to think of nothing now but how to defend themselves in Honan; they fortified the passes of the Whang-ho, and the principal cities; they furnished Tong-quan with a great number of troops; and collected an army of two hundred thousand chosen men, commanded by the best officers they had.

A.D. 1226.

*Inva  
des  
Hya.*

A.D. 1227.

*Progr  
ess in  
Honan;*

<sup>a</sup> Gaubil, p. 45, & seq.

A.D. 1227.

and in  
Hya.

Jenghîz Khan, having in the spring left an army to besiege Ning-hya (then called Hya-chew), capital of the kingdom of Hya, sent a great body of troops, who seized the countries of Koko Nor, Qua-chew, and Sha-chew. The khân, at the head of another body, made himself master of Ho-chew and Si-ning; then cutting in pieces an army of thirty thousand men, he besieged Lin-tau Fû, which belonged to the Kin. This city he took, with several others; and proud of so much success, went to pass the summer heats on the mountain Lu-pan in Shen-si.

The king-  
dom de-  
stroyed.

Li-hyen, king of Hya, who succeeded Li-te, being reduced to the last extremity in Ning-hya, surrendered at discretion, in June, and set out for Lu-pan, to do homage to the Mungl emperor; but he had no sooner left the city than he was slain. The place was entirely plundered, and a cruel slaughter made of the inhabitants, the plains being covered with dead bodies: they who escaped the sword fled to the mountains, woods, and caves \*.

Jurjeh  
Turks sub-  
mit.

This is the account given in the Chinese history of the destruction of Hya, called Tangût by the more western writers; who, doubtless for want of proper information, relate this great event with different circumstances. However, they add some other matters, which claim our attention. After the defeat given to the army of Shidasku, king of Tangût, Jenghîz Khân marched against the Turks of Jurjeh, who had assisted him; but as they submitted to pay a yearly tribute, and receive garrisons into their towns; also to furnish the victor with some troops, the emperor proceeded no farther. There he received news from Bâghdâd of the khalif's death: on which advice he ordered new levies to be raised, and in the interim secured, not only the countries dependent on Tangût, as Erghimul, Sinqui, and Egrikaya, but also the neighbouring territories, and particularly the city Sikion, distant from Pe-king only eighty days journey: which otherwise might have given him great trouble when he entered the Southern China.

Death of  
Tushi.

After this wonderful success, he passed the winter in the fruitful country of Tangût; removing his camp from time to time, chiefly towards the borders of Turkestan. But while his court was filled with joy, news came from Kipjak of the death of his eldest son Tushi or Juji, which threw the khân into a deep melancholy, and hindered him from taking any diversions: things even became so indif-

\* Gaubil, p. 49, &amp; seq.

ferent to him, that he appeared scarcely at all affected with the intelligence of a great victory, gained by his lieutenant in the West, over Jalâlo'ddîn. This sultân, as soon as he was informed that the emperor was at a distance from Persia, returned from India into Makrân, with some troops. From thence he repaired to Shîrâs, and afterwards to Ispâhân; into which his friends introduced him secretly, and there augmented his little army. From thence he proceeded to Baghdâd; but not being well received, he defeated the troops which the khalif had sent against him, and retook Tauris.

After these exploits he marched against the Georgians with thirty thousand men; and at his return to Azerbejân, advanced against the Mungls; who having passed the river Amû, in the beginning of the year 623, met him with more numerous forces. A battle ensued, in which Hejra 623.  
A.D. 1226. Jalâlo'ddîn was defeated; and this was the victory of —————— which Jenghîz Khân had received advice.

The Mungls, having gained this advantage against the sultân, made themselves masters of Tauris; while that prince, rallying his forces, harassed his enemies, without ceasing. He afterwards laid siege to Aklât, the capital of Armenia; whither the khalif sent an ambassador to him with presents. From thence he passed into Anatolia, to oblige the Seljûk Turks, who possessed that country, to render him the same respect they had paid his father: but he was defeated by Alao'ddîn Kaykobâd, sultân of Konîyah or Iconium, in conjunction with other princes of Rûm, who yet did not pursue him after the battle, because they were willing that he should keep the Mungls in play. He accordingly gave them no small diversion; but at last they came upon him by surprize, and having entirely routed his forces, plundered his camp. After this misfortune he fled to Mahân, in the confines of Azerbejân, where he lived a whole winter unknown; but being at last discovered, he retired into Kûrdestân, where he was killed four years after Jenghîz Khân's death, by a native of that country, in the house of one of his friends, where he had taken refuge.

As soon as the spring of the year 1226 appeared, and *and Shidasku.* the emperor's troops had arrived at the place of rendezvous, in order to enter Manji or the Southern China, an officer repaired thither, sent by Shidasku, to acquaint the khân, that if he would forgive what was past, his master would in person wait on him. Shidasku took this step for fear the Mungls should attack his fort of Arbaka, to which he

A.D. 1227. he had retired after his defeat. 'The envoy, however, was well received at the court of Jenghîz Khân, who, in an audience, said to him : " You may assure your master, that I will no more think of what is past between him and me ; and that I will grant him my protection." Yet the last order he gave before he died was, that Shidaku, as soon as he came to court, should be put to death ; which command was accordingly executed on him, his children, and his attendants<sup>y</sup>.

*The khân's sickness,* Jenghîz Khân, having thus put an end to the kingdom of Hya, after it had continued near two hundred years under its own princes, intended also to complete the conquest of the empire of the Kin. But in the beginning of the year 1227, he fell sick, on the mountain before mentioned ; and, finding death approach, on the 18th of August, sent for the generals of the army, and declared prince Toley, his fourth son, regent of the empire, till the arrival of his brother Oktay, whom he nominated for his heir and successor. Then, recommending union among them, he said, with regard to the war against the Kin, that, as the best of their troops guarded Tong-quan, and they were also masters of the mountains to the south, it would therefore be difficult to attack and vanquish them, without the assistance of the Song (or Chinese) ; who being their inveterate enemies, he advised his officers to demand a passage through their territories, in order to attack the Kin : that, entering by the cities Tong and Teng, they should march directly to besiege Ta-liyang Fû : that this enterprize would oblige the Kin to call their troops from Tong-quan ; and that, as they would be fatigued by the length of the journey, they might be attacked with advantage. Having given these directions, *and death.* he died aged sixty-six, after a reign of twenty-two years ; and was buried by Toley, in the cave of Ki-nyen, a mountain to the north of the great Kobi, or sandy desert, in Tartary<sup>z</sup>.

According to the western historians of Asia, the emperor gave to Jagatay, Mawara'l-nahr (or Great Bukhâria), and several other countries, by a written instrument, to prevent any difference that might arise between him and the rest of his heirs ; and the dominions so granted took the name of Ulûs Chagatay, that is, *the country of Chagatay*. He also commanded Karasher Nevian to ac-

<sup>y</sup> La Croix, p. 375, & seq.

<sup>z</sup> Gaubil, p. 51, & seq.

company.

company this prince into his new dominions, and pursue A.D. 1227.  
Jalalo'ddin, in case he ventured to invade them <sup>a</sup>.

Jenghîz Khân's death threw all the court into extreme *His burial.* sorrow. His body was interred with great magnificence, in a place which he had chosen for the purpose : it was under a very beautiful tree, where, in his return from the chace, a few days before he fell sick, he had rested himself with much satisfaction. A very noble monument was afterwards erected over his grave : and the people, who came to visit the tomb, planted other trees round it, in such regular order, as rendered it in time one of the finest sepulchres in the world (F). Historians make no mention of men being slain at the grave of this monarch; nor is this barbarous custom countenanced by any law : yet it is certain that this inhumanity was exercised at the funerals of the emperors who succeeded him. The attendants, who accompanied the funeral pomp, put to death those whom they met in the way, in a persuasion that they were predestined to die at that time ; and even cut the throats of the finest horses.

Jenghîz Khân, over and above all the virtues requisite in great conquerors, had a genius fit for forming grand enterprizes, consummate prudence and fortitude to carry them on ; natural eloquence to persuade ; patience, proof against all difficulties ; and resolution able to surmount all obstacles. His temperance was admirable, and his understanding extensive, with a penetrating judgment, which in an instant pointed out the best means for accomplishing his aim : yet it must be confessed, that he was cruel and bloody, and treated his enemies with insolence and rigour <sup>b</sup>.

Jenghîz Khân, with regard to his religion, was a deist ; *his religion* for the first of the laws which he enacted in the great diet at Karakoram, implied the belief of "one God the creator of heaven and earth, who alone gives life and death, riches and poverty, who grants and denies, whatsoever he pleases ; and has over all things an absolute and almighty power." Nevertheless, he granted liberty of conscience to all his subjects.

<sup>a</sup> La Croix, p. 378, & seqq.  
p. 145.

<sup>b</sup> Ibid. p. 382. & seq. Abu'lgh.

(F) According to Abû'l-  
ghâzi Kkan, this place was  
called Burkhan, Kaldin ; and  
that all his descendants, who  
died in those provinces, have  
been interred there.

**A.D. 1227.** *Jenghîz Khân* had a great number of wives; many of whom bore the title of empress. The first and most considerable of the empresses was Hyu-chen, daughter of Te-in, lord of the Honkirat (or Kongorat) tribe; whose sons, Oktay and Toley, were therefore preferred to the rest. The khân excluded the princes of the family born of Chinese women, from inheriting the crown <sup>d</sup>.

This is all that has been transmitted to us from the Chinese history concerning the wives of Jenghîz Khân. The more western historians mention five, who were esteemed above all the rest. The first, Guzi Suren, daughter of the khân of the Naymans, who was his first wife. The second, Purta Kujin, daughter of the khân of Kongorat, the same with Hyu-chen, before mentioned. The third, Obûljin, or Ovisulujin, daughter of Vang Khân, king of the Kara-its. The fourth, Kubku Katun, daughter of the emperor of Kitay. And the fifth, Kulun Khatun, daughter of Dairason, a Mungl khân, of the Merkit tribe, and a lady of extraordinary beauty <sup>e</sup>.

*and children.*  
*His fa-*  
*vourite*  
*sons :*  
*their em-*  
*ployments.*

Jenghîz Khân had a great number of children; but the Chinese history mentions only six sons and three daughters. Chuchi (Juji, or Tufhi), the eldest son, was a great captain; active, impetuous, and delighting in war. Chagatay (or Jagatay, and Zagatay), was universally beloved for his wisdom and affability. Ogotay (Ugoday, or Oktay), possessed an uncommon share of prudence and greatness of soul, was courageous, and loved justice. Toley (or Tuli) was beloved by his father, and generally esteemed by the Mungls. Of Ulache and Kolye-kyen, the two last, nothing remarkable occurs <sup>f</sup>.

The western Asiatic historians affirm, that Tushi, or Juji Khân was grand huntsman of the empire, the most considerable post in it; as hunting was the noblest exercise among the Mungls. He chose Zagatay, or Jagatay, to be chief judge, and gave him the title of director of the Yassa, or laws; which were committed to writing. Oktay, from his wisdom and prudence, was deemed worthy of the post of chief counsellor; nor did his father undertake any thing of consequence without his privy and advice. All military affairs were committed to Tuli's (or Taulay's) care; the generals depended on him, and received the grand khân's orders through his channel <sup>g</sup>.

There seems to have been nothing extraordinary in the laws promulgated by this great conqueror.

<sup>d</sup> Gaubil, p. 53.      <sup>e</sup> Mirk. Marakesh. ap. La Croix, p. 139.  
<sup>f</sup> Gaubil, p. 52.      <sup>g</sup> Mirk. ap. La Croix, p. 140. Abu'lgh. p. 96.  
The

The following are the most remarkable :

A.D. 1227.

To banish idleness out of his dominions, he obliged all his subjects to serve the public in some employment or other. They who went not to the wars, were to work so many days, at certain seasons, on the public structures ; or do some other work for the state : and one day in the week was to be employed particularly in the service of the khân.

Industry  
and  
honesty.

He who stole an ox, or any thing of equal price, was punished with death, and his body cut asunder, in the middle, with a hanger : those who were guilty of lesser thefts received seven, seventeen, twenty-seven, thirty-seven, and so on to seven hundred blows, with a cudgel, in proportion to the value of the thing stolen. But this punishment might be bought off, by paying nine times the value.

By the law concerning marriages, it was ordained, *Marriage* That the man should buy his wife ; and not marry with any maid to whom he was a-kin, in the first or second degree : but in all other degrees it was permitted ; so that a man might marry two own sisters. Polygamy was permitted, and the free use of their women slaves. This at last occasioned that great liberty which every man took, to have as many wives and slaves as he could maintain.

Adulterers were condemned to death ; and a man *Adultery* was permitted, to kill them when surprised in the act. According to Marco Polo, the inhabitants of Kaindu disliked this law ; because it was a custom with them to offer their wives and daughters to their friends when they came to see them, in token of respect and affection. They presented several petitions to Temûjîn, intreating that they might not be deprived of this privilege : the prince, yielding to their importunities, left them to their depravity, and granted what they desired ; but, at the same time, declared, that he considered those people as infamous.

To cultivate amity among his subjects, he extended the ties of relationship very far. He permitted two families to unite, although they had no children living ; by writing a contract between the son of one and daughter of the other, though both dead, and performing the ceremony in their names (G). After this the families became truly allied, as if they had been really married.

Spies,

(G) This custom is still in use with superstitious circumstances, among the Tatars ; but mixed up with superstitions. After drawing the figures

A.D. 1227. Spies, false witnesses, sodomites, and sorcerers, were put to death.

These are some of the principal laws contained in the Yassa of Jenghiz Khân, which remained in full vigour during the reign of Temûjîn, and his successors. Timûr Beg, or Tamerlane, himself, who was born one hundred and eleven years after this prince, caused them to be observed through all his empire; and the Krim Tatars, as well as others, to this day, religiously keep them. Marakeshi affirms, that they were all formed by the grand khân himself; but others say, they were only copied from those which the Orientals heretofore ascribed to Turk, the son of Japhet, the great ancestor of all the inhabitants of Tatar<sup>h</sup>.

## C H A P. XI.

### *The History of Jenghîz Khân's Successors in Mogulestân, or the Country of the Moguls.*

#### S E C T. I.

##### *The Reign of Oktay Khân, second Emperor of the Mungls.*

*Second  
khân Oktay.*

**A**S soon as Jenghîz Khân had expired, Toley, or Tali, who was regent in Oktay's absence, sent officers to notify this event to the princes of his house, and generals of the army. Mean while the war against the Kin was carried on with more vigour than ever; and Ho-chew was taken.

The regent, after he had buried his father, went to meet Oktay. However, the grandees and generals not knowing but Toley intended to make himself emperor, dared not give that title to his brother. After waiting at the river

<sup>h</sup> La Croix, p. 34, & seqq.

of the pretended married couple, and some animals, on the contract, they throw it into the fire; being persuaded, that

all this is carried by the smoke to their children, who thereupon marry in the other world. La Croix.

Kerlen till the arrival of Jagatay, the princes of the imperial house unanimously agreed to adhere to Jenghîz Khân's will; and, by the advice of Yelu Chu-tsay, a general assembly of the great lords and princes was appointed to meet at Karakoram, on the 22d of August, 1229. That day being arrived, Jagatay and Toley, attended by the princes of their house, the chiefs of tribes, and generals of the army, went, and kneeling before Oktay's tent, with a loud voice wished a long and happy reign to prince Oktay; a ceremony never used before on the same occasion by the Mungls. The new emperor made Yelu Chû-tsay his prime minister, and imparted every thing to his brother Toley; those two princes having an entire affection for each other<sup>1</sup>.

When Shew-su, the emperor of Kin (who reigned in *Kitay*, *War-gass*), understood that Oktay was seated on the throne of the Mungls, he sent envoys into Tartary, who, under pretence of complimenting him on his advancement, proposed conditions of peace, which Oktay rejected.

The Chinese history assures us, that, when Oktay ascended the throne, the Mungls had neither fixed laws nor customs for government. The officers appointed to rule the several countries, murdered people at pleasure, and often massacred whole families. In consequence of which outrages Yelu Chu-tsay drew up laws, which the emperor caused to be rigorously observed.

This prince resolved to inform himself concerning the countries which were subject to him in Tartary, China, and the West: and this year they began to settle the quantity of silk, money, and grain, which the Chinese families, or the inhabitants of Kitay under his obedience, were to pay annually. They likewise ascertained the number of horses, oxen, and sheep, which the Mungls were to be taxed at: and the males above fifteen years of age were numbered in the western parts of the empire, in order to determine what they ought to pay: for which purpose Oktay sent a Chinese, well versed in business, to examine into the state of those conquered countries. This prince, from his first accession to the throne, gained the love of his Chinese subjects, by giving to She-tyen-che, and Lyew-he-ma, the command of the Chinese troops in Pe-che-li and Shan-tong. These two lords, with Yen-she, were declared generals of the army. They had distinguished

<sup>1</sup>-Gaubil. Hist. Gentch. Kan. p. 53, & seqq.

A.D. 1229. themselves under Mûhûli ; and their troops were equal in discipline to those of the Mungls.

*Prime ministers.* Among the officers of the tribe of Que-lye (or Kara-it), whose lord was brother of Toley (or Vang Khân), prince of those people, was Chin-hay, a lord esteemed for his valour, integrity, and wisdom. He drank with Jenghîz Khân the water of the river Pan-chuni ; was in all his battles with confederate Tartar princes ; and followed him in his expeditions, both into Kitay and the west of Asia, where he acquired great reputation. Oktay chose this illustrious person not only to be one of his generals, but also as minister of state, in conjunction with Yelu Chû-tsây.

*Division of the empire.* At this time the country of Kin-cha (or Kipjâk), with others to the north, north-east, and north-west, of the Caspian Sea, were governed by Patû or Batû, eldest son of Chuchi (or Juji) ; and Jagatay retained a great part of the western conquests : while other princes of the imperial family ruled over the great regions of Tartary, and other countries : but all these princes depended on Oktay ; and the several generals, governors, commissioners, and others, who served under them in their respective departments, were recalled, cashiered, or changed, at the pleasure of the emperor <sup>k</sup>.

In the same year, the kings of Malay and Industân came in person to Karakoram, to make their court to Oktay. The lord also of the country and city of Isepalano came to make his submission.

*State of the customs.* Jenghîz Khân, after his return from the West, finding himself without a provision either of rice or silks, several of the great lords would have persuaded him, that the conquered lands in Kitay would be of no use, unless the inhabitants were all destroyed ; but that, in case those useless people were once out of the way, their country might be turned into pastures, which would prove of great advantage. This advice furnished Yelu Chû-tsây with a proper occasion to shew the Mungls what knowledge he was master of. He explained to Jenghîz Khân the method which ought to be taken to render the conquest of China useful. Although, said this minister, we have only a small part of that empire, yet if things be well ordered, the cultivated lands, the salt, the iron, the profit of the rivers, and other commodities, might produce to the emperor fifty (H)

\* Gaubil. ubi supra, p. 56, & seq.

(H) Van is ten thousand, and a lyang about six shillings and eight pence English.

van of lyang, or taëls, forty van of tan in rice, and eight hundred thousand pieces of silk; all which might be obtained, without oppressing the people.

Jenghîz Khân was surprised at this discourse of Yelu Chû-tsay; and now acknowledg'd that a conqueror ought to think of something else than to render himself famous by the massacre of enemies: that indeed he should have soldiers to fight; but that there was need of magistrates to govern, peasants to till the ground, merchants to carry on trade, officers to take care of the revenue of the empire, and likewise men of learning. Prince Oktay, who had relished the discourse of that sage minister still better than his father, as soon as he became emperor, committed to his care the management of the taxes. Yelu divided Peche-li, Shan-tong, Shan-si, and Lyau-tong, into ten departments, each of which had a custom-house in the principal city: the other cities were made subordinate to that, and magistrates appointed to govern the people.

Oktay took pleasure in learning the rules of good government: he was desirous also to know the ancient history of China; and even that of Kong-fu-tse, or Confucius, and Chew-kong. The minister gratified his prince in all these particulars; and his regulations, with regard to the customs, were published. They began to put them in execution the beginning of the next year. Four hundred pounds of silk yielded forty lyang: they deducted a tenth out of wine, silk, rice, and corn, for the emperor; and one thirtieth part for lesser wares. After these orders were issued, Oktay went with his brother Toley to make a great hunting match on the river Orkhon; and in summer they removed to the river Tamir<sup>1</sup>.

*and esta-  
bled.*

A.D. 1230

The khân had already commanded Kin-tau (now Si-gan Fû), the capital of Shen-si, to be attacked; and that great city was at length taken. In July, he, with his brother Toley, marched southward, with a formidable army, resolving to destroy the dynasty of the Kin. The Mungls entered Shen-si, and reduced sixty important posts; but were baffled before Tong-quan. Hereupon the army divided into two bodies: Oktay, with one of them, repassed the Whang-ho, to penetrate into Shan-si; while Toley, accompanied by prince Mongko, his eldest son, prince Kew-when-pû-wha, third son of Pye-li Kitay, Jenghîz Khân's fourth brother, and other princes, went to invest Fong-tsyang Fû, in Shen-si. Lyew-he-ma, already men-

*Capital of  
Shen-si  
besieged  
and taken.*

<sup>1</sup> Gaubil, ubi supra, p. 58, & seq.

A.D. 1230. tioned, and Ko-te-hay, son of the general Ko-pau-yu, were in this detachment: but Ganchar was the principal commander under Toley, and the general who distinguished himself most. As Toley attacked the place vigorously, the army which was at Tong-quan undertook to succour it; but that prince rendered all their attempts fruitless; and having defeated the Kin in a battle which continued the whole day, the city was taken in April 1231.

A.D. 1231. One of the Kin officers, who had surrendered to the Mungls, waited on Toley, and convinced him that he lost time as well as men, in attacking the enemy by Tong-quan and the Whang-ho. He assured him, that the proper way was to pass through the country of Han-chong Fû, in Shen-fî; and then he might, in less than a month, enter Honan, by the cities of Tang and Teng. Toley, adopting this advice, sent to consult Oktay Khân, who approved of it; the rather, for its having been conformable to the sentiments of Jenghîz Khân. Hereupon he assembled his generals, and ordered them to be in readiness in January next, declaring, that he intended to reduce Pyen-king, the capital of the Kin empire. At the same time he gave Toley orders to seize Pau-ki, a city some leagues to the southwest of Fong-tfyang Fû; then to march towards Han-chong, and demand passage from the generals of the Song.

*The minister accused through envy.*

At this time the enemies of Yelu Chû-tsay endeavoured to ruin his credit with Oktay. The principal among them were Wa-chin, chief of the Hongkirat tribe, the emperor's maternal uncle; and She-mo-hyen, a great officer of state. These two represented to Oktay, that it was dangerous to trust all the authority with a stranger, such as Yelû; and charged him with a thousand crimes. This minister had persuaded the emperor to name mandarins for the police, the revenues, and the army; who should be independent of each other, and accountable to the emperor, or such ministers as he should appoint for that purpose. He likewise advised that money, filks, and other rewards, should be given to the great lords, instead of cities and provinces; which the khân was inclined to bestow on them, having promised to distribute the conquered countries among them. Yelu represented how dangerous such a measure would be to the royal authority, and ruinous to the people.

The khân, persuaded that his minister's scheme was right, rejected the accusations of Wa-chin and She-mo-hyen, which he gave them to understand proceeded from jealousy and envy. Wa-chin was confounded at the emperor's answer: yet his great birth, joined to much power and

and reputation, would have intimidated a minister less resolute than Yelu; who still stood firm, and continued to press Oktay to appoint mandarins for the above mentioned purposes. He proposed Ching-hay and Nyen-ho to be placed at the head of affairs: but these lords, who had a great deal of merit, and were good military officers, fearing Wa-chin, intreated Yelu not to persist in proposing measures to the emperor which so greatly displeased the grandees: but that minister desired them to allow him to proceed in his own way; promising that they should not suffer for any faults of his.

Some time after, a very virulent accusation having been lodged against She-mo-hyen, *His generosity.* Oktay referred him to be judged by Yelu Chû-tsaiy, who told his majesty, that She-mo-hyen had no other fault but that of being too proud; and that, when the war was finished, they might examine what punishment he deserved. The emperor admired this conduct of his minister; and told his courtiers, that Yelu was the example which they ought to imitate. He afterwards caused the registers to be brought, whereby it appeared, that the gold, the silver, the silks, and other articles received for his duties, were conformable to what Yelu had proposed the year before. The Mungl lords were surprised at this explanation; and they who had so violently persecuted him became his friends and admirers. Hereupon the khân committed to his management all affairs in general, and likewise delivered to him the great seal <sup>m</sup>.

Mean time Toley, pursuant to the emperor's orders, assembled all his troops at Pau-ki, and sent Sû-pû-han to the governor of Myen-chew, in Shen-si, to demand a passage; but this governor put that officer to death; and, by so doing, caused the ruin of an infinite number of people, who were subjects of the Song emperor his master. Toley, enraged at this outrage, declared, that he would make the author repent of his barbarity. He decamped in August; and, having forced the passages, put to the sword the inhabitants of Wha-yang, and Fong-chew, two cities in the district of Han-chong Fû. Then, after he had cut steep rocks to fill deep abysses, and made roads through places almost inaccessible, he came and besieged that city. The people, on his approach, fled to the mountains; and more than one hundred thousand perished, in a place called Shau.

<sup>m</sup> Gaubil. p. 59, & seqq.

A.D. 1231.

Toley, after the reduction of Han-chong Fû, divided his troops, consisting of thirty-thousand horse ; of which one part went westward, to Myen-chew. From thence, after opening the passages of the mountains, that detachment arrived at the river Kyaling ; which they crossed on rafts, made of the wood of demolished houses ; and then marching along its banks, seized many important posts. They proceeded as far as the city of Si-shû-i ; and having destroyed more than one hundred and forty cities, towns, or fortresses, returned to the army. The second detachment encamped between Han-chong Fû and Yong-chew, where they seized an important post in the mountains which are called Tau-tong, six or seven leagues to the north-east of Han-chong Fû. On the other side, the emperor Oktay advanced in October towards Pû-chew, a city of Shan-si, in the district of Ping-yang Fû ; which, after a vigorous defence, being taken, he prepared to pass the Whang-ho.

Honan entered.

Toley, after having surmounted infinite difficulties, arrived in December on the borders of Honan ; and made a feint to attack the capital of the Kin. His entrance, by a passage so little suspected, filled every body with such astonishment, that all fled before him, without the least resistance. On this advice, the emperor of the Kin assembled a great council, wherein several lords proposed to furnish the court, and other principal cities, with good soldiers ; to supply the capital with grain and forage ; to quit the field, and oblige the people to shut themselves up in the cities. These grandes pretended, that Toley had ruined his army by his extraordinary march ; so that they must either die with hunger, or be forced to retreat. At this discourse the emperor heaved a deep sigh, and protested that he would rather perish than see his people abandoned, after what they had suffered during twenty years for his service. He ordered his generals Hota, Illapûa, and others, to march at the head of the army against the enemy ; and they accordingly advanced in the same month to Teng-chew, in the district of Nan-yang Fu<sup>a</sup>.

Toley re-pulsed.

A.D. 1232.

Toley, having crossed the Han on the 31<sup>st</sup> of January, 1232, resolved to attack the Kin army, at the time when they were debating whether they should pass that river to fight the Mungls. The Kin generals ascended the mountain Yu, near Teng-chew, to make their observations ; and placed the cavalry to the north of that moun-

<sup>a</sup> Gaubil, p. 62, & seq.

tain, and the infantry to the south. The Mungls, without losing time, marched forward in a line, and then halted. Hota, judging it difficult to attack them, was for deferring the battle; but the Mungls, advancing, sent a body of horse to fall on the Kin, who firmly maintained their ground. After this attack, the Kin, in their turn, charged their enemies three times; and seeing them open a little, attacked both their right and left wing at once. This charge obliged them to give way; but they retired in good order. Hota was for pursuing them, saying, Toley had with him no more than thirty thousand men; and that his soldiers had not eaten any thing for three days: but Ilapúa was of opinion that there was no occasion for being so hasty; since, as he said, the passage of the Han was cut off, and the Whang-ho not yet frozen.

The Mungls having retired out of sight, the scouts brought the Kin generals word, that they had hid themselves behind a wood; where they made not the least noise, but refreshed themselves in the day, and were on horseback all night. Hota and Ilapúa had departed for Teng-chew, when they received this intelligence: but, presently after, they saw the Mungls issue from the forest, and range themselves in order of battle. The Kin generals, much surprised at this appearance, were going also to draw out their forces. It was only a feint of Toley; who, while they were thus employed, sent a detachment of horse to seize the heavy baggage of the enemy; which accident obliged Hota and Ilapúa to retire to Teng-chew, where they did not arrive till night. They concealed their loss, and sent the emperor word they had gained the battle. These good tidings filled the court at Kay-fong Fû, with joy; and the people, who had retired into that city for its defence, left it again, to return to the country: but in a few days, the van-guard of the Mungls appeared in the field, and carried off a great number of those who had quitted the capital.

In January 1232, the khân passed the Whang-ho at Pe-pû, near Ho-tsin-hyen, in Shan-si; and the borders of Shen-si being not well guarded, he entered Honan, and advanced to Ching-chew, eleven or twelve leagues west-south-west of Kayfong Fû, where he encamped. From thence he sent his general Suputay or Suida, to invest that capital, which was then a hundred and twenty li (I) in

(I) These are li, whereof two hundred, go to a de-  
two hundred and fifty, not gree.

A.D. 1232. compafs. As the garrison did not exceed forty thousand men, it was reinforced by an equal number of veteran soldiers, with a hundred old officers, from the neighbouring cities, besides twenty thousand peasants. Oktay heard of Toley's entrance into Honan, with extreme joy, and ordered him to send succours to Suputay <sup>o</sup>.

As soon as Hota and Ilapúa heard that the court was besieged, they departed immediately, with a hundred and fifty thousand horse and foot, to relieve that great city. As Toley detached no more than thirty thousand cavalry to impede their march, Hota ordered them to be attacked; while the Mungls fought retreating, and disappeared: but in the evening, when the Kin were preparing to encamp, they saw the enemy coming upon them; and at the same time Toley caused the roads to be blocked up with a great number of trees. The Kin arrived within eight miles of Kun-chew (at present called Yu-chew); and not being able to enter, on account of the heavy snow which had fallen, were forced to stop, in order to repose themselves, after the great fatigues which they had suffered for three days before. At the same instant a courier arriving, commanding Hota to march forthwith to the assistance of the court, that general caused the march to be sounded. One part of his army opened its way through the trees; the other, composed of the bulk of the troops, struck off to the mountain San-fong, near Yu-chew.

*Toley defeats the Kin generals.*

Toley, who had assembled all his detachments, on the seventh of February caused this latter body to be attacked on all sides. The Kin, enfeebled with hunger, which they had suffered for some days past, at first defended themselves; but the Mungls repeating their attacks, they were put to a general rout. Several Kin officers alighted, and, charging their enemies sword in hand, were slain. Hota dismounted likewise, with design to fight: but not seeing his companion Ilapúa, he mounted again on horseback; and, followed by a small retinue, took the road to Kun-chew, which Toley had ordered to be left open. That prince, having received a reinforcement from Oktay, during the action, pursued the runaways; and, being joined soon after by the khân himself, they both went to besiege Kun-chew, which was quickly taken, Hota having been slain in the first attack <sup>p</sup>.

His colleague Ilapúa was taken in the battle of San-fong; and being a good officer, as well as universally be-

<sup>o</sup> Gaubil. p. 63. & seq.

<sup>p</sup> Ibid. p. 65. & seq.

loved,

loved, Toley made him great offers to enter into his service : but he modestly declined them ; saying, “ I am one of the principal Kin generals, and desire to die upon my master’s territories. Which request was, with reluctance, granted him, and he was slain. Ho-shang, a prince of the imperial family of the Kin, and a great commander, whose courage, magnanimity, and many noble actions had rendered him famous, to avoid perishing with the multitude, concealed himself, after the rout of San-fong: but having been discovered by some Mungl horse, he desired them to carry him to Toley, to whom he pretended he had something to communicate. They treated him very civilly ; and brought him to the prince, who was asked his name and quality. “ I am (answered he) of the imperial family, and named Ho-shang. I am general of the troops called the faithful, and have beaten your’s three times. I was not willing to die with an obscure croud. I would have my fidelity appear in the light ; and posterity will do me justice.”

Toley, finding it in vain, by courtesy and great promises, to gain over this commander, gave him up to the soldiers ; who cut off his legs, because he would not kneel, and opened his mouth from ear to ear, to hinder him from haranguing. He died satisfied, that he had laid down his life for his sovereign. Several Mungls, charmed with his loyalty, performed in his favour the ceremony of pouring mare’s milk on the ground (K); and wished they might have such a man among the Mungls; supposing that he would rise again.

In February, the Kin troops, which guarded Tong-quan, and the neighbouring posts, received orders to come to the relief of Kay-fong Fū, and bring provisions. The provisions were embarked on the Whang-ho; but presently after fell into the hands of the enemy. The troops which marched out of Tong-quan, and the neighbouring posts, amounted to a hundred and ten thousand foot, and fifteen thousand horse: besides an infinite number of people who followed this army. Nothing could prove more unlucky than this effort which was made by the Kin. Several inferior officers yielded to the Mungls, with the troops which they commanded. To-shan and Na-ho-jun, who led the army, not being able to keep the plain, took to the mountains, where they suffered all sorts of miseries. In the day the sun melting the snows, ren-

*Some taken,  
and put to  
death.*

*The Kin  
army mi-  
serably  
perishes.*

(K) A libation, or sacrifice, in use among the Mungls.  
dered

**A.D. 1232.** dered the roads impassable : at night the frost prevailed ; and they became so slippery that it was impossible to march<sup>q</sup>.

The more vigorous among them continued their route, leaving behind the weaker people ; such as children, women, old men, and others reduced to the last extremity, with whom the lesser roads were filled. The Mungls, being informed of this disorder, sent troops, who put to the sword all such as could not keep up with the rest, and then pursued the army ; which faced about at the mountain Tye-ling, in the district of Honan Fû, in order to receive the enemy : but these troops, who were in a manner half-dead, not being able to hold their arms, were easily dispersed. Their generals To-shan and Na-ho-jun, followed by some horse, endeavoured to escape ; but were intercepted and slain. The Mungls took advantage of these distractions, to reduce Ton-quan, and other posts : but the valour of the governor of Quey-te Fû obliged them to raise the siege of that city.

*Lo-yang besieged.*

In March the Mungls planted their pau (L) against the city of Lo-yang or Ho-nan Fû, where there were only three or four thousand soldiers, who had escaped from the defeat at San-fong. The general, who commanded them, not being able to make any sallies, for a distemper which afflicted him, threw himself headlong from the wall into the ditch, and died. The governor of the place was gone to the relief of the capital, and had left in his room an officer named Kyang-shin, who rendered his name immortal by the defence which he made. He procured from the merchants a great quantity of silks to make banners, which he erected on the walls : he likewise placed on them his worst soldiers, and put himself at the head of four hundred brave men, whom he ordered to go naked. These he led to all attacks ; and the word which he used on such occasions was, "Cowards retire !" He invented engines to cast large stones, which required but a few hands to work them ; and aimed so true, as to hit the mark at a hundred paces distance. When their arrows failed, he cut those, shot by the enemy, into four pieces, and pointing them with brass coin, put them into a wooden tube ; from whence he discharged them against the Mungls, with as much force as bullets are shot by a

*Kyang-shin's bravery.*

<sup>q</sup> Gaubil. p. 66. & seq.

(L) An engine to cast stones.

musket.

musket. In this manner Kyang-shin harassed the Mungls A.D. 1232. so grievously for three months, that they were obliged to raise the siege, though thirty thousand strong.

Okray Khân having resolved to return into Tartary, summoned the Kin emperor to become tributary, and deliver up to him twenty-seven families, which he named; among the rest, the wife, children, and slaves of the late general Ilapúa. The emperor Shew-su, glad of the occasion, named mandarins to negotiate the peace: but Suputay, pretending not to know any thing of the treaty, pushed on the siege with double vigour, and presently filled part of the ditch; while the governor, for fear of obstructing the conference, forbade his soldiers to shoot at the Mungls. Confusion prevailed in the city. The king appeared in the streets exposed to the rain, and all bespattered with mire. He harangued the people, who wept at his distress: he declared that for the safety of his subjects, he would become tributary to the Mungls; and sent the prince his son for a hostage.

Mean while Suputay redoubled his attacks, and the Kin began to defend themselves vigorously. As the Mungls then made use of fire-pau (M), they set the houses in a flame, which spread so rapidly, that it was difficult to extinguish it.

The Kin had in the city fire-pau, which discharged pieces of iron in the form of bombs (N). This bomb was filled with powder, which being fired, made a noise like thunder. The ground where it fell appeared burnt, or scorched, for about two thousand feet round. When the Mungls lodged themselves at the foot of the walls, in order to sap them, the besieged let down these sort of bombs by iron chains, which, as soon as they came into the ditches or subterranean chambers, took fire by a match, and destroyed the enemies. These iron bombs and hal-

(M) There are two sorts of pau, or engines: she-pau or stone pau, and ho-pau or fire-pau. Gaubil dares not translate either by the name of cannon, because he cannot say they were like our's; nor is he sure that the bullets were shot off in the same manner; although he is satisfied the Chinese have had the use of powder upwards of sixteen hun-

dred years.—They sometimes made use of wooden tubes, or guns, to shoot stones, as was done at first in Europe.

(N) Although we venture to call these pieces of iron, bombs, Gaubil would not. He observes, that although the Chinese had the use of powder so long, yet it does not appear they made very frequent use of it in sieges.

*Peace pro-  
posed to the  
Kin.*

*Suputay  
displeased.*

berds,

**A.D. 1232.** berds, charged with powder, which they darted, were what the Mungls dreaded most.

*Is forced to retire.* In fifteen days and nights, during which the attacks continued without intermission, above a million of people were slain on both sides. Suputay, finding that he could not force the place, in order to come off with honour, sent the governor word, that he should forbear any farther hostilities, since he was now satisfied a negociation was on foot. The besiegers, glad of this notice, sent that general abundance of refreshments and presents, and he withdrew, to encamp between the river Lo and the Whang-ho; but Kay-fong Fû was no sooner rid of this calamity, but as great an evil as war, the plague, succeeded, which, in fifty days, destroyed an incredible number of people. When the contagion ceased, the emperor Shew-fu bestowed large rewards on those who had defended the city, and performed several acts of humiliation. He made several good regulations in his court; and the peace, so happily restored, might have continued, if two unlucky accidents had not renewed the war.

*Receives orders to renew the siege.*

Que Gan-yong, a Mungl lord, having in July reduced Su-chew, together with some other cities in Kyang-nan, and assumed the government of them, Achûlû, one of the Mungl generals, displeased at his proceedings, sent troops to take possession of those places. Gan-yong not only opposed this design, but even the officers sent by Achûlû; after which outrage he declared for the Kin, and joined several of their officers in Shang-tong against the Mungls. The Kin emperor, deceived by false hopes, took Gan-yong into his service, and gave him the title of prince. Oktay Khân having sent an officer, with a train of thirty persons, to treat of peace, the Kin commanders slew them all; nor did Shew-fu punish them for their barbarity. Suputay gave the khân an account of what had passed; and not doubting but he should receive orders to renew the war, made preparations for that purpose. Oktay accordingly sent his commands to him and the other generals to continue hostilities; and being informed about the same time that the Koreans had slain his officers, he sent an army thither to chastise them<sup>\*</sup>.

The Kin emperor had ordered the generals, who commanded his troops in different bodies, to join, and come to the assistance of his capital; but the several parties, being met by the Mungls before their junction, were all de-

\* Gaubil, ubi supra, p. 71, & seq.

feated, so that Shew-fû was obliged to employ the peasants and common people as soldiers.

In September died prince Toley. He was the fourth son of Jenghîz Khân, and admired, when a youth, in the wars against the Kin. In the western expedition he commanded great bodies of troops, and performed a thousand actions worthy of the greatest heroes: at his return he signalized himself in the war which ruined the kingdom of Hya. His great merit was enhanced by his uncommon modesty, his filial respect for his father, and the empresa his mother; and by an inviolable attachment to the interest and glory of his brother Oktay.

These two princes left Honan in April, to visit Chingting-fû and Yen-king; then passing into Tartary, through the great wall by the gate of Kû-pe-kew, in May, the khân fell dangerously ill. Toley, on this occasion, fell on his knees, and writing his name in a sealed billet, prayed heaven to save his brother's life at the expence of his own. Oktay being recovered, Toley followed him to the sources of the river Tula and the Onon (or Saghalian); where that great prince died, at the age of forty, generally lamented by his family, the chiefs of tribes, and officers of the army.

In December the Mungls made a treaty with the Song emperor (then reigning in southern China), who engaged to join them with his troops, on condition of having the province of Honan delivered up to him, as soon as the Kin dynasty was destroyed. This alliance was a deadly blow to the emperor Shew, who, in January 1233, found himself involved in very great difficulties. Several bodies of troops, in their way to the court from different parts, were defeated by the Mungls, and the provisions carried away which were going to supply Pyen-king; so that this capital was in great distress. On the other hand, Suputay appearing resolved to besiege it, the Kin emperor held a council, wherein a mandarin proposed marching to fight the Mungl general; and shewed, that, as things were circumstanced, one battle would determine the fate of the empire; but this advice was rejected.

When the council broke up, the emperor Shew appointed officers to command at the four sides of the city *Emperor goes out.* walls, and made a discourse to encourage them in the defence of their country; declaring, that he would put himself at the head of the army. He accordingly marched out of the place, passed the Whang-ho, and encamped near

Toley's  
death and  
character.

Brotherly  
affection.

Peace with  
the Song.

A.D. 1233.

Distress of  
the Kin.

A.D. 1233. near the city of Chang-ywen, or rather Chang-wan; but as soon as he had crossed that river, a violent wind arose, and hindered part of his troops from passing. He sent the best part of those which were with him to besiege Wey-chew. The general, She-tyen-che, being informed of this design, assembled the troops in Pe-che-li, Shang-tong, and other parts, and sent the governor notice that he would soon relieve him. Accordingly, with his usual bravery, he marched to attack Pesa, general of the Kin. The engagement was bloody; but at length Pesa was compelled to fly, and his army cut in pieces.

The capital besieged. Intelligence of this misfortune was carried to the emperor at the time he knew Suputay was on the road to besiege his capital. Hereupon he, in haste, repassed the Whang-ho, followed by a few of his officers, and retired to Quey-te-fû. From thence he sent for the empresses and queens to come to him. They accordingly set out; but the arrival of Suputay obliged them to re-enter the city. As for his troops, they dispersed as soon as he had left them. The return of the Mungls, and the retreat of their emperor, joined to the defeat of the whole army, filled all the people with terror. The western wall was guarded by a general named Tsû-li, an officer of a wicked disposition.

Tsûli's villainy. This traitor having formed a cabal among the officers, cut off the heads of the ministers and ten great lords; pretending that he did it purely to save the lives of the people. He then went to the palace, and obliged the empress-mother to declare a prince, whom he named, to be regent. He assumed the post of prime minister and general of the army, giving the other employments to his two brothers, and the officers who assisted him. In 1233, having assumed the equipage belonging to a king, and dressed his people in magnificent habits, he, at the head of a great number of officers, went to meet Suputay, who was preparing to form the siege, and paying him the reverence of a son to his father, promised him fealty. The Mungl general, at the head of his troops, with much honour, received this traitor, who, on his return to the city, demolished the battlements of the walls, and blew up the towers, with all its other defences. He set a guard upon the princes of the blood, and secured the wives and daughters of the grandees who had followed the emperor to Quey-te-fû. Then seizing the treasures of the city and palace, his vanity prompted him to raise a stone monument,

ment, on which he caused his own eulogium to be inscribed.<sup>a</sup> A.D. 1233.

While Tsû-li thus usurped the sovereign power at Pyen-  
king, Fu-cha-quen acted with equal insolence at Quey-te-  
fû. This general was greatly mortified to see that the em-  
peror confuted Ma-yong, his enemy, rather than him. Shew endeavoured to reconcile them, but to no purpose; and at the same time, shocked at the insolence of Pu-cha-  
quen, who had risen from a mean origin, ordered him to  
be closely watched. The officers who were intrusted with  
this affair, having betrayed the secret to Pu-cha-quen,  
this latter, in despair, ordered Ma-yong, with three  
hundred officers, and three thousand soldiers of the palace,  
to be slain. He even presumed to send persons to seize  
a mandarin belonging to the emperor, with an intent to  
put him to death. The prince, provoked at this new out-  
rage, said he would defend that officer. Presently after,  
Pu-cha-quen entered with his sword in hand, and told the  
emperor, that those whom he had put to death were re-  
bels. Shew, complying with necessity, pretended to be-  
lieve what he said, was forced to publish the supposed  
crimes of those who had been slain; and suffer the autho-  
rity to remain in his hands.

Mean time Tsû-li exercised a thousand cruelties at Pyen-  
king, where the famine was so extreme, that in eight  
days above a million of people died. In April he seized  
all the princes and princesses of the blood, a great number  
and of officers, physicians, and workers in silk and other ma-  
nufactures. He likewise brought out the royal ornaments,  
jewels, precious stones, and other treasures; then, putting  
the empress-mother, the empress, queens, and concubines  
of the palace, in thirty-seven chariots, went and delivered  
them all to Suputay; who murdered those who were  
of the imperial race; and sent to Karakoram the empresses,  
queens, and their attendants. The emperor ordered Su-  
putay to put to death the princes of the blood, and spare  
the rest; by which means the lives of fourteen hundred  
thousand families were saved.

Tsû-li, being informed that Suputay was preparing to take possession of the capital, got every thing ready for his introduction, and receiving him at the entrance of the city, conducted him to the palace. Returning to his own house, he was much surprised to find it full of Mungl soldiers, who plundered it, and carried away all his treasures.

*Another traitor insults the emperor.*

*Tsû-li yields up the empress queens.*

\* Gaubil, ubi supra, p. 76, & seqq.

A.D. 1233. He complained of this injury, and even shed tears, but nobody regarded him; nor was Suputay himself displeased to see a traitor to his country so justly punished. Let us now return to see what is doing at Quey-te-fū.

*Brave action of Pû-cha-quen;*

In May the Kin emperor proposed to Pû-cha-quen, to surprise the camp of the Mungls, commanded by Te-mutay, under pretence that the Mungls had taken prisoner the empress-mother. Pû-cha-quen, who wanted neither address nor valour, one night, while a negotiation was on foot, went with four hundred choice soldiers, and slaying the out-guards, penetrated to the middle of the camp, and made a considerable slaughter; then setting the camp on fire, returned without losing one man.

Puffed up with this success, he had the insolence to confine the emperor, with some of his domestics, in a great hall. Shew, on this occasion, shed tears, and said to those about him, that the dynasties did not continue for ever; and that kings were not exempt from the tribute due to death. He added, that it grieved him to find he did not know the persons whom he ought to make use of, as well as to see himself imprisoned by a slave, whom he had loaded with favours. Affected by this remonstrance, three trusty officers resolved to put the traitor to death, and communicated their design to the emperor, who sent for Pû-cha-quen on pretence to consult with him about removing the court. When he entered the apartment, one of the officers wounded him in the side; and the emperor received the blow: he started back, but was slain before he could escape. The troops ran to arms; but the emperor went out in person to appease them, and gave an account of the whole affair.

*who is slain.*

*The emperor retires to Ju-ning-fū.*

*His insensibility.*

After the death of Pû-cha-quen, the emperor Shew left troops and a governor at Quey-te-fū, and departed for Jûning-fū, with four thousand attendants. There he was received with expressions of the utmost sorrow and respect. The inhabitants beholding him in such a wretched equipage, so pale and emaciated with grief, burst into tears and lamentation, while they fell on their knees before him; and the unhappy monarch weeping exclaimed, "All my good people are destroyed!" Meanwhile he appointed prince Whan-yen Hû-sye-hû for his captain-general and prime minister, a person of great merit and approved fidelity. He was day and night on horseback: he sold all he had to buy arms, provisions and horses, and selected ten thousand soldiers, whom he exercised continually. He likewise

likewise employed a great number of hands in repairing A.D. 1233.  
and improving the fortifications of the city.

Twenty thousand Chinese, under Men-kong, detached from the Song army, commanded by She-fong-chi, having already joined Tachar, these two generals, in August, took several cities in Honan; and then invested Ju-ning-fû. Perceiving, by the two first attacks, that they were likely to meet with a vigorous resistance, they ordered trenches to bedug, and a wall to be raised all round the place. The garrison, terrified at these works, would have surrendered, but Hû-sye-hû, and the emperor himself, by their speeches, so animated their courage, that they resolved to perish in defence of their prince<sup>t</sup>.

Actuated by this principle, they braved the greatest dangers; they underwent incredible fatigues; they made furious sallies; they sustained desperate assaults; and the very women worked upon the fortifications. The emperor encouraged them by his presence and example; while the illustrious Hû-sye-hû exerted himself with the most amazing spirit and perseverance in repulsing the assailants, and contriving new expedients to annoy and retard them in the progress of their operations. The emperor often declared he was determined to die with his arms in his hand, rather than be taken and insulted as other sovereigns had been. He headed his best troops in a sally, and fought in the first ranks with intrepid valour; but in spite of all his efforts he was driven back into the city, where by this time a famine prevailed to such a degree, that the wretched inhabitants, after having consumed the leather of their saddles and boots, had begun to kill and eat the old and infirm, the prisoners and the wounded. At length there remained for defence of the city no more than a few officers, at the head of the mandarins of letters, and some soldiers, half-dead with hunger, sustained by the example of Hû-sye-hû.

In this emergency the emperor Shew-fu assembled the lords of his court, and told them that he would transfer his fallen throne to Cheng-lin, a prince of the blood; who, at the emperor's pressing instances, at length accepted of the succession. Next morning, while the mandarins performed the ceremony of acknowledging Cheng-lin, the Song and Mungul troops mounted the south walls, and forced two hundred men, who defended them, to surrender. The officers who were about the new emperor,

*The court besieged.*

<sup>t</sup> Gaubil, ubi supra, p. 80, & seq.

**A.D. 1234.** at this news, flew to succour them ; but found the standards of the enemy planted on the ramparts. Mean time the south-gate being abandoned, Meng-kong and Tachar entered with their troops. Prince Hû-sye-hû, with one thousand soldiers, stopped them in one of the streets, and fought with such intrepidity, as excited their astonishment. The emperor Shew-su, seeing all irreparably lost, entered hastily into a house, where he lodged the seal of the empire ; then causing bundles of straw to be set round the palace, went in, and ordered his people to set fire to it as soon as he should be dead. Having taken these precautions, he hanged himself ; and his orders were executed.

*The emperor's death.*

Hû-sye-hû, who still fought desperately in the streets, when he heard of his master's death, went and drowned himself in the river Jû ; the officers and five hundred soldiers followed his example. Mean time, while the new emperor Cheng-lin, attended by some mandarins, performed the Chinese ceremonies for the death of his predecessor, and gave orders for burying his ashes on the bank of the river, the confederate generals, seizing the palace, divided the spoil ; and the same day Cheng-lin was killed in a tumult : an event which put an end to the dynasty of the Kin, whose beginnings were so glorious and successful <sup>u</sup>.

*The Song proceedings offend the Mungls.*

After the reduction of Ju-ning-fû, the Song and Mungls agreed to settle the limits of the two empires. Honan was to be delivered up to the former as soon as the war should be finished ; but without either waiting for the expiration of the term, or giving Oktay Khân notice, they introduced their troops into Kay-fong-fâ, Lo-yang, or Honan-fû, and other considerable cities, without the precaution however of furnishing them with provisions. The Mungls complained of these hasty proceedings ; and Suputay, who had encamped to the north of the Whang-ho, repassed that river, and resolved to be revenged on the aggressors. A great part of the garrison of Lo-yang, sent out in search of provisions, were cut in pieces by a detachment of the Mungls, and the governor obliged to surrender. As Suputay seemed resolved to march towards Kay-fong-fû, the Song general, being destitute of supplies, abandoned the place. The Song emperor, either to satisfy the Mungls, or because his officers had not done their duty, ordered them to be punished, by lowering their degrees in the rank of mandarins.

<sup>u</sup> Gaubil, ubi supra, p. 85, & seq.

In December Oktay Khân recalled Suputay into Tatary, to consult him about some military expeditions. At the same time he sent an officer to Hang-chew, in Che-kyang, the court of the Song, to complain of some grievances : on the other hand, the Chinese sent a lord to negotiate a peace. The khân's answer is not mentioned ; but the event shewed that he was not satisfied.

In spring 1235 Oktay ordered the encamping place of Holin or Karakoram to be inclosed with walls, built the palace (O) called Wan-gan, five li (or furlongs) in circumference. In the first months of the year he sent an army into Korea, and having levied more than fifteen hundred thousand good troops, resolved to render his name immortal by great conquests. He sent Suputay, with three hundred thousand men, to ravage the countries to the west, north, and north-east of the Caspian Sea.

Kotovan, the emperor's second son, with the general Chahay, was ordered to attack the Song in Se-chwen. Prince Kuchû, his third son, with the generals Temutay and Chang-jau ; prince Pitû, son of Lyew-ko, late king of Lyau-tong, besides other Mungl and Kitan princes, with the general Chahan, were commanded to march towards the borders of Kyang-nan. The Song emperor sent his best officers to the frontiers ; and notwithstanding his great power, began to fear the consequences of so many formidable armies coming to attack his dominions ; for they consisted of veteran Chinese and Tatar troops, commanded by old generals trained to war, and inured to conquest. Wang-shi-hyen, an officer of reputation among the Kin, who commanded in Kong-chang-fû, in Shen-si, a strong city, well provided both with troops and stores, knowing that Kotovan was to pass that way, offered him his troops. The prince hereupon took him under his pro-

(O) Abû'lghâzi Khân says, in this year he ordered a magnificent palace to be built in the country of Karakum or Karakoram, and sent for the most able painters in Kitay to adorn it : that he enjoined all the princes and great officers of the empire to build handsome houses about it : that he constructed a fine fountain, ornamented with a tiger spouting water, in full proportion, all

cast in silver : that at some distance from the palace he made a park, two days journey in compass, which he stocked with deer and other game for hunting, and inclosed it with pales twelve feet high. Our author adds, that Oktay caused Herât, the capital of Khorâstân, in Persia, which had been destroyed by his father's orders, to be rebuilt.

A.D. 1235.

*Several  
expeditions.**The Song  
attacked.*

A.D. 1236. tection, left him governor of the city, and gave him a considerable military employment <sup>w.</sup>

*Losses in Hû-quang.* In 1236 the army of prince Kuchû made great ravages in the province of Hû-quang; in January they took the city of Kyang-lin (at present King-chew); and in March reduced Syang-yang, where they obtained a great booty in money and warlike provisions: for the officers of the Song disagreeing, one of them, through malice, set fire to the magazines of the suburbs; a circumstance which gave the Mungls an opportunity of becoming masters of the city. The inhabitants of Te-gan, another city of Hû-quang, were almost all put to the sword in August; and in October the Mungls lost their general, prince Kuchû, who was greatly beloved by the emperor his father. Yelu-chû-tsai had already persuaded Oktay to repair the hall of Confucius, or, to speak more properly, the palace, where this ancient sage is honoured. That prince had likewise caused a great sphere to be made, and a palace built, to teach the Chinese sciences. At his minister's request he also released many Chinese literati and doctors, who had been made slaves in Hû-quang. In February the Mungls introduced silk or paper money, which had been used before by Chang-tsiong, sixth emperor of the Kin.

*Paper money.*

*Shen-fî invaded.*

Prince Kotovan, having passed Kong-chang-fû prepared to attack the city of Myen, in the district of Han-chong-fû, in Shen-fî; into which, after forcing the passes, he entered with an army of five hundred thousand men, consisting of Chinese, Mungls, Tatars, and strangers from the West. Tsau-yew-ven, governor of Myen, one of the best officers belonging to the Song, after being driven from the fort and pass of Syen-jin, near the city of Fong, with ten thousand choice men, passed the river in the night, and placed his troops in ambuscade, in a place called Lew-ki. Tsau-wan, his brother, had the boldness to attack general Ta-hay, who began to appear with ten thousand horse and foot, while the troops in ambush lighted fires, beat their drums, and set up the most horrible outcries. Yew-ven divided his forces into three bodies, and, followed by three thousand soldiers, advanced towards a gorge of the mountains called Kitovan; where he posted in the most difficult places, a body of eight hundred horsemen, resolved to conquer or to die.

*Terrible battle.*

Arriving at Long-wey-few, where his brother Tsau-wan joined him, a great battle was fought between the Song

<sup>w.</sup> Gaubil, ubi supra, p. 88, & seqq.

and the Mungls, with such slaughter, that the blood ran more than two leagues. At break of day, the Mungl forces being joined by general Ta-hay, the little army of the Song was surrounded, and great havock made on both sides. Tfau-yew-ven, seeing all lost, resolved to sell his life very dear : " It is the decree of heaven, (said he,) I must die." So saying, he flew his horse, uttering insulting language all the time to the Mungls. Then, sword in hand, he charged a great body of the enemy ; in which attack he was slain, with his brother, and almost all his soldiers. The Mungls lost a great number of men in this action. The battle was fought in July, near Yang-ping, a fort to the west of the city Pau-ching, which last is two or three leagues to the north-west of Han-chong-fû.

After the defeat of general Tfau, prince Kotovan entered Se-chwen, and encamped near Ching-tû-fû, the capital of that province. In October, a detachment of his troops besieged Ven-chew, a city belonging to the Song, in the district of Kong-chang-fû. Lyew-jû-i, who commanded in the place, finding no hopes of being relieved, after he had fought night and day for some time, assembled his domestics, and advised them to poison themselves. Among the rest, a child of six years old fell on his knees ; and, having desired he might have permission to do the like, took the cup with the greatest courage. Afterwards Lyew-jû-i, and his two children, slew themselves ; and more than forty thousand people, soldiers and inhabitants, followed his example \*.

Se-chwen  
reduced.

Mean time Kew-when pû-wha ravaged great part of the countries on the borders of Kyang-nan, Hu-quang, and Ho-nan ; then he marched towards Whang-chew, a considerable city in Hu-quang. In November, Meng-kong put himself at the head of an army of the Song ; and, advancing towards King-chew, destroyed more than twenty posts where the Mungls had left troops. General Chahan had laid siege to Ching-chew, a city in Kyang-nan, on the Kyang, at present called I-ching-hyen : but was obliged to raise it, through the activity of the governor Kyew-yo, who made great destruction of the Mungls by his ambuscades, by his engines for casting stones, and by setting fire to their quarters.

Success in  
Hu-quang.

In May 1237, Meng-kong appearing in view of the city of Whang-chew, then besieged by Kew-when-pû-wha ; this prince, whose army was greatly harassed, thought it better to withdraw his forces, than venture a

A.D. 1237.

Check at  
Gan-tong.

\* Gaubil, p. 91, & seqq.

battle,

battle. He afterwards gave orders for investing Gan-tong, now Shew-chew, in the district of Fong-yang-fū in Kyang-nan: but this siege succeeded no better than the former. Tû-kew, the governor, in his frequent fallies, burnt twenty-seven intrenchments, which the Mungls had made. Lu-ven-te, an excellent officer, during the confusion, in which the attack of their trenches had thrown the enemy, broke through their troops with some brave soldiers, and got into the city; where in conjunction with Tû-kew, he, by his vigilance and activity, obliged them to raise the siege.

**A.D. 1238.**

*and Lu-chew.*

Chahan was also compelled to retire from Lu-chew, with considerable losfs.

In Hû-quang, general Meng-kong every-where worsted the Mungls; and, in March 1239, retook Syang-yang, which he fortified. The forces of Kotovan, after having gained great spoil in Se-chwen, retired to the borders of Shen-si.

**A.D. 1239.**

*Mungls baffled by Meng-kong.*

The Song, taking advantage of this retreat, retook Ching-tû-fū, capital of that province, and assembled a great body of troops. Ta-hay Mongu, the Mungl general, re-entered Se-chwen, defeated the Song army in a pitched battle near Ching-tû-fū; seized that metropolis, and attempted to penetrate into Hû-quang, by way of Quey-chew. Meng-kong, on this advice, furnished all the posts on the borders of Se-chwen and Hû-quang, with men and provisions: then caused all the passes of the Kyang to be guarded; and, having ordered a great number of barks to be prepared, in December began his march. This general rendered ineffectual the Mungl enterprizes, and gained great honour by the reduction of Quey-chew: which was a place of great importance to the Mungls, situate on the north side of the Kyang, and on the borders of the above mentioned provinces<sup>y</sup>.

**A.D. 1240.**

*Meng-kong's exploits.*

In 1240, Oktay Khân ordered his eldest son Quey-yew to return into Tatary, with the detachment which he commanded in the West; where, it is said, he made great conquests. The same year Meng-kong became famous by the great advantages which he obtained over the Mungls. He burned the magazines of provisions which they had at Ju-ning-fū in Honan; and the wood which they had laid up at Teng-chew in the same province, for building barks: he likewise recovered the booty and slaves which they had made in Hû-quang, and secured in the city Swi-chew. After these great advantages he visited the frontier

<sup>y</sup> Gaubil, p. 93, & seqq.

posts, and trained to war a great number peasants, whom he furnished with arms and officers : in short, he had the glory of seeing all the countries between Se-chwen and the rivers Kyang and Han filled with husbandmen ; who were in a condition to defend their lands, fill their magazines, and form, in a short time, bodies of disciplined troops.

In February 1241, Oktay Khân, after a great hunting near the lake Kye-kye Chay-ha, was taken dangerously sick. *Oktay falls ill*: hereupon the empress Tolyekona, apprehending that he would not live long, sent for the minister Yelu-chû-tsây, to consult him on the occasion. Chû-tsây told her boldly, that the emperor had bad counsellors ; that avarice reigned at court ; and that employments were sold, and the prisons filled with honest men, whose only crime was their disapproving of the unlawful means which were practised to get money. The empress took measures to free the prisoners, when her husband began to mend ; a general amnesty was published ; and in October the Chinese were allowed to become inferior mandarins in the tribunals.

The emperor loved wine passionately, and Chû-tsây had often warned him against its ill effects ; but although that prince took in good part his advice as the effect of his zeal, yet he did not forbear the practice. In November the grandees invited him to a hunting ; and contrary to the minister's remonstrances, he went. The fifth day, being come to the mountain U-lye-kû Hûlan, he sat up all night drinking, by the persuasion of Gautû-lauman ; which debauch cost him his life ; for he died next morning, aged fifty-six, after a reign of thirteen years. He nominated for his heir and successor his grandson Shelyemen, the son of his third son Ku-chew, who died in Hu-quang, in 1236.

Oktay (or, as the Mungls call him, Ogatay) was a *his character* ; prince of courage, prudence and magnanimity. Yelu-chû-tsây had inspired him with a love for the sciences, and application to the affairs of government. This khân had a great authority over the princes, as well those of his family, as his vassals : he loved good order, and his integrity was unimpeached.

Oktay had several wives who bore the title of empress ; *his wives* ; and these bore him seven sons and one princess.

The western historians of Asia seem to have been but little acquainted with the actions of Oktay Khân, or his successors ; especially if we may judge by what has been communicated from them by European authors. But some

*An instance.*

some instances of his justice and generosity they have related.

A poor smith, having made six iron skewers, went to the market in order to sell them ; and, observing Ugaday Khân coming that way, held them up that he might see them. The khân sent to ask what he meant by that motion ? The smith answered, that they were six skewers, which he wished to make him a present of. The khân accepted of them ; and, in return, gave him so many dinârs, or crowns of gold.

*Another.*

An indigent person, who had neither wives nor children, having waited on Ugaday, one day gave him to understand that he had an inclination to get into some little way of trade, but wanted money to carry it on. The khân immediately ordered two hundred dinârs of gold to be given him out of the treasury. Some court lords who were present, suggested that the man, having no family, the money, after his death, would pass to strangers. But Ugaday did not countermand the order ; saying, “ Since this man has implored my assistance, it would be unjust in me to send him away empty-handed, when it is in my power to help him.”

*A third.*

Another poor man, named Muflies, having complained to Ugaday Khân, that he had not wherewithal to support life, he gave him five hundred gold dinârs. When he had spent that money, he came again to see the khân, and received five hundred more. Those being consumed like the rest, he came once more to implore the monarch’s assistance. The lords, who were then in waiting, chid him for daring still to importune the khân for money, after he had received so much already : saying, it was unjust to give such a quantity to one man ; and that, considering how the cash already bestowed on him had been squandered away, the treasury would not suffice to supply his expences long. But Ugaday finding, on enquiry, that he employed the sums he had received only in providing well for his back and belly, he declared that he could see no cause to reprimand the man so much ; and at the same time ordered five hundred dinârs more to be given him : recommending to him, however, to be more frugal of them than he had been of the former thousand.

*Instances of his justice.* A man, belonging to the tribe of Virats, who hated the Mohammedans exceedingly, came and told Ugaday, or Oktay, that Jenghîz Khân had appeared to him in a dream ; and commanded him to acquaint his majesty that he would have all the Mohammedans in his dominions

nions put to the sword. 'The khân asked him, if Jenghîz Khân had spoken to him in person, or by an interpreter? The man having answered, in person; the khân asked again, if he could speak the Mungl language? The Virat replied, that he could not. Upon this Ugaday said him, "My father spoke no other language: how durst you then come to tell me, that he spoke to you; seeing, that neither you understood his language, nor he your's?" Having, in this manner, detected him in a lye, he ordered that his imposture should be punished with death<sup>2</sup>.

## S E C T. II.

*The Regency of Tolyekona, and Reign of Quay-yew Khân.**The Regency of Tolyekona, or Turakina Khatun*

AFTER the death of Oktay, the empress Tolyekona caused herself to be acknowledged regent of the empire at Karakoram, in spite of all the remonstrances of Yelu Chû-ts'ay; who declared that Sheleymen ought to be proclaimed emperor, in obedience to his grandfather's will. But the empress rejected this proposal, under various pretences; and artfully taking advantage of the absence of the best generals, who were in China and the West, she, by the support of her son Quay-yew, and several chiefs of tribes, governed the state with the authority of an emperor. Mean time she gave notice to the commanders who were in foreign parts, and sent them orders relating to the wars. This princess had a great deal of address, and knew how to conciliate the affection of the grandees. She particularly made use of the services of Gautû-lauman, who through her means had insinuated himself into the favour of her late husband. As this grandee managed the treasury, he furnished Tolyekona with great sums of money; which she employed to debauch the troops, increase the number of her adherents, and dispose all parties to consent that her son should be emperor.

Yelu Chû-ts'ay attempted to remove Gautû-lauman from the ministry; by representing to her that the finances were in disorder, and that every thing was done at Karakoram by dint of money. But his remonstrances proving

*He dies  
with grief.*

<sup>2</sup> Abul'gh, p. 153, & seqq.

ineffectual, he became so greatly affected to see himself in a manner disgraced, after the figure which he had made in the state, that, he died in a little time at Kara-korom.

*His character;*

This great man was a prince of the Lyau family. The first time he was brought before Jenghîz Khân, that prince asked him, if he was not pleased to see his house revenged of the evils which it had suffered from that of the Kin ? Chû-tsray answered, that he could not help being affected with the misfortunes of princes, to whom he had been much indebted both in point of interest and honour. Afterwards, when he became the khân's prime minister, his whole study was to render his master's reign glorious. He was continually inspiring that prince, his children, and the Mungls in general, with an aversion to slaughter and pillage, as well as with love for the people, and good government. The pains which he took to reform the manners and dispositions of the Mungls cannot be sufficiently commended. He was their first master, and as it were, their lawgiver : he formed a kalendar for them, which he finished in Persia, after the conferences which he had with the mathematicians of that country.

*great knowledge;*

He was well versed in the Chinese sciences and history; and possessed, in an eminent degree, the qualifications of a minister. He had a firmness of resolution not to be shaken, an extraordinary presence of mind, a vast knowledge of the countries subject to his master, discernment in the choice of persons, and sure resources for supplies of money and provisions on all emergencies. His zeal was entirely disinterested ; and he continually sacrificed his own advantages to those of the state. He was at great expence to procure workmen, officers, and engineers, from all countries. At the reduction of Ning-hya, capital of the Hya kingdom, the Mungls committed great disorders in plundering the city and palace of the king : Chû-tsray took for his share the geographical maps, the books, paintings, and several bales of rhubarb. The army, after this, being afflicted with a malignant fever, and other diseases, the minister became the physician ; and, by giving the rhubarb to the soldiers, saved their lives.

*zeal for learning;*

He rescued from death many thousand Chinese literati, and caused public colleges to be built; in which the Mungls were taught history, geography, arithmetic, and astronomy. He sent for learned men from the countries of the Igûrs, Arabia, Persia, and other western regions ; and

and ordered many books to be translated. The sagacity of this excellent minister, appeared in nothing more sensibly than in his regulations with regard to the customs, commerce, the public granaries, and the subordination which he introduced among the mandarins both civil and military. The natural ferocity and ignorance of the Mungls, were great obstacles to the execution of his grand designs. He abolished the custom of selecting, at certain times, the most beautiful maidens for the emperor's palace. His sons and grandsons were educated by himself, and formed by his precepts and example, to the love of the sciences and virtue. One of his sons was particularly eminent; and, from his father's memoirs, composed the history of the Kin and Lyau<sup>a</sup>.

After the death of Yelu Chû-tsay, Tolyekona, at the instigation of his enemies, made an enquiry into his effects; but that enquiry filled them with confusion: they found only a small quantity of money, but a great number of volumes, written with his own hand, on history, astronomy, agriculture, government, and commerce. They likewise met with ancient coins, musical instruments, old books, and inscriptions, cut either on stones, marble, or metal. He was very sedulous in his travels to amass these sorts of curiosities, instead of the immense riches which he might have acquired. Chû-tsay had many enemies, but history has done him justice; and the Mungls, to this day, bestow on him the greatest eulogies. The remains of his tomb are still to be seen some leagues to the south-west of Pe-king. It is now necessary to return to the Mungl affairs.

In 1241, the Song generals, who had retaken Ching-tû-fû, the capital of Se-chwen, named Chêng-long-chi, a good officer, for governor: but Wang-shi-hyen having been sent by general Ta-hay to besiege him, he was, after ten days brave defence, betrayed by an officer, who delivered up the city.

A powerful army, commanded by Yeko Noyen, a great Mungl lord, and Yelu Ko, a Kitân prince, having marched by the way of Si-gan-fû, capital of Shen-si, and entered Se-chwen, laid siege to Lû-chew.

Prince Gan-chi-tay, who commanded at Tsî-nan-fû, had orders in 1244 to attack the Song on the side of Fong-yang-fû, in Kyang-nan; and in July 1245, the generals Chang-jau and Cha-han made incursions into that pro-

*His disinterestedness.*

A.D. 1241.

*A brave governor.*

*Meng-kong's care.*

A.D. 1244.

\* Gaubil Hist. Gentch. p. 101, & seqq.

A.D. 1245.

*Quey-yew  
declared  
khân.*

*Conquests in  
the West.*

vince, as far as Yang-chew. In the same month the empress Tolyekona, having convened a general assembly of the grandees and princes, by her intrigues raised her son Quey-yew to the throne ; and, soon after his installation, the princes Patû, Mengo, with the generals Suputay, Mangkûsar, and others, arrived at Karakorum, after an absence of several years. Their first expedition was to the north of the Caspian, where Mengo defeated a prince called Pacheman ; who was taken and slain, as he was flying to one of the islands in that sea. After this expedition they marched against the Olotse (or Russians), took the city of Tuli-tse-ko, and sacked that of Ye-li-tfan ; in both which they met with a very great resistance. Then they ravaged the country of Ye-lye-pan, made a road over the mountain Atsali, took the country of Machar, and vanquished king Kyo-lyen. Being advanced to the river Kon-ning, a great battle was fought, in which the Mungls were defeated. Upon this ill success Patû and Meng-ko were for retiring ; but Suputay kept up the courage of those princes.

A.D. 1246.

*Death of  
Su pu-tay.*

The news of Oktay's death induced them to return ; and they arrived at Karakorum towards the end of the year 1246. Not long after, Suputay died, at the age of thirty-seven, lamented by all the princes of the imperial family ; and especially by the Mungl officers who had served under him. The history remarks, that the army commanded by this general, Patu and Meng-ko, entered a country whose inhabitants had blue eyes and fair hair ; that the days, at the summer solstice, were very long ; and that they had scarce any night at that season. We know that this, and other armies of the Mungls, ravaged Russia, Poland, Moravia, Bohemia, Austria, and Hungary ; but it is difficult to discover the names which are given to those countries in the Chinese history, which speaks of them in a very confused manner <sup>b</sup>.

### *The Reign of Quey-yew, or Kayâk Khân.*

*The bonzas  
encouraged.*

THE emperor Quey-yew had a very great respect and tenderness for his mother Tolyekona, who, therefore, kept the greater share of the government in her hands. Ching-hay, and Gautû-lauman, were his chief counsellors ; it is under this khân that the Chinese history begins to speak of the extraordinary credit which the bonzas of the West had at the Mungl court ; whereas, during the reigns of

<sup>b</sup> Gaubil, p. 103, & seq.

Jenghîz Khân, and Oktay Khân, neither the bonzas nor lamas were employed in state-affairs.

The kingdom of Korea having refused to pay tribute to A.D. 1247.  
the Mungls, in 1247 Quey-yew sent thither an army, which obliged the king not only to submit to that imposition, but likewise to receive commanders appointed by the Mungls. The history says very little concerning the reign of this khân, or his actions either in China or Tartary; and although it speaks of an army sent by him into the West, yet it neither mentions what it did there, nor the country to which it was destined.

In March 1248, the emperor Quey-yew died, at the age of forty-three, in the country of Hong-syang-i-eul. *Death of Quey-yew.*

After his death, the empress Wauli-hamih governed the empire; and, whether by order of her husband, or of her own will, she resolved to cause prince She-lye-men to be declared emperor, pursuant to the appointment of the emperor Ogotay. Her regency was not very happy: prince She-lye-men, who wanted nothing of the emperor but the name, paid little attention to the grandees and princes; giving access to none but such as his mother, the empress dowager, the empress Wauli, and the empress Tolyekona, thought proper to be admitted. People complained loudly that the court was too expensive in jewels and precious stones, which they purchased dear of the Mahomedan merchants; and that the subjects were continually forced to furnish horses to the lords, who rode post day and night. Mean time the drought and mortality among the cattle had reduced many countries to famine; and there was not money to pay the great armies which were raised. At length the empress regent agreed with the princes and great lords to hold a general assembly at Karakoram, in the beginning of the year 1251.

At the time appointed the states met: Patû, eldest son of Juji, presided in the assembly; where they began to deliberate about proclaiming an emperor. Pala, a Mungl lord, spoke first in the name of the empress regent; and declared, that, according to the orders of the emperor Ogotay, She-lye-men ought to be elected khân. Moko, one of the sons of Tuli, said, that there was none who durst oppose the positive command of a dying emperor. Patû said nothing at first, and seemed inclined to execute the will of Ogotay. The brothers and uncles of She-lye-men, with the sons of Quey-yew, and their friends, followed the advice of Pala. The general Mangusar was the first who proposed Meng-ko for emperor: he was fe-

*Korea humbled.*

*Empress Wauli regent.*

A.D. 1251.  
*Meng-ko elected*

By the  
flutes;

conded by Hu-lyang-hutay, great general of the troops, who made a speech in favour of that prince ; and said, that the circumstances of the times required that he should be elected. The advice of the great general was of much weight in the affair. In fine, Patû, who spoke last, declared that Meng-ko ought to be chosen. This opinion being carried by a majority of voices, Meng-ko was accordingly proclaimed and acknowledg'd emperor at Karakorum. The partisans of She-lye-men, spirited doubtless privately by the empress regent, appeared resolved to proclaim that prince. On this occasion a second assembly was held in June, at the source of the river Wa-nan, or Onon ; but notwithstanding all the cabals of She-lye-men, the princes and generals of his party, the election of Meng-ko was confirmed ; and the year 1251, which is the year of the Hog, is marked in history for the first of his reign <sup>c</sup>.

By the influence of  
prince  
Batû.

This is the Chinese account of Meng-ko, or Mang-kû Khân's election. When the ceremony was over, Meng-ko entertained those who met on that occasion for seven days ; in which time were consumed, every day, eight waggon-loads of wine, two of brandy, and twenty of kumis, in liquors. There were likewise slaughtered three hundred horses, as many cows, and a thousand sheep <sup>d</sup>.

### S E C T. III.

#### *The Reign of Meng-ko, or Mangu Khân.*

Fourth  
khan,  
Meng-ko.

THE emperor Meng-ko had much vivacity and courage, having gained great experience in the campaigns which he made in Shen-si and Honan, with his father Toley ; as well as in the war which engaged him so long in the West. He was personally acquainted with the vast dominions of the Muirls, and most of the generals, whether Chinese, Tartars, or foreigners. He appointed his brother Hu-pi-lay (or Kublay), lieutenant-general in all the countries south of the Great Kobi, or Desert ; that is, of Tartary bordering on the great wall of China, Lyau-tong, and the conquered provinces of China. He nominated generals to command in the countries of Almalig and Kashgar, on the river Amû, and in the parts adjoining to the rivers Irtish, Selinga, Onon, Tula, and

<sup>c</sup> Gaubil, ubi sup. p. 205, & seq.  
&c. p. 258, & seq.

<sup>d</sup> Abu'lgh, Hist. Turks,

Kerlon. He likewise ordered a great army to encamp near Karakoram. He took away the seals from the mandarins and officers, and published rules for government.

Shortly after Mangû Khan's advancement, Shiramûn (in Chinese, She-lye-men), one of Ugaday Khan's grandsons, persuaded the other princes of that khân's race to assassinate Mangû, as having usurped the throne in prejudice to them. The proposal being approved of, Shiramûn marched before, with a detachment of five hundred men, and some waggons, loaded with arms; but a domestic of the khân, who was in search of some strayed dromedaries, happening to pass by a place where they stopped in the evening, suspected they had some ill design in hand, and hastened back to inform the khân of it. Mangû, on this advice, sent a thousand of his principal officers, with two thousand soldiers, to learn the occasion of their meeting; and being answered by Shiramûn, that he was going to pay his compliments to the khân, they conducted him and his followers to court. Mangû treated them very handsomely for three days; but on the fourth, having strictly examined some of them, concerning the intention of their assembling, and they confessing that it was to revolt, he put to death fourscore, and pardoned the rest, together with Shiramûn, and the children of Kayûk Khan<sup>e</sup>.

After this discovery, Meng-ko took all places of trust and consequence from those whom he knew to be inclined to She-lye-men; and caused that prince, as well as others of the family of Ogotay and Quey-yew, to be carefully watched. About the same time he ordered Holitay, one of his generals, to enter Tibet, and put to the sword all those who refused to submit to the Mungls: he also appointed Bonzas of the sect of Tau and Fo, to govern the other bonzas of their respective sects. He conferred on the princess his mother the title of empress, and caused a palace to be built, to honour the memory of prince Toley (or Tuli), his father. He bestowed on him the title of Whang-tî (A), or emperor, and the name of Jû-i-tsiong (B).

In January 1252, the princess, mother of the emperor A.D. 1252. Meng-ko, died greatly lamented. She was daughter of the prince of the Kara-it, brother of Wang Khan; for whose relations, as well as tribe, the Mungls had always

*Plot in favour of Shiramûn;*

*who is watched.*

*Meng-ko's severity*

<sup>e</sup> Abu'l'g. p. 159, & seq.

(A) Whang, august; ti, lord, sovereign. (B) Jû-i, full of spirit; tsong, respectable.

a very great respect. The Khan being informed that several princes were still inclined to set She-lye-men on the throne, took some extraordinary steps which made a great noise. He ordered prince Hoangur, son of Hafar, Jenghîz Khân's brother, who commanded the troops encamped near Karakoram, to make a review of them ; and repaired himself in summer to that city ; where he ordered all the grandees, generals, and princes of the blood, to attend him. He banished the princess, who was the third wife of the late emperor Ogotay, and confiscated her effects. He, in like manner, took from the other wives of that monarch all their gold, silver, and jewels, which he distributed among the princes, lords, and officers. Hatan and Myeli, sons of Ogotay, were exiled to different countries : his grandsons Perko, Toto, and Mongoto, were also banished, as well as the brothers of She-lye-men and prince Haytu, who was the son of Hashe, son of Ogotay. As for She-lye-men, he was fettered, and confined in a fortress <sup>f</sup>.

*and cruelty.* But the most unpopular measure was the sentence of death pronounced against the empress Wauli-haymish, formerly regent of the empire, and dowager of Quey-yew ; and against the princess, mother of She-lye-men. Sentence was executed upon both these great ladies ; and, to palliate the action, it was asserted, that they were magicians, and made use of sorcery to set the crown on She-lye-men's head. After this execution, the new khân bestowed great sums on the troops, diminished the taxes, and ordered all the officers to hold their forces in readiness on the first notice. This same year Meng-ko made a solemn sacrifice to heaven, on a mountain, according to the Chinese rites. The lama Na-mo was declared head of his religion in the empire, with the title of the emperor's doctor and preceptor ; and his brother Wato-chi, another lama was vested with great employments at court.

*War in Yun-nan.* In December the khân erected the lands of China into fiefs, for the princes of his house. Hû-pi-lay had for his share Honan, and part of Shen-fî. This prince having received orders the same month to attack the city of Ta-li-fû, in Yun-nan, he took with him the general Hû-liyang-hûtay, and Yau-shû his counsellor. About the same time envoys arrived from the country of Intû, or Hintûs, to render homage to the emperor.

<sup>f</sup> Gaubil, ubi supra, p. 109, & seq.

In February 1253, Meng-ko assembled the princes and A.D. 1253.  
grandees at the river Onon, from whence he resolved to send armies on foreign conquests ; one to India and Kashmîr, another against Korea, and a third against the khalif, or sultân of Baghdâd. This last, the most considerable of the three, was put under the command of Hyu-le-hû, or Hulâkû, the emperor's brother.

Prince Hû-pi-lay, who had assembled his army the year before at Lin-tau-fû, in Shen-si, entered Se-chwen ; and *Kublay's conquests.*  
by difficult roads, through mountains and precipices, arrived on the river Kin-sha, or the Kyang. Great part of Yun-nan province was then possessed by princes independent of China. Tali, in particular, had a king of its own, who was taken with that city in December. Hû-pi-lay intended to have put all the inhabitants to death, but Yau-shû diverted him from that cruel design. The prince caused a map of the country to be made, subdued the neighbouring princes, and penetrated into Tibet, where several others submitted. After this expedition, he returned to his government, leaving Hu-lyang-hotay to command the troops.

In 1254, Meng-ko again assembled the Tatar princes and lords, at the source of the Onon, where he made them great presents in gold, silver, and filks : he likewise fixed what the emperor was thenceforward to bestow on them every year, and performed another sacrifice to heaven. He ordered the troops in China to form great magazines of provisions in such cities of Honan as they had inclosed with walls. Hitherto they had only made incursions into Se-chwen to pillage the country, from whence they were obliged to retreat, and often with loss, for want of subsistence. For this reason Meng-ko ordered general Wang-te-ching, son of Wang-shi-hyen, to inclose several towns with strong walls, and lay in plenty of provisions. The khân likewise gained the love of the people, by the care he took to prevent his troops from ravaging the lands of the peasants. He caused diligent enquiries to be made upon that head, made those amends who had been sufferers, and punished with death even considerable officers, who had been guilty of peculation. Nay, he severely punished his own son, for having once in hunting damaged the plowed lands of some countrymen.

In June 1256, Meng-ko made great feasts for the princes A.D. 1256,  
and grandees. At the same time he received homage from —

*Armies sent forth.*

A.D. 1254.  
*Regulations made by Meng-ko.*

*The court  
removed to  
Shang-tü.*

several princes of Yün-nan, and the neighbouring princes, as well as from the sultans of the West. As Karakorum seemed very inconvenient for holding general assemblies, and keeping his court, he ordered a Chinese bonza, called Lyew-ping-chong, to chuse a place in Tartary, which might be from this time the capital of his dominions. Ping-chong, who was a man of great genius, skilled in mathematics, history, and almost all parts of literature, made choice of a place called Long-kang, to the east of the city Whan-chew; where they built a great city, with a palace for the emperor and grandees, temples, and tribunals, the whole surrounded with high and thick walls. In the neighbouring country they pitched on places for hunting, fishing, and whatever else might serve for the conveniences of the new city, which was called Kay-ping-fū(C), and in a short time filled with an infinite number of Chinese and Mungls. Yet Karakorum still continued to be considerable, and enjoyed a jurisdiction of greater extent.

*A.D. 1257.* In 1257, Meng-ko sent orders to his generals in Se-chwen, Hu-quang, and Kyang-nan, to prepare for attacking the Song on all sides, resolving to make the campaign himself in the first of those provinces. Before he left Tartary he went to honour the memory of his grandfather Jenghîz Khân, in the palace destined for that ceremony; and in July made a solemn sacrifice to heaven. After this he appointed his brother Alipûko to command in Karakorum, and left the general Alantar to assist him with his advice. Then setting out, he came to the mountain Lewpan, in Shen-si, where Jenghîz Khân died. He had scarce arrived at this place when he understood that his brother Hû-pi-lay was come, with his family, and without any attendance, in the form of a criminal, to submit himself implicitly to the orders of his majesty; which news affected Meng-ko, and began to remove the suspicions which he had conceived against his brother.

*Hublay's  
prudence  
prevents  
his dis-  
grace.*

Hû-pi-lay was greatly loved and esteemed by the Chinese, whom he governed with gentleness. He was accused of endeavouring to make himself independent, and his having gained the affections of the soldiers and the Chinese was interpreted to his disadvantage. Meng-ko began by depriving him of his government, and turning out some generals who seemed too much attached to him. Officers

(C) And afterwards Shang-long. 11 min. 50 seconds, west tu. Lat. 42 deg. 25 minutes, of Pe-king.

were

were appointed to command in China, and mandarins to try those who were found to be criminals. While these judges repaired to Si-gan Fû, capital of Shen-si, and prepared to execute the emperor's orders, Hû-pi-lay, shocked with this sudden disgrace, seemed inclined at first view to have recourse to arms, and revenge himself on those who were the authors of it; but as he did nothing without the advice of Yau-shù, this lord advised him instantly to depart, without any troops, and, throwing himself at the emperor's feet, offer to give up his wives, concubines, and children, with all the riches that he had in gold, silver, and precious stones. Hû-pi-lay took his advice, which had so happy an effect, that Meng-ko was touched when he beheld his brother's humiliation; and his former tenderness returning, he embraced him several times with tears, revoked all his orders, and gave him full power. He ordered him to prepare for the siege of Vû-chang Fû, capital of Hû-quang, then to march to Hang-chew, the metropolis of Che-kyang, and empire of the Song. At the same time he nominated general Chang-jau to command under him<sup>b</sup>.

During these transactions, Hu-lyang-hotay, after the Hû-lyang's conquest of Tibet in 1255, subdued most of the countries bordering on Yun-nan: he afterwards undertook to penetrate as far as Ton-king and Kochin-china, which at that time were comprehended under the name of Gan-nan. Pursuant to this design he sent officers to the king of that extensive country, to summon him to pay tribute to the Mungls; but on advice that those envoys were imprisoned, he marched to the capital of the kingdom, ruined it, plundered the country, and was on the point of returning towards Tali, when he received orders from Meng-ko to make all possible haste to join Hû-pi-lay at the siege of Vû-chang Fû.

The army of Meng-ko was divided into three bodies, in order to enter Se-chwen by three different parts. Po-li-cha, a great Tartar lord, was nominated to command the first body; Mu-ko, the emperor's brother, led the second; and the khân himself conducted the third, which took the route of Han-chong Fû, in Shen-si.

The Song always took care to furnish Se-chwen with good troops, well officered; so that, notwithstanding the formidable armies of the Mungls, they stood their ground;

<sup>b</sup> Gaubil, p. 114, & seqq.

and although defeated, they commonly retook the cities which the enemy had reduced; because the Mungls, for want of provisions and forage, were obliged to retreat. Nyew-lyen, of the Chanchû tribe, whose father and grandfather were celebrated in the army, having been sent before by Meng-ko, learned, towards the beginning of the year 1258, that Atahû, general of the Mungls in Chingtû Fû, was reduced to great extremities, besieged on all sides by the Song. Hereupon he resolved to succour Atahû. For this purpose he made rapid marches towards him, and meeting by the way with a detachment of the enemy's army, engaged them for a whole day, and gained a complete victory. Nevertheless the Song took Ching-tu, and Atahû died. Nyew-lyen, driven almost to despair for not having prevented that loss, marched directly to Ching-tû, and posting himself between the city and the army of the Song, entrenched his forces; in short, the city for want of provisions, surrendered, and the enemy's troops dispersed.

Nyew-Lyen being informed that Meng-ko had arrived at Han-chong Fû, left the government of the city to Lyew-hema, and repaired to Mahû, from whence he sent troops to facilitate his passage of the river Kyan-lin, over a bridge of boats.

*Lang-chew surrenders.*

The princes Moko and Tachar having joined the khân, he took Long-gan Fû, and, at the head of his choicest troops, attacked Lan-chew. Yang-ta-ywen, who had at first killed the officer sent to summon him to surrender, being seized with a panic on sight of the Mungl army, went out, with a design to submit; but changing his mind, returned to the city. Meng-ko, enraged at the murder, protested that he would ruin the city; but Li-hû-lan-ki, who was a good officer, and native of Shen-si, having represented that without the assistance of Yang-te-ywen, they could scarcely succeed in the war of Sé-chwen, he sent an officer to assure the governor of his favour, who thereupon surrendered.

*Quey-lin Fû taken.*

General Hû-lyang-ho-tay, in his return from Gan-nan, entered China by the way of Tong-king, and advancing to Quang-si, seized Quey-lin Fû, capital of that province, notwithstanding the difficulties of the roads, and the troops of the Song, who endeavoured to dispute his passage; but that commander, and his son Achû, either defeated them wherever they appeared, or deceived them by false marches, so that the Chinese were surprised to see him penetrate as far

far as Chang-sha, a city of Hu-quang, which he invested in the beginning of the year 1259<sup>i</sup>.

On the first day of the same year Meng-ko, with the army, arrived at the mountain Chong-quey, where, in a great council of the old generals, To-whan, of the Chalar tribe affirmed, that the war in Se-chwen would prove unfortunate, as the heats and damps would destroy the soldiers; for which reasons he advised his majesty to return to the north; but Pa-li-che, of the tribe of Orla, insinuating that To-whan spoke through fear, was of opinion that the emperor should remain where he was. Meng-ko praised that general for his advice, and resolved to besiege Ho-chew, which he invested in February. The place was strong, and defended by Vang-kyen, a very intelligent officer, who had a good garrison, and plenty of provisions. Lu-ven-te, governor-general of the province, who so bravely defended Gan-fong, in Kyang-nan, watched all advantages, and lost no occasion of harrassing the Mungls, who were always obliged to march in strong bodies to prevent being surprised by the troops which he had posted in all the difficult passages.

Ho-chew  
besieged  
out of sea-  
son.

Meng-ko having sent a Chinese officer to summon Vang-kyen to surrender, that commander, knowing he had been in the service of the Song, after reproaching him with treason, ordered him to be carried to the place of arms, and put to death. Mean time Nyew-lyen, advancing to join the khán, caused a bridge of rafts to be made near Fû-chew. Fû, another general, went and encamped near Quey-chew, on the borders of Hû-quang. It was not long before Meng-ko perceived that the siege of Ho-chew would cost him much trouble. In the same month the Mungls were repulsed before the western gate, nor were the attacks more successful in March. In April the thunder and rain, which continued for twenty days, did them much damage. Nevertheless, they one day scaled the walls, and made great slaughter among the defendants; however, they were at last repulsed.

Mean while Lu-ven-te attacked with much resolution the raft-bridge at Fû-chew, and got into the city of Kon-chin Fû, eight leagues south-south-west of Ho-chew. There he gathered more than one thousand barks to ascend the Kya-ling; but being attacked on that river by the general She-tyen-che, this latter took one hundred barks, and pursued him to Chong-king. Notwithstanding this defeat, Lu-

*The  
Mungls  
distressed.*

<sup>i</sup> Gaubil, p. 117, & seq.

ven-te distressed the Mungls greatly, by cutting off their provisions, which was one of his principal cares. They suffered much likewise by diseases; and Vang-kyen had always the advantage over them, both in the attacks and fallies. The Mungls, weary of the siege, which, notwithstanding the diligence and bravery of Vang-te-ching, who had the conduct of it, was very little advanced in July, resolved to employ their best troops, and carry the place, cost what it would. On the other side, Vang-kyen and his garrison swore to perish, sooner than surrender.

*A general assault.*

On the 10th of August Meng-ko visited the works, and sending for Wan-te-ching, ordered him to get things ready for scaling the walls the night following. These orders were executed with much secrecy and conduct. The Mungls were already mounted in great numbers on the walls, when the governor hastened to their defence. The assailants cried out, "Vang-kyen, surrender, and you shall have your life." But he, without regarding this exclamation, assembled his people, and attacked them with so much fury, that Vang-te-ching, who mounted the walls first, and most of those who followed him, were slain upon the spot; the rest were pursued by the victor, who put several quarters of the Mungls into confusion. Meng-ko, upon this check, ordered a general assault, and went himself to the scalade. But Vang-kyen was not to be forced. At the same time a storm fell, and blew down the ladders. A dreadful slaughter ensued, in which an infinite number of Mungls perished; and among the rest the emperor, whose body was found pierced with several wounds. Thus died Meng-ko, at the age of fifty-two, after a reign of nine years.

Upon this disaster, the prince Moko, and the rest of the generals, agreed to raise the siege, and retire towards Shen-si. He likewise sent a lord to invite his brother Hû-pi-lay to return into Tartary, and be proclaimed emperor. The army decamped; and the herse which carried the khân's corpse was placed in the midst of a great body of troops<sup>k</sup>.

*Person and character.* This khân, in person, was of a middle stature, and flat-nosed (D). Several of his wives had the title of empresses,

after

<sup>2</sup> Gaubil, p. 119, & seq.

(D) It may not be amiss to give the whole passage wherein this is found, from William de Rubruquis, who was sent into Tartary in 1253; in January

following he arrived at the court of Mangu Khân, and was admitted to audience, sitting on a bench before the ladies. The house was hung with cloth of gold.

after the title of Jenghîz Khân and Ogotay. The first of them was of the Hongkila (or Kongorat) tribe, and family of Te-in. By these he had five sons, and several daughters.

The history reproaches Meng-ko for his attachment to the lamas<sup>1</sup>.

### S E C T. IV.

#### *The Reign of Hû-pi-lay or Kublay Khân.*

DURING the winter of this year Hû-pi-lay left Long-kang, afterwards called Shang-tû; and in July, 1259, encamped to the south of the river Jû, in Honan. There he forbade committing massacres; and having given one part of the army to Chang-jau, the two bodies reduced the fortresses which are near the city Ma-ching, in the district of Whang-chew, in Hû-quang. In September he received an express from his brother Moko, to hasten his return with his best troops: but Hû-pi-lay, not thinking it for his honour to quit the country without performing some remarkable action, passed the great river Kyang, in the face of a numerous army and fleet belonging to the Song, and next day appeared before the city of Vû-chang Fû; a circumstance which greatly alarmed the court at Hang-chew.

A.D. 1259.  
Kublay  
marches.

Besieges  
Vû-chang  
Fû.

The emperor of the Song, on this occasion, opened his treasures, and distributed immense sums, with pieces of silk, to his troops: great levies were made throughout the empire; and a numerous army was ordered to Han-yang Fû, to succour Vû-chang Fû. The general of this army was Kya-tse-tau, a man raised to the highest dignities of state, without talents equal to the charge; neither beloved nor esteemed by the troops.

<sup>1</sup> Gaub. p. 121.

gold. In the midst was a fire, made of thorns, wormwood-roots of a very large size, and ox-dung. The khân sat on a bed, and was clad with a robe of spotted fur, which shined like a seal-skin. He was of a middle stature, flat-nosed, and about forty-five years old (1).

His wife, who was a little pretty woman, sat by him: and in another bed near it sat Sirina or Khirina, one of his daughters, who was grown up, but very ill favoured, and several little children. Purchas's Pilgrim. vol. iii. p. 25.

(1) He was then forty-eight years of age.

Makes  
peace  
with the  
Song.

## *History of the Mogul or Mungl Empire.*

The governor of Vû-chang Fû amused Hû-pi-lay at first with false hopes, and slew the officer sent to treat with him ; but was himself slain some time after in a fall which he made. Kya-tse-tau led the greater part of the army to Whang-chew Fû ; and in this march betrayed his own want of courage and experience. In November Lû-ven-te, governor of Se-chwen, received orders to repair to Vû-chang Fû, to command in that important place. The siege was prosecuted with vigour ; and the garrison had already lost many officers as well as soldiers. Kya-tse-tau, apprehending the consequences of the loss of that city, sent to propose conditions of peace ; one of which was, that the empire of the Song should become tributary to the Mungls ; but Hû-pi-lay would not be satisfied. At this time Kya-tse-tau learned, by an express from Wang-kyen, what had happened at Ho-chew, and took occasion from thence to renew his propositions. At the same juncture Hû-pi-lay received positive advice that the general Alantar was doing his endeavours to set his brother Alipuka on the throne ; and that several princes and lords were of his party. Upon this intelligence a great council was held, in which Hau-king, a learned and sage counsellor, advised Hû-pi-lay to make peace with the Song, to fix his court at Yen-king, and cause himself to be proclaimed emperor. This advice being followed, Kya-tse-tau promised to pay annually twenty van of silver (E), and as much in silk, by way of tribute, and acknowledgement of the sovereignty of the Mungls over the Song. In consequence of this treaty, after the limits of both empires had been settled, Hû-pi-lay decamped, and repassed the Kyang. Hû-lyang-ho-tay likewise raised the siege of Chang-shu, and crossed the same river, in his way to the North : but some of his troops having continued behind, on the other side, till February 1260, Kya-tse-tau ordered them to be put to the sword.

This wicked minister made a shameful treaty for the Song, and concealed it from the emperor Li-tsung (F), who believed the retreat of Hû-pi-lay was owing to that officer's valour and conduct ; and the soldiers, massacred by his order, gave occasion to a report that the Mungl army had been defeated. So that the court at Hang-chew lavished

(E) That is, a million of livres, or about fifty thousand pounds sterling. peror of the Song dynasty, which governed the southern China, and consisted of eighteen princes.

(F) He was fourteenth em-

their

their praises and rewards on Kya-tse-tau, not dreaming that what this abandoned wretch had done would shortly ruin the empire<sup>m</sup>.

Hû-pi-lay, after the treaty concluded with the Song minister, left Hû-quang with his best troops; and in December following, encamped in sight of Yen-king. His return produced a general joy in the people of the North, who wished to see him immediately settled on the imperial throne. Most of the princes of his house, as well as of the Chinese and Mungls, but above all the princesses of Hongkila (or Kongorat), his first wife, pressed him to declare himself emperor. While Hû-pi-lay seemed unresolved what to do on this occasion, there arrived a Mungl lord, deputed by Hulagû, and, in the name of that prince, made strong instances for having Hû-pi-lay proclaimed. At length, in April 1260, Moko, Hû-pi-lay's brother; Hatan, son of Ogotay, whom Meng-ko had banished to Bishbâleg; Tachar, grandson of Tye-muko, fourth brother of Jenghîz Khân; the deputy of Holagû, with those of many other princes, and a great number of Tatar lords, assembled at the new city of Kay-ping Fû, afterwards Shang-tû, in Tartary, and declared Hû-pi-lay emperor of the Mungls. Afterwards they saluted him as such; and the troops followed their example. The Chinese everywhere made great rejoicings; and the new monarch thought only of choosing good generals, able ministers, and above all wise men, who should promote the silk manufactures, commerce, and agriculture.

Meantime it was confirmed, from all sides, that prince Alipûko (or Aribuga), intended to make himself emperor; that he had a great army at Karakoram, commanded by geeneral Alantar; that he was supported by the princes Afûtay, Yu-long Ta-she, and Siliki, three of Meng-ko's sons, besides some others; and that many officers, who served in the provinces of Se-chwen and Shen-si, were in his interest. Hereupon Hû-pi-lay ordered his generals in Tartary to send him an exact account of what they knew in relation to the intrigues of his competitor. In China, among other trusty lords, he employed Lyen-hi-hyen, born in the country of Igûr; Chang-ting, a Chinese; and Chau-lyang-po, a native of Nyu-che. He appointed Hi-hyen the first governor-general of Shen-si and Se-chwen, with a good army under his command. This Hi-hyen was an able minister, as well as an experienced general, very

A.D. 1260.

*Proclaimed  
khân.**Aribuga  
aspires  
to the em-  
pire.*

<sup>m</sup> Gaubil, Hist. Gentch. p. 123, & seq.

learned, and had a prodigious memory. As an instance of his merit, prince Hatan desired to serve under him.

Nor was Alipuko idle on his part : he sent general Alan-tar into the northern provinces of Tartary, with large sums of money, and great quantities of silks, to gain the heads of tribes. When-tû-hay, governor of Lû-pan, where Jenghîz Khân died, who had sixty thousand men at his devotion, joined the governor of Ching-tû Fû, capital of Se-chwen ; while other officers of Alipuko's party seized Fong-tsyang Fû, in Shen-si, and carried on a correspondence in Si-gan Fû, the metropolis of that province. After these precautions taken, Alipuko caused himself to be acknowledged emperor at Karakoram, as soon as he understood what had passed at Kay-ping Fû. Lyew-tay-ping, and A-lû-whay, who in the time of Meng-ko commanded in Si-gan Fû, being now at Fong-tsyang Fû, as soon as they heard that Hi-hyen was on his march for Shen-si, set out post for Si-gan Fû, where they arrived on the 1st of May, and began to persuade the inhabitants to declare for the party of Alipuko : but two days after Hi-hyen arrived, and infused fresh courage into the people, who dreaded the return of the two officers<sup>n</sup>.

*Attempts  
on Shen-si.*

The general immediately caused the order for acknowledging Hû-pi-lay to be published through the city ; likewise the patent whereby he was declared commander and governor of the provinces of Se-chwen and Shen-si. This step being taken, he charged the officers to keep strict guard at the gates and walls, and to examine minutely all those who went either in or out. He particularly gave orders in secret, not to suffer either Lyew-tay-ping, or A-lu-hay, to escape. Soon after, the guards gave notice, that they had arrested a stranger at the gate, who said he came from Lû-pan. This was a trusty officer, who had watched all the motions of When-tû-hay ; and from him Hi-hyen learned the names and numbers of those who were of that governor's party. Hereupon the general assembled the officers and mandarins : and, after consulting with them, caused Lyew-tay-ping and A-lû-hay to be put under arrest. Then he sent Lyew-he-ma into Se-chwen, to put to death Mi-lyo-che, governor of Ching-tu Fû, and Kitay-pu-wha, who commanded on the frontiers. He gave an army to general Vang-lyang-ching, with orders to join prince Hatan ; and appointed Pachun, a Mungl officer, to sustain Lyang-ching with five thou-

and choice men, drawn from Se-chwen. These measures being taken, he put to death Lyew-tay-ping and A-luhay, as rebels; and received orders soon after to save their lives.

When-tu-hay, who heard all these tidings with surprize, plainly perceived that Hi-hyen was thoroughly instructed; and, losing hopes of taking Si-gan Fu, resolved to repass the Whang-ho; and, after reducing Kan-chew, went and joined Alantar. Prince Hatan, not being able to prevent either of these events, marched northward with his horse; and, having encamped between the rebels and Karakorom, sent Hi-hyen an account of the situation of affairs. As he was quickly joined by Wang-lyang-ping and Pachun, he resolved to march in three bodies, and seek the enemy, whom he attacked to the east of Kan-chew. When-tu-hay and Alantar had the advantage at first, by means of a great wind, which incommoded with the sand and dust the cavalry of Wang-lyang-ping. Hereupon this general ordered his men to alight; and, attacking the enemy's left wing, put them into disorder, and then posted himself to the north of them. The right wing likewise began to stagger, and Pachun wheeled to the south. Mean time Hatan cut off their retreat towards Karakorom, and made so desperate an attack, that the troops of Alantar and When-tu-hay gave way on all sides. These two generals were both killed in the battle; and a great slaughter was made among their troops, who were not able to retire either towards the north or the great wall. In short, Hatan and his lieuterrants gained a complete victory; and Shen-si and Se-chwen became entirely settled.

Mean time Hû-pi-lay sent Hau-king to the court of the Song emperor; both to notify his advancement to the throne, and execute the treaty concluded with Kya-te-tau, during the siege of Vu-chang Fu. But as the Chinese monarch knew nothing of that treaty, his minister, fearing the envoy would discover his knavery, imprisoned him near Nan-king; and took every precaution that neither Hû-pi-lay nor his master should hear any thing from this lord. The Song emperor indeed was informed that a Tatar envoy was arrived on the frontiers; but Kay-te-tau had the art to divert his thoughts to other matters.

The Mungl emperor, being a lover of science, invited learned men to his court, from all nations. He established an academy of the ablest doctors called Hanlin, a certain number of whom were set a part for composing the

*His army  
defeated,  
and genera-  
rals killed.*

*Song mi-  
nister's  
treachery.*

A.D. 1260.

the history of the empire ; and he instituted schools of mathematics, geometry, astronomy, and medicine. China and Lyau-tong were divided into ten departments, with each its officers and mandarins ; and ten lords were appointed to be at the head of affairs relating to them : an order was likewise published, that the presidents in all the tribunals should be Mungls.

**A.D. 1261.**

*Affairs of  
Se-chwen.  
Alipuko  
defeated.*

In the beginning of the year 1261, the emperor set at liberty all the literati who had been made slaves during the late wars.

In October he set out for Tartary, followed by the princes Hatan and Tacher, with a great body of Chinese troops, in order to attack those of his brother Alipuko. The two armies met at Simutû Nor ; where, after a bloody fight, that of Alipuko was entirely defeated : but this prince broke through the khân's troops, and retired to the North. Hû-pi-lay took possession of Karakorom, where he found a great deal of riches ; then returned to Kay-ping Fu, and from thence to Yen-king. Towards the end of the year, Lyew-cheng repaired to court : and Lu-ven-te, the new governor of Se-chwen, having taken Lu-chew, the beginning of 1262, Hû-pi-lay made Lyew-cheng governor of Quey-chew, in the same province, on the borders of Hu-quang ; and this lord did the Mungls great services.

*Li-tan re-  
volts.*

Li-tan, the son of a great mandarin, who had surrendered to Jenghîz Khân, commanded the Mungls in the districts of Tsî-nan Fu, Itû (at present Tsing-chew Fû), and other places in Shan-tong. His power likewise extended over the parts of Kyang-nan subject to the emperor Hû-pi-lay ; ever since whose accession to the throne Li-tan had resolved to join the Song. This lord, having in January sent for his son from Kay-ping Fu, caused the two cities before mentioned to be fortified, and then threw off the mask, declaring openly for the Song, to whom he delivered up several places of importance. On this occasion Wang-ven-tong, one of Hû-pi-lay's ministers, was detected in corresponding with Li-tan, and put to death. This Li-tan, who was a good commander, took the field, and made some conquests. Hereupon the emperor ordered prince Apiche, and general She-tyen-che, to make haste and besiege Tsî-nan Fû. Chang-hong-fan, son of Chan-jau, who was posted on the west of the city, raised a rampart of earth, behind which he laid an ambuscade of cuirassiers, and left the east gate open.

**Li-tan**

Li-tan sallied out to attack this intrenchment; and while one part of his detachment passed the ditch and entered the gate, the other scaled the rampart: but the troops in ambush cut this whole detachment in pieces, and Li-tan escaped with much difficulty. The Song had indeed sent succours to Li-tan; but the general who commanded this army being seized with consternation, on his entering Shan-tong, retired, after having conveyed thirty thousand lyangs to I-tu. The Mungl generals afterwards inclosed the city with a strong wall of earth, so that Li-tan could make no sallies, yet he still held out; and, after having consumed all the provisions, fed on human flesh. At length, seeing no hopes of relief, he first slew his wife and concubines, and then threw himself headlong into a lake. However, She-tyen-che found him alive, and slew him with his own hand; then ordered him to be cut in pieces. After this catastrophe the army marched to I-tu, which immediately surrendered.<sup>o</sup>

The Chinese great men who were at court, particularly general Kokan, provoked at the conduct of the Song towards the Mungls, pressed Hu-pi-lay incessantly to declare war against them. The emperor hereupon complained, in a manifesto, of their unfair dealing; and either being ignorant of, or dissembling, the detention of Hau-king, said, that, before he resolved on war, he would wait the success of that envoy's negotiations. Mean time he appointed Achu, son of Hu-lyang-ho-tay, who was reckoned a great captain, to command the army destined for the south.

One of Hû-pi-lay's faults was the love of money. It was difficult to persuade him that the mandarins were dishonest, who furnished him with it. Ahama, a Mohammedan lord, and an Arab by nation, was one of those bad subjects, who study only to procure money for their prince, by enriching themselves; without regard to the unlawful means which they employ, the evils which they cause to the state, and the injury which they do to the reputation of their master. Ahama, who was superintendant of the customs through the empire, had recourse to many contrivances to deceive the emperor, and the Mungl grandees. He would submit his accounts to none but the emperor, pretending to be independent of the ministers. Tew-me, *the people.* Yau-shu, Hyu-heng, Lyew-ping-chong, and other Chinese, knew, from the first, the character of Ahama, and did not fail to acquaint the khân with it. Chang-wen-

<sup>o</sup> Gaubil, p. 138, & seqq.

kyen, in particular, made it appear, that it was contrary both to reason and practice to withdraw the customs from the jurisdiction of the ministers. As Hû-pi-lay, in this point, followed the advice of the Chinese, Ahama had recourse to a thousand artifices to be revenged on them : he caused great sums of money to be brought in to the emperor, giving him to understand, that it was the fruit of his good management ; when, at the same time, the money was forced from the people by his commissaries, who were men of no credit ; and, indeed, no better than public robbers. He never ceased urging the Mungl lords to complain that the Chinese had too much power : but Yau-shu and Hyu-heng, being possessed of more genius and address than Ahama, discovered all his artifices, and took care to make the prince Cheng-king (G) acquainted with them.

A.D. 1263.

*Mungls,  
their igno-  
rance.*

Ahama was greatly mortified to see the illustrious Yau-shu declared prime minister in January, 1263. This lord, who was one of the most learned men among the Chinese, counselled Hû-pi-lay to found, in all the countries within his extensive dominions, colleges and academies, to educate youth in the knowledge of the sciences, arts, and good morals. The khân himself was sensible of the ignorance which prevailed in general among the Mungl lords ; and was ashamed to see the difference which there was between them and the Chinese, as well as the strangers from the West, who resorted in great numbers to his court. The Mungls knew only how to handle the sword and bow ; and their whole science was limited to some knowledge they had of horses. Hû-pi-lay began this reformation, by causing the princes his sons to be well educated. Chau-pi, a native of Tay-tong-fû, had already translated, into the Mungl language, part of the classical books ; and Hyu-heng made an abridgement of the Chinese history and chronology. The emperor gave these works to the Mungls, to learn ; and did not disdain to examine them himself upon the book of Hyu-heng.

*Palace of  
ancestors.*

The observation of the rites due to the memory of their ancestors is, in China, an affair of state ; and one of the principal duties from which the emperors themselves are not exempt. Hû-pi-lay built a magnificent palace, in honour of his ancestors ; and, in March, the same year, went

(G) Elsewhere Cheng-kin, pire ; but was not appointed He was the son whom Hû- heir apparent till the year 1273. pi-lay designed for the em- Gaubil.

to pay his respects to their remains. He was the first Mungl prince who performed this ceremony after the Chinese manner. He ordered the bonzas and lamas to recite, for seven days and nights, the prayers of their Fo : and since that time, this practice had been observed every year.

In 1264, Lyew-ping-chong and Ahama were declared ministers. This last had the management of the revenue and customs, without being accountable to any but the emperor. In March, prince Alipuko, brother of Hû-pi-lay, with the princes and lords of his party, came and submitted themselves to his clemency. The princes he pardoned; but ordered to be put to death such of the lords as had seduced them to take up arms. The emperor gave to Kay-ping-fû the title of Shang-tu, or *High Court*; whither he went in March, and did not return to Yen-king till August. Every year he made this journey; and his Mungl successors followed his example. In January, the king of Korea sent an envoy, with compliments to Hû-pi-lay; and this custom has continued ever since.

A.D. 1264.

Arikbuka  
submits.

In 1265, Gan-tong, descended from Mûhûli in the fourth generation, being then no more than twenty-one years of age, was the admiration both of the Mungls and Chinese, for his prudence and capacity. The most experienced generals proposed him to be generalissimo of the troops: the Chinese grandees advised the emperor to set him at the head of state affairs; and the most able doctors reaped some instruction from his conversation. His high birth and good mien, his probity and moderation, rendered him beloved and respected by all the lords at court. He was, this year, appointed minister. The first step he took was to fetch Hyu-heng back to court, and learn from him the science of government. Hyu-heng had never ceased to acquaint the emperor that Ahama was a bad man; and the vexation it gave him to see him at the head of the finances, with the quality of minister, induced him to retire from court, and apply himself to study. Gan-tong had for an associate in the ministry a lord of the country of Parin, named Pe-yen, a man of his own character.<sup>p</sup>

A.D. 1265.

Gan-tong  
prime mi-  
nister.Associates  
Pe-yen.

In 1266, the Tay-myau was finished; in which there were as many halls as princes to honour. In each hall was placed a tablet, inscribed with the name and title of

Hall of an-  
cestors.<sup>p</sup> Gaubil, p. 142, & seqq.

A.D. 1267. the prince ; and on the side of that table was another, with the name and title of the prince's his first wife.

Ta-tu city. In April, 1267, was finished, by the emperor Hû-pi-lay's order, the city called Tatû, or Tay-tû; that is, the *Great Court*, to the north-east of Yen-king, named also Chong-tu, or the *Court of the Middle*. Ta-tu (H) is the bulk of the Tatar city, at present called Pe-king, the capital of China.

*Haytu defeated.*

In the course of this year, Haytû, who, among others, had been banished by Meng-ko, because he favoured She-lye-men, appeared in Tartary, with a great army. This prince resolved to be revenged on Meng-ko, when he could find an opportunity ; and, after his death, founded a considerable dominion in the country of Almâlig. He gained the affections of the people there, and drew to his interest the chiefs of tribes who encamped to the north-north-east of Turfan, as well as to the west and north of Mount Altay. He likewise stirred up several princes of his family ; and resolved at length to declare against Hû-pi-lay : but his first attempt proved unsuccessful ; for he was defeated, and forced to retreat to Almâlig.

*Great army.*

A.D. 1269. She-tyen-che, having been made generalissimo of the army to be sent against the Song, amounting to three hundred thousand men, of the best soldiers ; several foreign lords, Igûrs, Persians, and Arabs, as well as princes and chiefs of tribes, desired to serve under that Chinese lord, who was loved and esteemed by all. This general examined the avenues of Syang-yang ; and, judging that the siege would be long, in January 1269, ordered strong walls to be built, to cut off its communication with other places ; and caused great intrenchments to be made at a post called Lû-men, to blockade Fan-chin <sup>9</sup>.

The Mungl emperors had, since the time of Jenghîz Khân, employed in the public acts the Igûr and Chinese characters ; but Hû-pi-lay imagined, that it was requisite for the grandeur and glory of his nation, that it should have characters of its own. The charge of inventing them was committed to Pa-se-pa, chief of the lamas, who was

<sup>9</sup> Gaubil. p. 146. & seqq.

(H) This is evidently the Kanbalu (or Kambalu) of M. Polo. The vestigia of the ancient Yen-king are still to be seen, a few furlongs to the south-west of Pe-king. Gaubil.—

Kanbalu, or Khan-palu, signifies the *Palace of the Khân*. Khân-balig, as the Oriental writers name it, signifies the *City of the Khân*.

thoroughly

thoroughly acquainted not only with the Chinese and lama characters, but also with those of Tibet, called the characters of Tangut, of Igûr, the Indies, and several countries of the west of Asia. Pa-se-pa, having examined the nature of these several characters, with their conveniences and inconveniences, rejected the Chinese, which represent the ideas of things, and contrived other signs which were proper to express the different sounds. Of these he formed one thousand, with rules for pronouncing and writing with them. Hû-pi-lay was so well satisfied with this work of Pa-se-pa, that, in 1269, he declared this lama a regulo; and, by edict, ordered his characters, which were called the new Mungl characters, to be used in all the tribunals; although, at first, the Mungls, who were accustomed to the Igûr letters, as well as the Chinese, who preferred their own, found some difficulty to learn the new alphabet.

In 1270, Ahama began to dread the probity and genius of several great lords who were at court. He had found means to render the fidelity of Lyen-hyen suspected, and to remove him from court; but this minister, having cleared himself, resumed his employment, and joining the Chinese grandees, resolved to destroy Ahama. This minister accused Hi-hyen of negligence, in suffering an officer within his jurisdiction to remain in prison, after the emperor had ordered his discharge. On Ahama's complaint, Hi-hyen was removed, and sent home; where he lived like a philosopher.

Hi-hyen, although a stranger, was in great esteem among the Chinese literati, because he followed the doctrines of Confucius. He was an enemy to the Mohammedans, Tau-tse, and bonzas; especially the lamas, or those of Tibet. A Tau-tse, who had access to court, advised the emperor to drink a liquor, which, according to the principles of his sect, would prolong his life, and make him happy after death. Hi-hyen, being consulted on this occasion by the emperor, made a severe satire on the sect of Tau-tse; concluding with an harangue on the long life and virtues of the ancient emperors Yau and Shun. Hû-pi-lay afterwards dismissed the Tau-tse; but would have persuaded Hi-hyen to follow the maxims and rules of conduct laid down by Pa-se-pa: Hi-hyen answered, that he followed the rules of Confucius; and, without being afraid, repeated the precepts of that philosopher's disciples, on the sincerity of great men when they speak to the emperor; and the care with which a son ought to keep the precepts of his forefathers. Nothing could be better timed

A.D. 1270.

---

Ahama's power;disgraces  
Hi-hyen.

than this answer. Ahama passed for a knave, and yet obtained the confidence of Hû-pi-lay<sup>1</sup>. Jenghîz Khân had given orders, not to make use of bonzas, and yet the court was full of lamas. Hû-pi-lay was one of those great princes who was not offended at being told their faults; and always set a high value on those courtiers who were of Hi-hyen's character, praising the delicacy and integrity of his answers.

**A.D. 1270.** Ahama was detested by every body; but because he imposed on the emperor by projects which gave him hopes of money, he was in favour; and in 1270 his majesty gave his son the department of war. Among the princes none but Ching-kin, the emperor's eldest son, dared to speak against Ahama; yet Hyu-heng said openly, that it was dangerous to give such great employments to the father and the son.

**Syang-yang distressed.** In May Hû-pi-lay exempted the people of Se-chwen for a season from tribute; and at the same time ordered general Say-tyen-che to plunder that part of the province which was still subject to the Song. Say-tyen executed his commission with rigour, and almost ruined the district of Kyating-fû. The troops who were before Syang-yang and Fan-ching, resolving to take these two cities by famine, general Chang-hong-fang made new entrenchments on the mountain Van. In June, a fleet of the Song, with a hundred thousand men aboard, and provisions for the besieged, appeared before Lû-men; but Achû, who commanded in the place, dispersed them, and took a great many barks, with all sorts of arms and other valuable booty.

**A.D. 1272.** Syang-yang, though greatly distressed by the besiegers, made a desperate resistance both by land and water. Among the general officers who commanded at the siege, was an Igûr lord, named Ali Yaya, who had a great knowledge of the western countries, and their manner of making war. He advised the emperor to send for several of those engineers out of the West, who knew how to throw stones a hundred and fifty pounds weight, which made holes seven or eight feet wide in the thickest walls; and with these, he said, Syang-yang and Fan-ching would soon be taken. Hû-pi-lay, adopting the proposal, ordered two of these engineers to be sent for; who, after having given a specimen of their art before the emperor at Ta-tû, were sent to the army towards the end of the year 1272.

<sup>1</sup> Gaubil, p. 148, & seq.

The river Han runs between Syang-yang and Fan-ching, A.D. 1273. in which last place Fan-shun and Nyew-fû commanded at the beginning of the year 1273. The two engineers, Alawating and Ifemayn, planted their machines, which immediately made a breach in the walls. Hereupon the Mungls, now distinguished by the name of Ywen, under Ali Yaya, made an assault, and after a bloody conflict, the suburbs of Fan-ching were taken. Flushed with this success, She-tyen-che ordered Achâ to attack the bridge, which joined that city to Syang-yang. Achû conducted the troops with hatchets and scythes to cut the wood and posts; while Ali Yaya caused stones to be discharged against those who opposed that general. Other officers were commanded to cut the fastenings and stakes, and take away the crosses which supported the chains. This service being performed, they burnt the bridge of barks. A great detachment was then posted along the Han to hinder any succours from getting to Syang-yang by water. These precautions having been taken, the greater part of the army attacked Fan-ching on all sides, and made themselves masters of the walls and gates. Fan-tyen-shun seeing the city taken, slew himself; saying, that he had lived and would die a subject to the Song. Nyew-fû, at the head of a hundred soldiers, resolved to fight from street to street, and slew a great number of the Ywen. Both parties were so overcome with thirst, that they drank human blood to quench it. Nyew-fû, full of rage and despair, set fire to the houses, that the great beams falling might kill his pursuers, and block up the way. At length, pierced with several wounds, he ran his head against a pillar, and threw himself into the flames, where he expired. His officers and soldiers followed his example. Thus the Mungls became masters of Fan-ching, in January, where most of the general officers distinguished themselves, though their loss of subalterns and soldiers was considerable\*.

After the reduction of Fan-ching, all the materials which served at the siege were brought before Syang-yang. The two engineers posted themselves to the south-east of the city, against a wooden entrenchment, which was raised upon the ramparts. This was quickly demolished by the great stones which they launched against it; while the noise and havock which they made struck terror into

*Fan ching  
battered  
with en-  
gines, and  
taken.*

*Syang  
yang is  
battered,  
and surren-  
ders.*

\* Gaubil, p. 154, & seqq.

the hearts of the besieged (I). The garrison had, from the walls, observed part of what passed at Fan-ching, which much damped their courage. Lyew-ching having, in an assault, received a wound with an arrow, shot by Lu-ven-whang, to be revenged, asked leave of Ali Yaya to go and attack him; but Ali Yaya, instead of permitting him, went himself to the foot of the wall, and offered Ven-whang honourable conditions, which were accepted of, and his request granted, that he might be of the van-guard when they went to attack Gan-lo. Possession was given to Achû in February; upon which She-tyen-che sent Ali Yaya to court, where he was received with marks of distinction, and publicly commended, with the other generals, by Hû-pi-lay, who ratified all which he had promised to Ven-whang. This general, who followed Ali Yaya to Ta-tû, had also the honour to salute the emperor, and both were sent back to the army with new instructions.

The emperor, Hû-pi-lay, being informed that several princes of his family were forming plots in Tatary, seemed inclined to make peace with the Song; but Ali Yaya, Lyew-ching, and others, having shewn how easy it would be to carry on the war with success, now Syang-yang and Fan-ching were taken, that prince resolved to continue it. She-tyen-che, on account of his infirmities, obtained leave to lay down his post of generalissimo, and proposed Gantong to succeed him. Yau-shu followed his example, and the emperor appointed Pe-yen, whom he ordered to go, without delay, and put himself at the head of the army; complaining that the Song had imprisoned his envoy, and infringed the treaty concluded with Kya-tse-tau. At the same time the generals Polo-phan and Lyew-ching, were commanded to march to Yang-chew, in Kyang-nan.

A.D. 1274.

Pe-yen  
made gene-  
ral.

(I) Marco Polo, cap. 48. speaking of the siege of this place, which he calls Sian-fu, says, that he, with his father and uncle, offered their service for making engines after the European manner, for casting stones three hundred pounds weight; in which they employed Nestorians, who made three mangani, as he calls

them. And that the first stone, falling on a house, so demolished it, that the inhabitants immediately capitulated. This agrees with the Chinese history; but this latter declares positively, that the engineers were Whey-hu, or Mohammedans; but our author Gau-bil thinks it might easily have mistaken them for Christians.

Pe-yen

Pe-yen was saluted great general near Syang-yang, by the officers, who were charmed with the manner in which he took possession of his new dignity. Lu-ven-whang being appointed to command the troops, the army marched toward Gan-lo ; and in October encamped to the west of this place, which is separated from Sin-in by the Han. They had stretched iron chains across the river, and obstructed it with great barks fastened together. They had likewise driven sharp stakes into the bottom of the channel. The walls of Gan-lo were of stone, and the ciey was furnished with all sorts of necessaries : besides, it had a strong garrison, and Chang-chi-kyay was intrenched in the neighbourhood with a fine army. Notwithstanding the apparent strength of the place, most of the generals were for attacking both it and the Song forces ; but Pe-yen holding a council of war, and examining the prisoners whom Achû had made, resolved to go another way to work. He caused a great quantity of wood and bambû canes to be cut down, and then ordered the general Li-ting to attack the post of Whan-kya-wan. This post being carried, Pe-yen made use of his wood and bambûs to transport the barks into the lake Teng, from whence they entered the Han before Gan-lo<sup>t</sup>.

One of the principal officers of the garrison having, at the head of two thousand men, retired to Tfven-tse-hû, was defeated after a brave defence, and killed by Pe-yen himself. Afterwards the general marched to Sha-yang, and taking advantage of a high wind which arose in the evening, by means of his kin-shi-pau (K), burnt the houses, and took the city. They next besieged Sin-ching, opposite to Gan-lo ; from whence Pyen-ku sallying on horseback, shot arrows on every side, with which he wounded Luven-wang, and having unhorsered, obliged him to retire. Ven-whang renewed the attack with fresh men ; but Pyen-ku, with his fire-arms (L), made him give way a second time. However, that commander having ordered all his soldiers to the assault, they, by climbing on one another's shoulders, mounted the walls, and took the city on the second of December. Pyen-ku, after a brave resistance, run a

Encamps  
near Gan-  
lo.

<sup>t</sup> Gaubil, p. 156, & seqq.

(K) Gaubil knows not the *metal pau*.  
nature of this composition ; the (L) It is not said what these words literally signify *molted* fire-arms were. Gaubil.

sword into his own body, and being half-dead, threw himself into the fire. Three thousand men, whom he commanded, fought desperately, and all died with their arms in their hands. —

*and Sha-  
vú-kew;*

A.D. 1275.

Pe-yen, in 1274, assembled the generals at Tfay-tyen, some leagues to the west of Han-kew, where the Han enters the great Kyang, to consult on the manner and time of passing that river, the banks of which the Song had fortified. For this purpose he prepared a great number of barks, in which a strong detachment, under the command of Achû, crossed the river, near the isle of Sha-chew, after having defeated a body of the enemy. Having fortified himself, and sent advice of his landing to Pe-yen, that general ordered the greater part of his army to join Ali Yaya, and follow his directions for attacking Yang-lo-pû; where Wang-ta, after defending himself valiantly at the head of eight thousand men, was slain. As soon as this place was taken, Pe-yen, without delay, crossed the Kyang with all his army; and the city of Han-yang surrendered to the Ywen.

*Vú-chang-  
fù surren-  
ders, with  
other cities.*

Pe-yen having joined Achû, the siege of Vú-chang-fù was resolved on; in order to have a retreat on the Kyang, in case of any misfortune. This city was immediately surrendered, notwithstanding the strong remonstrances of two officers, whom the Mungls would have killed; but Pe-yen praised their fidelity, and forbade his troops to put any body to death. This general, by his address, gained the people to his interest; and knew how to profit by the discontent which reigned among several of the Song officers. Lu-ven-whang seduced many lords of his family, who commanded along the Kyang: so that the cities of Ki-chew, Whang-chew-fù, and others, were taken, without striking a stroke".

*Peace pro-  
posed.*

Kya-tse-tau, the Song minister, having equipped a numerous fleet, and assembled a hundred and thirty thousand men, entered the Kyang by Si-gan-chi-kew. He posted himself at U-hû; and, in February, he was joined by the fleet of Hya-quey. He then sent to Pe-yen a Mungl prisoner, with a grand present of fruits; and was not ashamed to propose peace to him, upon the terms concluded with Hû-pi-lay. Achû, at the time of that treaty, had been with his father Hu-lyang-ho-tay at the siege of Chang-sha; and, having been witness of Kya-tse-tau's

<sup>v</sup> Gaubil, p. 159. & seq.

knavery,

knavery, explained his character to Pe-yen, who sent Nankyatay, a Naymân lord, of great descent, to that minister, with orders to reproach him for his unjust dealing : and to tell him, "that, for the honour of his master, he ought to have spoken of peace sooner ; but that now the time was past." Pe-yen's answer:

Pe-yen having invested and taken Chi-chew, a few leagues to the eastward of Gan-king, resolved to attack the forces of the Song, which were posted in different parts on the river. Kya-tse-tau had his quarters at Lü-hyang : seventy thousand men lay at Ting-kya-chew, under the command of Sû-hû-ching ; and Hya-quey had two thousand five hundred barks stationed in the middle of the river.

The Ywen general, having caused great heaps of grass and straw to be fixed upon rafts, spread a report, that he intended to burn the enemy's barks. He then ordered his own to get ready for battle ; while the horse and foot marched along both sides of the Kyang. The Song commanders were day and night on their guard, although their soldiers had no inclination to fight. At length Pe-yen ordered a great stone to be shot from his pau, against the body commanded by Hû-cheng ; as a signal for putting the troops in motion. Achû, who encamped opposite to Hû-cheng, following the stream, advanced to attack his van-guard. Kyang-tsay, Hû-cheng's lieutenant, made a shew as if he intended to stand the shock : but the troops, seeing their general on board his concubine's bark, cried out, that he had taken to flight. These cries produced confusion. Achû took advantage of this disorder, and fell upon the Song troops ; who were put to a general rout : while Achû, supported by Pe-yen, with all his forces, made a horrid slaughter. Great numbers of the enemy were drowned ; and the Ywen got an inestimable booty.

After this defeat, Kya-tse-tau retired in haste ; and soon after, Hya-quey joined him. Many of those who fled from the battle repaired to Yang-chew, and spoke openly against Kya-tse-tau ; and indeed Pe-yen owed his great success as much to the bad conduct of the Song generals, as to his own valour and prudence. The consternation became almost universal through Che-kyang and Kyang-nan : so that the governors of Ching-kyang, Ning-que, and Ho-chew, in the last of those provinces, and even of Nan-chang-fû, capital of Kyang-si, abandoned these cities ; and the Ywen took Tau-chew in the same province, several

ral of whose Mandarins flew themselves, rather than surrender <sup>w</sup>.

*The minister removed.*

The principal officer of Kyen-kang (now Nan-king), in Kyang-nan, took what gold and silks he could find, with abundance of silver, and abandoned that city : for a great number of mandarins were weary of Kya-tse-tau's government, and chose rather to see the state perish, than obey that minister. The empress, who had the title of the Song monarch's grandmother, and regent of the empire, took the management of affairs from that minister ; and published an edict to exhort the mandarins to do their duty. She likewise caused writings to be posted up throughout the empire ; wherein she invited the grandees, officers, and persons of fortune, to succour the state in such deplorable circumstances. Chang-shi-kyay, always faithful to his prince, retook Jau-chew in Kyang-si ; Ven-tyen-fyang sold his effects to levy troops. Others made great efforts likewise : but Pe-yen, by his activity and policy, disconcerted the most prudent measures of the loyal Song.

*Pe-yen's humanity.*

In March, this general, having taken Nan-king, relieved the distresses of the poor, sent physicians into the towns and villages afflicted with contagious diseases, forbade pilgrimage on pain of death, and did friendly offices to every individual : in short, he made himself respected and admired, as well for his sincerity, as for his disregard of pleasures and wealth.

*Complaints of the Yuen.*

Hû-pi-lay having renewed his complaints against the Song ministers, for the detention of Hau-king, the court caused that lord to be enlarged. On his return to Ta-kû he fell sick ; and although the emperor sent physicians to cure him, yet he died as soon as he arrived at that city. Another ground of complaint quickly followed : Lyen-hi-kyen, brother of Lyen-hi-hyen, president of the tribunal of ceremonies at Ta-tû, being transferred to Nan-king, Pe-yen sent him a guard of five hundred soldiers. At a fort near Hang-chew-fû, capital of Che-kyang and the Song empire, the garrison seized, wounded, and sent him to that city, where he died of his bruises. An officer likewise of the tribunal of public works, in his retinue, was slain. This affair made a great noise. The Song ministers immediately dispatched a messenger, to assure Pe-yen that neither the empress regent, nor the emperor, knew any thing of the matter ; and that they would, without delay, make the necessary inquiries to discover and punish

<sup>w</sup> Gaubil. p. 162. & seq.

the authors of that crime : they intreated Pe-yen, at the same time, to make peace on the conditions which they proposed.

After Vû-chang-fû was taken, Pe-yen left the government of that city, and its district, to Ali Haya, with forty thousand men, including the two western engineers. This general made himself no less popular than Pe-yen : he knew how to gain the hearts of the Chinese, as well as of the troops, who had a great esteem for him. Ali Haya took the field, and attacked the naval force of Kau-shikyay in Tong-ting Hû, a famous lake of Hû-quâng ; which he defeated after a bloody fight, and slew the admiral with his own hand. After this victory, he presented himself before Yo-chew, on the banks of this lake, and reduced it : he obliged King-chew, Gan-lo, and other places, to surrender ; and, in several encounters, defeated general Kau-ta, an officer of reputation, who afterwards went over to the Ywen.

She-tyen-che died at Ching-ting-fû, in Pe-che-li, on his return from Hû-quang, in the beginning of the year. This general had always commanded great armies with reputation since the time of Jenghîz Khân. Before he died, he intreated Hû-pi-lay to forbid slaughter after he had passed the Ky-ang. At this period, the emperor bestowed the government of Al-mâlig on his son Nanmûhân, under whom Gan-tong had command of the troops. Hû-pi-lay thought it convenient to oppose a prince of the blood, and a good general, to prince Hay-tû, who made incursions over all Tartary<sup>x</sup>.

The officers of Hay-tû visited all the tribes to make friends, and the prince himself excited his whole family against the emperor : however, it does not appear from the history, what were either his complaints or pretensions. Whatever they were, he, in the course of this year, appeared with prince Tua, at the head of a hundred thousand men, in the country of Igûr, and besieged Itûhû or Idikut, in his capital ; because he refused to become their ally, and renounce the party of Hû-pi-lay. However, he defended himself valiantly till succours arrived ; and then forced the princes to raise the siege. He afterwards went to court, where the emperor loaded him with riches and honours. Idikut was grandson and heir of Idikut, who submitted to Jenghîz Khân, and had married a daughter of the emperor Quey-yew or Kayuk.

*Ali Yaya's  
exploits.*

*Affairs of  
Tartary.*

*Hay-tû in  
arms.*

<sup>x</sup> Gaubil, p. 165. & seqq.

*Pe-yen  
marches  
towards the  
capital.*

*Chang-  
chew-fû  
taken.*

*Peace sued  
for.*

*Pe-yen's  
answer.*

This war, which threatened Tartary, induced Hû-pi-lay to recall Pe-yen, to command in the north: but, at that general's intreaty to continue the war in the south, the emperor complied, and ordered him to march immediately towards Ling-gan or Hang-chew-fû, the capital of the Song empire.

Pe-yen passed the Kyang with his army, where he met with a most obstinate resistance; but his courage and activity surmounted all difficulties. He raised a rampart of earth, that he might be able to command the walls of the city. From hence he laid planks to the battlements; and giving the assault, was himself among the first who entered the city. Yau-in, one of the officers who commanded in the city, was killed at the beginning of the attack. Cheng-chau and Wang-gan-tsyé still defended themselves in the great square. It was proposed to Cheng-chau, the fourth commanding officer, to escape through the north-east gate, which was still open; but he answered, "Any other place, though but an inch from hence, will not be fit for me to die in." He was killed about noon; and Pe-yen caused the inhabitants to be put to the sword. He ordered Wang-gan-tsyé to be bound, and then to kneel; but he preferred death to submission. Lyew-shi-yong, with some horse, forced an intrenchment, and escaped toward Sû-chew-fû.

Chi-ni-chong, principal minister of the Song, in December, sent Lyew-jo to Vû-si-hyen, a city of Kyang-nan, near Chang-chew-fû, to assure Pe-yen, that the assassination of Lyen-hi-kyen was committed unknown to his court; and, at the same time, solicited peace. Lyew-jo affirmed that all the mischief was owing to Kya-tse-tau, who had violated the public faith, and betrayed the empire (M): he added, weeping, that the emperor his master was still in mourning, and in an age not fit to govern. Pe-yen reproached Lyew-jo with the many treacheries acted by his ministers; the murders perpetrated on the persons of the envoys, even of Hû-pi-lay; and the unfair dealing with regard to the conditions which had been agreed to: "As to the minority of your prince, you ought to consider, said Pe-yen to Lyew-jo, that formerly your dynasty wrested

(M) On the displacing of this minister, his effects were confiscated, and he retired to Chang-chew-fû (a city of Fo-kyen); where, on his arrival,

he was slain by a mandarin, who could not bear to see the man enjoy life who had ruined the empire by his wickedness. Gaubil.

the empire from a prince who was nearly of the same age: at present, Heaven takes the empire from an infant to give it my master. There is nothing in this which is contrary to reason." Having expressed himself in this manner, he sent back Lyew-yo, and ordered Nan-kya-tay to follow him.

Pe-yen, preceded by Lu ven-whang, made his public entry into Sū-chew (then called Ping-kyang); there he received an express from Chi-ni-chong, wherein the Song emperor offered to be called nephew, or grand nephew, of Hū-pi-lay, and pay him tribute: but every proposal was rejected by Pe-yen; who, being joined by Argan, and some other generals, prepared to make himself master of Lin-gan, without delay.

Mean while Ali Haya pushed the siege of Chang-sha vigorously. He caused the ditches to be drained; and, after having made several breaches in the walls, ordered an assault to be given in January, 1276. As the garrison had suffered extremely, and were not able to sustain this last attack, the officers talked of surrendering: but Li-fū opposed that motion; and declared he would kill those who should converse in such a strain. A mandarin of Heng-chew, then in the city, ordered the cap of ceremony to be put on the heads of his two young sons, and made them perform the ceremony of salutation to those who were present: after which, he and his two sons, with his domestics, threw themselves into the fire, and perished. Li-fū made a libation for them; ordered all the mandarins to repeat the oath of fidelity to their sovereign; and to swear they would not surrender. One of the most considerable began, by drowning himself in a pond. Li-fū then sent for Shen-chong, one of his officers, and said to him, "I have no strength; I must die; I would not have the people of my family dishonour me by slavery; after you have slain them all, kill me." Shen-chong fell on his knees, and protested he could not undertake such a task: but Li-fū importuned him so much, that at length he consented. He slew all Li-fū's domestics, after he had intoxicated them; then dispatched Li-fū himself, and, having set fire to the house, returned to his own; where he first murdered his wife and children, then killed himself. All the mandarins of the city, and most of the inhabitants, followed their example; and the very wells were filled with the bodies of those who threw themselves in, to perish: so that Ali Haya, entering the city, was astonished to find it without any people. Most of the other cities of that

Great  
magnani-  
mity of  
the Chi-  
nese.

*The empress submits to Pe-yen.*

that part of Hû-quang, called Hû-nan, submitted to the Ywen<sup>y.</sup>

The empress regent of the Song, finding that Pe-yen would not grant peace, on condition that the emperor should be called grand nephew of Hû-pi-lay, offered that he should be styled subject, with a yearly tribute of twenty-five van in silver, and as much in silk. This step was taken without the knowlege and against the advice of the minister Che-ni-chong, who advised the court to remove elsewhere: but the empress would not consent to it; and, in resentment, cast the ornaments of her head on the ground, reproached the great men for having deceived her; shut the palace gates, and forbade any such proposals to be made to her. Che-ni-chong had promised Pe-yen to come to confer with him; but did not keep his word. That general, resolving not to be duped, went and encamped on the mountain Kau-ting; from whence he ordered some troops of horse to advance as far as the north suburbs of Lin-gan (or Hang-chew-fû). Ven-tyen-syang and Chang-shi-kyay proposed, that the empresses, emperor, princes, and the ministers, should embark and put to sea; while they two, and the officers who were willing to follow them, attacked the Mungls: but the prime minister rejected that measure. At length, the empress-grandmother sent the great seal of the empire to Pe-yen, in token of submission; and that general dispatched Nan-kya-tay with it to Hû-pi-lay. As Che-ni-chong did not approve of this step, he immediately left the court, and retired to Wen-chew-fû.

*Shi-kyay proposes peace.*

Chang-shi-kyay, not able to bear this shameful act of submission without fighting, retired with a body of troops, and encamped at Ting-hay. Pe-yen sent Pyen-pyau, an officer of reputation, to exhort him to surrender. Shi-kyay imagined at first, that Pyen-pyau's design was to pursue him; but when he understood the real motive of his arrival, he ordered his tongue to be cut out, and his body to be hacked to pieces. The general Lyew-shi-yong, who had so bravely defended Chang-chew-fû, went out to sea, and drank himself to death. Mean time Ven-tyen-syang, and the minister U-kyen waited on Pe-yen; and, with a view to repair the honour of the empire, which had been impaired by former negociations, spoke in the following terms: "If the empire of the North would withdraw its army, and make peace with our's as a neighbour; then

we might talk of money and silks to give your troops : but in case you intend to destroy the dynasty of the Song, consider that we have still large and powerful countries, strong cities, ships, money, and troops ; and you know there is no insuring the events of war."

Pe-yen, charmed with the great qualities of Ven-tyen-syang, whose character he was acquainted with before by report, sent back U-kyen, and detained him, under pretence of conferring with him about important affairs ; and ordered the generals Mangû-tas and Sû-tû to shew him all sorts of civilities. Ven-tyen-syang boldly reproached the deserting lords of the Song with their perfidy and cowardice : he even told Pe-yen, that it was unjust to detain the envoy of a crowned head. When Lu-ven-whang advised him to talk in a more moderate strain, that illustrious mandarin expatiated upon his ingratitude to the imperial family of the Song, from whom he had received so many benefits and honours. Pe-yen afterwards sent an officer to Hû-pi-lay, and put Ven-tyen-syang in his train.

In February, Pe-yen appointed Tatar and Chinese lords to govern the city of Lin-gan. By his orders they took and sealed up the books, the registers, the maps, the historical records, the paintings, the edicts, and the seals of all the tribunals. He sent two great lords to guard the palace of the empress grandmother : they behaved to her with the greatest respect ; so that the Chinese themselves, in all their distress, admired the excellent regulations which Pe-yen caused to be observed. The Song emperor had two half-brothers : these young princes were carried away ; and, after they had been concealed for seven days upon a mountain, were conveyed by a mandarin to Wen-chew-fû. In the course of this month, Hya-quey, who for a long time was inclined to submit to the Ywen, joined them ; and delivered into their hands the strong city of Lu-chew in Kyang-nan.

In March, Pe-yen, on horseback, followed by all the general officers, and with the standard of the great general carried before him, left Hû-chew-fû, and came to Lin-gan ; where he visited all parts of the city, and had the curiosity to view the flux and reflux of the river Che. The emperor and empress desired to see him ; but he excused himself, by giving them to understand that he was not thoroughly acquainted with the ceremonial proper to be observed on such an occasion. Next day he left Lin-gan. In May, the generals Atahay and Li-ting entered the imperial

rial palace, and caused the ceremonies to cease, which were used in appearing before the emperor. They then, saluting the emperor, and the empress his mother, acquainted them, that they were to set out for the court of the emperor Hû-pi-lay. The princesses, at this message, could not refrain from tears; and embracing the emperor her son, said, "My son, the Son of Heaven grants you life, you must beat the head to him." The young prince, at these words, turned his face towards the north; and, falling on his knees, along with his mother (N), they both saluted the emperor Hû-pi-lay, by striking the ground nine times with their heads. This ceremony being performed, they were both put in a chariot, and sent to Ta-tû <sup>z</sup>.

*Immense treasures.*

This was a sad spectacle for all the faithful subjects of the Song race. Su-ing-pyau, one of the greatest lords of the court, not being able to survive the misfortune of his prince, threw himself, with his two sons and one daughter, into a well. The empress grandmother was suffered to remain in her palace till she recovered from her illness. Pe-yen gave orders to take the gold, silver, precious stones, jewels, and other costly things of the imperial palace, and send them by sea to Tyen-tsin-wey; from whence those immense treasures were conveyed to Ta-tû. Pe-yen, having received an express order to repair to court, left the generals Argan and Tong-wen-ping to command the army which was in the neighbourhood of Lin-gan (O).

*Emperor arrives at Shang-tû.*

Li-ting-chi, Kyang-tsay, and other Song officers, shed torrents of tears when they heard that the emperor was carried prisoner to Ta-tû: they assembled in great numbers at Yang-chew-fû, and swore to do their utmost to rescue their prince out of the hands of the Ywen. Pursuant to this resolution they wrote circular letters; and, having

<sup>z</sup> Gaubil, p. 173, & seq.

(N) The captive emperor, named Kong-ti, or Kong-tsung, was then near seven years of age: the empress, grandmother was the wife of Li-tsung, his grandfather; the grandmother of Kong-tsung and of Tû-tsung was also conveyed to Ta-tû, or Pe-king, along with other princes of the imperial family. Gaubil.

(O) Lin-gan is the same city which M. Polo calls Quinsay;

which is a corruption of King-te, or King-she, the name which the Chinese often give the place where the emperor keeps his court. In 1237, above five hundred and thirty thousand houses were burnt by a fire: the great number of barks, filled with people, which are continually in its port, shews how populous it is. Gaubil.

distributed their money to the most resolute soldiers, assembled an army of forty thousand men. This army, under the command of Kyang-ts'ay, attacked the city of Qua-chew, where the emperor had arrived. The Ywen troops, conducted by Atahay, Li-ting, and other generals, engaged the Song for three hours together, and repulsed them. Kyang-ts'ay, who fought continually as he retreated, was surrounded by Ach'u, come from the reduction of Whay-gan-fû, who summoned him in vain to submit. The inhabitants of Cheng-chew-fu attempted also, without success, to deliver the emperor Kong-ts'ong; who at length in May, arrived at Shang-tû (P). Hû-pi-lay sent the prime minister to meet him; and the princesses of Hong-kila, empress and first wife of the Mungl monarch, ordered a lord to furnish the mother of Kong-ts'ong with every thing suitable to her rank: the Chinese highly commend the virtue and moderation of this empress. When the treasures from Lin-gan arrived at court, the princes and princesses beheld them with raptures of joy; but the empress did nothing but weep: "My lord (said she to Hû-pi-lay), the dynasties are not eternal: by what you see has happened to that of the Song, judge what will happen to our's."

The retreat of the princes to Wen-chew-fu drew thither a great number of mandarins, officers of the army, and soldiers. Chang-shi-kyay repaired to that place with the body of troops which he commanded; and there was the minister Chi-ni-chong, by whom I-vang, brother of Kong-ts'ong, was declared great general of the empire, associating with him his brother Quang-vang. Among the ruins of an old temple in that city, is seen the place where formerly Kau-ts'ong sat on his throne when he quitted the north to pass into the south. On his throne I-vang being placed, the grandees kneeled, and took an oath of fidelity, not without shedding tears. After this ceremony they removed into Fo-kyen, and in May, I-vang was acknowledged emperor of the Song at Fu-chew-fu, capital of that province. He was then nine years of age, and assumed the title of Twon-ts'ong. He appointed his generals, as well as ministers; and had it not been for traitors and cowardly subjects, the Mungls must of necessity have been obliged to repa's the Great Kyang. Ven-tyen-syang escaped on the road, and, after many dangers, had the good fortune

*Twon-  
ts'ong en  
throned.*

(P) The new capital of Tar-  
ary, often mentioned before, whither the court was removed  
from Karakoram.

to reach Fo-kyen, where he was received with great demonstrations of joy, and unanimously declared generalissimo of the troops.

*Pe-yen re-called.*

Pe-yen was not without his enemies at court, who accused him of having demeaned himself too effeminately; but he had also his friends, who defended his conduct. Hû-pi-lay sent all the great mandarins to meet him in the suburbs of Shang-tu, or Kay-ping-fu, from whence they conducted him to an audience of the emperor. This prince received him graciously, and appointed him his lieutenant-general in Tartary. He likewise did great honours to the generals Atahay and Li-ting, which latter was allowed to follow Pe-yen<sup>a</sup>.

The cities of Yang-chew-fu and Tay-chew-fu were taken about this time, by Achû, who, soon after these conquests, was recalled to court, and became one of the ministry.

The army of general Argan, after reducing the places to the south of Che-kyang, entered Fo-kyen, which being filled with traitors, great part of the cities surrendered without resistance. This circumstance obliged the emperor to put to sea; who narrowly escaped being taken at Tsven-chew-fu, by the treachery of the governor. Chang-shi-kyay having pressed for the emperor's service several barks and ships, which that covetous mandarin employed in trade, he, to be revenged, surrendered that city to the Mungls. The emperor Twon-tslong arrived in November at Whey-chew with his fleet, in which, it is said, were embarked a hundred and eighty thousand men. Mean time Lu-shi-quey crossed the famous mountain of Mey-lin, and entered the province of Quang-tong, where he made great conquests. The general Ali Haya put to the sword all the inhabitants of Quey-lin-fu, which he took after a long siege, wherein he lost a great number of men.

In 1277 Chang-shi-kyay levied forces in Fo-kyen, and supported the party of the emperor Twon-tslong. He besieged Tsven-chew-fu in that province, but it was raised by Sû-tû; who, pretending that the Chinese were not to be trusted, made a great slaughter wherever he came; he in particular put to the sword the inhabitants of the cities Hing-wha-fu and Chang-chew-fu. Ven-tyen-syang had a considerable number of troops in Kyang-si, but could never join a powerful army which Tsew-fong, a great mandarin, had raised, and the forces of both were new levies,

<sup>a</sup> Gaubil, p. 176, & seq.

and undisciplined. In August general Li-heng sent troops to Kanchew, hindered his junction with Tsew-fong, and defeated their armies in several engagements; so that Ven-tyen-syang was obliged to retire, after his wife and two sons had been taken prisoners, and sent to Ta-tû. Chau-shi-shang, one of the imperial family of the Song, with others, were carried to Nan-chang-fû, capital of Kyang-si; where, encouraged by Shi-shang, they chose rather to be slain than kneel to the Mungls.

In November Ta-chû took the city of Quang-chew-fû (Q), in Quang-tong; and, in December, the ship in which the emperor Twon-tsong had embarked, was in danger, near the isles of Ma-kau, of being cast away in a squall of wind. The prince fell into the water, and was taken out again half dead with the fright. A great part of his troops perished. He had retired from Fo-kyen in 1276, first to Whey-chew-fû in Quang-tong; from whence he sent an officer to acquaint Sûtû, that he was willing to submit to Hû-pi-lay. That general sent the same officer to Ta-tû; but no mention is made with what success the negociation was attended. From Whey-chew-fû Twon-tsong retired to Chau-chew-fû, a city and port in the eastern part of the province, and there took shipping in order to get to the kingdom of Chen-chen (R). The minister, Che-ni-chong, went before, but he never returned, nor was he ever heard of after.

Hû-pi-lay this year appointed bonzas of the sect of Tau and Fo, to govern the bonzas of their respective sects, who were in Kyang-nan, and other southern provinces. He likewise ordered general Sey-ten, an Arab, to follow the army, which was ordered to march from Yun-nan into the kingdom of Myen, or Pegû.<sup>b</sup>

We have already taken notice that the prince Siliki, son of the late emperor Meng-ko, first joined the party of Ali-puko, and afterwards submitted. He was afterwards corrupted by prince Haytû, and, with the princes his allies, in the course of this year (1277) defeated the troops of Hû-pi-lay in the country of Olimali, or Almalig, and took the prince Nanmû-han, son of the emperor, and general Gan-tong. After these great advantages, Siliki marched

<sup>b</sup> Gaubil, p. 179, & seq.

(Q) The capital of Quang-tong, called by the Europeans Kan-ton.

(R) The part of Tong-king,

opposite the isle of Hay-nan on the south of China, is, in the Chinese books, often called Chen-chen.

towards the east with a powerful army, and had already arrived to the north of the city Holin, or Karakoram, when Pe-yen, who had been for some time in Tartary, advanced to meet the enemy, giving the command of great detachments to the generals Li-ting and Tû-tû-ha. Siliki, on the news of Pe-yen's march, decamped from the neighbourhood of Karakoram, and crossed the Orgûn, near which he entrenched himself. Pe-yen followed, and having encamped near the same river, seized all the avenues by which provisions could be brought to Siliki's camp.

*Suppressed  
by Pe-yen.*

This prince, seeing himself in danger of perishing with his whole army, was obliged to come to a battle, in which he was taken and killed by Li-ting, in the month of July. The prince Totomûr fled towards the Tula, and entrenched himself between the sources of that river and the Onon; but Tû-tû-ha, being detached by Pe-yen, overtook and entirely defeated him. At the same time Li-ting marched westward, and having passed the river Tamir, which falls into the Orgûn, defeated the remains of Siliki's army, and several bodies commanded by the officers of the princes Hay-tu and Tûa. The emperor, to whom the revolt of those princes had given some uneasiness, was much rejoiced at the news of this great victory; which, for a time, disconcerted the measures several Mungl princes had taken with Hay-tu, who thought of nothing less than rendering Tartary entirely independent of Hû-pi-lay.

**A.D. 1278.**

*Song em-  
peror dies.*

In January 1278, the Ywen completed the conquest of Se-chwen. Ven-tyen-syang, notwithstanding the losses he had received, took the field again, and in March reduced the city of Quang-chew Fû, or Kan-ton. Meantime the emperor, Twon-tsang, retired into a little desert isle, called Kang-chwen, where he died, aged eleven years. Several great men, after this event, entirely desponded, and quitted the army of the Song. Most of those who were about Twon-tsang, weary of such a long and unfortunate war, seeming inclined to acknowledge Hû-pi-lay, Lû-syew-fû said to them: "What shall we do with the third son of the emperor Tû-tsang, aged eight years, who is here with us? Anciently one Ching and one Lu(S) sufficed for one sovereign: there are still remaining in our possession vast countries, and millions of people: what is there wanting in us that may be necessary for the proclamation of a new emperor?" Hereupon, all agreeing to

(S) Ching is the space of a tions of five hundred men, league square; lu, the habita- Gaubil,

proclaim

proclaim Quang-vang, they caused this young prince to *Ti-ping* ascend a rising-ground, then fell on their knees, and ac-*proclaimed*. knowleged him emperor. Lü-fyew-fû and Chang-shi-kyay were declared his two ministers in April. This latter was obliged to raise the siege of Ley-chew Fû, a strong city, not far from Tong-king, which general Ali Haya caused to be well furnished with troops and provisions.

In May the new emperor of the Song, known under *Retires to* the title of *Ti-ping*, retired to the mountain *Yay-shan*, *an isle*. near the city of *Sin-whey-hyen* (T), in *Quang-tong*. *Yay-shan* stands in the sea, opposite to the mountain *Ki-shi-shan*. The flux and reflux of the current between these two mountains, makes the Chinese compare them to a gate with folding-doors, which open and shut every moment. Chang shi-kyay having chosen this mountain for the emperor's retreat, caused houses to be built for the officers and soldiers, likewise a palace for *Ti-ping* and the princess his mother. Plenty of provision was brought from *Quang-chew Fû*, or *Kan-ton*; abundance of oars, arms, and arrows were made; ships and barks were equipped; in short, the zeal and fidelity of that minister cannot be sufficiently extolled. Reckoning the people, mandarins, and soldiers, the emperor had with him more than two hundred thousand men. Great numbers of soldiers and sailors marched from *Hu-quang* to join Chang-shi-kyay; but Ali Haya having sent out large detachments to examine all passengers, great numbers were hindered from proceeding<sup>c</sup>.

In August the mandarins performed the ceremonies for *The Song* interring the late emperor *Twon-tsong*, on the mountain *Yay-shan*. *generals* Chang-hong-fan having been informed of what the Song minister was doing, represented to the emperor *Hû-pi-lay*, that it was necessary, as soon as possible, *surprised* to subdue the province of *Quang-tong*. *and taken*. The Mungl monarch charged him with that important commission, and making him a present of a sword, adorned with precious stones, appointed him general of the army designed against the emperor *Ti-ping*. Hong-fan accordingly repaired to *Yang-chew Fû*, and there taking with him twenty thousand choice men, in November arrived by sea in the province of *Quang-tong*, where he surprised *Ven-tyen-syang*, in conjunction with two other generals, *Tsew-fong* and *Lyew-tse tsun*.

<sup>c</sup> Gaubil, p. 182, & seqq.

(T) On the west side of the between that city and Ma-  
bay Kan-ton, about mid-way kau.

The troops of these commanders gave way at the first onset, and the rout became general. Tsew-fong flew himself. Lycw-tse-tsун and Ven-tyen-syang were intimate friends, and each of them fought death in order to save the other's life. Lyew-tse-tsун being taken first, said he was Tyen-syang, in a belief that, on uttering those words, he should be killed; but instead of being slain, he was put into the hands of a guard. Tyen-syang was taken afterwards, and bound, to hinder him from poisoning himself. Hong-fan having ordered Lyew-tse-tsун to be put to death, Tyen-syang said he was the man; but the prisoners discovered the truth, and Lyew-tse-tsун was burnt alive by a slow fire. Tyen-syang being brought before the Mungl general, would not perform the reverence, in token of submission, although he was unbound for that purpose, but demanded to be slain: Hong-fan, however would not grant his request, but sent him prisoner to Ta-tū, and set at liberty his relations and friends who had been taken.

A.D. 1279.

*Their fleet defeated.*

After this victory Hong-fan sailed with his naval force, and on the 31st of January, 1279, came in sight of the mountain Yay-shan. He first caused this mountain to be examined, and then having informed himself concerning the tides, winds, and windings of the coasts, took measures with Li-heng for attacking Chang-shi-kyay to advantage; but this latter was before-hand with him; and on the 29th of March came in the night to attack the Ywen. However, he was repulsed. Hong-fan, to avoid confusion, divided his fleet into four squadrons, each distant from the other three or four hundred paces. Li-heng posted himself to the north of the Song fleet, which lay to the west of the mountain. On the third of April a thick fog covered that side of the mountain. Li-heng had orders to attack the enemy at the beginning of flood. When the tide came in, the instruments sounding, Li-heng bore down upon them on one side, while Chang-hong-fan advanced on the other. Chang-shi-kyay, though attacked on both sides, defended himself valiantly; but his troops being exhausted, gave way, and the Mungls having taken one great ship, several others struck.

*The emperor drowned.* In short, confusion seized the whole fleet of the Song; while Hong-fan and Li-heng, taking advantage of this disorder, routed them on all quarters. At sun-set, the wind and fogs beginning to arise, Shi-kyay cut his cables, and escaped with fifteen great ships. Lü-syew-fu, perceiving all was lost, first threw his wife and children into the sea; then,

then, with a resolute tone, said to the young emperor, "Do not dishonour your illustrious family, in following the example of your brother Kong-tsong. Die a sovereign prince, rather than live a slave to a foreign nation." After he had spoken these words, he weeping, embraced Ti-ping; and, taking him on his shoulders, leaped with him into the sea. Most of the mandarins followed this example <sup>d</sup>.

Hong-fan took eight hundred barks. The Chinese historians say that one hundred thousand men were drowned. For several days the sea was seen covered with dead bodies. Chang-shi-kyay discovered that of the emperor, and interred it with respect. He also recovered the imperial seal; and then joined the vessel which had on board the princess, mother to Ti-ping. He found this lady in the greatest grief, as well as danger; her ship being separated from the rest of the fleet. He first communicated to her the death of her son; and then exhorted her to think of installing a new emperor of the family: but she was so deeply affected by the melancholy news, that, without either speaking one word, or shedding a single tear, she threw herself into the sea. The ladies and maids of honour followed her example. Shi-kyay buried their bodies, with all the decency circumstances would permit; and, with the remains of the fleet, sailed to the coasts of Tongking, where he received considerable succours. With these he put to sea again for Kan-ton: but a violent storm arising, the officers advised him to return into port. This advice he rejected; observing that some risk must be run, in order, as soon as possible, to elevate an emperor of the Song family. However, the wind increasing, and the tempest becoming more furious, Shi-kyay went upon deck; where, having invoked heaven, and burnt perfumes in honour of the Deity, he flung himself headlong into the ocean, near the mountain Hay-lin. After his death, all the officers and mandarins submitted to the Ywens or Mungls; and the emperor Hû-pi-lay found himself peaceable master of the whole empire of China, which had been, for several ages, divided among many potentates.

Thus ended the dynasty of the Song, whose family-name was Chau. The first emperor of this imperial house was Chau-quang-yu, descended from one of the most distinguished families of the empire, who made himself famous in the wars against the Kitân. He established his

*Song dynasty extinct,  
in the year  
1279.*

<sup>a</sup> Gaubil. p. 186, & seqq.

court at Kay-fong-fû, capital of Honan, and nine of his successors reigned there for the space of one hundred and sixty-eight years. The wars which they waged with the Kin emperors, obliged them to remove their court to Hang-chew Fû, capital of Che-kyang ; where it remained one hundred and forty-eight years, under seven princes. The two last reigned near four years. So that, in the whole, the dynasty of the Song continued three hundred and nineteen or three hundred and twenty years.

*Pa-se-pa dies.*

Before we proceed to the next year, we shall mention the death of the famous lama Pa-se-pa, which happened in this. After his departure, the most extraordinary titles were conferred on him. They said, he was above men ; and that nothing but heaven was above him. He was called the Great Saint ; the man of the highest virtue ; the son of Fo of Si-tyen. The Chinese literati loudly exclaimed against these titles, and vilified the bonzas. Indeed, several of them, over-zealous for their doctrine, treated Hû-pi-lay as a Barbarian, and superstitious prince ; who suffered himself to be governed by women and the lamas, without courage, and without genius for government. There is still at Pe-king a myau (or temple), built in honour of Pa-se-pa, in the time of the Mungl emperors.

**A.D. 1280.** — The general Ali Haya having made a great number of slaves in the southern provinces, the emperor Hû pi-lay set them all at liberty in the year 1280. In March he appointed mathematicians to search for the source of the Whang-ho, or Yellow River ; who, in four months time, arrived in the country where it rises, and drew a map of it, which they presented to his majesty. Although much mention is made of this great river in the books of the Chinese, and its course is particularly described in the chapter of the Shû-king, entitled Yu-kong, written at least above three thousand nine hundred and twenty years ago ; yet, till the time of Hû-pi-lay, the country from whence that river comes seems to have been unknown to the Chinese, who represent it very erroneously in their books <sup>a</sup>.

*Japan summoned.* — The emperor, having long resolved to subdue the kingdom of Je-pen (or Japan), or at least render it tributary, sent to summon the king to acknowledge him for his sovereign ; but the king paid no regard to Hû-pi-lay's letter, which was written in form of an order from a prince to his subject. The Mungl monarch, several years after, sent a deputy thither, who was killed. Hû-pi-lay, being

<sup>a</sup> Gaubil, p. 188, & seqq.

enraged

enraged at this insult, equipped a great fleet, and this year ordered general Argan to attack Japan, with an army of one hundred thousand men. The king of Korea had orders to favour this enterprize; which was disapproved of generally by the Tatar and Chinese grandees.

Jenghîz Khân gave the care of the science of astronomy to *Mungl ka-lendar.* Yelu-chu-tsay. This astronomer had rectified many of his notions, when he followed that conqueror into the West; and, at his return, published a system of astronomy. At the beginning of Hû-pi-lay's reign, the astronomers from the west published two treatises on this science; one according to the method of the West; the other according to the Chinese method, but corrected. Ko-shew-king took a middle course; and following, in some degree, the method of the West, preserved as many terms as he could of the Chinese astronomy; but entirely reformed it according to the astronomical epochas, and the method of reducing the tables to one certain meridian; as well as of applying afterwards the calculations and observations to other meridians. Besides, he caused large brass instruments to be made, such as spheres, astrolabes, mariners compasses, levels, and gnomons, of which last fort one was forty feet high.

The Mungl emperors, who had at their court western as well as Chinese physicians and mathematicians, divided them into separate bodies, who notwithstanding lived in good harmony. The books, which gave the history of those times, greatly praise, in general, the ability of those strangers; and, in particular, acknowlege, that what is best in Ko-shew-king's work was taken from them.

In March 1281, Hû-pi-lay having gone to Shang-tu, and A.D. 1281. left Ahama to govern at Ta-tû, a mandarin, named Whang-chu, went one day to the palace, and slew him at the great gate. As the guards and officers did not care to seize Whang-chu, he easily made his escape, and was satisfied that the prince would preserve his life. In this confidence, he surrendered himself to the tribunal; and was condemned to death by the commissioners sent by Hû-pi-lay. This monarch at last opened his eyes, and saw the crimes of Ahama. In April he ordered his palace to be plundered, his body to be taken out of the grave, cut in pieces, and then cast to the fowls of the air. There was no sort of extortion and oppression but what Ahama was guilty of; so that the obstinacy of Hû-pi-lay in supporting him, notwithstanding the representations of the prince his heir, and *Ahama is slain.*

and the repeated accusations of the wisest in his council, did his reputation great prejudice <sup>f</sup>.

*Losses in  
Gan-nan,*

The expedition to Gan-nan, containing, as hath been said, the kingdoms of Kochin-china and Tong-king, had not the expected success. The king's son could never be prevailed on to submit; and, with a considerable body of troops, possessed a great part of the country. The general Sû-tû entered Gan-nan in June; and meeting at first with no opposition, advanced imprudently, and took the city of Chen-chen, which is not far from the south-west point of the island Hay-nan, on the south of China. The prince amused the Mungls with false promises to submit; and, by degrees, seizing the posts between China and Gan-nan, cut off Sû-tû's retreat. The excessive heat incommoded the Ywen, accustomed to the northern climates; and their general, who was not supported by a fleet, perceiving too late his mistake, retired with equal courage and conduct; but the greater part of his army perished.

A.D. 1281. The expedition against Japan had still a worse event than that to Gan-nan. General Argan being dead, Atahay commanded the fleet; but scarce had it arrived in sight of the island Ping-hu, when a violent storm arose, which dispersed the ships. Atahay was obliged to put into port; and the rest of the vessels fell into the hands of the Japanese, who made slaves of seventy thousand Chinese, and slew thirty thousand Mungls. Hû-pi-lay was almost distracted to see his designs upon Gan-nan and Japan miscarry. In February he sustained another great loss, by the death of his first wife, the princess of Hong-kila, and mother of the prince his heir. The Chinese authors represent her as an accomplished lady: she loved the people, and always disposed the emperor to clemency; she likewise took extraordinary care of the late empresses of the Song, who were prisoners at Ta-tû.

A.D. 1282. In 1282 the emperor ordered the learned men, from all parts of the empire, to repair to court, to examine the state of literature, and take effectual measures for the advancement of learning. He likewise caused sixty great vessels to be built, to transport by sea, from the southern provinces, into Pe-che-li, provisions of rice, and other necessaries, which before had been conveyed by rivers, with much trouble, delay, and expence. In the mean time several kings of the Indies sent deputies to pay Hû-pi-lay tribute. The most remarkable among them was the sove-

<sup>f</sup> Gaubil. p. 190, & seqq.

reign of Ku-long, a kingdom one hundred thousand li (U) distant from China, who brought as tribute black apes and precious stones. Towards the end of this year, an impostor, who pretended to be the emperor of the Song, assembled above one hundred thousand men; and, in his name, caused letters to be published, importing, that, on a day appointed, the houses covered with bulrushes would be set on fire; and that this would be the signal of the sedition in Ta-tu.<sup>g</sup>

Ven-tyen-syang having been prisoner in that capital for several years, the emperor sent for him into his presence, and offered to make him one of the ministers of state, if he would enter into his service. Tyen-syang thanked his majesty; but told him he should never acknowledge two emperors; and desired to die. Though Hû-pi-lay saw he was inflexible, yet he could not resolve to put him to death: but fell a sacrifice to the ill offices of the courtiers, who represented his life as dangerous to the state. This suggestion wrought so much upon the mind of Hû-pi-lay, that he at last consented to the death of this great man; who having been conducted to a public place, turned himself towards the south, to honour and salute the court of the Song emperors; beat his head against the ground, and received the fatal blow with great courage, in the forty-seventh year of his age. He was born in Kyang-si, in the district of Ki-gan Fû. Both Chinese and Tatars lamented his destiny. He was reputed learned, honest, and well versed in state affairs. After this execution they carried into Tartary all those of the Song race, who were at Ta-tu.

As Hû-pi-lay believed it for the glory of his reign to make conquests in Japan, he now commanded general Atahay to prepare five hundred ships, properly equipped for sea. At the same time an order was published in the provinces, to assemble all the mariners that could be found. This order caused much confusion in Che-kyang, Fo-kyen, and Kyang-nan; for the enterprize against Japan was not relished by either the Chinese or Tatar ministers. The officers and soldiers murmured loudly: besides, commerce was interrupted. The fear of going to Japan caused the best seamen to desert; many turned robbers;

<sup>g</sup> Gaubil, p. 194, & seqq.

(U) That is, ten thousand in the East Indies. Gaubil reckoning; since Ku-long is leagues, a most extravagant Perhaps Koulen in Malabar.

and great numbers of sea-officers, with their crews, became pirates, and infested the coasts. The great men endeavoured to divert the emperor from his design, by representing to him all these evil consequences; but he would not hearken to their remonstrances. However, Atahay met with new difficulties: and the grandees took measures for keeping him a long time without the proper necessaries. In October a mandarin of Kyen-ning Fu, in Fo-kyen, revolted, and assumed the title of emperor; but this sedition was immediately quelled.

*Myen invaded.*

This year prince Siantar, followed by the generals Ku-lye, Nasu-la-ting, and others from the western countries, marching out of Yun-nan, entered the country of Myen (W). In November that prince made himself master of the royal cities of Kyang-tew and Tay-kong.

*Good regulations.*

At this period, some wholesome regulations were made in the state. The custom of selecting young maidens through the provinces, to supply the court, having been abolished in the parts of China subject to the emperor Ogotay, Hû-pi-lay ordained that the same regulation should take place in the provinces conquered from the Song. Secondly, as the salaries of the mandarins were not sufficient to support their state, so that they were obliged to take fees from the people, the emperor, to relieve his subjects after so long a war, doubled the income of those magistrates, and forbade them to receive the smallest gratuity, under severe penalties.

*A.D. 1284.*

*Bonzas drowned.*

In 1284, Hû-pi-lay ordered the mandarins of the several provinces to secure all who could be found of the Song race. This order was obeyed; and the number sent to court was very great; among whom were several considerable mandarins. The emperor being informed that the sect of Fo was in high esteem in Japan, sent bonzas privately aboard the fleet destined for that country, to get information concerning it. But the sailors, discovering their design, threw them into the sea.

*Shi-jong,*

Lu-shi-jong, a native of Ta-ming Fû, in Pe-che-li, by bribery had obtained a considerable employment in the time of Ahama, whose creature he was. This circumstance the emperor well knew: but the love of riches engaged him, by degrees, to follow the selfish views of that projector; who pretended that the people would be eased, at the same time the revenue became more con-

(W) The same with Pegu. is a great part of the province What M. Polo calls Karâyam, of Yun-nan. Gaub.

fiderable

siderable. Tong-ywen-yong spoke loudly against Shi-jong, as a bad subject, who ruined the people; but Hû-pi-lay punished Ywen-yong, and supported Shi-jong.

In February, Hû-pi-lay demanded of Shi-jong what methods he proposed to take, in case he should be appointed minister. The other presented a memorial or project for increasing the revenues of the emperor.

Kublay approved of all that was proposed by Lu-shi-jung, who had full power to employ all those whom he judged fit to execute his schemes: but was so imprudent as to restore a great many commissioners, who had been cashiered, because they were creatures of Ahâma. Shi-jong was supported by Sang-ko, brother of the lama who had succeeded Pa-se-pa, in the post of doctor and master of the emperor, as well as chief of the lamas. Several mandarins spoke against Shi-jong, one of whom was bastinadoed so severely that he died under the hands of the executioner. As the prince, appointed successor, was naturally an enemy to all those kinds of projectors, whose schemes tended only to hinder the circulation of money, render the emperor unpopular, and fill the provinces with robbers, he spoke also against Shi-jong, and maintained that he did no more than imitate Ahâma. At length a great mandarin, named Ching, made complaint to the emperor of the unjust death of a mandarin, who had been killed for having done his duty. He accused Shi-jong again, and made it appear, that this mandarin, during the time that he had the care of the custom-house for cha (or tea), in Kyang-si, had done nothing but rob with impunity: that, to raise the emperor's revenue to fifteen millions, he had been guilty of a thousand rapines, vexations, extortions, unjust confiscations, sales of places, and murders.

The accusation of Ching put all Ta-tû in motion. The emperor was much surprised to see it supported by the prince, and most of the great men; so that neither Sang-ko, nor his brother, notwithstanding their authority, durst speak in his favour. In short, both he and Ching were cited to Shang-tû, where the chief articles of the accusation having been proved against Shi-jong, sentence of death was pronounced upon him by the judges; and the emperor having approved of their sentence, he was executed on the spot. All the friends and creatures of Sang-ko and the criminal were struck with consternation: and Hû-pi-lay became ashamed of his obstinacy, in supporting a man who had misled him by dazzling appearances.

The

*Accused of  
extortion;*

*convicted  
and exe-  
cuted.*

The general Sûtû having made great complaints of the conduct of Chen-ye-tsven, the king of Gan-nan's son, by whose artifices such numbers of Mungls had perished, Hû-pi-lay ordered prince To-phan, his son, to enter that kingdom; and appointed general Li-heng to command under him. To-phan marched from Yun-nan to the river Fû-lang, which he crossed on rafts, and entirely defeated the army of the king of Gan-nan. Hereupon Chen-i-tsi his brother came with his ships, and submitted to the prince. However, the troops of Gan-nan rallied, and became more animated than before. As it happened to be the middle of summer, the heats and continual rains brought sickness into the Mungl army, so that they were not able to march to Chen-chen: and, for fear they should all perish, it was resolved to retire to Yun-nan. The troops of Gan-nan pursued the Ywens; and, in this retreat, Li-heng received a shot with a poisoned arrow, of which he died. The king, afterwards, got with his army between China and Sûtû, who knew nothing of the prince's retreat, although but fifteen or twenty leagues distant: but he opened a passage through his enemies, in which action a great many men were slain on both sides, and, among the rest, Sûtû himself, who fell valiantly fighting. He and Li-heng were two of the best generals in the empire; and Hu-pi-lay was greatly concerned for their death.

Prince  
Cheng-kin  
dies.

This affliction was followed by one more sensible, which was the loss of the prince his heir, who died in December, at the age of forty-three. As prince Cheng-kin, from his very infancy, discovered an inclination for virtue and decorum, his death was universally regretted. His father gave him the illustrious Yaw-shû for a preceptor; who chose young Chinefe and Tatar lords, of parts and liberal education, to be about him. The prince became well skilled in military affairs, the science of government, history, mathematics, and the classical books of China. He was perfectly acquainted with the nature of the countries both of China and Tartary; the number of their inhabitants; their rivers, and their commerce. His whole study was to make the people happy. He was generally esteemed and beloved; nor was he addicted to any one vice or excess. He married the princess Koko-chin, of the Hongkila' (or Kongorat) family; who was of the same character with the prince her spouse; by whom she had three sons, and some daughters. The eldest of his sons was Kanmala. The second, Talamapala, who died in the reign of Hû-pi-lay, and left some children; the eldest of whom

whom was Hay-shan. The third son of Cheng-kin was Timûr, who succeeded his grandfather in the empire<sup>h</sup>.

In 1286, the grandees, being under great apprehensions, from the resolution in which the emperor still continued, of attacking Japan, represented to him the danger and inutility of that enterprise. They likewise laid before him the lamentable condition to which the armament under Atahay had reduced the southern provinces. Hû-pi-lay indeed dropped his design; and caused it to be published, that he ought in that, as well as every thing else, to follow the counsel of his ministers: but the true reason for that change was, the advice he received that all Tartary was on the point of revolting. In the course of this year, Pe-yen, Tûtûha, Li-ting, and other generals, in Tartary, sent advice to the emperor, that the party of Hay-tu was grown stronger than ever: that this prince sent out spies on all fides; and that it was to be feared, he would gain over to his interest the Mungl princes who dwelt to the north-east of Shan-tong, bordering on Lyau-tong.

Hû-pi-lay, profiting by this intelligence, made new regulations to conciliate the affections of the Chinese, especially those of Kyang-nan, Fo-kyen, Che-kyang, and some other provinces. In March he sent deputies into all parts of the empire, to discover men skilled in the Chinese arts and sciences; to whom employment was given, and some were brought to court. Hû-pi-lay took great pleasure in talking to them; and it was still more pleasing to them to see a Mungl emperor well versed in the Chinese sciences. In September advice came from the mandarins of Fo-kyen, that ships from more than ninety foreign kingdoms had arrived at Tîven-chew-fu, in that province. These kingdoms are all treated as tributary; but only eight of them are mentioned in the history, and those by names unknown to Europeans. All the empire of China being now subject to one sovereign, the bonzas of the sect of Fo assembled this year, to the number of forty thousand, and agreed upon a form of religious government: they likewise made several statutes or decrees and regulations, for their prayers, penances, and other rites.

Jenghîz Khân had divided Tartary into eastern and western; whose limits were nearly in the meridian of Pe-king. That conqueror's youngest brother, Pye-li Kû-tay, had the country between the rivers Lyau, Toro, and Quey-ley, with part of the country between the Lyau-ton,

Affairs of  
China.

A.D. 1287.

Nayen joins  
Hay-tu.

<sup>a</sup> Gaubil. p. 201. & seqq.

and the Lyau. Nayen, the great-grandson and heir of Pye-li Kû-tay, who had enlarged the possessions of his ancestor, and became very potent, was gained over to his party by Hay-tu, who persuaded him to take arms. General Pe-yen, who had been one of the first to give notice of the league between those two princes, was sent towards Lyau-tong, to see how matters stood; and having narrowly escaped being taken by Nayen's spies, informed Hû-pi-lay of the great preparations which were making by that prince. The emperor hereupon ordered Pe-yen to encamp between Karâkorom and Shang-tû, in order to prevent the troops of Hay-tu, and other princes his allies, from joining Nayen. Li-ting was commanded to assemble a great body of Chinese troops; and the Tatars were conducted by Yusi Temûr, grandson of the famous Porchû, the principal of the four intrepid captains who served under Jenghîz Khân. General Tütûha was likewise recalled with his forces from Kin-cha<sup>1</sup>.

*Defeated  
and slain.*

Hû-pi-lay having, in May, taken the field in person, with design to attack Nayen, was advanced with a few troops, when the general of that prince's army came to observe the emperor's camp. Hû-pi-lay, though in danger of being carried away, shewed no signs of fear; and as it was night, his forces, on notice given, hastened to his relief, the horse taking the foot behind them. Mean time Nayen lay quiet in his camp, his general not daring to attack the emperor, for fear of an ambuscade. Hereupon Li-ting, with ten resolute men, approaching the enemy's camp, shot a cannon (X) into it. The noise so frightened the troops of Nayen, which were besides undisciplined, that the general, thinking the whole imperial army was approaching, took to flight. The Chinese and Tatar troops being now arrived, Nayen was attacked by the before mentioned commanders, at the head of their respective bodies, and by Hû-pi-lay at the head of his guards. The emperor's presence rendered his troops invincible, and the army of Nayen was entirely defeated. That prince himself was taken, and afterwards put to death. The battle was fought near the river Lyau; after which Hû-pi-lay returned triumphant to Shang-tû.

<sup>1</sup> Gaubil, p. 204, & seq.

(X) The Chinese say *ho-pau*, that is, fire pau. This circumstance of fire, joined to the great noise it made, makes me call it a fire-cannon. Possibly it was a petard. Gaubil.

In the same year prince To-when, the emperor's son, entered Gan-nan, and was victorious in seventeen engagements. He plundered the city of Chen-chen, and returned to Yun-nan with a rich booty. He had scarce reached the borders, when he received advice that king Chin-ye-sven appeared again with innumerable forces. This intelligence obliged him to make a new expedition to Gan-nan, which he entered in March 1288, with a considerable army. The king allowed him to advance, and amused him with deceitful negotiations; till finding the pestilence began to rage in his army, he came with three hundred thousand men to attack him. The Mungls, on his approach, retired towards Yun-nan in good order; nor could the enemy ever make any impression on the vanguard, although general Sitür, who commanded it, was both sick and wounded. But the other troops did not escape so well; so that the prince lost a great number before he reached the borders. The emperor on this occasion reproached him for his imprudence, deprived him of the government of Yun-nan, and forbade him to come to court. The king of Gan-nan however sent Hû-pi-lay a statue of gold, by way of tribute; and even wrote a very modest letter, in which he owned he had committed a fault in opposing the imperial armies.

Timûr, grandson of Hû-pi-lay, was more successful in the war on the river Lyau. Prince Hatan (Y), supported by the princes Tye-ko, Arlu, and Tûlûkhân, having entered into league with Haytû and Nayen, came with a great army to that river, and threatened Lyau-töng, with the countries bordering on the great wall of China. Pe-yen had always made head against Haytû, and hindered his junction with Hatan. Hû-pi-lay sent his grandson Timûr, a young prince of great hopes, with orders to follow the advice of Jûsitemûr, Tûtûha, Li-ting, and Polô-when. They engaged Kin-kyâ-nu, one of the late prince Nayen's generals; and after engaging a whole day, with great slaughter on both sides, the two armies separated. Timûr being informed that Hatan and his allies were encamped near the river Quey-ley, marched against them with his fire-cannon, which Li-ting had taken great care to get ready. The battle lasted two days, and was exceeding bloody; in which perished several princes, who were Hatan's allies, the generals of Nayen, and their best

(Y) He was grandson of Ha-she-when, third son of Yesû-kay, and brother to Jenghiz Khan. Gaubil.

*Losses in  
Gan-nan.*

A.D. 1288.

*Success in  
Tartary.*

troops. This victory gave great reputation to prince Timûr, and filled the emperor with joy, who designed to make him his successor: great elegies were likewise bestowed on the generals who served under him. The prince, after this battle, visited all the tribes which had before been subject to Nayen, Hatan, and others; and had the pleasure to see their lords submit to him. His affability and clemency gained him the love of the Tatars, who in great numbers encamped near the river Lyau, Tiro, Quay-ley, and in other places.

*Emperor  
turnus bon-  
za.*

In October Kong-tsung, the late emperor of the Song, was sent to Pûtala, the residence of the grand lama, in Tibet, to learn the doctrine of Fo. The Chinese historians blame Hû-pi-lay for sending one of their emperors to live among benzas; and represent Kong-tsung as a mean-spirited prince, who ought rather to have died than dishonoured his name by going to be educated in the doctrines and customs of Barbarians.

*A.D. 1289.*

*Royal  
canal.*

In January, 1289, it was resolved to make the canal, called Whey-tong-ho, to extend from Tsi-ning-chew, in Shan-tong, to Lin-ting-chew, in the same province; likewise to open a communication between the rivers Ven and Wey, in the same province. In 1287 Hû-pi-lay had built a magnificent college at Ta-tû, for teaching the Chinese sciences, and furnished it with the most able doctors in the empire. There he caused many sons of princes, lords, and great mandarins, to be brought up. This year, 1289, a second imperial college, of the same kind, was built at Ta-tû. Hû-pi-lay, who gave the direction of it to the Whey-hu, was earnest to promote this college; and in person exhorted the Tatar and Chinese grandees, as well as the princes of his own family, to send their sons thither.\*

*Affairs of  
Tartary.*

Prince Hay-tû, this year, prevailed on several Tatar tribes to the north and north-west of Karakorum to revolt against Hû-pi-lay. Prince Hatan took the field again, and made incursions into Lyau-tong, and other provinces. Kih-kyâ-nu, before mentioned, a great friend and confidant of prince Nayen, at length joined Hay-tû with his troops. Pe-yen, who commanded the imperial camp formed at Karakorum, detached a great body of Kirghis to join the army commanded by Kanmala, eldest son of the late prince Cheng-kin; nevertheless Hay-tû surprised and surrounded him near the river Selinga: but Tûtûha, being in-

\* Gaubil, p. 207, & seqq.

formed

formed of his distress, immediately set forward with his troops of Kin-cha (or Kipjâk), and falling on Hay-tû, rescued Kanmala, who was on the point of being made prisoner. Tûtûha received orders, after this incident, to join Hû-pi-lay; who, notwithstanding his great age, in June marched from Shang-tû against Hay-tû: but this prince retreated, without venturing a battle. However, about the same time, prince Naymân-tay attacked and defeated Hatân, who was encamped near the river Toro, which falls into the Non.

In January, 1290, Hû-pi-lay published several sage regulations, to advance arts and sciences in the imperial colleges built at Ta-tû: he likewise examined into the state of printing and books. In March he enquired how the orders which he had given for the cultivation of lands, silk-worms, and other points relating to commerce, had been executed. In April he sent experienced persons to the kingdom of Mapâr, in the Indies, with orders to spare no expence to engage men skilled in the sciences, mechanics, officers both for land and sea, and interpreters of different languages. It cannot be denied, says Gaubil, that Hû-pi-lay has rendered his name immortal, by what he had done for the advantage of his empire. He caused canals to be dug in several parts of China for the communication of rivers: he sent mathematicians as far as 55 degrees north, and 15 or 16 south, towards Kochin China, to ascertain the latitude of the principal cities in China, the capitals of Gan-nan and Korea, and of many places in Tartary. He was at an incredible expence in procuring mathematical instruments; searching for old books; sending able men into foreign countries; drawing artists from all parts of the world; translating books into the Mungl language; forming libraries; raising public structures; collecting rarities from distant regions, encouraging commerce; building ships; and executing an infinite number of useful works for the benefit of the public. These actions are the more commendable, as during his whole reign he maintained great wars against potent princes of his family, who were jealous of his power and glory.

Sang-ko, who had the care of the finances, was no less covetous and evil-minded than Ahâma; and his brother, who had succeeded to the titles and dignity of Pa-se-pa, disposed Hû-pi-lay so much in his favour, that none dared speak of his malversations: however, a lord of the imperial family of the Song, named Chau-mêng-fû, resolved, at all risks, to accuse Sang-ko. He began by sounding Che-li,

A.D. 1290.

*Regulations  
made  
regarding  
literature.*

*Arapaci-  
ous mi-  
nister*

a lord distinguished by his probity, and acceptable to Hû-pi-lay ; telling him that it was time to discover to the emperor the crimes of Sang-ko : " If we do not (says he), posterity will accuse us, and we shall pass for men without honour : the good of the empire requires that we should make known the person who ruins it." Che-li took the hint, and one day when Hû-pi-lay was hunting, spoke freely against Sang-ko. The emperor, incensed at the liberty he had taken, ordered him to be bastinadoed, till the blood gushed from his nose and mouth, and he fell fainting to the ground. However, being questioned about the matter by Hû-pi-lay's order, he had the courage and fidelity to repeat all he had declared ; adding, " that the good of the state and honour of the prince alone had induced him to make the accusation, which he was ready to maintain at the expence of his life."

*Detected  
and ruined.*

Pû-hû-chû, lord of the country of Kang-li, who was one of the most steady and upright men of his time, had orders to examine into the affair. This minister was already acquainted with the knavery of Sang-ko : and, as he was a mortal enemy to those who did injustice, spoke of him as a wicked minister, who had deceived his prince, occasioned trouble and disorder in every part of the kingdom ; procured many persons to be unjustly accused, and put to death ; and was the true cause that robbers were so numerous. Pû-hû-chû intreated the emperor to get rid, as soon as possible, of so great an offender ; and did not scruple to affirm, that, if it was delayed, a considerable revolution was to be feared. What this lord said was confirmed by many other grandees. Hû-pi-lay complained, that they had not informed him sooner of the minister's misdemeanours ; and they boldly replied, that it was dangerous for any individual to tell him the truth. Che-li, become more in favour than ever, was appointed to take an inventory of Sang-ko's effects, which were of immense value. They found an infinite number of jewels and precious stones in his palace<sup>1</sup>.

*A villainous lama  
condemned,  
yet par-  
doned.*

At this time there was a lama of Tibet, in the southern provinces, in great reputation among the Mungls ; though he was no other than a hypocrite, a cheat, and impostor. He counterfeited the emperor's mandates, and granted false licences ; intimidated several wealthy families, promised and procured places : in short, he used all sorts of unlawful means to become rich. His passion for money

<sup>1</sup> Gaubil, p. 221, & seqq.

carried him so far as even to take up the bodies of the Song emperors, princes, and great men, whose tombs were near Shau-hing-fû, in Che-kyang; where, it is said, he found abundance of gold, silver, and jewels. Of their bones, mixed with those of oxen and horses, he raised a pyramid; which sight filled the Chinese with such indignation, as to excite a general revolt. The mandarins of those places imprisoned the lama, confiscated his goods, and condemned him to death; but, being supported at court by several Mungl lords, and the ladies, at the instigation of the lamas, who had great influence over them, he was discharged, and great part of his treasures restored. This unjust change of the sentence did the emperor's character much prejudice. The Chinese cannot forgive him this weakness: and their history, on this occasion, renews its complaints against him, for having had so great an affection for the lamas; "men at least very useless to the empire."

In the year 1292, the canal, called Tong-whey, which A.D. 1292.  
runs from Pe-king to Tong-chew, was finished: and several mandarins belonging to the treasury, attached to Sang-ko, were put to death. Prince Mengli Timûr, joined by Hay-tû, appeared also to the north of the great Kobi, or desert. Pe-yen retired towards Karakorom, as if to defend that city; but it was only to watch an opportunity for attacking that prince with advantage. At length, one day in October, he drew out his army; and, without giving any orders or directions but to follow him, with his sword drawn, advanced full-speed towards the camp of Mengli Timûr; who, not able to resist the attacks of Pe-yen's troops, fled with a few horsemen, and left his army to the mercy of the enemy, by whom the greater part of them were slain.

Viglory in  
Tartary.

Hû-pi-lay was very ambitious to be known and esteemed in foreign countries. The great number of Indian ships which arrived in Fo-kyen, afforded him frequent opportunities to send mandarins to treat with the princes of India; and induce them to communicate to him the curiosities of their respective dominions. The Indians were great gainers by their commerce with China, from whence they brought great sums of money: and Hû-pi-lay's deputies had often been well received by the king of Mapâr. But the emperor, having sent a Chinese grandee, named Meng-ki, to Qua-wa; the king, for what reason does not appear, caused him to be branded in the face with the marks which are often put on public robbers, and then dismissed

Expedition  
to Qua-  
wa, a part  
of India.

him. The Chinese lords, enraged to see a great mandarin of their nation dishonoured by a prince whom they considered as a Barbarian, petitioned the emperor to revenge the affront. Hû-pi-lay denounced vengeance for this insult upon one of his envoys; and ordered a considerable number of ships of war, and other vessels, to be equipped, at Tsuen-chew-fû, in Fo-kyen. This province, with those of Kyang-si and Hû-quang, furnished thirty thousand resolute soldiers, and the Chinese grandees were very earnest to have the fleet well provided. It consisted of one thousand ships, including vessels of burden and others, with provisions for a year. She-pe, a native of Pau-ting Fû, in Pe-che-li, had the chief command. Kau-hing, of Ju-ning-fû, in Honan, was general of the thirty thousand troops; and Yehemishe, an Igûr, commanded the sailors. Yehemishe and She-pe had been in the Indies before, and understood the language of Qua-wa.

The fleet set sail in December, and steered directly for the south part of Tong-king, bordering on Kochin-China; then, sailing along a mountainous coast, they entered the sea of When-tun (Z). At length, they came in sight of certain mountains; where they cut wood to build little barks; and, in September 1293, by help of those barks, landed their troops<sup>m</sup>.

A.D. 1293.

Ta-nay-kya-lay, king of Qua-wa (A), going to war with Ha-chi-ka-fû, king of Ko-lang, was killed in battle. Tû-han-pi-tû-ye, his son-in-law, undertook to continue the war; but, being baffled in all his attempts, as soon as he heard of She-pe's arrival, and the occasion of his coming, he submitted; and offered to give up all he was possessed of. This step he took, the better to deceive the Chinese, while he devised secret measures to destroy their army. He gave the general a map of the country of Ko-lang, and persuaded him to conquer it; promising to join him with his troops. She-pe, who believed all that Tû-han-pi-tû-ye told him, left officers to guard the fleet, and divided his forces into three bodies, in order to attack Ta-she, the capital of Ko-lang. The Chinese found an army of a hundred thousand men ready to oppose them: but, after a battle, which continued from sun-rise till noon, the Ko-lang troops were defeated, and retired into the city. How-

<sup>m</sup> Gaubil. p. 214 & seqq.

(Z) That is, the immense <sup>(A)</sup> Our author supposes *shao*, which seems to be the *Qua* was to be the island of ocean, Gaubil, Borneo, ever,

ever, the king, unwilling to undergo a siege, came out and surrendered, with his wife and children; who were all killed.

Tû-han-pi-tû ye, after this action, asked leave to return to his dominions; which request was opposed by Qua-heng: but She-pe and Ye-he-mi-she gave their consent; which they in a little time repented: for, next year, that king, instead of obeying She-pe's orders, came with a considerable force to cut off his retreat towards the fleet; which was thirty leagues distant. She-pe, who too late saw he was betrayed, defended himself with extraordinary valour, and retired in good order to the sea-coast; where, having embarked with his troops, he, in sixty-eight days, arrived at Tfven-chew-fû. In this expedition he lost three thousand men; but brought off a great booty in gold and precious stones. The emperor punished both him and Ye-he-mi-she; and confiscated two-thirds of their effects, for having disobeyed his commands, and allowed Tû-han-pi-tû-ye to escape. However, being good officers, they were soon after pardoned; and the Chinese grandees were satisfied to let the king of Qua-wa and others see, that, notwithstanding their great distance, they would not fail to revenge the affronts offered to them.

General Pe-yen had hitherto kept Tartary in subjection, *Pe-yen re-called out of Tartary* in spite of the power and efforts of Hay-tû, and other princes of the imperial family: the emperor was fully convinced of his great services, and resolved to reward them in a signal manner. However, several grandees, jealous of that general's glory, insinuated to Hû-pi-lay, that it was dangerous to let him continue so long at the head of the troops of Tartary; and even hinted that he was clandestinely in league with Hay-tû. The emperor well knew that jealousy was the ground of their informations, although he made no reply. In June he talked of declaring Timûr hereditary prince; and ordered him immediately to prepare for going to command the army against Hay-tû. General Yusi-temûr was named to succeed Pe-yen; who received an order to repair to Tay-tong-fû, as soon as Timûr should arrive at Karakorom. This prince was not in a hurry to reach the imperial camp, as he loved Pe-yen, and was sensible he knew better than himself how to deal with Hay-tû: Yusi-temûr was of the same opinion with Timûr. Mean time Pe-yen, though informed of these transactions, behaved as if he knew nothing of what passed: he decamped from Karakorom, and marched northward to meet

meet the army of Hay-tû, who was again defeated and obliged to retire.

In a few days after the battle, Timûr and the new general arrived at the camp: where, in presence of the officers, the prince delivered to Pe-yen the emperor's orders; and commanded him to repair to Tay-tong-fû in Shan-si, there to wait his imperial majesty's farther pleasure. The generals who served under Pe-yen, and were strongly attached to him, could not forbear expressing their surprize; but were soon appeased, when they saw that the prince made him eat at his own table, and bestowed considerable presents on him. Before Pe-yen departed, Timûr sent for him, and with tears embraced him, intreating him to give him some intructions. "Prince, (said the general), love neither women nor wine, and every thing will succeed with you." Pe-yen went to Tay-tong-fû, and there received an order to repair to court. Where being arrived, the emperor, to the confusion of the jealous grandees, received him with distinguished honour; publicly extolled his fidelity and services; declared him his prime minister, and gave him the general command, as well of the troops which composed his own guard, as of those which encamped in great numbers about Ta-tû and Shang-tû<sup>n</sup>.

*A comet appears.*

In September, Hû-pi-lay returned from Shang-tû to Ta-tû; and next month was frightened at the sight of a comet. The Chinese history carefully takes notice of these phenomena which have happened, as well as the panics which have seized the emperors on such occasions. The astrologers have likewise been assiduous to collect the events which came to pass after a comet had appeared; and pretend that such appearances are designed as warnings from Heaven to crowned heads to take care of themselves. Hû-pi-lay had given into these false ideas: when the comet first appeared, he sent for Pû-hû-chû, one of his ministers, to consult how to appease the anger of the deity. Pû-hû-chû passed the whole night in the emperor's chamber, and recited several passages of the I-king and Shî-king (A); to shew with what respect he ought to receive the advice which Heaven gives, and how much its anger ought to be dreaded. He produced instances from the ancient history, to evince that the chief business of a

<sup>n</sup> Gaubil. p. 218. & seqq.

(A) Two of the classical or canonical books of the Chinese; which Confucius, and his successors, have commented on.

prince

prince should be the practice of virtue ; and that, on the appearance of eclipses, comets, and earthquakes, he ought seriously to examine his own heart, and, above all, in what manner he governs his people.

The minister dwelt particularly on the history of Ven-ti, emperor of the western Han ; and set forth the use which that prince had made of the appearance of several phenomena. Hû-pi-lay was so well pleased with the instance of Ven-ti, that he delighted in hearing Pû-tû-chû talk on that subject. Mean time he fell sick, and, in January 1294, died in his palace at Ta-tû, in the eightieth year of his age.

The Chinese historians charge Hû-pi-lay with being superstitious to excess, and ridiculously attached to the lamas. They likewise accuse him of loving women and money ; of having sacrificed too many men in the wars of Japan and Gan-nan ; and too much promoted foreigners of the west. On the other hand, the Tatars and foreigners have always considered the reign of Hû-pi-lay as one of the most glorious that ever history recorded ; and it is certain this prince had great qualities. He was learned, courageous, and magnificent, a friend to men of letters ; and if he loved money, it was with a view to execute the great designs which he had conceived for the glory of the empire, and the public good.

Hû-pi-lay was the fourth son of prince Toley and the *Wives and sons.* princess Sarkutna, brother to the emperor Meng-ko, and the king Hyu-la-gû, and grandson of Jenghîz Khân. He married a great many wives, five of whom bore the title of empresses. By these he had ten sons : 1. Turchi, who died without issue. 2. Cheng-kin, who had been declared heir, but died in 1285. 3. Mang-kola, governor-general of Shen-fi, Se-chwen, and Tibet. 4. Gantan-puwha. 5. Nan-mû-han. 6. Ukoche. 7. Gayyache. 8. Gaulûche. 9. Kokochû. 10. Choan. Besides these princes he had several daughters<sup>o</sup>.

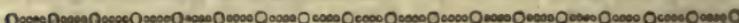
Hû-pi-lay was the sixth khân of Great Tartary, and the first Mungl emperor who reigned over that country and all China.

That he might please his conquered subjects, and without disobliging his own countrymen, he divided his time between them, residing part of the year in one country, and part in the other. For which purpose he fixed the capital of each near the frontiers of both ; and his successors followed his example as long as they remained in possession of China, where he founded the empire of the

*Remarks  
on him and  
the Chinese  
historians.*

Mungls; for although his ancestors were possessed of the northern part of that country, yet the Chinese would not acknowledge them as their sovereigns, as long as any of the Song emperors, their natural lords, reigned in the southern provinces. After the subjugation of the whole Chinese empire, and extinction of the Song race, they were obliged to acknowledge them for their masters; but they subdued the Mungls in their turn, by giving them their manners, customs, and even their forms of government and policy. Their historians have in effect metamorphosed the Mungl emperors, from Hû-pi-lay, downwards, into Chinese: they have separated them from the line of Jenghîz Khân, made a distinct dynasty of them, and placed Hû-pi-lay as the head and founder of it, considering all his predecessors as khâns of Tartary only. The more also to naturalize this race, and make them their own, they have changed the title of the dynasty from Mungls, or Moguls, into that of Ywen.

*Respecting his dynasty.* The Mungl emperors, therefore, from Hû-pi-lay, are to be considered in two different respects; viz, either as they make part of the Mungl khâns of the line of Jenghîz Khân, who reigned over the Mungl empire in Tartary, China, and other countries; or only as a distinct race of emperors reigning in China, to which those other regions, and even Tartary itself, is supposed to be subject. It is in the first of these lights that we have treated of them here, because the province which we have undertaken in this place, is the history of the Mungls and Tartars. They will likewise be considered briefly hereafter in the second light, when we come to speak of China.



## C H A P. XII.

### *The History of Jenghîz Khân's Successors in Tartary and China.*

#### S E C T. I.

##### *The Reign of Timûr, called by the Chinese Ching-tsong.*

AFTER the death of Hû pi-lay, Pe-yen, as prime minister, and general of the army, gave the necessary commands, to prevent all disorder, and invited Timûr to come immediately, and be acknowledged emperor, pursuant

pursuant to the last will of his grandfather. This appointment he also notified to the princes and other generals of the troops, giving them to understand at the same time, that he would not suffer the least opposition to it. The assembly met by agreement in April 1294, where, nevertheless, several princes intended to declare some other person emperor. Then Yusi Timûr spoke, and said, that it was proper, without delay, to instal Timûr, according to the intention of Hû-pi-lay. Pe-yen seconded Yusi Timûr, and, drawing his sword, declared, he would never acknowlege any other emperor than Timûr. The general Ywe-chechar, great grandson of Porgû, one of Jenghiz Khan's four heroes, was of the same opinion, as well as all the other generals: it was known also that the Chinese great men would declare for Timûr. Hereupon Kanmala, eldest son of the late prince Cheng-kin, gave his vote for Timûr, his youngest brother; the other princes followed his example; and, in short, all bowed before that prince, to acknowlege him for emperor. Notice was immediately given of this election to all the tribes, generals of the troops, and mandarins of the provinces of China; a general amnesty was published likewise according to custom.

One of the first acts of Timûr, who is known to the Chinese by the name of Ching-tsong was, to give the title of emperor to his father, and that of empress to his mother. He likewise erected monuments to the memory of his father Cheng-kin, grandfather Hû-pi-lay, and the princess his grand-mother; punctually paid what was due to the princes and princesses of his house, to the generals and mandarins; shewed great marks of confidence to his brother Kanmala, and declared him his lieutenant-general in Tartary. He appointed generals to oppose Hay tû, and other princes of his party. He provided for the security of the provinces by a choice of good officers, giving full powers to Pe-yen, Yusi Temûr, Ywe-chechar, Tû-tû-ha, and others, in all military matters. He caused the finishing stroke to be given to the history of Hû-pi-lay; made peace with the king of Gan-nan (B), and ordered the commerce with India to be renewed; which had been interrupted by the war with Qua-wa (C).

In December, this year, died the famous Pe-yen, at the age of fifty-nine, with the reputation of being one of the greatest men whom either China or Tartary ever produced.

(B) Containing Ton-king. (C) Supposed to be near and Kochin China. Kamboja.

A.D. 1294.

*His first  
acts.*

*Death of  
Pe-yen.*

The emperor, the princes, the generals, and all the officers, lamented his death a long time; and the Chinese historians have bestowed on this general an elaborate elegy.

A.D. 1295.

At the beginning of the year 1295, lands were given, in the southern provinces, to the soldiers, on condition to keep in awe the Myau-tse, a kind of independent people, who inhabit the mountainous parts of Se-chwen, Quey-chew, Hu-quang, Quang-si, Quang-tong, and elsewhere, having languages and laws different not only from the Chinese, but from one another. In April there happened a grievous famine, on which occasion Timûr manifested his charitable disposition; he caused large alms to be distributed to the poor, and the public granaries to be examined; and from this time also he forbid the selling of civil employments <sup>p.</sup>.

A.D. 1296.

*Good regulation.*

In 1296 the daughters and sisters of the Mungl emperors, as well as the princes and grandees their husbands, were possessed of very great privileges. By degrees they had assumed to themselves the right of judging, and putting to death their vassals and domestics. Several abuses on this occasion determined Timûr to make a law, that no person whosoever should condemn another without having the emperor's consent; which regulation is highly praised by the Chinese.

A.D. 1297.

*Hay-tû defeated.*

Timûr, when he appointed his brother Kanmala for his lieutenant-general in Tartary, and Ywe-chechar for general of the troops, ordered them to follow the counsels of Tû-tû-ha prince of Kin-cha, who had defeated prince Hay-tû in several engagements. Tû-tû-ha died in 1295, at Swen-hû-fû in Pe-che-li, as he was setting out for Tartary to command one of the armies destined to act against the same enemy. He was succeeded in his titles and honours by his son Chohangûr, who was as great a captain as his father, under whom he always served with distinction. This general being in 1297 appointed to oppose Hay-tû, who had advanced as far as the country of Parin, marched at the head of his troops to Kin-cha, and finding him encamped along the river Arû, prepared to attack him; but in October Hay-tû fled, and retired towards the north. Next year prince Tuwa, Hay-tû's brother, was defeated by Chohangûr, to the west of the mountain Altay, towards the source of the river Irtish. In August, a detachment of Hay-tû's army being intercepted by prince Ko-li-ki-tse, who had married the emperor's daughter, he re-

<sup>p</sup> Gaubil, Hist. Gentel. p. 223, & seqq.

pulsed them three times; but falling from his horse was taken, and carried to Hay-tû, whose great offers he refused, chusing to die rather than prove unfaithful to Timûr.

In January 1299, this monarch sent mandarins into all the provinces, to examine into the losses which the people had suffered, the damages which the troops had caused, the families of mandarins which had not fortune to live suitable to their condition, and the peasants who could not cultivate their lands. These commissioners afforded real relief to the poor, the diseased, and the old officers who were no longer able to serve. This conduct loaded Timûr with the public applause; he refused continually to declare war against Japan, although several Mungls, who delighted in blood and slaughter, urged him to it. The emperor declared, that he would live in peace, and banish the vices which reigned in the empire. He daily enquired into the miseries of the people, and seemed to be sensible only of the glory of making them happy.

The tribunal of mathematics having foretold an eclipse of the moon for August, which did not happen, the great lords, to save its credit, represented to the emperor, that Heaven had for that time, in his majesty's favour, caused a change in the motion of the sun. Timûr did not believe what they said; yet, without punishing the tribunal, sent them notice to set the stars in order again.

In the year 1300, Lyew-shen, a general of the troops, represented to the court, that the kingdom of Pa-pe-si-fû (D) would not receive the calendar of the empire, and prayed his majesty to permit him to compel the inhabitants to follow the form of the Chinese year, and reckon their months like the subjects of the emperor. One of his ministers, called Wan-tse, considering this as a serious affair, persuaded the emperor, in December, to attack the kingdom of Pa-pe-si-fû. Alaafun opposed that resolution, alleging, that the people whom they wanted to attack were Barbarians; that, indeed, they might be instructed if his majesty thought fit; but that it would be of no use, as well as dangerous to make war upon them. The emperor said nothing to the minister Alaafun, but, contrary to his custom, he fell into a passion with another mandarin, who presumed to give his advice. In effect, Lyew-shen was ordered, with twenty thousand men, to attack Pa-pe-si-fû.<sup>9</sup>

A.D. 1299.

Timûr's  
charity.*An eclipse  
mistaken.*

A.D. 1300.

Pa-pe-si-  
fû invad-  
ed.

<sup>9</sup> Gaubil, ubi supra, p. 225, & seq.

(D) A pretty large country unwholesome, and the people between Yun-nan and Bengál poor; and were, at that time, in India; but the air is very cruel and barbarous. Gaubil.

But

But it was not long before Timûr repented this unfortunate war : most of the troops perished by famine or sickness, and the province of Yun-nan suffered severely. The bordering people, who, till then, had lain quiet, took arms, and plundered several countries subject to the emperor. This war at length became serious ; many excellent officers died in it ; so that the troops of Hû-quang, Se-chwen, Shen-si, and Yun-nan, were obliged to march ; and Koko, son of Hû-pi-lay, had orders to support those troops, in case of need. Yesûtar and Lyew-kû-kyay, after many difficulties and losses, subdued Pa-pe-si-fû, and appeased the troubles which the Myau-tse, and the people of the frontiers, had excited : nor was it till the year 1303 that an end was put to the war. The emperor often hinted to Alaafun, that he repented having not followed his advice ; which occasion a great mandarin seized to represent to his majesty, that, for thirty years past, the empire had been at exorbitant expences to make war on Japan, Gan-nan, Qua-wa, and Lyew-Kycw, without the least profit. He compared those wars to that of Pa-pe-si-fû ; and added, that the honour of the emperor required that he should put to death the general Lyew-shen, as having deceived his prince. Several of that general's friends represented, that he ought to enjoy the amnesty ; but Alaafun made the same representation as the mandarin ; and Lyew-shen had his head struck off.

*Rebellion in Pegû.*

A lord of the kingdom of Myen (or Pegû) having revolted against and slain his sovereign Ti-li-pû-wa-na-na-ti-tiya, that prince's second son escaped to Ta-tû, and, on his knees, implored assistance from the emperor. Timûr, by advice of his council, granted his request ; and Suechawr, great general in Yun-nan, was ordered to enter Myen, and attack the rebels. He obeyed his orders ; but was worsted, with his lieutenants, who returned to Yun-nan, after spreading a report, that they had made all things quiet. However, the court had intelligence, that several great officers had been corrupted by the rebel ; these being tried for the same, were found guilty, and put to death : nor did Suechawr escape punishment ; for he was degraded, and his estate confiscated.

The same year died Pû-hû-chû, one of the ministers of state, a Kangli by nation, and one of the wisest men of his time. He held the chief employments in the empire, and yet died very poor. His children inherited his probity, and love for the sciences. His wife, who had as much virtue as her

her husband, was continually at work with her hands to maintain her family.

Timûr had sent his nephew Hayshan into Tartary, to learn the art of war under the generals Ywe-chechar and Choangûr. This prince had defeated Hay-tû in several engagements; but the latter, though always worsted, was still in a condition to make himself feared; so that the emperor was obliged to have great armies continually in that country, commanded by princes of his family, and his best generals. Hayshan having, in 1301, joined together the five great bodies of troops which had been employed in different parts of Tartary, fought several bloody battles, between Karakorom and the river Tamir, with Hay-tû and his brother Towa, whose troops were, for the most part, cut in pieces. Hay-tû, who, for more than thirty years, had carried on hostilities against the princes of his family, on pretence that they had usurped the empire of Ogotay, or Oktay, to his prejudice, died with vexation. His brother Towa was dangerously wounded, but escaped with a few followers. Such a series of losses, and ill success, at length induced most of the princes who were of Hay-tû's party to acknowledge Timûr for the true successor of Jenghiz Khân.

In January 1302 died prince Kanmala, the emperor's eldest brother; universally lamented for his loyalty, courage, and other excellent qualities. In March the court was under great uneasiness on account of the emperor's illness; but he recovered his health, and learned, with a sensible joy, how much the people had been afflicted to hear he was sick. He, on his part, caused great sums to be distributed, and a general pardon to be published. In April he removed, as usual to Shang-tû; and, in May, an eclipse of the sun happening, which the tribunal had neglected to calculate, the mandarins were punished, by degrading some, expelling others, and lessening the salaries of the rest. The institution of an imperial college at Ta-tû gave great satisfaction to the Chinese literati; but they could not forbear expressing their concern, to see that a palace had not been built to honour the memory of Confucius. This particular being represented to Timûr by Alaafun, that prince; who had a high esteem for the philosopher, and understood his doctrine, caused a magnificent palace to be erected for him, which is still seen at Pe-king.

*Death of  
Hay-tû;*

*and prince  
Kanmala.*

*Confucius  
honoured.*

\* Gaubil, ubi supra, p. 228, & seqq.

Jenghîz Khân brought with him into Tartary, from Persia, Khorassân and Great Bukhâria, a considerable number of Mohammedan families, among whom there were many excellent officers ; and, ever after, the Mohammedans were very powerful at the Mungl court. There were, of that religion generals, and whole bodies of troops ; chiefs of merchants, and mandarins in all the tribunals, especially that of the mathematics ; doctors, and even ministers of state, in which number U-tû-pû-ting was included.

A.D. 1303. In 1303, the emperor, in regard to the evils which had been occasioned by the long wars with Hay-tû and Towa, appointed generals to command in the territory of Quachew and Sha-chew. There he ordered magazines to be erected for the troops, and lodgements for them in several places between Kan-chew, in China, and Sha-chew. This monarch grew daily more and more beloved ; and the Tatar princes were charmed with his integrity, clemency, and liberality.

*All Tartary submits.*

Prince Towa, exhausted with so long a war, assembled all the lords, his vassals, and declared he was resolved to acknowlege Timûr, whom he highly praised. Chapar, eldest son of Hay-tû, took the same step. The other princes followed their example ; and, after having caused the emperor to be recognized in their respective territories, sent deputies in their names to implore his pardon, and beg they might be numbered among his subjects. Timûr granted their request, and saw all Tartary united to his empire ; a design which his grandfather Hû-pi-lay could never compass. Timûr, on this occasion, conferred great honour on the prince Choangûr. He gave him, with his own hand, a gold seal, jewels, and habits, in presence of the whole court : he praised his merit, and bestowed on him the principal posts in the army. In October, the Han-lin, who were appointed to examine the Chinese history, and write annals, presented the emperor with the annals of Jenghîz Khân, Ogotay, Quey-yew, Toley, and Meng-ko.

A.D. 1305.

*Religious ceremonies fixed.*

The Ywen, or Mungls, had by tradition, their certain rules and rites for the worship of Heaven ; but they had neither fixed ceremonies, places, nor times, for sacrifice. Timûr therefore employed able persons to examine what had been the practice on that head, from the foundation of the Chinese empire to his own time. Alaafun, with some others who were Chinese, reported to the emperor the result of their researches, and settled the ceremonies which

which were thenceforth to be observed in the worship of Heaven.

Timûr had one son called Te-shew, and one daughter by Pe-yeu, the princess of Hongkila. Te-shew was appointed heir ; but died without children during the life of his father ; who deceased himself in January 1307, in his forty-second year, without either leaving issue, or naming a successor.

A.D. 1307.

Timûr died.

This prince passed, in the judgement of the Chinese, for a perfect emperor. The wife conduct which he observed in the war against Hay-tû and Nayen ; the judicious choice which he made of generals and ministers ; the constant aversion which he shewed to the vices which reign but too often in the courts of princes ; and the extraordinary care which he took to relieve the people ; give a high idea of this prince's virtue and abilities. He was sixth khân of Tartary, and second emperor of China \*.

His character.

## S E C T. II.

*The Reign of Hayshan, called by the Chinese Vû-tsung.*

WHEN the emperor Timûr died, Hayshan, eldest son of Talamapala, the son of Cheng-kin, the son of Hû-pi-lay, was lieutenant-general in Tartary, and at the head of a great army to the north of Karakoram. He was esteemed by most of the princes of his family, whom he had visited in Tartary, and had gained reputation in the war with Hay-tû. He had likewise a considerable interest among the grandees, many of whom expressed a desire to see him emperor ; while none seemed to think of setting any of the sons of Kanmala, eldest son of Cheng-kin, on the throne. Meantime the empress Pe-ya-û, widow of Timûr, having conceived a hatred against a princess of her own house, the wife of Talamapala, caused her to be banished to Whay-chew, in Ho-nan, with her son Ayyu-lipalipata ; and, fearing the resentment of Hayshan (who was also her son, and secretly enraged at her treatment), in case he became emperor, sent for the minister A-û-tay, prince Mingli Temur, with several other princes and grandees of her court : to them she proposed the prince Honanta, eldest son of Mangkola, third son of Hû-pi-lay, who then governed the princes of Shen-fî, Se-chwen, and

Seventh  
khân Hay-  
shan.

Tibbet ; and usually resided at Si-gan Fû, capital of the first of those provinces. Honanta, who readily embraced the offer of the empress, hastened to Ta-tû ; while the parties above mentioned took measures to hinder Hayshan's return.

*Honanta  
his compe-  
titor.*

The first step they took, was to go to the palace, and intreat the empress to pull down the curtain (E), in order to give audiences, and govern the state, till Honanta was installed. Then A-ú-tay assembled the grandees at the palace of the ancestors ; and, under pretence of consulting about the succession, they began by force to perform the ceremonies which are usually observed after the recognition of a new emperor. Two great mandarins opposed this attempt ; and insisted, that they ought first to see the name of the new emperor. Ho-whey, one of the prime mandarins, expressed himself to the same purpose. A-ú-tay fell into a passion, and threatened with death the opposing lords ; but as they stood firm to their principles, the assembly dissolved.

*Alaasun's  
policy.*

On the other side, Alaasun, as prime minister, seizing the seals of the tribunals, caused the treasury to be shut up, together with the chambers where the robes were kept, and jewels of the crown. Then acting in concert with the officer of the inner guard of the palace, he suffered nobody to enter. At the same time he feigned himself sick ; and, in spite of the repeated orders and threats of the empress, remained firm ; fending privately some trusty lords to Hayshan and Ayyulipalipata, to hasten to court. This latter, having received the express in February, was at a loss what course to take. Li-meng his master quoted the law of Shi-tsû (F), which excluded bastards from the succession ; and represented, that, as his brother Hayshan was above a thousand leagues from the capital, he ought to set out with the princeps his mother for Ta-tû ; Limeng, who was but little known at court, went before ; and, pretending to be a physician, as such was brought into the chamber of Alaasun. A lord, sent by the empress to know how the minister did, was with him when Li-meng entered ; yet, nobody suspecting him to be other than a physician, he had opportunity enough to deliver what he had to say on the part of Ayyulipalipata. After this communication,

*Li-meng's  
stratagem.*

(E) This is in allusion to an ancient custom observed by the Chinese princesses, who governed during the minority of

the princes their sons. Gaubil.

(F) The Chinese title for Hû-pi-lay.

he took post-horses ; and, while Alaafun prepared every thing necessary for the reception of that prince, Li-meng travelled day and night ; so that the empress was much surprised, when soon after she was informed, that Ayyulipalipata, and his mother, had arrived in the city. They made their entrance into the palace early in the morning, followed on horseback by their retinue in deep mourning ; and were introduced, by the officers of the guards, into their old apartment <sup>t</sup>.

The partisans of Honanta agreed to declare him emperor on the third of March ; and chose that day, under pretence of celebrating the birth of Ayyulipalipata. Alaafun promised Honanta to assist at the ceremony ; and, the same night, gave Ayyulipalipata notice ; acquainted him, that it was necessary to circumvent the authors of the plot, without waiting for the arrival of Hayshan. Prince Fûla, who filled the post of great captain, undertook to head an army ; and, two days before, entered Ta-tû at the head of a considerable body of troops, without declaring on what design ; but the empress could easily perceive, that the prince would never suffer Honanta to be proclaimed emperor, and, from that time, was in very great fear. Ayyulipalipata, seeing himself strengthened by an army at his devotion, caused a report to be spread, that Hayshan had sent a commissioner to enquire into what had passed with respect to Honanta. Then prince Mengli Temûr, being seized, was carried in chains to Shang-tû. A-ü-<sup>The con-</sup>  
tay, and the other mandarins his accomplices, were condemned to death ; but execution was respite till the arrival of Hayshan. Guards likewise were placed at the gates of both the palace and city ; so that the empress, and prince Honanta, saw themselves entirely disabled from proceeding in their design ; and, as it were, prisoners in their own palace.

Meantime the princes of Ayyulipalipata's party proposed to him to assume the empire ; but he rejected the proposal, and declared plainly, that the crown belonged to his elder brother. He added, that the prosecutions he had ordered were in favour of Hayshan, and to punish those who had the audacity to attempt to violate the rules of the succession. Li-meng was nominated for one of the chief employments, which he declined. He had never seen Hayshan ; and, as soon as he heard that prince was on the road, he disappeared : nor was the place of his re-

*Li-meng's modesty.*

<sup>t</sup> Gaubil, ubi supra, p. 233, & seqq.

treat known, the love of study and retirement having induced him to conceal it.

*Hayshan's resolution.*

As soon as Hayshan received advice of his uncle Timûr's death, he repaired from the mountain Antay, or Altay, to Karakorom; where he assembled the princes and great men, in order to deliberate on what measures he should embrace. The troops, who loved him, were desirous that he should be acknowledged emperor in that ancient capital; but Hayshan would not agree to that scheme. He received an express from the princess his mother, by which he found, that she was inclined to have Ayyulipalipata elected; induced thereto by the words of an astrologer, who had promised the empire to that prince, at his departure from Whay-chew. On this advice, Hayshan sent for Toto, who had brought him intelligence of Timûr's death, and told him, that as he was older than Ayyulipalipata, the speech of an astrologer ought not to disturb the order of the succession; that he knew how to punish those who had infused such sentiments into his mother; and that he was resolved to set out for Shang-tû, there to take possession of the throne of Jenghîz Khân. Having thus declared himself, he ordered Toto, to acquaint his mother, brother, Alaafun, as well as the other princes and faithful lords, with his resolution.

*Marches towards Ta-tû.*

Hayshan chose thirty thousand soldiers out of the army at Karakorom, appointing the prince Ganwhey and Chouangûr to command them. Then putting himself at their head, began his march in three divisions. The princess, Hayshan's mother, charmed to hear from Toto the true intentions of her son, sent that lord back, requesting him to speak in her behalf to Hayshan, and especially to explain to him fully in what sense she seemed to wish to see Ayyulipalipata on the throne. Meantime this latter prince caused his brother's approach to be published in Ta-tû; and, after he had provided for the security of that city, set out with the guards, accompanied by several princes and grandees, for Shang-tû, to prepare every thing for the reception of Hayshan\*.

This prince expected with impatience the return of Toto; and, seeing him at a distance, rose up in his chariot, and ordered him to come and sit by him. Toto was accompanied by his brother Ashapûwha, sent by the princess. He appointed Ashapûwha to be one of his ministers; and being near Shang-tû, drew up his troops: he entered that

\* Gaubil, ubi supra, p. 235, & seqq.

city in May, attended by his generals, and was conducted to the palace by the imperial guard, amidst the acclamations of the people. As soon as he saw his brother, he advanced to embrace him, both shedding tears; thanked him for his zeal, and praised his management. Then the two princes went to pay their duty to the princes their mother, who reckoned this the most glorious day of her life. Hayshan was acknowledged emperor with much pomp: he declared his mother empress; and gave to his father the title of emperor: he likewise appointed his brother hereditary prince; which ceremonies being performed, the court set out for Ta-tû.

*Proclaimed emperor.*

When they arrived at that city, Hayshan, attended by the princes of his house, went to the palace of his ancestors, to honour the memory of Tay-tfu or Jenghîz Khân, Ogotay, Quey-yew, Meng-ko, Toley, Shi-tsû or Hû-pi-lay, Timûr, Cheng-kin, and Talamapala.

*Honours his ancestors.*

After this ceremony of respect paid to his ancestors, Hayshan ordered the sentence of death, obtained by Ay-yuli-palipata against the mandarins of Honanta's party, to be carried into execution: he likewise condemned the empress Pe-ya-û, and prince Honanta, as well as the minister A-û-tay. In July he caused to be distributed through the empire the Mungl translation of the book written by Confucius, intituled, Hyau-king; with an exhortation to the Tartar princes and grandees to read that book, and conform to the doctrine it contained.

*Conspirators put to death.*

The year 1308 is reckoned the first of the emperor Hay-shan, whom the Chinese intitle Vû-tsung: he was warlike, equitable, generous, mild, and a patron of learned men: but he had three faults; was too much attached to the lamas, loved wine, and was fond of women<sup>w</sup>.

A.D. 1308.

Li-pi, one of the great mandarins of Shang-tû, intending to punish a lama, who had abused some of the commonalty, that lama, and several others, armed with sticks, entered his tribunal, beat and confined him in a small room; yet, on complaining, could not procure redress. At the same time another lama had the impudence to stop the chariot of a princess on the road, that he might get the start of her in travelling; and, when her attendants attempted to seize him, he beat the princes, and proceeded. Neither could this great personage obtain any satisfaction from the emperor; on the contrary, an imperial order was published, importing, that the hand should be cut off

*Hayshan's character.*

*Insolence of the lamas.*

<sup>w</sup> Gaubil, ubi supra, p. 238, & seq.

which struck a lama ; and the tongue of him who abused any of them. The historians speak with great vehemence against these acts of injustice ; and add, “ that the lamas ruined the empire of the Ywen ; that the dynasty of the western Han was destroyed by the relations of the queens ; that of the Eastern Han by the eunuchs ; that of the Tang by the great mandarins ; and that of the Song by bad subjects.”

In November, Chapar, eldest son of Hay-tu, the eldest son of Ta-tû, and others, came in person to the court, to acknowlege Hayshan for their sovereign. At the end of the year Alaafun died at Karakorom in Tartary, where he had been removed on the following occasion.

*Alaafun disgraced.*

A-u-tay, the minister who had proposed installing Honanta, being a person of such great strength, that no-body durst attempt to seize him, it was feared he would have escaped : upon this, prince Tûla, descended from Ogotay, by Myeli, undertook the task ; took him with a great deal of resolution, and bound him. In consideration of this service, Hayshan conferred on him the title of regulo of the country of Ywe. Alaafun, on this occasion, represented, that it was against the rules of the imperial family to give that title to a prince of so remote a branch as Tûla was. Tûla, in revenge, accused Alaafun ; and shewed his name among those who were to have installed Honanta. The emperor knew the charge to be false ; yet, seeming to be angry with Alaafun, deprived him of some of his titles ; but appointed him governor-general and prime minister at Karakorom, which was one of the first posts in the empire.

*Death and character,*

Alaafun repaired to that ancient capital of Tartary ; and it was there that he displayed his talents in their full splendour : he began by putting to death a Tartar lord, the head of a gang of robbers who destroyed the country : he bestowed large gifts on the poor officers and soldiers : procured a great number of oxen, cows, sheep, and horses ; giving, in exchange, silks, linen, rice, and tea : he sent for skilful fishermen, plowmen, labourers, and peasants, from China ; taught the Tatars, who dwelt along the lakes and rivers, to fish ; caused canals to be dug for watering the lands, and rendering them fit for culture ; and established public granaries, posts, and carriages. Alaafun was of the hord of Walano (or Alano, Alans), who, Marco Polo says, were Christians. Likisili, his great grandfather, was an intimate friend of Jenhgîz Khân, and had saved his life upon a particular occasion.

In January 1309 prince Tûla was guilty of want of respect to the emperor : he was brutish, as well as addicted to wine ; and, as very bad consequences were to be feared from his violent temper, he was put to death. Hayshan, about this time, examined into the state of his finances ; and ordered kashes, or copper deniers, to be cast. New tickets were likewise issued, each bearing the value of an ounce of silver.

In February a conspiracy was discovered, at the head of which was Koko, son of the emperor Hû-pi-lay, and the son of prince Tûla. Twenty-four lamas, concerned in the plot, were punished with death, and the two princes banished. In June the lands of the bonzas of the sects of Fo and Tau, which had been exempt from paying tribute, were declared thenceforward liable to the tax, as well as those of other people.

One of the great mandarins of Ta-tû was a foreigner, Unjust execution. named Arslân, much beloved by the people, and esteemed by the soldiers ; but being accused, by some of his enemies, of a design to revolt, was beheaded, with his brother, and seventeen other persons. The people cried out, that Arslân was innocent ; and, indeed, his innocence appeared, when it was too late.

In January 1311, the emperor Hayshan died, at the age A.D. 1311. of thirty-one : he had no children by the empress Chenko, princess of Hong-kila ; but he had two by two other queens, who were both afterwards emperors ; the eldest was named Hoshila, the other Tûtemûr : he was the seventh khân of the Mungls, and third of the Chinese dynasty of the Ywen.

### S E C T. VIII.

*The Reign of Ayyuli-palipata, styled by the Chinese Jin-tsung.*

AS soon as Hayshan was dead, his brother Ayyuli-palipata, who had been early declared hereditary prince, was acknowledged emperor, and styled by the Chinese Jin-tsung. Several ministers, during the reign of his predecessor, had abused their power, and taken advantage of that prince's inclination to pleasure, in order to enrich themselves, and committed a thousand acts of injustice, which the emperor knew nothing of : the new monarch began his reign by making examples of these evil ministers ;

Eighth  
Khân  
Ayyuli-  
palipata.

A.D. 1309.  
New mo-  
ney.

A plot dis-  
covered.

Hayshan  
dies.

sters ; he put some to death, and banished others, not sparing even the princes of the blood : he then chose mandarins, remarkable for their integrity, to act at the head of affairs.

*Public calamities, imputed to the bonzas.*

As he loved the people, he beheld, with grief, the ravages which epidemic diseases made in his capital : with no less concern he saw, that, since his accession to the throne, the sun had been eclipsed, a comet had appeared, and there had been two earthquakes ; besides, the famine, drought, and inundations of rivers had ruined several provinces. On occasion of these calamities, he assembled the grandees ; some of whom suggested, that the false worship of Fo had caused so many evils. The emperor deplored the misfortunes which befel his people ; and even declared they were sent by way of punishment for the faults which he had committed in government, and promised to amend : but whether it was that he believed the worship of Fo to be good, or that, in policy, he connived at it, for fear of causing a revolt in the princes of his family and his Mungl subjects, who were bigotted to the doctrine of the bonzas, he would not hear of abolishing that superstition <sup>x</sup>.

A.D. 1314.

*Learning encouraged.*

In January 1314, the emperor ordered a search to be made after such men of learning and virtue, as were either unknown, or without employment ; and in March, made new regulations for the imperial college at Ta-tû, and that of the Whey-hû, both of which had much declined.

A.D. 1315.

*Examinations established.*

In March 1315, Ayyuli-palipata instituted examinations among the doctors, who were divided into two bodies, one of Mungls, the other of Chinese ; and, having assembled them, made them compose verses in his presence, upon a subject of his own choosing. The same custom is still in force ; but no distinction is made between the Chinese and Tartars.

*Effects of oppression;*

Tye-mu-tyel, one of the principal mandarins for the finances, condemning the taxes imposed in 1314, augmenting them in the southern provinces, one of his chief commissioners, named Ni-cha-ma-ting, a Mohammedan, committed all sorts of vexations in Kyang-si ; and his avarice carried him so far, as to rob the sepulchres, in hopes of enriching himself. The city of Kan-chew, in Shen-si, revolted ; one of the seditious chiefs assuming the title of emperor. The great mandarins of the province stifled this rebellion in the beginning ; the Mohammedan was

<sup>x</sup> Gaubil, p. 243, & seq.

punished,

punished, and the people were eased, not only in Kyang-si, but also in Che-kyang, Kyang-nan and other provinces.

In the beginning of this year, Ayyuli palipata sent *and a comet.* commissioners into all parts of the empire, to examine into the conduct of the mandarins: he knew that the people in the south had suffered several grievances from those magistrates; and that the revolt of Kan-chew was the effect of their ill conduct. The emperor, who feared nothing so much as an intestine war, became very uneasy: and his apprehensions increased, on the appearances of a comet, which happened in November. The people were struck with the sight of this phænomenon, which they considered as a token, that Heaven designed to punish the emperor. Ayyuli palipata, as soon as he saw the comet, caused a general pardon to be published; and discharged the provinces of Kyang-si and Che-kyang, which had suffered most, from all kinds of taxes for two years. The other provinces were eased in proportion.

In 1316, the prince Hoshila, eldest son of Hayshan the late emperor, was appointed to govern Yun-nan: at which appointment being discontented, he left China, and went to reside to the north-west of the mountain Kin. Several great men followed him; and he was received with open arms by the princes of the imperial house, particularly by prince Chakotay. Mean time, Ayyuli-palipata ordered a palace to be built at Wey-whey, in Honan, to honour the memory of the celebrated Pi-kan; and another at Chang ping-chew, a city of Pe-che-li, to honour that of Ti-jun-kyay. At the end of the year he appointed his son Shotepala, a hopeful prince, to be his heir.<sup>y</sup>

In 1319, the emperor, who tenderly loved this prince, A.D. 1319. had an inclination to cede the empire to him; and most of the grandees approved of his design. But one of the great lords of the court having induced them to change their sentiments, his majesty desisted: however, he declared the prince lieutenant-general of the empire, and gave him the management of state affairs. Shotepala had a great soul, as well as a true filial affection for the emperor and the empress.

In January 1320, Ayyuli-palipata fell sick; and his disease being judged mortal, the young prince never left his father's chamber, day nor night, but seemed overwhelmed with grief: in a few days, his father died, in

A.D. 1320.  
*The emperor dies.*

<sup>y</sup> Gaubil, p. 245, & seq.

the thirty-sixth year of his age. History praises him for his aversion to hunting, and other pleasures; his application to business; his duty to the princess his mother; and the protection which he gave to the sciences, and learned men.

Ayyuli-palipata married Anoshosheli, princess of Hongkila, by whom he had Shotepala, the appointed heir. He had also another son, called Utûfû-pûwha, and a daughter; but it is not said that he had them by the princess of Hongkila: however that be, this emperor never was addicted to women.

*Choang-gûr's ex-plots.*

In the beginning of his reign he declared war against a prince of his house, called Ifyen-pûwha, supported by several other princes: but their army was defeated in the country of Itehaymish, by Choanggûr, then one of the generals of the troops, which were very numerous about Karakoram. He afterwards defeated their general Utû Temûr, in the country of Chemeykan; and pursued the enemy as far as the country of Chayr, near the defile called the Iron Gate (G).

Ayyuli-palipata was eighth khân of the Mungl empire, and fourth emperor the Chinese dynasty of the Ywen<sup>2</sup>.

#### S E C T. IV.

#### *The Reign of Shotepala, called by the Chinese Ing-tsong.*

*Ninth khân Shotepala.*

---

AS soon as Ayyuli-palipata was dead, the appointed heir was saluted emperor; and, to gratify the empress his mother, declared Tye-mû-tye prime minister. This Mungl lord had been often employed in affairs under the late monarch, and understood the management of finances. He had, besides, a great deal of wit and cunning, was hated by the people, as well as the great men; and although in disgrace by the death of the late emperor, had been supported secretly by the empress. This wicked minister, grown proud with his new elevation, committed all sorts of oppression, and threw every thing into disorder. In February, under false pretences,

\* Gaubil, p. 248, & seq.

(G) A famous gorge of the mountains to the west of Samarkand, in Great Bukharia, where the war here spoken of was carried on. Gaubil.

he caused Syau-pay-chû and Yang-tûrchi, two of the most respectable lords of the court, to be put to death: they had belonged to the tribunal of ministers, and often detected his flagrant acts of injustice. He put to death several other persons; and threatened to give the wife of Yang-tûrchi to a slave. As soon as this lady, no less remarkable for her wisdom, modesty, and honour, than her beauty and high birth, had notice of his threat, she caused her hair to be cut off, disfigured her face, and took an oath to remain a widow.

Such violent proceedings incensed the grandees; but <sup>The minister's violence.</sup> they dared not complain, either to the empress, or Shotepala, who was acknowledged emperor in March. After the installation, Tye-mû-tyel became more powerful than before; and, to revenge himself on the sage Li-meng, his enemy, lowered him a degree in the class of mandarins; and demolished a stone monument, which the emperors had raised in honour of him and his ancestors, in the place of their sepulchres. Li-meng seemed very little concerned at these indignities; and the emperor was surprised to see, that he did not so much as utter one murmur against the author. Resolving from hence to inform himself of Li-meng's actions, he repaired the monuments of stone and marble, restored him to his titles and employments, and cautioned Tye-mû tyel to be very careful, for the future, not to accuse persons of so much virtue<sup>a</sup>.

Wicked men vested with power can never reform. This minister saw, with great uneasiness, that the emperor had much esteem for Pay-chû, general of the imperial guard. Pay-chû, descended from the famous Mû-hû-li, was a young lord, learned, brave, modest, and irreproachable in his manners. Shotepala, had always a great esteem for Pay-chû, which increased, in proportion as he became acquainted with the excellent qualities of his favourite. The emperor resolved, at last, to do nothing without the advice of Pay-chû; and, after several refusals, obliged him to take on him the charge of prime minister. This lord began his ministry, by making known the injury which Tye-mû-tyel had done his majesty, and concealed nothing of what had passed. The emperor Shotepala was equitable, and very susceptible in the point of honour. He caused an enquiry to be made after those who had been sufferers, and resolved to make them satisfaction, as far as he was able. He did not indeed think it yet convenient to

<sup>Pay-chû  
made mi-  
nister.</sup>

<sup>a</sup> Gaubil, p. 250, & seq.

remove Tye-mû-tyel; but he put no manner of confidence in him, and took care that he should not treat any body ill.

A.D. 1321.

In April 1321, a conspiracy was discovered, formed by Asan, and several other great lords; who, by the advice of Pay-chû, and the empress grandmother, were condemned and executed. Tye-mû-tyel, who, by means of the empress, mother to Shotepala, still maintained his ground, caused the prince Tûtemûr, second son of the emperor Hayshan, to be banished to Kung-chew, capital of the island of Hay-nan<sup>b</sup>.

*Censors  
put to  
death.*

Shotepala, who was a zealous believer in the doctrine of Fo, in the beginning of the year built a magnificent temple to that false deity, in the mountains to the west of Pe-king. While the work was in hand, several censors of the empire made very fatrical representations upon the occasion. The emperor, contrary to his custom, bursting into a passion, caused some of them to be put to death, and banished others. Some time after, the memory of these mandarins was re-established; and the emperor was too wise not to repent having so imprudently followed the emotions of his anger. In April he caused the temple which the Whey-hû, or western Mohammedans, had erected at Shang-tû, to be demolished; and afterwards forbade those foreigners to buy young boys and girls of the Mungls, in order to give or sell them again for slaves to the Chinese.

*The court  
reformed.*

A.D. 1323.

In 1322 Pay-chû had obtained leave to go into Lyautong, to raise a monument of marble, with an inscription on it, in praise of Gantong his grandfather, who died in the reign of Hû-pi-lay. Tye-mû-tyel, who, through vexation, had kept for some time within his palace, took the opportunity of Pay-chû's absence to go to court; but the guards stopped him at the gate, and told him, they had orders not to let him enter. The anguish occasioned by this disgrace, threw him into a fit of sickness, of which he died in August universally detested. In June 1323 he was deprived of his titles; the monuments of stone and marble, inscribed with his eulogy, were pulled down, and his goods confiscated. Mean time Pay-chû caused the taxes and annual tribute, payed by the provinces, to be remitted; and considerable sums of bounty-money to be distributed every-where. Debauchery, avarice, luxury, and other vices were banished from court; so that the Chinese great

<sup>b</sup> Gaubil, ubi sup. p. 261, & seqq.

men could not help admiring such wise conduct in a Tatar prince only twenty-one years of age.

While things seemed thus to promise happy times, Tye she, the adopted son of Tye-mû-tyel, and one of the principal lords of the court, was wholly employed in contriving how to be revenged for the affront done his father, and the confiscation of his effects. He first sounded the inclinations of several discontented princes, with those of the relations and friends of the mandarins who had been put to death in 1320: he afterwards engaged several officers and soldiers in his interest. On the third of September, the emperor, being at Shang-tû, and not able to compose himself to sleep, ordered prayers to be said to Fo. Tye-she, and his accomplices, were seized with fear. They had prevailed on the lamas to require that sacrifices should be offered to Fo, as the only means to avoid the evils which threatened the empire. Pay-chû sent away the lamas, treating them "as men who thought of nothing but how to get money, and, in reality, protected wicked people." These words being heard by the associates of Tye-she, who was one of the commanding officers in the guards, the lords Chinkin Temûr and Syen Temûr, formerly ministers, prince Ganti-puwha, and others, immediately met, and consulted how to prevent the measures of Pay-chû, whose probity, vigilance, and valour, they feared. That same night, Tye-she, followed by several soldiers, flew that lord; and then entering the tent of the emperor, who was in bed, killed him with his own hand. The place where this assassination was committed, is called Nan-po, to the south of the city Shang-tû.

The emperor Shotepala married Sukopala, princess of the tribe of Ikilye, and daughter of Ilihaya, daughter of the emperor Timûr: but he had no children by her; and died without issue. He was ninth emperor of the Mungûs, and fifth of the Chinese.

### S E C T. V.

#### *The Reign of Yesun-temûr, styled by the Chinese Tay-ting.*

AT the time when the above mentioned conspiracy was carrying on at Shang-tû, Yesun-temûr, eldest son of prince Kanmala, brother of the emperor Timûr, com-

Tenth,  
Yesun-  
temûr, or  
Tay-ting,

\* Gaubil. ubi sup. p. 252, & seqq.

manded to the north of the Great Kobi, or Sandy Desert, in Tartary, and encamped near the river Long-kû or Pan-chûni. This prince had in his court a lord named Taulasha, whose son Hasun was an officer in the imperial guards under the command of Pay-chû ; but as he long knew that Tye-she intended to kill his general, he quitted his service. In March this year, 1323, a mandarin, called Tan-te, leaving the court, informed Taulasha that the emperor did not regard Yesun-temûr ; and it was to be feared would, in a little time, put him to death. After this intelligence, the two became intimate friends. Tye-she, before he put his design in execution, sent a mandarin, named Walû-tse, to acquaint Taulasha that he, Alasan, Yesyen-temûr, and others, as soon as they had brought their plot to bear, would proclaim the young prince Yesun-temûr emperor.

As soon as this affair was communicated to Yesun-temûr, he caused Walû-tse to be arrested, and instantly dispatched several couriers to inform the emperor of what was plotting against him : but the messengers arrived too late. The prince Ganti-pûwha, and Yesyen Temûr, having seized the seal and imperial robes, travelled in haste across the desert ; and on their arrival at the river Long-kû, Yesun-temûr caused himself to be proclaimed emperor in September. He then published a general pardon, and declared Taulasha his prime minister : he likewise appointed Tye-she and his accomplices to be his principal mandarins.

*but soon after puts them to death.* As Shotepala was the delight of the people, the news of his death diffused a general sorrow among the princes, grandes, and chiefs of tribes, as well as the Chinese mandarins and literati. On the other hand, the princes and lords of the family of Muhûli, which was one of the most powerful and considerable among the Mungls, were impatient to obtain justice for a murder committed on one of the principal persons of their house, who was general of the imperial guards, and prime minister. The new emperor might have easily seen that he was in danger of suffering, for having had a hand in the assassination of the prince and his minister. Prince Maynû, descended from the grandfather of Jenghîz Khân, finding the emperor inclined to make use of Tye-she and his accomplices, and even to advance them to be great mandarins, represented that such a conduct would not only lose him the affections both of the Chinese and Tatars, but that posterity would reproach his majesty with dipping his hands in the blood of his sovereign, and that of a minister sprung from the

great

great Mûhûli, to whom the Mungls owed the empire of the Tatars. Yesun-temûr, struck with this idea, ordered Yesyun Temûr, Wanche, Tumen, and other lords, to be executed that instant, in the camp of Long-kû. He likewise dispatched officers to Ta-tû to seize Tye-she and his associates ; who were all cut off on the spot, their families extirpated, and their effects confiscated. Sonan, son of Tye-mû-tyel, had only been sentenced to be banished ; but on representing that he was the first who struck Pay-chû on the shoulder with his sword, the emperor ordered him also to be put to death, and his goods to be forfeited ; although the latter part of the sentence was not put in execution.

The lives of Ganti-puwha, and other princes who were in some sort parties in Tye-she's treason, were spared ; but they were all banished, and carried the brand of their infamy along with them. Yesun-temûr, arriving at Ta-tû in November, restored the memory of the two lords whom Tye-mû-tyel had condemned to death in January 1320. The emperor did the same justice to those impeached the year following by that minister and his son Sonan ; some of whom had been put to death, and others banished, on their accusations, which were now declared to be malicious.

In 1324, which is the first year of Yesun-temûr, styled by the Chinese Tay-ting, one of the ministers proposed to his majesty to appoint doctors, whose business should be to expound daily, in the palace, such books as were most proper to form the princes and grandees for government. The emperor approved of this design ; and ordered his son, as well as those of other princes, to attend every day to hear the lectures. The first book selected was the Chinese history, written by Tse-ma-quang ; and this custom is still observed. Chang-quey, the projector of this useful institution, was one of the most steady and discerning ministers the Ywen ever had. He was the son of general Chang-hong-fan, and educated by a great mandarin of the Song empire<sup>a</sup>.

Soon after these lectures were established, the emperor declared his son Asûkepa, his heir. Mean time the Chinese grandees and literati, who were watching for an occasion to make known to posterity their sentiments touching the treason of Tye-she, the worship of Fo, and several other abuses, met with one in April ; for, during that month,

*but soon  
after puts  
them to  
death :*

A.D. 1324.

*Lectures on  
govern-  
ment,  
procured by  
Chang-  
quey.*

<sup>a</sup> Gaubil, ubi supra, p. 255, & seqq.

wherein the emperor made a progress to Shang-tû, there happened a violent storm, an earthquake, and a total eclipse of the moon. These, they publicly declared, were sent in punishment for the murder of Shotepala and Paychu. The emperor, seized with fear, sent for the grandees, and ordered them to draw up a memorial, openly declaring their sentiments. Chang-quey was chosen to perform this task, which he executed with equal spirit and ability. In this remonstrance he proposed that all concerned in the murder of the late emperor should meet with condign punishment; that all oppressors should be cut off; and all abuses reformed. He represented that it was not by the bonzas or priests of Fo that he should seek to be happy: that since the bonzas, the lamas, and the tau-tse, made so many prayers and sacrifices to Fo, Heaven had shewed continual marks of its displeasure; and that, till such time as the people saw the worship of Fo abolished, and all the bonzas driven out, they might expect to be unhappy; that the palace of the emperor was filled with idle persons, eunuchs, astrologers, physicians, and others, whose maintenance amounted to exorbitant sums; that, as the empire was a family, of which the emperor was father, it was not fit that any of his children should die for want of care and assistance; much less was it proper that a prince should think it inconsistent with his dignity to listen to the cries of the miserable.

The emperor read this discourse of Chang-quey with pleasure; but durst not abolish the worship of Fo, for fear the Mungls should revolt.

**A.D. 1326.** — In 1326 there was a great famine in Pe-che-li and Shantong, of which the emperor having received the particulars from Chang-quey, at his return from Pau-ting Fu, where he had been to see his relations, that prince followed his sage advice, in assisting the people of those two provinces. The lamas were all-powerful at court, especially with the princesses: they had patents to take post-horses, and travelled about with the equipage of princes; their lives and manners were often very disorderly; and the Chinese on all sides made most bitter complaints of their immorality and exorbitance.

**A.D. 1327.** — In 1327 the grandees invited the emperor to go in person, and sacrifice to Heaven; but he declined the trouble, and cited a law of Hû-pi-lay, importing that the emperor should perform that sacrifice by a deputy. In the course of this year all sorts of evils afflicted the empire; drought, famine, inundations, an earthquake, and an eclipse of the sun.

*His famous  
memorial  
against the  
conspira-  
tors,  
religion of  
Fo.*

*and useless  
officers.*

*Lamas in  
solence  
curbed.*

*Great ca-  
lamities.*

sun. In December died the illustrious Chang-quey, regretted by all the men of worth in the empire.

In the beginning of the year 1328 the emperor caused prints to be distributed through the empire, on which was delineated the art of rearing silk-worms, and making silk, with the manner of cultivating lands. Besides these prints, he ordered a book to be distributed, consisting of fourteen chapters, wherein the ancient process was explained. In February his imperial majesty went from Ta-tû to Shang-tû, and left the guard of the former to Yen-temûr. In July he died, at the age of thirty-six, leaving the court full of intrigues and factions.

This emperor married Papuhan, princess of Hongkila, who had the honours and title of empress. Besides this princess, he likewise married his own niece, by one of his elder sisters, and two other ladies, of the house of Hongkila, near relations of the empress. The history says he left four sons, of whom Afukipa, the prince inheritor, was the eldest.

Yefun-temur was tenth khân of the Mungls, and sixth emperor of the Chinese Ywen<sup>e</sup>.

## S E C T. VI.

### *The Reign of Hoshila, known to the Chinese by the Title of Ming-ts'ong.*

AFTER the death of the emperor Yesun-temur, the empress Papuhan, in the name of the prince her son, sent the minister Upetûla to Ta-tû, in order to secure the seals, as well as to conciliate the affection of the people. On the other hand, Yen-temûr, as governor and commander-general in that capital, posted troops in all the quarters, reinforced the guards at the gates both of the city and palace, and resolved to raise to the throne Hoshila and Tûtemûr, the two sons of Hayshan. Yen-temur, one of the greatest generals of his time, was the third son of Chohangûr, prince of Kin-cha (or Kipchak). His fine personal qualities, joined to his birth, and the services which his father and grandfather had performed, could not fail to make his fortune at court. As he had been raised by Hayshan to the prime dignities, and was loved by that prince more than any other lord of his court, Yen-

A.D. 1328.

Care about  
silk.

Emperor's  
death;

marriages,

and sons.

\* Gaubil, ubi supra, p. 260, & seqq.

temûr thought himself bound in gratitude to be attached to his family.

*Yen-te-mûr's zeal for Hay-shan's family.*

In these sentiments Yen-temur, in concert with the regulo of Gan-si, great grandson of Hû-pi-lay, by Mangkola, having selected his officers, and most resolute soldiers, on the day Kyaw of the eighth month, summoned the great mandarins to one of the halls of the palace. All the lords being assembled, Yen-temur, followed by seventeen of his party, proposed the two sons of Hayshan to be emperors; and said he would put to death on the spot any who should oppose that resolution. Having declared himself to this effect, he ordered his men to seize Upetula, and several other great mandarins, who did not concur with him, and conduct them to prison. He then appointed mandarins of his own party; and gave full power to Chau-shi-nen. The subaltern officers knew nothing of what was intended; and the generals who were in the secret, having assembled the troops, ordered them to kneel with their faces to the south, and strike the ground with their heads; by which ceremony they perceived that Yen-temur designed to proclaim Tûtemûr emperor, at that time banished into Hû-quang. For a whole month this general appeared always on horseback, and but a few persons knew where he slept at night. He had taken right measures to hasten Tûtemûr to Ta-tû, and give Hoshila notice, who was in Tartary: at the same time he spread a report, that the first was advancing by great journeys; and that the latter would soon return from the north, with the princes of his family.

*His great activity.*

When Pe-yen, governor of Honan, a Merkit by nation, and one of the best officers of the Ywen, knew Yen-te-mûr's design, he entered into his views, and putting to death several officers whom he distrusted, obliged the troops to declare for Tûtemûr. Satûn, brother of Yen-temûr, seized the important post of Ku-yong-quang, and Tang-ki-shi, Yen-temûr's son, took Kû-pe-kû (H). Meantime that general used the necessary precautions for executing his design at Ta-tû; on which principle he put to death prince Koko-chû, and some other great lords, who endeavoured to supplant him; but he accomplished all he undertook, by his resolution, activity, genius, and the reputation he had gained in the opinion of the troops.

(H) A fortrefs and gate in the wall of China, to the north of Pe-king.

While

While Yen-temûr thus exerted himself at Ta-tû, in favour of Tûtemûr, Taulasha caused Afûkipa, known to the Chinese by the name of Tyen-shun, to be proclaimed emperor. This party was powerful; for, besides many princes of the blood, and governors of provinces, most of the western officers and soldiers were inclined to follow it; and, according to the Chinese law, Afûkipa was the lawful emperor, he having been acknowledged heir apparent in the life-time of the emperor his father. Prince Wang-chan also had given an army to general Tashe Temûr, son of the minister Toto, prince of Kangli, in order to oppose that of Yen-temûr.

At length, in August, Tûtemûr arrived at Ta-tû, and, by his presence, exceedingly strengthened his party. He made a promotion of mandarins, put Upetûla to death, and banished several other grandees whom Yen-temûr had imprisoned. This general pressed him to be proclaimed emperor. He put it off, saying, he would wait the return of his brother Hoshila, and yield the empire to him. However, at last he suffered himself to be prevailed on, and was proclaimed. Yen-temûr was immediately declared generalissimo, and Pe-yen, governor of Honan, was advanced. Manifestos were sent into all parts, and it was affirmed, that Tûtemûr was resolved to surrender the empire to his brother Hoshila.

Prince Wang-chan having advanced as far as Yulin, was opposed by Satûn, brother of Yen-temûr, and sustained some loss; but taking advantage of Yen-temûr's absence, who had been sent to the frontiers to oppose prince Yefyen-temûr, he reduced Ku-yong-quan. On advice of this success, that general returned, and, in two battles, defeated that prince near the river Yu, and obliged him to retire into Tartary. Prince Koko, who declared for Afûkipa, with the troops of Shensi, seized the important post of Tong-quan. Prince Yefyen-temûr likewise entered Shen-si, and proclaimed him emperor. Tyemûko, the Tatar general, following the same party, advanced with a great army to the borders of Honan and Hu-quang, where he made great conquests. Honan was at this time full of formidable armies of both parties<sup>f</sup>.

Meanwhile Yefyen-temûr, who had marched from Shen-si into Pe-che-li, reduced Tong-chew, and being reinforced by many succours, drew near Ta-tû, in order to besiege it. On this intelligence, Yen-temûr putting

<sup>f</sup> Gaubil. ubi supra, p. 262. & seqq.

himself at the head of his troops, attacked the prince vigorously, and cut his army in pieces. The most valuable officers belonging to Afûkipa were slain in this battle; and the prince found great difficulty in retreating with the ruins of his army. Prince Ulatay, who also declared for Afûkiya, made forced marches with his troops in order to join Yesyen-temûr. He had taken Tse-kin-quan, an important post in Pe-che-li, and alarmed the whole country; but when he arrived at the bridge of Lû-kew-kyau, he there heard of the prince's total defeat, and retired.

*Shang-tû taken.*

When Pû-wha-temûr, paternal uncle of Yen-temûr, who was great general of the Mungls in Tartary, to the west, north, and north-east, of Lyau-tong, knew that Tû-temûr had been installed at Ta-tû, he invited prince Ywelû-temûr to join him with his troops; and both went in October, to lay siege to Shang-tû. Taulasha defended the place at first with much courage, and, followed by the princes and great men of Afûkipa's party, several times attacked the besiegers, but was always repulsed, and being at length reduced to extremity, surrendered at discretion. He delivered up to Ywelû-temûr all the jewels, and precious stones, and whatever else belonged to the emperor Afûkipa. Prince Wang-chan fled; prince Toto, heretofore governor of Lyau-tong, was killed; but it was not known how Afûkipa died.

*Afûkipa slain.*

On the news of Afûkipa's death, and the reduction of Shang-tû, the princes and great lords who were leagued against Tûtemûr in Shen-si, Shan-si, Hu-quang, Che-kyang, Lyau-tong, and other countries, laid down their arms: and, in November, Tûtemûr, seeing himself without a rival, sent a lord to his brother Ho-shila, banished to Tong-gan-chew, the empress Papûhan, wife of Yesun-temur, and put to death the general Taulasha, with the princes Wang-chan, Ye-syen-temur, and others. He would have proceeded in the same manner with all the Tatar and Chinese grandees taken at Shang-tû, if a great mandarin had not told him such conduct was unjust, and might cause a general disaffection. Mean time Nankyatay, one of the commanders in Yun-nan, was proclaimed emperor, and appointed ministers.

*A.D. 1329.*

*Ho-shila installed.*

Prince Hoshila, having been informed of what had passed, in January, 1329, began his march southwards, and encamping to the north of the city Ho-ning, or Karakoram, caused himself to be proclaimed emperor. This installation was performed with the concurrence of Tûtemûr, and the lords of both courts made great rejoicings.

ings on the occasion. In March, Tûtemûr sent Yen-temûr to carry the seal of the empire, with the imperial habits and ornaments, to Hoshila, who declared him prime minister, and general of the troops, and Tûtemûr was appointed prince inheritor. Nevertheless, Tûtemûr, in reality, was emperor, independent of his brother. Hoshila prepared to go to Shang-tû, and being arrived in August within two days journey of that city, Tûtemûr went thither to salute him; but soon after Hoshila was found dead in his bed. The historians accuse Tûtemûr of having procured his brother's death.

*His sudden death.*

Hoshila is the emperor whom the Chinese call Ming-tsung; he gave the title of empress to the princess Papusha, who was of the tribe of Naymanchin, by whom he had a prince named Ilinchipin, who was proclaimed emperor, as the reader will see hereafter. When he was in Tartary he married also the princess Maylayti<sup>2</sup>, daughter of Na-hanlûlû, descended from prince Arslân, who came from the West to submit to Jenghîz Khân, and had large territories given him to the north of the Great Kobi, or Desert. Hoshila had, by the princess Maylayti, Tow-han-temûr, who was the last emperor of the Mungls in China. He had likewise another son, named Han-chi-pan, who reigned before his brother about two months.

*Wives and sons.*

Hoshila was the eleventh khan of Tartary, and seventh emperor of the Ywen, who reigned over the Chinese.

## S E C T. VII.

### The Reign of Tûtemûr, styled by the Chinese Ven-tsung.

AS soon as Hoshila was dead, Tûtemûr sent for the seal of the empire, and after he had performed the last duties to the deceased, returned to Shang-tû, where, on the fifteenth of the same month of August, he was acknowledged emperor, and appointed that the year 1329 should be reckoned the second of his reign.

*Twelfth.  
Tûtemûr,  
or Ven-  
tsong.*

In March 1330, prince Tûkyen revolted in Yun-nan, and assumed the title of king. He committed a thousand disorders, took cities, slew the mandarins, and stirred up the Myau-tse, with other people, who live independent in the neighbouring provinces, to rebel against the empe-

*A.D. 1330.  
Rebellion in  
Yun-nan.]*

<sup>2</sup> Gaubil, ubi suprà, p. 265, & seqq.

ror. Prince Alatenasheli, son of Prince Tûla, was ordered to march with an army to oppose the designs of Tûkyen. Mean time the empress Pûtasili, or Pûtasheli, of the house of Hong-kila, and wife of Tûtemûr, not able to endure the empress dowager Papusha, employed an eunuch to make away with her. Tûtemûr, say they, caused his brother Hoshila to be sent out of the world, and that wicked example induced Pûtasili to destroy Papusha.

*The emperor sacrifices.*

In October the emperor went to the temple of Heaven, and there sacrificed in person, honouring at the same time Jenghîz Khân, founder of the dynasty. Tûtemûr was the first of the Ywen, or Mungl princes who in person had been at the temple of Heaven and made the solemn sacrifice, which, before that time, had been performed by others. After this ceremony a general pardon was published, and a law made, that among the emperor's wives, only one should bear the title of empress.

*A.D. 1331.* In December the emperor declared his son Alatenatala prince inheritor ; but, in January, 1331, this prince died, to his father's great affliction. Mean time the prince Alatenasheli, with an army of a hundred thousand men, carried on the war against prince Tû-kyen, who defended himself with courage ; but having been worsted in above twenty battles, both Yun-nan and Se-chwen submitted to the victor. Soon after their submission, one of the rebels, named Lû-yu, who had lain concealed for a time, excited new troubles, supported by the brothers and sons of Tû-kyen ; but Kyay-lye, great general of the Mungls, made a terrible slaughter of his followers, and entirely dispersed them. Two brothers and three sons of Tû-kyen were killed ; and another of his brothers fled to the sea, where he perished.

*A.D. 1332.* In 1332 Tûtemûr, according to custom, removed in the spring to Shang-tû, where he fell sick, and died, in the twenty-ninth year of his age, ordering that one of the sons of his brother Hoshila should be proclaimed emperor <sup>b</sup>.

Tûtemûr was the twelfth khân of the Mungls, and eighth of the Ywen dynasty in China, where he was known under the title of Ven-tsung.

<sup>a</sup> Gaubil, ubi supra, p. 267, & seqq.

## S E C T. VIII.

*The Reign of Towhan-temûr, styled by the Chinese Shun-ti.*

AFTER the death of Tûtemûr, the minister Yen-temûr went to the empress Pûtasheli, and proposed to advance her son Yentye-kûtsé to the empire; but she rejected that motion, and, pursuant to the intention of her deceased husband, caused the prince Ilinchipin, second son of Hoshila, then no more than seven years old, to be proclaimed. This new emperor, known in China under the title of Ning-tsung, dying in November, Yen-temûr again proposed to enthrone Yentye-kûtsé; but Pûtasheli would by no means consent to his elevation, declaring that the empire belonged to Towhan-temûr, son of Hoshila, by the princess Maylayti, who was at this time thirteen years of age. After the death of the empress Papûsha he had been banished into Korea, from whence he was removed to Quey-lin Fû, the capital of Quang-si.

Thirteenth,  
Towhan-  
temur, or  
Shun ti.

The emperor of the Song, who was carried into Tartary, and became a lama, had lands in that country, where, it is said, he married a princess, and had children by her. This princess, according to some, was Maylayti; and had by him Towhan-temûr. Prince Hoshila contracted a friendship with the deposed monarch; and having conceived an inclination for Maylayti, married her, and adopted Towhan-temûr. These reports were, without doubt, false; but they were not the less current at court and in the provinces. However this be, the president of the tribunal of mathematics being consulted about his election, declared it very dangerous to make that prince emperor. Notwithstanding all that could be said to the contrary, Pûtasheli, persisting in her resolution, sent a great lord to bring the prince from Quey-lin-fû, and declare him emperor.

Reports of  
him.

In the beginning of the year 1333, the empress, having received advice, that Towhan-temûr had arrived at Lyang-hyang, a city some leagues short of Ta-tû, sent thither the guards, the princes, and grandees, to meet him. Yen-temûr, as generalissimo and prime minister, appeared at their head, and complimented the prince in the name of the empress regent. Afterwards, placing himself by the prince's side, he spoke to him about the state of the court, and manner in which the ceremony of the installation should be performed. Towhan-temûr appeared alarmed

A.D. 1333.  
Afraid of  
Yen-temûr.

at the sight of Yen-temûr ; and did not speak a single word : the lords of his retinue seemed likewise to be under consternation. No wonder the prince should be suspicious of him ; since many believed that he was the person who, by Tûtemûr's direction, had put his father Hoshila to death. However that be, Yen-temûr, mortified at Towhan-temûr's silence, delayed the ceremony of his inauguration ; resolving, if possible, to exclude him from the throne, and place the crown on the head of Yentye-kûtse.

*Marries his daughter.*

The discontent of Yen-temûr gave great uneasiness to the regent, and the prince. This latter, being sensible of the fault he had committed when that lord went out to meet him, endeavoured to repair it, by espousing his daughter Peyaw, and making her his principal wife. Yen-temûr had great qualities ; but he was cruel, and void of decency : he became enamoured of one of the wives of the emperor Yesun-temûr, and had the rashness to marry her ; a thing almost without example. In March he died of his excesses ; and his death secured the empire to Towhan-temûr : who, removing with his court to Shang-tû, the empress regent published the last will of Tûtemûr ; and the grandees agreed to declare the prince emperor.

*Is proclaimed.*

Towhan-temûr, whom the Chinese name Shun-ti, at first left all the power in the hands of the empress Pû-tasheli, and conferred on her the title of empress-grandmother ; but, from that time, resolved to have her removed : and, in order to gain the family of Yen-temûr to his interest, he, in August, caused his wife Peyaw to be declared empress.

*Neglects affairs.*

Towhan-temûr soon discovered his inconstant and wavering temper ; his aversion to state-affairs, and his inclination to pleasure. Alûwhentemûr, the eighth in descent from the emperor Ogotay, perceiving his natural indolence, advised him to leave the toils of government to his ministers ; and, by that pernicious counsel, was the first cause of the destruction of the empire of the Ywen. Towhan-temûr followed his advice, and thought of nothing but gratifying his passions. Satun, eldest brother of Yen-temûr, was honoured with the title of regulo (or vang) as well as Tangkishi, eldest son of Yen-temûr, and brother of the empress Peyaw. Satun and Pe-yen were appointed prime ministers.

**A.D. 1334.**

*Calamities of his reign.*

The history records several presages, in 1334, of the unfortunate reign of Towhan-temûr : that, in the southern provinces, no fewer than two millions two hundred and seventy thousand families died ; and that, in August, there was

was an earthquake at Ta-tû. The Chinese historians, who composed the history of the Ywen, or Mungl race, lived at the beginning of the dynasty of the Ming, who ruined that of the Ywen. These authors have taken great pains to render this emperor odious on all occasions: they have exaggerated his faults; and recorded all the famines, inundations, epidemic distempers, earthquakes, falls of mountains, comets, eclipses, and other events; implying, that Towhan-temûr ought not to have been emperor; and that the Ming justly wrested the empire from the Mungls<sup>i</sup>.

In 1335 Satun, brother of Yen-temûr, died; and that death occasioned the ruin of his illustrious and powerful family. Tangkishi, a prince naturally fiery, and apt to speak his mind, finding all his uncle's places, of which he expected a large share, given to Pe-yen, who thus became the first lord of the court, complained loudly of the injustice done him; and, on this occasion, extolled the services which his ancestors had done the empire. At the same time he deprecated Pe yen, saying, he was too inconsiderable a person to be raised so high; and, in concert with Talyentali, his paternal uncle, took measures for settling on the throne Whang-ho-temûr, son of the rebel prince Siliki, slain in Tartary in the reign of Hû-pi-lay. Talyentali had often refused to obey the orders sent him to come to court. The plot was discovered by a prince of the blood; and Py-yen was commissioned to seize the conspirators. In June Tangkishi concealed a troop of soldiers to the east of Shang-tû, where the court then was; and on the thirtieth of the same month designed to attack the palace on all sides: but Pe-yen prevented him, and seized both him and his brother Targay, who were then in the palace. Tangkishi was killed immediately; but Targay fled, and, trembling, ran to the chamber of the empress his sister, who with tears and lamentations begged his life; but all her solicitation was ineffectual; the lords entered her chamber with their naked swords, and slew him in her presence.

Then Pe-yen went and informed the emperor; who, instead of severely punishing them for daring to enter the chamber of the empress with arms in their hands, consented that Pe-yen should even put her to death. Pursuant to this horrid permission, that bloody minister turned executioner, went directly to the apartment of that princess; who, perceiving that he came to seize her, uttered a loud

A.D. 1335.

Tangkishi's  
conspiracy.<sup>i</sup> Gaubil, Hist. Gentchis, p. 270, & seq.

shriek,

Empress  
put to  
death.

shriek, and fell on her knees before the emperor, intreating him to spare her life. The hard-hearted husband, after reproaching her with the revolt of her uncle and two brothers, told her he could not save her. Pe-yen dragged her away, led her to a house in a neighbouring village, and there slew her with his own hands. Talyentali defended himself with great courage; and, after several fruitless efforts with the lords of his conspiracy, took refuge with prince Whang-ho-temûr; where being taken, and killed, the prince slew himself.

**A.D. 1337.** — In 1337, troubles arose in the provinces of Quang-ton, Honan, Se-chwen, and the province of Koko-nor, where the people appeared discontented with Towhan-temûr, and censured his conduct. The Chinese were forbidden to instruct the Mungls, and to keep arms. Mean time, the emperor declared a princess of Hong-kila empress. In May, a comet appeared, that was visible for sixty-three days.

Machartay, youngest brother of Pe-yen, possessed the good qualities of that minister, without his faults: he was a great general, and esteemed by the troops. The emperor would have given him the title of wang, or regulo, but he constantly declined that honour <sup>x</sup>.

**A.D. 1340.** — **Toto under-takes to seize his uncle.** Toto, son of Machartay, was one of the officers of the guards; and, by his prudent behaviour, soon acquired the esteem of the emperor, as well as the great men at court, with whose intrigues he was thoroughly acquainted: he knew that Towhan-temûr was grown suspicious of his uncle Pe-yen, ever since November 1339; when that lord, under a false pretence, had put to death Che-che-tû, great grandson of Meng-ko, by Yulongtashe, his fourth son. Pe-yen was generally detested: his pride was intolerable: for some time he went abroad with the state of a king; and Toto was one day witness of his pompous train, at a time when that of the emperor was very moderate. The Mungl monarch himself observed it, and was offended. Besides, he believed that Pe-yen meditated ill designs against his person; and Toto certainly knew that To-whan-temûr intended to destroy him.

Toto, who was a lord of parts, having found a favourable opportunity to speak to the emperor, fell on his knees, and said, that he renounced his family to serve his majesty. Towhan-temûr, who believed there was dissimulation in his words, pretended not to understand his mean-

<sup>x</sup> Gaubil, p. 272, & seqq.

ing.

ing. Most of the lords at court were creatures of Pe-yen. Shikyay and Alû were the only persons with whom he durst intrust a secret. These he ordered to sound the fidelity of Toto, whose motions they narrowly inspected; and then acquainted his majesty, that they would answer for his integrity. In consequence of this assurance, Towhan-temûr sent for Toto, and shed tears while he spoke to him of his uncle's behaviour. After this interview, Toto and Shikyay, becoming intimate friends, resolved to seize Pe-yen; and executed their design, with the emperor's approbation, in the following manner.

Toto placed new guards in all the posts, and augmented the number of them; ordering them to give him an exact account of all who either entered or went out. Pe-yen was surprised to see the guard reinforced, without having had notice of it; and, on that occasion, reproved his nephew: who answered boldly, that too good a guard could not be kept in the palace where the emperor resided. Pe-yen, alarmed at this declaration, thought proper to strengthen his own guard; and concluded, that he could not depend on Toto. Pe-yen afterwards acquainted the guards, that he wanted to speak to his majesty: they asked what his business was; and understanding that it was to invite him to a hunting, Toto dissuaded the emperor; so that Pe-yen repeated his instances in vain. Towhan-temûr ordered Yentye-kotse to encamp without the city: at the same time, Pe-yen heard, with astonishment, that Toto and Shi-kyay had caused the city gates to be shut, and kept the keys, after having posted troops, devoted to them, in all the quarters of Tatû. At night those two lords advised the emperor to change his apartment. They ordered Pe-yen to be watched. In February, all the titles and places, which that minister had at court, were taken from him; and he was ordered to set out for Ho-nan, there to exercise the office of a mandarin: he begged leave to salute the emperor before he set out, but this favour was refused; and, when he was on the road, a second order overtook him, to inform him that he was banished. He continued his journey; but fell sick near Nan-chang-fû, capital of Kyang-si, where he died, universally hated.

Upon this change, Toto, and his father Machartay, *Affairs at court.* were invested with new employments; but the latter still refused the title of vang, and even that of targhan, or tarkan, which implies an exemption from imposts and service. In June, Towhan-temûr being at Shang-tû, caused a manifesto to be published through the empire; wherein he

he published all that the emperor Tûtemûr and the empress Pûtasheli had done against Hoshila and the empress Papûsha ; he complained bitterly, that they had exiled him, without having committed any offence ; and endeavoured to make him pass for the son of another person than Hoshila : he afterwards deprived Putasheli of the title of empress-grandmother, and banished her ; which treatment she did not long survive. Prince Yentye-kotsé was ordered to depart for Korea ; he set out accordingly, but was killed on the way. In August, Towhan-temûr returned to Ta-tû ; and in December re-established the examination of the literati<sup>1</sup>.

**A.D. 1342.** In 1342, the famine was so great, that the people devoured human flesh.

**A.D. 1343.** *Histories finished.* Hû-pi-lay, at the beginning of his reign, commanded the memoirs for the history of the Lyau and Kin to be arranged : he likewise, after the destruction of the Song dynasty, gave directions to compile the history of the Song ; but, notwithstanding the orders of this prince, and his successors, those histories were not finished. In 1343, Toto, son of Macharty ; Timûrtash, son of Toto, prince of Kangli ; Ghew-yang-swen, historian of the empire ; Chang-ki-yen, Lu-tse-cheng, Kye-hi-tse, and other able doctors, were appointed for this great work ; which was at length completed, under Towhan-temûr, each dynasty having its history apart.

*Ancestors honoured.* In October, the emperor Towhan-temûr went to the palace of ancestors, to honour the princes of his family.

**A.D. 1344.** *Toto made wang.* In May 1344, Toto was honoured with the title of régulo ; and Alfitû, the fourth descendant from Po-eul-chûr or Porji, one of Jenghiz Khân's four heroes, proposed by him to fill his place of minister.

**A.D. 1346.** *His father banished.* In 1346, Perku-pûwha, son of the minister A-û-tay, slain by order of the emperor Hayshan, having lodged an accusation against the great general Machartay ; Towhan-temûr banished that officer to Si-ning, a city of Shen-fî, at the end of the great wall ; and Toto, having in vain endeavoured to avoid the blow, followed his father. The general being, by a second order, exiled to Sa-se, in the West, a lord of the country of Tûrfân, a great mandarin, exclaimed against those who thus ill-treated a great lord of merit, innocent of the crime laid to his charge. In consequence of his remonstrances, Machartay was ordered to reside at Kan-chew, in Shen-fî, where he soon after

<sup>1</sup> Gaubil, p. 276, & seqq.

died : but the world did him justice ; every body was persuaded of Perku-pu-wha's malice, Machartay's virtue, and the emperor's weakness.

In 1349, Tay-ping, a lord of great wisdom, moderation, and integrity, was at the head of affairs ; and, as he could not bear to see innocence oppressed, he, in spite of the difficulties which lay in the way, demanded, and obtained the recall of Toto. This prince, on his return, was restored to his place of minister ; and not knowing that he owed his good fortune to Tay-ping, who made no mention to him of the service he had done him, joined with that lord's enemies in an accusation against him. Tay-ping was hereupon turned out of place ; and his accusers were going to push their malice farther, when Toto's mother threatened to renounce him if he did not desist ; telling him, that Tay-ping was not culpable, and that he had done him no injury. Toto, who loved his mother tenderly, and did not care to give her any uneasiness, ceased to prosecute that lord. Some time after, Toto came to know the obligations which he had to Tay-ping, and was extremely sorry that he had done so much injury to his benefactor.

Towhan-temûr being desirous that his son should learn the Chinese characters and literature, Toto, being well skilled in both, was pitched on to direct the education of the young prince ; and Li-hau-wen was appointed his preceptor. Some lamas were, at the same time, chosen to instruct the prince in the doctrine and books of Fo. Li-hau-wen took much pains with his pupil : he made an abridgment of the Chinese history to his own time, and of the classic books ; with reflections on the causes of the ruin of dynasties, and other remarks, in the Chinese taste, proper to form a prince for government. But his scholar had no inclination for the sciences, and was much taken with the worship of Fo.

Ama and Swe-fwe, two brothers, natives of the country of Kangli, were at this time very powerful at court ; and though remarkable for their irregular life, had free access to the palace of the empress Ki, which they greatly frequented. The censors of the empire, and the Chinese grandees, exclaimed against such liberties ; and two of them made their complaints to the emperor. Ama, upon this occasion, by artful stories, excited the resentment of the empress ; who complained to Towhan-temûr, requiring that he would punish the two mandarins as calumniators, who endeavoured to stain her reputation. The emperor,

A.D. 1349.

Remarkable case.

The prince  
averse to  
Chinese  
learning.Arbitrary  
proceeding.

emperor, enraged at what he had heard, banished the mandarins, one of whom died in the place of his exile. This conduct appeared tyrannical to the Chinese, since the mandarins had done no more than their duty. Ama, who, besides many other bad qualities, was excessively lewd, appeared to be the person who contributed most to corrupt the emperor, whom they saw devoted to the most enormous debaucheries, entirely neglecting affairs of government, and placing all his confidence in men of disolute morals, without either honour or capacity.

A.D. 1351.

In 1351, the resolutions taken with regard to a new course proposed to be given the Whang-ho, or Yellow River, considerably augmented the troubles of the empire. Kya-lû, supported by Toto, had persuaded the emperor to make that river flow, as formerly, through the country of Tay-ming-fû, in Pe-che-li, and fall into the sea of Tyentsin-wey. Mean time Cheng-tsun, president of the tribunal of public works, with the mathematicians of Kay-fong-fû, in Honan, went to Tay-ming-fû, and other places in Pe-che-li, to examine the ground; and after having taken the level of it, affirmed, that to clear the old channel was impracticable; that it would require too great an expence; and that Shan-tong would be ruined. All sorts of means were tried to prevail with the president to change his opinion; but he answered, that he would rather die than speak contrary to his judgment in a matter of so much importance to the public. Cheng-tsun was hereupon dismissed, and his place given to Kya-lû, whose advice was followed; and to the titles of his patron<sup>m</sup> Toto, was added that of targhan.

*The Whang-ho project causes insurrections.*

The works which were made for turning the Whang-ho ruined an infinite number of people, and caused new taxes to be imposed; while the peasants could not bear to see their lands taken away, and themselves transplanted into other parts. The discontent becoming general, different chiefs of parties in every province inflamed the people; so that the mandarins were greatly embarrassed.

*Han-shan-tong and Liyw-fû-tong rebel.*

Han-shan-tong, who had been banished into Shan-tong, taking advantage of the people's discontent, prevailed on great numbers to rebel, in Shan-tong, Honan, and Kyang-nan. His followers asserted that he was a descendent of Whey-tsung, eighth emperor of the Song; and took an oath to obey him, sacrificing a horse and a black ox. The mandarins found means to seize Han-shan-tong; but his

<sup>m</sup> Gaubil, p. 284, & seqq.

wife and children escaped. Lyew-fû-tong also, a man of an enterprizing genius, who supported Han-shan-tong, appeared in the field, near Fong-yang-fû, in Kyang-nan. He was presently joined by one hundred thousand men, and fortified himself in the districts of Nan-yang-fû and Ju-ning-fû, in Honan. At the same juncture a pirate, named Fang-que-chen, scoured the coasts of Che-kyang and Kyang-nan, with a great fleet, entered the rivers, plundered the towns and villages, and ruined trade. The armies sent first against Fang-que-chen were destroyed, and their generals taken prisoners.

The emperor having, on his return from Ta-tû in August, ordered Yesyen-temûr, brother of Toto, to assemble the troops, and march against Lyew-fû-tong, that general retook several places in Honan, and put to death some rebels; but in reality Lyew-fû-tong's party grew in strength. In October Tsu-chew-whey took arms in Hu-quang, and caused himself to be proclaimed emperor at Ki-shu-i, in the district of Hong-chew-fu. In November a comet appeared, whose tail pointed towards the west; on which occasion it was industriously reported throughout the empire, that heaven, by several visible marks, made known, that it would take the empire from Towhan-temûr.

In 1352 Tsu-chew-whey took Han-yang and Vu-chang in Hu-quang. Having seized other posts of importance, he caused a fleet to be fitted out, and undertook the siege of Kyew-kyang-fu, on the Grand Kyang. Whether through treachery, cowardice, or disgust with Towhan-temûr's service, a great number of Tatar mandarins in Hu-quang and Kyang-si fled at the approach of the Chinese; and Polotemûr, general of a great body of troops which encamped along the Kyang, abandoned his post, with his Mungls, who dispersed merely for fear of Tsu-chew-whey. On this occasion Li-fu, a Chinese grandee of Fong-yang-fu in Kyang-nan, set the Mungls a noble example of fidelity to their sovereign: he sent couriers to all the neighbouring villages, to cut off the retreat of Polotemûr's forces, and oblige them to do their duty. Yesyen-temûr, a Tatar officer, seconded Li-fu; and having joined their troops, defeated a detachment of Tsu-chew-whey's army, consisting of twenty-thousand men. Li-fu afterwards ordered a great number of trees to be cut down, and to be thrown, tied together, into the Kyang, to hinder the passage of the rebel fleet; which, coming down the river soon after in full sail, met with this unexpected obstacle;

Tsu-chew-  
whey  
proclaimed  
emperor.

A.D. 1352.

so that they could neither approach Kyew-kyang-fu, nor escape the fiery arrows, which, shot by Li-fu's troops, burnt several barks<sup>n</sup>.

*Glorious behaviour.* While Li-fu was so zealously employed to serve Towhan-temûr, the general Tukyen-puwha fled out of the city by the north gate. Most of the Tatar officers followed his pernicious example; and the army of Tsu-chew-whey were preparing to enter Kyew-kyang-fu. In this emergency, Li-fu assembling what troops remained faithful, with one of his nephews, who was always near him, mounted the ramparts, to prevent any surprize. The enemy first burnt the west gate; then came to attack the eastern; and in spite of all Li-fu's efforts, entered the city. That brave man still defended himself in the streets on horseback; but wanting forces, he called out aloud, "Kill me, but spare the inhabitants!" at these words he and his nephew were cut to pieces. The citizens lamented his death; and Towhan-temûr conferred great titles of honour on him. Li-fu was one of the principal mandarins of Kyew-kyang-fu, and the annals of that city have ranked him among the most illustrious of its governors.

*Public calamities.*

*Rebels successful.*

At the beginning of the year nine hundred thousand souls perished by famine and sickness; and in the course of it the shocks of an earthquake were felt at Long-si, for one hundred days successively. His majesty, about the same time, heard with great concern of the death of general Tay-puwha, who was slain by the troops of Fan-que-chen, on the coast of Che-kyang. Having being led by a relation of that pirate into the snare without suspicion; when he perceived that he was betrayed, he flew the traitor, with others whom he distrusted; and then being surrounded on all sides, was killed himself, after a brave resistance. Mean time the army of the rebel Lyew-fû-tong dispersed that of Tsyen-temûr, brother of Toto; who abandoned the open country to the enemy, and shamefully fled to Kay-fong-fu, capital of Honan.

*Toto's injustice*

The emperor sent another general in his stead; and was heard to say, that Tsyen-temûr did not understand the business of war: but several great mandarins accused him of having destroyed an army, and, by his cowardice, dishonoured the empire of the Mungls. Towha-temûr, instead of making an example of this delinquent, intrusted the examination of the affair to Toto, who behaved very ill on this occasion; for he not only defended his brother, but

<sup>n</sup> Gaubil, ubi supra, p. 285, & seqq.

even stigmatized and displaced several mandarins who had accused Yefyen-temûr.

The court was greatly alarmed at the reduction of Hang-chew-Fû, capital of Che-kyang, in July, by the troops of Tsu-chew-whey. Towhan-temûr, fearing the loss of the southern provinces, sent a great army under the command of Kyau-wha and Tong-po-syau. This commander having crossed the great Kyang, demanded the advice of the other general officers. Tong-po-syau said, that, as the rebels were deeply plunged in all sorts of debaucheries in so rich and delightful a city, they could not be in a condition to resist; from whence he concluded, that they ought to go and attack Hang-chew Fû. After much debate, this advice was followed, and the city was assaulted with great resolution. On the other hand, the rebels often sallied, and fought seven bloody battles: but, after a cruel slaughter of them, the city was taken. This great check much weakened the party of Tsu-chew-whey, who lost many excellent officers, and above forty thousand men. In the enemy's army they found many magicians, bonzas of the sect of Tau, whom they put to death, and burned their books of magic\*.

In August, Toto obtained leave to go in person and besiege Tsu-chew, possessed by the troops of Lyew-fû-tong. He attacked the city by the west gate; and the besieged made a furious sally; but, being repulsed, Tsu-chew was taken and ruined. The minister was hereupon rewarded, and ordered to return to court immediately.

General Arslân, who commanded the Mungls in Kyang-fî, being much beloved by the Myau-tse (K), hearing of Tsu-chew-whey's revolt, enlisted fifty thousand of those mountaineers, and marched with them to Lû-chew, a city of Kyang-nan: but this being an odious measure, they were dismissed, upon the remonstrance of Yu-que, who had orders to command the troops in that province. This mandarin fortified Gan-king on the Kyang; and maintained his ground in the midst of the rebels: for at that time most of the province of Kyang-fî was in the hands of Tsu-chew-whey's party. On the other hand, the general Sing-ki, having re-assembled the troops, reduced Kyew-kyang and Hû-kew. He then marched to attack

*The rebels  
worsted  
on two  
occasions.*

\* Gaubil, ubi sup. p. 288, & seq.

(K) A sort of wild and independent people, who possess the mountainous parts of seve-

*take their general.* the rebels, who plundered all the places along the rivers; but, being surrounded, and mortally wounded by an arrow, he was taken.

*A.D. 1353.* *Ama made minister:* Toto, who was under obligations to Ama, being become prime minister, brought that lord into the management of affairs, and procured his being appointed one of the ministers of state. Ama, supported by the empress Ki, by degrees made himself independent of Toto, and entirely corrupted Towhan-temûr. He brought into the palace several young debauchees, and lamas of Tibet, whose hearts were corrupt, and whose minds were poisoned with superstition. They persuaded the emperor, that he should be loaded with happiness, if he would but practise their art of sorcery, which is called by them Yensher and Pimi. This unfortunate prince, insensible to the evils of the state, and ruin of his dynasty, thought of nothing but perfecting himself in the art which the lamas taught him. It grieved all the Tartars and Chinese, who had any zeal for the empire, to see that all sorts of debaucheries were committed by him in the palace, in company with Ama, and his brother Swe-swe, Tolo-temûr, his brother-in-law, and several other lords, besides the lamas. Ayyewshilitata, son of the emperor, and empress Ki, never would give into the debauches of his father, and did all in his power to drive the lamas from the court; but his attempts were fruitless.

*A.D. 1354.* *who is banished.* In December 1354, Ama impeached Toto of having mismanaged the war, and converted the revenues of the empire to his own use. His brother Yesyen-temûr was at the same time accused of being a debauchee. At this juncture Ama was absolute master of the emperor's will; so that, to destroy a man, it was sufficient that this minister should accuse him, without proving the charge. They began by depriving Toto of his titles; then he and his brother were removed at a distance from court.

*The emperor's effeminacy.* Mean while the emperor employed himself in nothing but entertainments, parties of pleasure, and new ways of gratifying his passions. Sixteen young girls, called the sixteen celestial spirits, were appointed for the dance; other persons were continually employed in prayers and sacrifices to Fo; others, to discover future events, by sorcery; others, to sing, and play on music: such were the affairs of importance that engrossed the time and attention of To-whan-temûr.

*A.D. 1355.* At the beginning of the year 1355, a body of rebels, from Honan, crossed the Whang-ho; and, in February, Lyew-

Lyew-fû-tong caused Han-lin-eul, son of the rebel Han-shan-tong, to be proclaimed emperor. This new usurper appointed ministers and generals: he gave to his dynasty the title of Song, and fixed his court at Po-chew, a city in Honan.

Han-lin-eul proclaimed.

Toto, upon his disgrace, was first appointed one of the mandarins of Whay-ngan Fû in Kyang-nan, and afterwards of Etsina (L): but this being represented as too slight a punishment for his crimes, his goods were confiscated, and he was banished to Yun-nan. Ama, not content with this humiliation, counterfeited an order from the emperor, for killing him as soon as he arrived in that province. This order was sent to an officer of the army, who, instead of killing the banished minister, treated him with honour and distinction: but this indulgence did not continue long; for the officer, having proposed one of his daughters in marriage, and Toto refusing the offer, he caused him to be slain, in the forty-second year of his age. *Toto slain.*

To return to the civil wars. The general Tashepa-tû, arriving, in October, at Huy-chew in Honan, obtained a great victory over Lyew-fû-tong: but although this rebel was defeated a second time by another Tatar, yet he always retrieved his losses; and still found himself in a condition to undertake new designs. The emperor, having ordered a great council of war to be held in July, to consider of means for security of the provinces attacked by the rebels, a great mandarin seized the occasion to admonish him: he said, that those measures were unavailing, while his majesty continued to live in disorder, and without attending to the affairs of government; adding, that he ought to begin by looking into the state of the court, and of the empire, with his own eyes. "In the provinces (said he), the officers and mandarins think of nothing but pleasure, money, and good cheer; and, after the example of the prince, appear insensible to the loss of cities and *but in vain.*" The discourse of the mandarin was commend-

The emperor admonished;

(L) A city of Tartary, now in ruins, to the north of Kan-chew, in Shen-si.

ed: but Towhan-temûr never thought of mending his conduct; and left to others the care of reforming the mandarins.

*Rise of  
Chû.*

It was in the year 1355 that Tay-tsu (M) raised troops in the city of Hau (N): his intention was, to give peace to the world, and relief to the people. With this view, he selected men of virtue and courage: at the head of whom he reduced Tû-chew, a city of Kyang-na; and, the next year, took Ho-chew, where he gave evident marks of his love for the people, his greatness of soul, and his knowledge in the art of government. He was entirely at a loss how to pass the Great Kyang, for want of barks, when an unexpected succour of ten thousand men, and a thousand vessels, came to his assistance. On board of these Chû embarked, with his best officers; and, marching eastward, reduced Nyew-chû-ki and Tay-ping.

A.D. 1356

*Ama's plot  
discovered.*

Ama, who, since the banishment of Toto, was prime minister, was shocked at the melancholy state to which the empire was reduced; and ashamed to see that he himself had been the principal cause of it, by debauching the emperor's mind, and diverting him from affairs of government. Night and day he was harassed by uneasy reflections; and he thought seriously how to remove the evils which he had introduced. He judged that the best way would be, to oblige Towhan-temûr to resign the throne to the prince appointed heir; by whom, and the empress Ki his mother, he was sure to be supported in his design: but, as he stood in need of other helps, he consulted his father; and, praising the talents of the prince, assured him, that the emperor was become stupid, and incapable of governing<sup>p</sup>.

*Banished,  
and slain.*

This discourse happened to be overheard by Ama's sister, who was married to Tolo Temûr, a companion of the emperor in his debauches; and she informed her husband of what passed. This lord was sensible that he was hated by the prince, who did not love debauchery; and, judging that he had reason to fear his displeasure, in case he should become emperor, discovered to To-wan-temûr, the design

<sup>p</sup> Gaubil. ubi sup. p. 293. & seqq.

(M) This is the famous Chinese who afterwards assumed the name of Hong-vû, and founded the dynasty of the Ming, or Tayming; to whom the Chinese give the title of Tay-tsu.

(N) Now Fong-yong-fû in Kyang-nan; of whose district was Chû, or Hong-vû, and most of the generals who at first associated with him. Gaubil,

of

of his minister. The emperor, piqued with what Ama had said of his stupidity, was inclined to put both him and his brother Swe-fwe to death that instant: but, as both had been companions in his debauches, and their mother had nursed the emperor Ilinchipan, he changed his resolution, and was content to forbid them the palace. Shō-se-kyon, one of the ministers, was afterwards ordered to prosecute them; and, on the repeated accusations of the great men, they were sentenced to be banished. They set out accordingly, but were killed on the road. Every body believed that Ama had been destroyed for putting Toto to death; and few people knew the real cause of his misfortune.

In March, Chū defeated the Mung's near Nan-king capital of Kyang-nan, and took that city, into which he made his entry: but he hurt no individual. He continued the mandarins in their employments, and relieved the distresses of the poor. With regard to the other chiefs who were in arms, the rebels had been now five years besieging the city of Whay-gan-fū in Kyang-nan, defended by Chū-puwha the governor, with equal courage and perseverance.

After the inhabitants and garrison had eaten all the animals, vermin, and leather, to be found in the city, they were reduced to kill those wretches, who fell down through weakness in the streets, and feed on their own flesh. At length Whay-gan-fū, which, before the siege was very populous, surrendered, for want of inhabitants to defend it. Chū-puwha was taken, with his son Pain-ko, fighting to secure the western gate, and both were cut to pieces.

Meantime Chū made great advances in Kyang-nan, and, among other cities, took Chang-chew-fū and Yang-chew-fū; while the rebels of Tsu-chew-whey's party seized, this year, the capital of Se-chwen, and became very powerful in that province.

The general Yū-que was exceedingly fortified in Gang-king; and had placed good troops in the posts which are on the two banks of the Great Kyang, in the part where that river passes between the mountains Syakū, in the district of Syew-fong-hyen in Kyang-nan. However, Chen-yew-lyang, the general of Tsu-chew-whey, attacked these important posts; and, fighting four days continually both by land and water, made himself master of them, in spite of the vigorous resistance of the commander. The passage of the Kyang being thus opened, the rebel general laid siege to Gang-king. Yū-que repulsed him at first; but the rebels, who were encamped at Jau-chew-fū

chew-fū in Kyang-si, attached the west gate, while Yew-lyang assaulted that of the east ; and both parties had actually scaled the walls, when Yū-que, at the head of the townsmen, who were willing to hazard their lives, charged them furiously, slew a great number of them, and obliged the rest to give way. Nevertheless, the rebels returned to the charge with more fury than before ; so that there was a great slaughter on both sides.

A.D. 1358.

In January 1358 the body of rebels which was at Chi-chew-fū in Kyang-nan attacked the east gate ; that of the south was undertaken by the troops come from Jau-chow-fū, and Yew-lyang assaulted that of the west ; while the enemies fleet covered the Great Kyang. Yū-que, invested thus on all sides, after placing officers in their respective posts, at the head of his bravest soldiers, attacked the enemy, of whom he made a great slaughter : but, while he fought with incredible ardour, the rebels forced the three gates, and took the city. Yū-que, perceiving this misfortune by the fires which were lighted on the occasion, and having already received ten wounds, fell on his own sword. His wife, sons, and daughters, threw themselves headlong into a well : the officers of the garrison likewise slew themselves, rather than surrender ; and a considerable part of the inhabitants chose rather to cast themselves into the fire, than be subject to the rebels. Yū-que was highly esteemed and beloved : his tomb is still be seen at Gang-kin. He was born at Lu-chew in Kyang-nan ; but was originally of the country of Tan-gu<sup>9</sup>.

*Rebels  
plunder  
Shan-  
tong.*

*Take the  
capital.*

In March one of the generals of the Song rebels spread a great alarm, by the reduction of Tsī-nan-fū, capital of Shan-tong. The Tatar commander of Tong-chang-fū in the same province abandoned both the city and country. About the same time Mau-quey, one of the best Song officers, came from Ho-kyen-fū ; and, joining with him who had taken Tsī-nan-chew and Tsī-nan-fu, the rebels plundered Shan-tong, and the country about Ta-tū. The first detachment of the Song attacked an important post near that imperial city, whose commander was slain ; and, the rest of the Song troops arriving, the court was in great apprehensions. Several of the grandees advised the emperor to retire. The minister Tay-ping opposed that advice, and called in troops on all sides. Lyew Karapuwha attacked the enemy some few leagues from the

<sup>9</sup> Gaubil, Hist. Gentel. p. 296, & seqq.

city; and, defeating them, constrained Mau-quey, who commanded them, to retire back to Tsî-nan-fû.

Meantime Chû made great progress in the southern provinces. In December, at the head one hundred thousand men, he took U-chew; and, assembling his generals, it was determined to abstain from slaughter and pillage. While this adventurer took the wisest measures to maintain his footing in the south, Quan-syen-feng, one of the Song generals, penetrated into Lyau-tong, plundered Lyau-yang, and then marched into Korea. On his return from that country, he attacked Shang-tû, which he took, and burnt that beautiful city, with the magnificent palace which the emperor Hû-pi-lay had built.

Peyen-puwha Tekîn, an Igûr prince, descended from Itûgû (or Idikût) spoken of in the reign of Jenghiz Khân, in the year 1358, commanded at Ku-chew-fu, a considerable city of Che-kyang. When this prince, who was brave and experienced, knew that Sin-chew in Kyang-fî, was besieged, he advanced to succour that place. At his approach, Ta-shing-nû, a prince of the blood, and general Hay-lû-ting, a foreigner from the west, surrendered to him the command. He then entered the city with his troops, in spite of Chen-yew-lyang, who lay before it; and, having visited all the posts, took an oath to defend it to the last extremity. Without entering into a detail of the assaults that were sustained, and the fallies which were made, suffice it to say, the adverse parties were continually fighting; and Pûwha Tekîn, with the other officers, exhibited repeated proofs of extraordinary valour. At length, provisions failing, the inhabitants fed on human flesh: at the same time one of the rebels made his way into the city by a subterranean passage. Ten days together both parties fought with great obstinacy; but for want of soldiers and provisions, the place was taken in June 1359; when the commanders and officers, chose rather to die than surrender.<sup>r</sup>

A.D. 1359.

*Sin-chew  
taken by  
Yew-  
yang.*

Meantime Peyen Temûr, president of the tribunal of war, and Tashe Temûr, general in Che-kyang, arrived at Hang-chew-fû, capital of that province; and, having provided great quantities of rice, sent it up the Whang-ho into Ho-nan, where it was conveyed by land to the river Wey: by which it arrived safely at Tong-chew, and from thence at Tatû. As the scarcity of provisions had, for

<sup>r</sup> Gaubil, ubi sup. p. 299, & seqq.

*Yew-  
lyang's  
success*

several years before, occasioned great famines in the imperial city, this relief came very opportunely.

However, the joy which this supply produced was damped by the loss of Nan-chang-fû, capital of Kyang-fî, taken by Chen-yew-lyang. As soon as the news reached Tsû-chew-whey, the rebel emperor of the Song, he embarked on the Great Kyang for that city, where he resolved to keep his court. But his general, who had other designs in view, being determined to prevent him, hastened to Kyew-kyang-fû in the same province; and, having ordered the gates to be shut, slew those who were about Tsu-chew-whey, whom he afterwards kept as a prisoner leaving him nothing but the title of emperor.

*Disfrac-  
tions at  
court,  
caused by  
the prince.*

The ambition of Ayyewshilitata, the prince appointed heir, caused great disquiets this year at the court of the emperor Towhan-temûr. The prince took a great deal of pains to prevail upon his father to renounce the empire; and this was the view also of his mother the empress Ki, who left no stone unturned to gain the minister Tay-ping, without whose concurrence this aim could not be accomplished. But all her efforts were ineffectual. The minister kept aloof. The prince incensed at this reserve, endeavoured to ruin Tay-ping and other lords, by the way of accusation: but the grandees interested themselves so warmly in defence of the minister, that he found it impossible to remove him from his office.

*The minis-  
ter retires.* One of the principal ministers was Nyew-ti-hay, descended from Porchû, and who had governed both the eastern and western Tartary. He was Tay-ping's intimate friend; and it was he who supported that minister against the attacks of the prince, and the empress Ki. Niew-ti-hay fell sick; and, finding himself near his end, at the beginning of the year 1360, spoke in praise of Tay-ping; and told his friends, that ministers could not continue long at court. He died much regretted by the emperor, and the grandees who had at heart the honour of their sovereign. Tay-ping, seeing himself now without a prop, and every day exposed to the intrigues of his enemies, retired to his own house. Thus Towhan-temûr lost his best servants; and all the authority fell into the hands of two miscreants: one an eunuch named Pû-pûwha; the other a great lord of Que-lye, called Sho-fe-kyen. They never thought of retrieving what was lost; but kept the emperor in ignorance of every thing that passed, and employed their whole attention in amassing riches.

*A.D. 1360.*

*Two mis-  
creants  
succeed.*

Chen-

Chen-yew-lyang, general of the rebel emperor Tsū-chew-whey, having deprived his master of all his authority, caused him to be killed, and assumed the title of emperor; giving the name of Han to his new dynasty. Meantime fresh feuds daily arose among the Mungls. Chahan-temûr, governor of Honan, having recovered from the rebels a considerable part of Shen-si, pretended that those conquests ought to constitute a part of his government: on the other hand, Polo-temûr, general of the troops at Tay-tong-fû in Shan-si, alledged that Shen-si was in his department. These were the only two generals capable of re-establishing the affairs of the empire; but their disputes produced an irreconcilable hatred between their families. The emperor undertook to settle the limits of their jurisdictions: but Polo-temûr thought himself injured, and took up arms against Chahan: his majesty afterwards satisfied Polo, and disengaged Chahan, who, in his turn, made war upon Polo: so that both parties had armies in the field to oppose each other. The prince inheritor at length brought about an accommodation; but it was far from being sincere.

*New distractions.*

In August 1361, Chahan-temûr retook Tsī-nan-fû, capital of Shan-tong, with the greater part of that country. At the same time Chū wrested Kyew-kyang-fû, and Nanchang-fû, in Kyang-si, out of the hands of Chen-yew-lyang.

A.D. 1361

The emperor Towhan-temûr having often sent officers into Tartary, to desire the princes of his family to send their troops to his assistance Alûwen-temûr, eighth grandson of Ogotay, by Myeli, came at length with a formidable army. When this prince was some days march from the great wall, he sent a messenger to let Towhan-temûr know, that he came to recover the empire, which he (the emperor) held by usurpation; and required that he would surrender to him all his right and title. Thus, Towhan-temûr, instead of receiving aid against his old enemies, found himself obliged to send an army against this new adversary; but his forces were defeated, and forced to retire to Shang-tû. Alûwen-temûr, encouraged by this success, proposed to enter Pe-che-li; and was already in the neighbourhood of Shang-tû, when the prince inheritor marched to meet him. The officers of Alûwen-temûr, who certainly imagined they came to succour the emperor, delivered their general to the prince, by whose order he was slain in September<sup>s</sup>.

*A Mungl rebel.*

*delivered up.*

<sup>s</sup> Gaubil, ubi sup. p. 301, & seqq.

*Now rebel  
emperor.*

Ming-yu-chen, general of Tsu-chew-whey, who had subdued the province of Yun-nan, being informed that Chen-yew-lyang was proclaimed emperor, was resolved also to be independent; and, proceeding to make conquests on his own account, took several places in Se-chwen, and the western parts of Shen-si.

*Chahan-  
temûr slain.*

In June, while Chahan-temûr was besieging I-tû in Shan-tong, Tyen-fong proposed that he should visit the imperial camp. Chahan followed his advice; but when he had entered the traitor's tent, an officer ran him through with his sword. Koko-temûr, his nephew, but son by adoption, having succeeded him in his titles and dignities, swore to revenge his father's death. By a passage which he caused to be made under-ground, he entered I-tû; then seizing the principal rebels, particularly Tyen-fong, and the assassin who had murdered his father, he sacrificed them to his manes. The emperor, by the death of that illustrious general, suffered a very great loss, for he was the best officer in the whole empire.

*Affairs of  
Korea.*

It has been observed before, that the empress Ki, mother of the prince inheritor, was a Korean, and had a great ascendant over the mind of Towhan-temûr. This emperor degraded Peyen-temûr, king of Korea, named another, and declared a lord of Ki's family prince inheritor of that monarchy; but the Koreans gave Towhan-temûr to understand, that they could neither suffer these new impositions, nor the memory of the old king to be defamed. The empress Ki caused their memorial to be rejected, and a general to march into Korea with forces to execute the emperor's orders. The general, being arrived with ten thousand Mungls near the river Ya-lû, within the borders of that country, was surrounded by an army of Koreans, who cut them all to pieces, excepting seventeen horse, who rode full speed to carry home intelligence of this misfortune.

*A.D. 1363.*

*The Hya  
dynasty.*

In January, 1363, Ming-yu-chen took the name of emperor at Ching-tû-fû, capital of Se-chwen, and gave his dynasty the title of Hya. Mean time Lyew-fû-tong, who had made so great a noise, and was the soul of the Song, was killed in Kyang-nan. The animosities between Koko-temûr and Polo-temûr every day increased: each party raised troops to oppose the other; and these domestic quarrels did more hurt to Towhan-temûr than the revolt of the Chinese.

The most formidable enemy Chû had to deal with in the south was Chen-yew-lyang, styled emperor of the Han;

Han; who being sensibly grieved for the loss of Nan-chang-fu in Kyang-si, exhausted his coffers to raise new forces, and equip a fleet, with a resolution to besiege that city, which was furnished with a good garrison, commanded by Chû-ven-cheng, one of the best generals belonging to Chû. He caused bucklers to be made for the defence of his soldiers against arrows and stones. Then he undertook the siege, when he commanded in person, and, having given several assaults, at length mounted the walls, from whence he shouted for joy, concluding that he was already master of the city; but he was much surprised to see new entrenchments within, very strongly fortified, and consequently that he had new fatigues to undergo.

Mean time Chau-te-sheng, one of Chû-ven-cheng's lieutenants, found a convenience of sending expresses to inform Chû of the danger they were in. On this notice Chû, without delay, caused a fleet to be fitted out at Nanking, in which he embarked two hundred thousand soldiers, commanded by his best officers, and put himself at their head. Then setting sail, soon arrived with his forces at Hû-kew. As soon as Chen-yew-lyang was informed of his enemy's approach, he raised the siege of Nan-chang-fû, which for eighty-five days he had closely invested; and gave orders to go and attack Chû, whose armament he encountered in the lake Po-yang, near the mountain Kan-lan, on the 14th of September. Chû, having divided his naval force into twelve squadrons, Su-ta, Chang-yu-chun, and other of his commanders, attacked and routed the first troops of Chen-yew-lyang, who began to fear the consequences of this first defeat. Next day all the squadrons united, in order to come to a general engagement. During the battle, Chû took advantage of a high north-east wind, and burnt one hundred of the enemy's ships, in which several of Yew-lyang's brothers perished.

*Yew-lyang  
defeated by  
Chû.*

On the 17th Yew-lyang attacked Chû with fresh fury; *Routed and slain.* but after the fight had continued from seven in the morning to eleven o'clock, he was defeated; and his loss was so great, that his insupportable pride was confounded at the sight of his army. One of his generals attempted to seize the post of the mountain Hyay; but Chû ordered him to be surrounded, so that he could not retire. The same night his fleet cast anchor at Tfo-li, and continued three days facing that of Yew-lyang, who, on the 18th of October, resolving to break through his enemies at any risque, made an attempt; but Chû prevented his design, and

and attacked him on all sides from five to seven in the evening. The battle was fought with equal obstinacy on both sides; at length, Yew-lyang having been killed with an arrow, his fleet dispersed. The son, whom he had appointed his heir, was taken prisoner, and his generals, with their troops, their horses, and barks, surrendered to the victor. However, Chang-ting-pyen, one of his generals, escaped by night in a small bark, with the corpse of Yew-lyang, and one of his sons, named Chen-li. This famous victory did great honour to Chû, who not only gained a rich booty, but became considerably more powerful by the accession of so many forces.

*New troubles arise.*

Yew-lyang was one of the greatest captains of his time, and forty-four years old when he died; but his death was of small advantage to the Mungls, whose affairs grew daily worse. A Chinese grandee, abusing the weakness of their power in the south, assumed the sovereignty in Sû-chew-fû, a great and rich city of Kyang-nan, refusing to let the imperial commissioners have the provisions which they wanted to send from thence to the court. On the other hand Polotemûr, notwithstanding the emperor's commands, entered with his troops into the district of Koko-temûr; but his army was routed, and two of his best generals were taken prisoners. Meantime the prince inheritor, who could never forgive Tay-ping for having dissuaded his father from resigning the empire, instigated Sho-se-kyen to accuse him. That minister, who was void of honour, undertook the iniquitous task in November, and Tay-ping was banished into Tibet; but the prince caused him to be slain on the road<sup>t</sup>.

A.D. 1364.

*Chû proclaimed king.*

In January, 1364, the generals of Chû proposed to proclaim him emperor; but he declined this step, and at first was content with the title of king of U. In this quality he appointed Li-shen-chong and Suta his prime ministers and generals: he afterwards named other officers; and, having assembled the grandees, spoke to this effect: "You ought to consider, that I have not accepted the title of king, but on condition to endeavour to make the Chinese happy; and that it was necessary, in the beginning of my reign, to agree upon good laws, in which point the Mungls had been wanting. With regard to the rites and ceremonies used in religion, I am of opinion, that, in the first place, each of us ought to think seriously

<sup>t</sup> Gaubil, ubi supra, p. 304. & seqq.

of reforming his own heart." He added, " As you have been my dear companions, assist me; have nothing else in view; think only of beginning well."

In February that prince began his march, in order to continue in person the siege of Vū-chang-fū, capital of Hū-quang. The city was taken, and Chen-li, who had succeeded his father Chen-yew-lyang, surrendered, with the officers of his party. Chū gave orders to relieve the distressed, encourage merit, and abstain from plunder and bloodshed. This wise conduct procured him an easy conquest both of Kyang-si and Hū-quang. The Chinese submitted to him in crouds, and were proud to see a prince so generous, and moderate in his passions, a friend to men of letters, affable, and studious to govern the nation according to ancient laws and customs.

Meantime the court of Towhan-temûr was divided into powerful parties, who thought of nothing but how to supplant and destroy each other. The prince inheritor, instead of seriously endeavouring to gain the love and esteem of the officers, in order to engage them to support the throne, gratified his private hatred against several lords. He employed the eunuch Pû-pûwha, and the minister Sho-se-kyen, to accuse those whom he marked for destruction.

Koko-temûr was an inveterate enemy to Polo-temûr, and each had his friends and agents at court. In April the prince caused the general Tûkyen-temûr to be accused; and when Polo-temûr, his intimate friend, pleaded his innocence, instead of being heard, he himself was deprived of the dignity of general at Tay-ting-fū. As Polo-temûr knew that this order had been given without the emperor's knowledge, by the intrigues of Pû-pûwha and Sho-se-kyen, he did not obey it, and having conferred with the accused lords, took up arms, with a resolution to oblige the emperor to drive those from about him who gave him such evil counsel. Tûkyen-temûr being detached to possess the post of Ku-yong-quan, the prince marched from Ta-tû to oppose that general, but was repulsed, and obliged to retire into Tartary. Upon his retreat Tûkyen appeared before the imperial city; a circumstance which threw every thing into confusion. The emperor, on this occasion, enquired into the affair, and having thoroughly informed himself, sent for Tûkyen, restored Polo-temûr, and delivered up to him both Pû-pûwha and Sho-se-kyen. Then the army under Tûkyen was sent back to Tay-tong-fû,

*Cruelty of  
the prince,  
and his in-  
justice.*

*Checked by  
Polo;*

*who becomes minister,*

fû, and the prince inheritor returned to court by his father's order<sup>4</sup>.

The prince, who determined to be revenged on Polo-temûr, made choice of Koko-temûr to execute his design. He raised an army of a hundred thousand men, divided into three bodies; and sent a general, with forty thousand men, to attack Tay-tong-fû. Polo-temûr, who had friends and troops every-where, left officers to guard that city, and took measures with Lau-ti-sha and Tûkyen-temûr to make himself master of the emperor's palace. He put himself at the head of his troops, and ordered Ku-yon-quang to be taken. In September the prince marched to oppose him, but his army was routed, and not thinking himself safe at Ta-tû, whither Polo-temûr followed him with expedition, he left it again with a body of troops, and retired to Ta-ywen-fû, capital of Shan-si. Polo-temûr having arrived at the city, left his forces without the gates, and entering the palace, followed by several lords, presented himself before the emperor on his knees, and assured him, that, with regard to what had passed, the fault was none of his. Towhan-temûr, who on this occasion shed tears, declared him generalissimo and prime minister. Lau-ti-sha and Tûkyen had posts under him, and all the tribunals were supplied with men of their own party.

A.D. 1366.  
*and master  
at court.*

Polo-temûr began his ministry by causing Tolo-temûr, the principal companion and instrument of the emperor's debauches, to be killed; he drove the lamas from court, and forbade the exercise of their religion. Had he stopped here, things might have gone well; but he passed the bounds of prudence, and, without the advice of his best friends, attempted to get the prince inheritor set aside, and Koko-temûr degraded: besides, he gave himself up to all kinds of debauchery. In March, 1366, the prince took the field, with a resolution either to perish or destroy his enemy; his army was numerous, and commanded by Koko-temûr, a general of consummate experience. As soon as Polo-temûr was informed of Ayyewshilitata's march, he caused the empress Ki to come out of the palace, and compelled her to sign an order for the prince to appear before her; but he did not think fit to obey it.

While Tûkyen-temûr was on his march to Shang-tû, to oppose the prince's party, Yesû was detached to make head against Koko-temûr; but when he arrived at Lyang-hyang, he consulted with the officers, in which it was re-

• Gaubil, ubi supra, p. 307, & seqq.

selved not to obey Polo-temûr, who was a rebel. Yesû proceeded to Yong-ping-fû, in Pe-che-li, from whence he sent an exprefs to Koko-temûr, and then marched into Lyau-tong, to confer with several princes of the blood who were in those parts. The minister, incensed at this desertion of Yesû, sent an army to attack him: but he having defeated it, and slain the general, Polo-temûr marched in person, yet was obliged to return, by a heavy rain, which continued three days and nights successively. Mean time the empress Ki, knowing the foible of Polo, procured him several young maidens of extraordinary beauty, by *Ensnared by pleasures.*

whose means she obtained her liberty, and returned to the palace, where she secretly effected the destruction of that minister, by amusing and ensnaring him with the gratification of his passions.

Things being in this situation, Ho-shang, one of the principal lords of the court, obtained secret orders from the emperor to kill Polo-temûr; in which enterprize Shang-tû-ma, Kin-nay-hay, and Petar, three young lords of resolution, engaged to assist him. They took the opportunity one day in September, when that minister came to acquaint his majesty with the reduction of Shang-tû, in Tartary, by the general Tûkyen-temûr. The emperor being at this time in a great hall, with many courtiers about him, Petar separated himself from the rest; and, placing himself at the door, slew Polo-temûr as he entered. Lau-ti-sha fled towards the north; but, a proclamation being issued to kill him, he was taken, and put to death. Tuk-yen-temûr, who was then at Shang-tû, and did not hear of what had happened at Ta-tû till several days after, would also have made his escape with several cuirassiers; but was taken and slain. The gates of Ta-tû were shut for three days, on account of these troubles; but, in the mean time, several detachments of the prince's army arriving in the neighbourhood, scaled the walls, forced one of the gates, and plundered great part of the city.

Towhan-Temûr, having thus destroyed his new minister, sent his head to the prince his son, with orders to repair to court. He came escorted by Koko-temûr, who was appointed minister. In the tenth month he was declared regulo, and generalissimo of the armies. He appeared at court with a train and equipage almost equal to that of the emperor. The prince earnestly desired that he might be permitted to carry on the war in the southern provinces; but his motion was not complied with. About this time the true empress, who was of the Hongkila family, dying *Koko made minister.*

without issue, Ki, who before was only nominally empress, in the twelfth month succeeded to the rank and honours of the deceased.

*Causes  
new broils.*

At the beginning of this year Koko-temûr, going into Honan, had great disputes with the generals of the province of Shen-fî, who would never acknowledge his authority; so that at length they came to hostilities. Thus the empire of the Ywen was attacked in all parts: the great men lived independent; the emperor regarded nothing but pleasure; and the prince, besides other great faults, had not talents to reunite the minds of the people, and bring them to labour in concert for the good of the public.<sup>w</sup>

*Affairs of  
the rebels.*

At the beginning of the same year also the Whang-ho, by its precipitate course northward, made great ravages in Shan-tong and Pe-che-li. Ming-yu-chen, pretended emperor of Hya, died in the third month; and was succeeded by one of his sons, not more than ten years of age. Han-lin-eul, who called himself emperor of the Song, died also in the thirteenth month. With regard to the proceedings of Chû, he took Whay-gan-fû in the fourth month. In the ninth month he sent two generals, with two hundred thousand men, to make war upon Chang-shi-cheng, who had declared himself independent in one part of Che-kyang and Kyang-nan: they defeated his troops four times, and took Hû-chew-fû, one of the most beautiful and rich cities of Che-kyang. At the same time Chû made himself master of Hang-chew-fû, capital of that province, Shau-hing-fû, Kya-hing-fû, and other important places. In the twelfth month he caused one palace to be built for his court, and another in honour of his ancestors.

*A.D. 1367.*

*The prince  
in power.*

But to return to the affairs of the Mungl court. The prince being near Ta-tû, in the year 1367, the empress Ki, his mother, sent a trusty lord to compliment him, and tell him, that she pressed Towhan-temûr to resign the empire. The emperor, being informed of the differences which subsisted between Koko and the generals of Shan-fî, sent an officer to decide them; but that minister flew the officer, and seemed inclined to throw off his allegiance. Towhan-temûr was, on the other hand, solicited to abdicate the empire; but, although he still refused to part with the title, yet he surrendered to the prince the whole power, declaring him generalissimo of the armies, and lieutenant-general of the state. This new promotion made

<sup>w</sup> Gaubil, ubi supra, p. 309, & seqq.

Koko-temûr take new measures : he opposed the emperor's orders in favour of Ayyewshilitata ; but, at the same time, was accused by one of his discontented officers. Hereupon Towhan-temûr cashiered Koko, disposed of his employments to others, and appointed officers to command the troops of that general. The discarded minister retired to Che-shû, a strong place in Shan-si, fully resolved to be revenged on the first occasion.

While Towhan-temûr lost all by his want of conduct, every thing succeeded with the prudent Chû. This prince, though of an obscure birth, and brought up from his infancy among mean people (O), yet discovered most of those qualities which have rendered immortal the memory of the greatest princes. He published the form of the Chinese government which he proposed to introduce ; and took for a model that which the literati boast of so much in Yau, Shun, and the three families (or dynasties) of Hya, Shang, and Chû : he instituted the examinations for men of letters, and military officers ; nor did he forget what concerned the tribunal of mathematics. He caused diligent search to be made for men of merit ; rewarding, like a true king, both the person found, and the person finding. All those were acceptable to him who had any talent for military affairs, or navigation, for arts, sciences, or mathematics. He was at no idle expence to indulge in pleasure ; and had an aversion to every thing which could render princes effeminate. In the palace, which he built at Nan-king, he forbade laying out too much in costly furniture, and foreign curiosities ; especially prohibiting, under severe penalties, immodest pictures and statues. He won the hearts of the mechanics, husbandmen, and other classes of the people, to whom he disdained not to talk and discourse about matters relating to their different employments. Besides these excellent qualities, he was endowed with an extraordinary genius ; so that by the conferences which he had with the literati, he soon became master of all that is essential in the Chinese sciences. His valour, military skill, and greatness of soul, joined to his equity in the distribution of favours and employments,

Koko ca-  
shiered.

Chû's suc-  
cess, and  
great qua-  
lities.

(O) He had been a servant in a monastery of bonzas ; some say, in so mean a quality as that of scullion, under the cook ; in

which station he continued for many years, till, in the time of the troubles, he quitted the kitchen for the army.

acquired him the esteem and attachment of his officers, as well as the affection of his people <sup>x</sup>.

*Reduces the South.* In the ninth month his generals Suta and Chang-yu-chun reduced Sû-chew-fû, and the whole province of Kyang-nan. They likewise took prisoners Chang-shi-cheng, and all those of his party, with nine princes of the blood; who were all conducted to Nan-king, where Chang-shi-cheng died. Chû ordered the princes to be treated with honour; and sent them, under the care of a mandarin, to the court of Towhan-temûr. After this expedition, troops were transported by sea into the province of Quang-tong, which, with that of Quang-si, and Fo-kyen, voluntarily submitted.

*Generals sent northward.* The south being thus reduced, Chû commanded Suta and Chang-yu-chun to march into the north, at the head of two hundred and fifty thousand men, almost all horse. These two generals penetrating into Shan-tong, published a manifesto, well calculated to excite the Chinese in favour of Chû, and render Towhan-temûr odious. They set forth, that it belonged to the Chinese to govern the Barbarians, and not to the Barbarians to govern the Chinese. They expatiated on the crimes of the Mungl emperors, and the faults of their government since the time of Timûr, who succeeded Hû-pi-lay. They asserted that the time was come to drive foreigners out of the empire. They launched out in praise of Chû, whom they declared to be the person chosen by Heaven for the master of China; and specified what the people might promise themselves from the government of so great a prince.

*Subdue Shan-tong.* This manifesto, distributed throughout the provinces, had a very great effect. Suta and his colleague reduced the whole province of Shan-tong, without any trouble. During this time the distractions continued in those of Shen-si, Shan-si, and Honan; occasioned by the dispute between Koko-temûr and the generals of Shen-si, concerning their respective jurisdictions; nor had the emperor authority enough to put an end to the contests.

*A.D. 1368.* On the first day of the year 1368, Chû was declared emperor of China. He went to the Temple of Heaven, to make a solemn sacrifice; declared his eldest son prince inheritor, and made several wise regulations. After this ceremony, his troops entered Honan, and presently reduced that province. In the second month, Towhan-temûr, instead of endeavouring to stop the rapid progress of

*Chû proclaimed emperor.*

<sup>x</sup> Gaubil. ubi supra, p. 312, & seqq.

Chû, sent troops against Koko-temûr. This general retired to Ping-yang-fû, in the south part of Shan-si; and the other generals of the Ywen (or Mungls) withdrew into other cities; rather to defend themselves against one another, than against the troops of Chû; whom we must now call Hong-vû, or Ta-tsû, the title given by the Chinese to this founder of the Tay-ming dynasty.

In the third month the troops of Hong-vû reduced the fortresses and gorge of the mountains of Tong-quan; and, in the seventh intercalary month, Koko-temûr and Ye-fû were placed by Towhan-temûr at the head of affairs: in consequence of which measure, the generals of Shen-si, the most illustrious of whom was Li-tfo-tsi, retired towards the west. Mean time the forces of Hong-vû entered Pe-che-li, from Honan on one side, and Shan-tong on the other. In the same month Suta and Chang-yu-chun defeated Poyen-temûr, one of the Mungl generals, who was slain in the battle, fighting valiantly. After this action they took the city of Tong-chew, only twelve miles to the east of Ta-tû; and then prepared to attack the capital of the Mungl empire. Hereupon Shelyemen, one of the ministers, went to the Temple of Ancestors, and, taking the tablets from that edifice, retired with the prince towards the north.

On the 25th of August, Towhan-temûr nominated prince Temûr-puwha regent of the empire of China; and King-tong was appointed for defence of the imperial city. Next morning, assembling the great men, princes, and princesses, he declared to them, that he would retire into Tartary. Temûr-puwha, and others, fell on their knees, and, weeping, offered to march out of Ta-tû, and attack the enemy; adding, that it was better to die, than dishonour by flight the imperial family. The emperor was inflexible; and, the night following, in the midst of his guards, attended by his wives, and those of the prince, as well as by other princes and princesses, took his way towards the north. Chang-yu-chun, informed of Towhan-temûr's flight, pursued the imperial family as far as the river Pe; and took prisoner Maytilipala, eldest son of the prince inheritor. On the 19th of October Hong-vû's army entered Ta-tû, after some small resistance.

Thus ended the empire of the Mungls in China, after their dynasty had continued one hundred and sixty-two years, reckoning from the first of Jenghîz Khân in 1206, to 1368; when Towhan-temûr withdrew out of China, and Hong-fû finished his conquest, by reducing the imperial city.

*Approaches  
the capital.*

*The Ywen  
withdrawn.*

*Towhan-temûr dies.* Towhan-temûr, though deprived of the most valuable part of his dominions, still continued great khân or emperor of the Mungls, and reigned over Tartary. This prince retired, with his court, to Ing-chang, a city then considerable, twenty-five or thirty leagues to the north-east of Shang-tû; where he lived only two years, dying in the fourth month of the year 1370, in the fifty-first of his age; after he had reigned thirty-five years as emperor of China and Tartary, and thirty-seven as khân of Tartary<sup>y</sup>.

*Ayyewshilitata succeeds.* After the death of Towhan-temûr, his son Ayyewshilitata ascended the throne of the Mungls, and removed his court to Karakorom; where, according to the Chinese history, he founded a new dynasty, called the Ywen of the north: but here, for want of materials, we must break off the history of the successors of Jenghîz Khân in Tartary; our author Gaubil having carried it down no lower than the death of Towhan-temûr.

In short, for want of a continued history of the successors of Jenghîz Khân in the east parts of Tartary, we must content ourselves with such fragments as are to be found, and those relating to affairs only near our own times.

### C H A P. XIII.

#### *History of the Mungls, after their Expulsion from China.*

*The Mungls driven beyond the desert;*

**A**YYEWSHILITATA succeeded his father Towhan-temûr in the empire of Tartary, as has been already mentioned: but we meet with nothing concerning the reign of either him or his successors, for above two hundred years after; excepting that he, and the other princes of his family, had great wars to maintain against Hong-vû, and several of his successors in China. Sû-ta, Chang-yu-chun, Li-ven-chong, and other generals of that nation, passed the great wall, and harassed the Tartars with frequent invasions<sup>z</sup>. Nor were the latter backward, when any opportunity offered, to repay the injury, and endeavour to recover their footing in China; the loss of whose rich and fruitful provinces they greatly regretted. As the

<sup>y</sup> Gaubil, p. 315, & seqq.  
p. 317.

<sup>z</sup> Gaubil, Hist. de Gentch.

extracts relating to the Ming dynasty, given by Couplet and Du Halde, speak of the wars which the Chinese had with the Tatars, during the reigns of those princes, it may not be amiss to collect, in this place, what little those authors say concerning them.

After the death of Hong-yū, who drove the Mungls out of China, and prosecuted the war against them in Tartary, Ching-tsu, or Yong-lo, his fourth son, and third emperor, pursuing vigorously what his father had begun, pushed them beyond the great Kobi, or desert, above two hundred leagues north of the great wall, with a design to extirpate them : but on his return from his third expedition (P), he was prevented, by death, which happened in 1425 <sup>a</sup>. The Mungls, taking courage after Yong-lo's decease, in order to be revenged for the damages that prince had done them, invaded the empire, in the reign of Swentzong, the fifth emperor : but this monarch, at the head of his army, marched against, and defeated them. Swentzong died in 1435, and was succeeded by Ing-tsung, only nine years old. The Mungls (Q), taking advantage of this emperor's youth, made continual irruptions into the provinces of China which lay nearest their country, and committed all sorts of rapine. At length Ing-tsung, in the year 1449, and fourteenth of his reign, marched beyond the great wall, at the head of a numerous army ; but his troops, weakened for want of provisions, were entirely defeated, and himself, being taken prisoner, was carried into the remotest part of Tartary.

A.D. 1449.

Take the  
emperor  
prisoner,who is  
ransomed.

At the news of this surprising event, the empress sent a great quantity of gold, silver, and silks, for her husband's ransom ; which the Mungl king received : but after he had brought the captive emperor to the borders of China, he carried him back again, not thinking the ransom large enough. Nevertheless, a new agreement taking place, some of the great lords were sent to receive Ing-tsung : but the khān was displeased, thinking all the chief men of the empire ought to have come to meet so great a monarch, with the greatest pomp. He was conducted, by a numerous retinue, to the frontiers of China ; and, when

<sup>a</sup> Du Halde's China, vol. ii. p. 255.

(P) These expeditions against the Mungls are not mentioned in the reign of Hong-yū, by either Couplet, or his translator Du Halde.

(Q) Called all along Tatars in our authors ; but we use the name Mungls for sake of uniformity, as well as propriety and distinction.

near the mountain Tang-kya-lin, sent to acquaint the court, that he renounced the empire to his brother King-ti, who had usurped the crown from the son of Ing-tsung, who afterwards ascended the throne a second time. In the reign of his son and successor Hyen-tsung, ninth emperor of the Ming, the Mungls, from time to time, plundered the provinces; but, in 1465, the second year of his empire, he cut in pieces their army. We hear nothing more of their depredations till the year 1504, which was remarkable for their irruptions, and the great booty they carried away.

A.D. 1509. In 1509, the Mungls renewed their ravages, the year before the death of Hyau-tsung, the tenth emperor; whose successor, Vû-tsung, in 1518, wanted to march against them incognito, in quality of generalissimo; from which design he was, with much difficulty, dissuaded by his ministers. Next year he prepared to retire into either Kyang-nan or Che-kyang. Hereupon his ministers presented fresh memorials; representing, that as the Tatars (or Mungls) must consider this journey as a shameful flight, they would grow more insolent; and that his absence might expose the northern provinces to their irruptions: but he was no less obstinate this time than the former, till at last he was diverted from his design by an inundation, which he thought a bad omen. His successor, Shi-tsung, or Kya-tsing, repaired the great wall which separates China from Tartary. Nevertheless, in 1550, the twenty-ninth of his reign, the Mungls approached Pe-king, with an army of sixty thousand men; but it was entirely cut to pieces, and above two hundred officers were taken prisoners. Next year the Tatar king sent an ambassador, to ask the emperor's pardon, and leave for his subjects to sell horses in his dominions. Shi-tsung readily consented; but finding afterwards, that this permission was the ground of continual quarrels between the mandarins and the merchants, and often occasioned revolts, he absolutely prohibited that trade.

A.D. 1560. About the year 1560, Lyew-han, general of the Chinese army, marching beyond the great wall, the Mungls, on intelligence of his arrival in their territories, fled, and hid themselves in their forests; so that there were no more than twenty-eight of them killed in this expedition, and the whole booty taken consisted of a hundred and seventy dromedaries. In 1574, the second year of Shin-tsung, or Van-lye, eleventh emperor of the Ming, the Mungls made an irruption into Lyau-tong, but were entirely routed; and,

*The Mungls  
ravage the  
Chinese  
provinces.*

A.D. 1550.

*Cease their  
attempt.*

and, in 1582, they received a total defeat, by the general Li-chin losing ten thousand men. Next year the rivers were frozen, which frost facilitating their irruptions into the empire, they came in swarms ; but were cut to pieces by the Chinese troops. After this event, we are told, that the Mungls, called Western Tatars, and Tan-yu by the Chinese, left off disturbing the empire, and lived quietly within their own territories ; while the Manchews (named in the Chinese histories Eastern Tatars, and Nyuche, or Nu-che) began to grow formidable, and at length subdued both the Mungls and Chinese <sup>b</sup>.

Had the successors of Yong-lo vigorously prosecuted what he had begun, they might have entirely reduced the Mungls to a state of subjection ; but as they neglected that affair, or pursued it but remissly, those enemies of China began, by degrees, to extend themselves. The princes of the house of Jenghîz Khân seizing each a territory, formed different hords, which grew into little sovereignties. The title of emperor of the Mungls remained to the chief of these princes, called Chahar Khân, or Hân ; who was descended from the emperor Kublay, or Hû-pi-lay, by the elder branch ; and to this khân the other Mungl states, including doubtless the Kalkas, and the E-lûths themselves, were tributary ; till, about the beginning of the seventeenth century, he having made his government insupportable by his cruelties and debaucheries, his subjects called in the founder of the Manchew monarchy. Thus the Mungl prince became a vassal to the Manchew empire ; and was obliged to quit the title of khân for that of vang, or wang, given him by the great-grandfather of the late emperor Kang-hi, who subdued entirely the Mungls about the great wall.

This prince, called by the Chinese Tyen-tsong, who began his reign in 1627, on the death of his father Tyen-ming <sup>c</sup>, taking advantage of the intestine divisions which at that time reigned among the Mungl princes, found means to reduce them, one after another, not excepting the chief of the family, who retained the name of emperor ; and was forced, by his own subjects, to submit like the rest, in the year 1630. After the conquest of China, the title of king (vang) was bestowed on him, and several other of the most potent princes of the Mungl family : but in the minority of the emperor Kang-hi, the vassal khân re-

*Submit to  
the Man-  
chews.*

<sup>b</sup> Couplet, Mon. Sinic. Tabl. p. 81. Du Halde, ubi sup. p. 220, & seq.

<sup>c</sup> Du Halde, ubi sup. p. 225,

solved to attempt not only to throw off his new yoke, but even, if possible, to recover the empire of China. With this view he began to unite the other princes in his interest, by a league; which coming to Kang-hi's knowledge, before the design took effect, he immediately sent a small body of troops from Lyau-tong, against the revolter Chahar Khân. The Mungl prince seeing himself attacked, before he was prepared for his defence, was obliged, with what forces he could assemble in haste, to fight the emperor's army: he was entirely defeated, and in the pursuit taken prisoner, with his brother and children <sup>d</sup>.

*Remain  
subject.*

From this time, the Mungls remained obedient to the power of the Manchews, who at present reign in China: although we are told, that the head of the Mungl princes, who are descended from Towhan-temûr, the last Mungl emperor of China, and very numerous in Tartary, still preserves a great superiority over the princes of the other branches descended from Jenghîz Khân, and his brothers; who are at present chiefs of the Tatar tribes, known under the denominations of Mungls and Kalkas <sup>e</sup>. On this occasion, it may not be amiss to observe, that as both these nations are the same people, under different names, the Mungls are those who always remained in Tartary, and the Kalkas such as were driven out of China; who, by way of distinction, perhaps, took that name from the river Kalka, on whose banks they settled; as a third branch or nation of Mungls go, at present, by the name of Elûths, or Alûths, known commonly in Europe by the denomination of Kâlmûks.

*Kalkas in-  
dependent  
under three  
khâns.*

The nation of Kalkas, Khalkhas, or Halhas, for so the word is variously pronounced, or written, which is the most numerous as well as celebrated of all the Mungl branches, preserved their independency for fifty or sixty years after the Mungls had lost theirs. The princes of this branch had at first a monarch, under the title of khân, or king, although tributary, as the other Kalkas were, to the Mungl prince Chahar Khân, before mentioned; but the Kalkas increasing greatly, and those descendants of Kublay, who had only the title of tayki, growing numerous, the more powerful among them became, by degrees, independent of one another, and of the khân himself, to whom they paid only a slight homage. Before the war broke out between them and the Elûths, towards the end of the last century,

<sup>d</sup> Bouvet, Hist. of Kang-hi, p. 18, & seq.  
supra, p. 317.

<sup>e</sup> Gaubil, ubi

they

they were divided into seven standards, with each its chief; three of whom received, of the great lama of Tibet, the title of khân; although most of the taykis, who were under them, acted as sovereigns in their respective territories, and paid their khâns no farther deference than to allow them the first place in their assemblies, held to determine differences and consult about public affairs.

The eldest of these three khâns was named Shaffaktû, and possessed the country to the east of the Elûths, extending from Mount Altay to the rivers Selinga, Orkhon, and Tûla. The second, Tûshetû, or Tûshektû Khân, was the most powerful of the Kalka princes: his territories reached from the three last mentioned rivers to Mount Kentey, whence the Kerlon and Tûla derive their sources. The third, Cheching Khân, resided towards the source of the Kerlon, along which river his people spread themselves, to its fall into the lake Dalay, or Kûlon, and also beyond, as far as the province of Solon. These two last princes took the title of khân about the year 1650; but the first long before. These Kalkas were so powerful before the wars, as to give uneasiness to the emperor of China himself. They were no fewer than six hundred thousand families, and very rich in flocks and horses; but they were almost ruined and destroyed by that calamity, the occasion of which is as follows.

A tayki, or Kalka prince, called Lopzang-hum Tayki, whom our author Gerbillon saw at the assembly of the states of Tartary, attacked Shaffaktû Khân; and having taken him prisoner, not only put him to death, but seized his estate, with part of his servants. The rest, with his children, fled to Tûshetû Khân, who sending an account of what had happened to all the heads of standards and principal taykis, invited them to join against the usurper. They immediately assembled their forces, attacked Lopzang-hum, took and sent him to the great lama, to be punished; requesting that pontiff to invest the eldest son of Shaffaktû Khân with his father's dignity. Their request was granted, and the son re-established in his father's territories; but neither his flocks nor subjects were restored; for Tûshetû had seized them for his own use, by advice of his brother, who was one of those Ho-fos, or living Fos, so numerous in Tartary.

This lama, called Tsing-chung-tumba Khûtûktû, had been eight years a disciple of the great lama at Tibet; where he had acquired such a reputation in the school, that he pretended to be a living Fo as well as his master. He played

played his part so well, that those Kalkas adored him as a divinity ; and his brother went regularly, on particular days, to worship him, gave him the upper-hand on all occasions, and was entirely governed by him. This pretended immortal, by his pride and misconduct, occasioned the destruction of his family, and the empire of the Kalkas. Shaffaktû Khân being thus deprived of his effects, contrary to a decree of the assembly, sent ambassadors to the grand lama, entreating him to interpose his authority with Tûshetû Khân, and his brother the lama, for a restitution. The dalay lama accordingly dispatched a lama envoy, who, being corrupted with presents, contented himself with fair promises. Shaffaktû Khân, despairing of justice from that quarter, sent his second son to beseech the emperor of China to espouse his interest. At this time the Kalka princes paid a dromedary and nine white horses, by way of tribute, to Kang-hi, for a free trade to China ; although they were not very regular in the payment. Hereupon his majesty dispatched an ambassador to the great lama, to engage him to send, by a time appointed, a person of consideration into the country of the Kalkas ; in order to meet a grandee of his court, to dispose those princes to an accommodation, and to prevent a war <sup>f</sup>.

*China interposes.*

*Commissioners meet.*

Mean time, Shaffaktû Khân dying, his eldest son, who was in alliance with Kaldan, khân of the Elûths, his neighbour on the west, succeeded him as khân. The envoy of China, and that of the dalay lama, being arrived at the court of Tûshetû Khân, they convened a second time the states of the Kalka princes. The imperial envoy, named Arghi, sat as president of the tribunal. The envoy of the great lama, represented his master, and therefore, every one yielded him the first place, excepting the brother of Tûshetû Khân, who being also a lama, and professing himself a living Fo, pretended to be equal to the high-priest himself, and insisted upon being treated with the same distinction. The envoys of Kaldan exclaimed against the pretensions of the Kalka lama, which they resented as an incroachment on the respect due to their common pontiff; and, as he would make no concession, retired in great discontent. In short, to avoid a greater quarrel than that which they came to determine, the envoy of the dalay lama was obliged to consent, that the king of Kalka's brother should sit opposite to him. After this agreement, affairs being soon regulated in the assembly, Tûshetû

<sup>f</sup> Gerbillon ap. Du Halde, ubi supra, vol. ii. p. 259.

Khan, and the khütuktû his brother, solemnly promised, that they would faithfully execute what had been there agreed upon. But, when the estates were separated, they delayed performing their engagement, under divers pretences.

Mean time, the Elûth king, offended at the little regard paid to his envoys, and the affront offered the <sup>Kaldan</sup> ~~offended~~ dalay lama, in the person of his legate, being pressed also by Shaffaktû Khan, to hasten the restitution of his effects, sent an ambassador to Tûshetû Khan, and the lama his brother, to exhort them to perform their promise ; and especially to complain of the latter's disputing precedence with the legate of the dalay lama, who had been their common master. The khütuktû could not restrain his rage, but loaded the ambassador with chains ; and having sent a threatening letter to Kaldan, put himself, with the khân his brother, at the head of a great body of troops, to surprise Shaffaktû Khan. That prince, who expected this attack, falling into the lama's hands, was drowned by his order : he also put to death one of the most considerable taykis, and seized his effects. Not content with these measures of vengeance, he invaded the territories of the Elûth Khan, and surprising a brother of his, cut off his head : then fixing it on a spear, exposed it to public view ; at the same time fending a domestic of that unfortunate prince with a most abusive letter to Kaldan.

The khân, although thoroughly enraged, yet stifled his <sup>A.D. 1688.</sup> resentment, till he was in a condition to shew it effectually. Mean time, he assembled his people, and next spring, 1688, approached the territories of Tûshetû Khan. The khütuktû, who expected this event, had demanded succours of the other Kalka princes ; alleging that he had put to death Shaffaktû Khan, for having entered into a league with Kaldan, to make war on all the other Kalkas. Accordingly, most of those princes came, with considerable forces, to the rendezvous. The khân of the Elûths being advanced, and finding the enemy's army much superior to his own, thought it best to encamp, in hopes that divisions would soon arise in the army of the Kalkas. Just as he had conjectured, the chief of one of the most numerous standards decamped first, by night, with all his people. Che-ching Khan soon followed his example ; and all the rest one after another, marched off, leaving Tûshetû Khan, and the khütuktû his brother, with none but the troops of their own standard.

*Invases  
the Kalkas.*

Makes  
great ha-  
wach.

## *History of the Mogul or Mungl Empire.*

As soon as Kaldan understood these particulars, he fell upon the enemy, who, making no resistance, were easily routed ; the two brother chiefs and their families escaping with great difficulty, and the loss of almost all their baggage, besides the greater part of their army and flocks. All the Kalkas of Tûshetû Khân's family, wherever found, were put to the sword. He himself was obliged to abandon his camp, and the khûtûktû forsook his residence, where every thing was plundered or burned ; and two fine temples, which the latter had erected at his own expence, were entirely demolished. Kaldan, afterwards, sent troops, with orders to destroy the country with fire and sword ; but especially to kill all the Kalkas, who now fled on every side (R). Tûshetû Khân, and his brother, having retreated to the southern part of the desert, near China, sent to beseech the emperor Kang-hi to take them under his protection, and defend them from an enemy, whose ambition and cruelty they highly exaggerated. His majesty thus solicited, sent an officer to enquire of Kaldan his reason for carrying on the war. The khân answered, with respect, that he had undertaken it to revenge the death of his brother ; and resolved to continue it : that he thought no prince would give refuge to so wicked a man as the Kalka lama, who being the principal author of so many barbarities, he was determined to pursue him wherever he retreated : that his punishment equally concerned the emperor, since he had so notoriously violated the oath made before his majesty's ambassador, at the assembly of the states, and shewn so little regard to his mediation.

Pursues  
the khû-  
tûktû.)

The khûtûktû knowing, that if Kang-hi abandoned him, he must infallibly fall into the hands of his enemy, as the dalay lama was his inveterate adversary, in order to secure himself, offered to become the emperor's perpetual vassal, with his brother, family, and subjects : likewise to engage all the other Kalka princes ; several of whom, during this negotiation, followed his example. Cheching Khân dying the same year, his widow also besought his majesty to receive her son as his vassal, and invest him with the title of khân, which was not to descend to his family. Kang-hi, on these considerations, ex-

(R) According to Bentink, he sent to the place of his residence nine camels loads of ears and locks of hair ; whence he judges a horrible slaughter was made : and then, with thirty thousand men, drove his enemy within the wall of China.

horted

horted the Elûth Khân to be content with the deplorable condition to which he had reduced his enemies, and desist : but Kaldan remonstrated, that the emperor was equally concerned to punish the violation of a treaty guarantied by himself and the dalay lama. However, he offered to retreat, provided the Kalka lama was delivered up, to be judged by the sovereign pontiff. But the Chinese monarch thinking it unworthy his dignity to abandon princes applying to him for refuge, and, besides, having nothing to fear from the Russians, since the late treaty of Nipochew (or Nerchinskoy), took the Kalka princes under his protection, and granted them part of his lands in Tartary ; which indulgence gave occasion to the war between him and the khân of the Elûths <sup>g</sup>.

This prince, towards the end of July 1690, advanced, *Invades* at the head of a small but well disciplined army, to the *the empire*; frontiers of the empire. He slew or enslaved all the Kalkas encamped along the Kerlon, whose course he had followed for the conveniency of forage, and pursued the murderers of his brother to the very retreat which the emperor had assigned them. On the first report of Kaldan's march, his majesty assembled all the Mungl forces which had been his subjects from the beginning of the Manchew monarchy ; and being encamped without the great wall, are in some sort the out-guards of the empire. These, reinforced by some Manchew troops, who served as convoys to the presidents of the militia, and the Mungl officers, were ordered to the frontiers, to observe the motions of the Elûths. The two presidents, with a design to surprise the khân in his camp, amused him with a treaty of peace ; and when he was least on his guard, attacked him in the night : but they were vigorously repulsed, and pursued within their own territories, where they secured themselves by taking post on the mountains.

On this advice Kang-hi sent a great army from Pe-king, *fights the Chinese* ; which he designed at first to command in person ; but on being dissuaded by his council, appointed his next brother generalissimo, and ordered his eldest son to accompany him. Kaldan was posted to advantage about eighty leagues from Pe-king ; where, although he wanted artillery, and had but very few troops, he resolutely waited for the enemy. At first his van-guard suffered much from the Chinese cannon, which obliged him to change his disposition : but as he had a great marsh before him, which

<sup>g</sup> Gerbillon ap. Du Halde, p. 260.

prevented

prevented his being surrounded, he defended himself with great bravery till night, when both parties retired to their camps. The general of the ordnance, who was the emperor's maternal uncle, was killed towards the end of the action by a musket-shot, as he was drawing off the artillery.

*comes to a treaty;*

Next day produced a treaty, of which the result was, that Kaldan should have leave to retire with his army; first taking an oath, before his Fo, never to return into the territories of the emperor or his allies. In his retreat part of his troops perished for want; and his nephew Tse-vang Raptan, whom he had left regent, withdrew into a remote country, with all who were disposed to follow him. This was such a terrible blow to Kaldan, that three or four years elapsed before he could recruit his army. The imperial generals, at their return to Pe-king, were impeached, although they had the advantage in the engagement; for it is a law among the Manchews that, if a general gives battle, and does not obtain a complete victory, he ought to be punished. The emperor's brother, with some other general officers, were sentenced to lose three years of their revenue, and the rest to be degraded five degrees. Next year Kang-hi held an assembly of the states of Tartary, wherein all the Kalka princes, with one consent, paid him solemn homage.

*renews hostilities;*

The khân of the Elûths continued in the territories formerly belonging to Shaffaktû Khân and Tushetû Khân, till 1694; when, being recruited with fresh troops, he scoured the banks of the Kerlon, and cut to pieces all the Kalkas who fell into his hands. Thence advancing into the borders of Korchin, he sent proposals to the chief prince to join with him against the Manchews. The king of Korchin, as a proof of the fidelity which he had sworn to the emperor, sent him the letter, which not a little disturbed his imperial majesty; for although he knew the Elûths were too weak to venture to attack him, yet he did not like a confederacy of the Mungl princes, supported by the dalay lama; he therefore resolved either to extirpate the Elûths, or compel them to acquiesce in a firm and lasting peace.

*is entirely routed.*

With this view, in 1696 he invaded Tartary with three armies, in order to surround them on all sides (S). One

(S) Bentink says his army consisted of three hundred thousand men, accompanied with three hundred pieces of cannon.

of these armies obtained a complete victory; while that under the emperor struck every place with terror. In short, this year, or the next, all those Tatars were either destroyed, subdued, or dispersed. The destruction of the Elûths was so great in this last war, that in all those vast countries there remained no more than ten or twelve thousand families; and the death of Kaldan in 1697, while the emperor was marching to seek him out in his retreat, completed their ruin: the remains of these unfortunate Elûths being obliged to implore his majesty's clemency, or take shelter with Tse-vang Raptan, the only surviving prince of that people. The war thus ended, we are told that Kang-hi became absolute master of all the empire of the Kalkas and Elûths; and extended his dominions in Tartary as far as the great deserts and forests which form the frontiers of Russia<sup>n</sup>.

Having brought down the history of the two first Mungl branches, the Mungls properly called, and the Kalkas, to the present time, it remains to consider that of the Elûths: but here our memoirs are still more scanty and imperfect. It does not appear from any authors yet published, either when, or on what occasion, the Mungl tribes, who go under the denomination of Elûths, threw off their dependency on the Mungl khâns reigning at Karakoram (or in the eastern parts of Tartary), and assumed that name; or by what steps they arrived at so great a power, as to become superior to the other two branches of the Mungls.

We find nothing considerable of the Elûths till about the year 1655, at which time we are told all the Elûth branches were united under one chief or king, called Ochirtu-chechin Khân. Prince Ablay, his brother, having rebelled, was defeated, and forced to retire a great way towards Siberia. The khan had under him several petty princes of his family called Tayki, who were absolute in their respective territories, and paid him what homage and tribute they pleased. One of them, Patûrû Hûm, was very rich, and had been highly honoured for his exploits in the wars of Tibet. He left several children, of whom Onchon, the eldest, succeeded him. This prince, during the wars with the Haffak Pûrûks or Ufbek Tartars, falling sick of the small-pox in his camp, was, according to the custom of the Mungls in that distemper, left alone in his tent; which the Mohammedan Tatars, posted opposite to

*The Elûths history.*

*Onchon's misfortune.*

<sup>n</sup> Gerbillon, ap. Du Halde, p. 257. 261.

*Slain by  
Sengha.*

the Elûths, took possession of, and with proper care recovered the sick prince.

Onchon, not thinking it prudent to discover his quality, served three years as a common slave; during which the second brother Sengha, not doubting of his death, married his wife. At length the prince discovered himself to the Hassâks; and promising upon oath, in case they released him, never to renew the war, they set him at liberty, and gave him a guard of one hundred men to escort him into his own territories. Being arrived on the borders, he dispatched a courier to acquaint his brother with his adventure and return. Sengha, greatly surprised, consulted his wife, to know whom she would chuse in such a conjecture. The lady answered, that she had married him on a presumption that her first husband was dead; but since he was living, she was indispensably obliged to return to him. Sengha, whose love was equal to his ambition, under pretence of honouring him, sent assassins to massacre the prince and all his retinue. The crime being committed, he pretended that he had defeated a party of Hassâk Pûrûks, without mentioning any thing of his brother; but the murder being soon discovered, one of the brothers, by the same mother as Onchon, assembled forces to revenge his death; and having killed Sengha, restored the son of Onchon to his father's possessions.

*Kaldan's  
revenge.*

Kaldan, third son of Patûrû-hum Tayki, by Sengha's mother, had been educated by the grand lama of Tibet, as one of his principal disciples; he settled at the court of Ochirtû-cheching Khân, who treated him with great marks of distinction. This prince, having had notice of the foregoing transactions, asked leave of the high pontiff to quit the profession, in order to revenge the death of his brother. Permission being granted, he immediately formed an army of Sengha's old domestics, and some troops lent him by Ochirtû; with which he took vengeance on the murderers, and seized on all the effects of his brother, as well as the estates of Sengha. He then married the prince's chief wife, the daughter of Ochirtû Khân; and his forces increasing daily, he found himself in a condition at last to dispute the kingdom with his father-in-law, to whom he owed his present fortune.

*Created  
khân.*

A quarrel between their subjects was a pretence for declaring war; and he marched with his army into the country of Ochirtû, who received him at the head of his troops. The battle was near the great lake Kizalpû, where Kaldan obtained

obtained the victory ; and having taken his father-in-law prisoner, caused his throat to be cut, the better to secure the conquest of his dominions : thus he became the head of all the Elûths. The great lama, to reward his perfidy and cruelty, gave him the title of khân, that is, king or emperor. From that time Kaldan enjoyed his conquests, and had no wars but with the Hassak Pûrûks till 1688, when he invaded and subdued the Kalkas ; but carrying his resentment too far, he was ruined in his turn by the emperor of China<sup>1</sup>.

According to Betink, the loss of the last battle did not *Totally defeat* so much afflict the Elûth prince as did the death of his wife Guni or Ani, who was slain in the rout. Her body having been found among the dead, the emperor caused the head to be cut off, and carried it along with him to adorn his triumph. Provisions and forage beginning to fail in the neighbouring mountains, to which he had with difficulty escaped, most of his followers and horses died of hunger ; so that he returned almost alone into his own dominions, where he spent two years in great affliction, exposed to the reproaches of his subjects. At length he sent his son Septenbaldius to the dalay lama, to desire his mediation, which he before flighted : but Abd'ollah Beg, governor of the city of Khamul, although dependent on the khân, caused him and his small retinue to be seized in passing through his government, and sent them to the emperor ; who ordered their heads to be struck off, and confirmed the traitor in his post.

The news of this disaster threw the khân into despair. He assembled all his subjects, exhorted them to live in peace and unity ; then giving them liberty to retire every one where he pleased, he took poison, and died. This was the end of Bosto Khân, a prince of great genius and valour, who by a series of successes, had made himself formidable to all his enemies.

Kaldan was succeeded by his nephew, eldest son of Sengha, called Tse-vang Raptan (T). This Raptan is said to have left his uncle's court, while he was absent in the war ; and, by carrying away the greater part of his forces, greatly distressed him in his affairs<sup>k</sup>. Bentink says, that his flight happened a little before the war in 1688, on the

<sup>i</sup> Gerbillon apud Du Halde, p. 257.      <sup>k</sup> Bentink apud Abulgh.  
Hist. Turks, &c. p. 252. & seq.

(T) Bentink calls him Zigan Araptan, which is the name used by the Russians.

following occasion. The khân, who bred up at his court three of his brother's sons, conceived an aversion to the eldest; and, finding no pretence to put him to death, he had recourse to a man of great strength, who, under pretence of wrestling with the young prince, handled him so roughly, that, in a few days, he died. Zigan Araptan, the youngest of the three, alarmed at this event, fled with his friends and domestics: nor could his other brother Dankhinambû, whom the khân sent after him, prevail with him to return.

*His instal-  
ment.*

But when he heard of his uncle's death, he presented himself to the Kalmûks, and demanded the succession; which they could not deny him, he being next heir. The Bûkhars, whom Kaldan had conquered some time before, followed their example; and the other provinces, which refused to submit, were compelled to it by force of arms. When things were thus settled, the Bûkhars conducted him one day to an agreeable grove; where they solemnly invested him with the title of Kontaish, which signifies a *Grand Monarch*; forbidding, under pain of death, to call him by his former name. This prince well deserved that distinction, as being remarkable for his genius and mildness, courage and piety<sup>1</sup>.

*Conquers  
Tibet.*

The new khân at first lived quietly in his territories, with all but the Uzbeks, and encouraged agriculture: but his actions afterwards proved, that he was no less enterprising than his uncle Kaldan. Not long after his advancement to the throne, Yarkian, capital of Kâshgar, revolting, he reduced it by force, and severely punished the rebels. About the year 1703, Ayuka, one of his cousins, flying from his court, under pretence that he was in fear of his life, passed the river Jaîk, with the tribe of Torgaûts, and put himself under the protection of Russia<sup>2</sup>. About 1716, Kontaish conquered Tibet<sup>3</sup>: but, four years after, the provinces of Khamil and Turfân, in Little Bukhâria, were taken from him by the Chinese, on the following occasion. Kontaish having been informed, that there was, to the east of the Great Gobi, or Desert, at the foot of the mountains which separate his lands from those of China, a gold mine, so rich, that it might be worked without much trouble, he sent one of his mursas or princes, with ten thousand men, to take possession of it; but the Chinese and Mungls, af-

<sup>1</sup> Bentink apud Abulgh. Hist. Turks, &c. p. 253. Gerbillon ap. Du Halde, p. 257      <sup>2</sup> Idem ibid. p. 257. Bentink, ubi supra, p. 539.      <sup>3</sup> Gerbil. ubi sup. p. 384. 386.

falling them in great numbers, routed, and pursued them to the desert. This the Kalmûks repassed by favour of some very fertile vallies, hidden by the high mountains which cross the Gobi on that side from west to east, and were till then unknown to the Chinese.

The late emperor Kang-hi, to try if any advantage could be made of this discovery, sent a powerful army that way, with a good train of artillery, under his third son Yóng-ching, who having passed the deserts by the same road which the Kalmûks followed in their retreat, entered the provinces of Khamil and Turfân: but finding that Kontaish advanced to meet him with a fine and numerous cavalry, against whom he durst not venture his army in the vast plains of those provinces, he resolved to build forts at proper distances, which he took care to furnish very well with cannon and infantry. By favour of those forts he advanced continually in the lands of Kontaish, and made himself at length entire master of the aforesaid provinces; the Kalmûks not being able to bring him to a battle.

Kontaish, who saw it was impossible for him to repel the Chinese without infantry and ordnance, the use of which had been till then unknown to the Kalmûks, in the year 1720 sent ambassadors to Peter I. emperor of Russia, then at St. Petersburg, offering to become tributary to him, provided he would send ten thousand regular troops, with cannon, to his assistance: but the war with Sweden, joined to the views which the emperor Peter had upon Persia, hindered him from accepting of these advantageous proposals. Meantime the Chinese seized all that belonged to Kontaish, lying to the east of the deserts, towards the frontiers of China, where they have settled colonies of Mungls; but did not molest the territories of the dalay lama.<sup>•</sup>

<sup>•</sup> Bentink, ubi supra, p. 546. & seq.

*Losses in  
Bukhâria.*

*Offers to  
Russia.*

## C H A P. XIV.

*The History of Juji, or Tuſhi Khân, and his Descendents, who reigned over the Kipjaks, with that of the Khâns of Krim Tartary.*

*Kipjâks,  
their coun-  
try.*

THE Kipjâks, or Kipchâks, inhabit the western part of Tartary ; and formerly their country was of very great extent, comprising the vast plains reaching in breadth from the Caspian sea to the borders of Russia, which then was contained within narrow bounds ; and extending from the Nieper, or Boristhenes, westward, a considerable way in Tartary, to the east of the Caspian sea : so that not only the kingdom of Astrakhân and Kassan, belonging at present to the Russian empire, but likewise all Little Tartary, and some other neighbouring provinces of Europe, were included in it, forming, in the whole, a large empire.

*First.  
Juji Khân.* We have already mentioned the exploits of Juji or Tuſhi, who accompanied his father Jenghîz Khân in the war against Mohammed Karasm Shâh. The khân was so pleased with his conduct, that he soon after gave him the sovereignty of Kipjâk, the country of the Jetah or Getes, and Turkestan. This prince resided in Kipjâk ; where he died in the year 1226, six months before his father, much regretted both by the Mungls and his new subjects. We have but few materials to enable us to give our readers a satisfactory history of the successors of Juji Khân, in this part of the Mungl empire : for we are indebted chiefly to two scanty funds, little else than lists or catalogues of the khâns ; one communicated by Abûlghâzi Khân, of Karazm, in his history of the Turks, Moguls, and Tatars ; the other by De la Croix, at the end of his history of Jenghîz Khân. These catalogues disagree likewise considerably with each other, as to the names and number of the khâns, as well as the dates of actions. For instance, De la Croix reckons forty-one khâns to Haji Keray, or Gheray Khân ; and Abûlghâzi Khân only seventeen : but we chuse to follow the latter, as he was a descendant of Juji, and reigned in a country not far from Kipjâk.

A.D. 1226.

*Second.  
Batû Khân,*

Upon the death of Juji Khân, his father sent immediately his brother Belgatay Utezkim into Dasht Kipjâk, in order to create Batû khân in the room of his father. That

That prince went to meet his great uncle, and conducted him to the usual place of his residence, where he was put in possession of the throne ; but the solemnity was scarce over, when news arrived of the death of Jenghîz Khân. In consequence of this event, Utezkim returned immediately to Karakoram, and was followed by Batû, called also Saghin Khân, accompanied by his brothers, excepting Togay Timûr, the youngest ; who, on this occasion, was left as regent during his absence. At court, they assisted at the instalment of Ugaday, or Oktay Khân, whom afterwards they accompanied in his expedition to Kitay.

The grand khân, pleased with the conduct and bravery which he had observed in Batû Saghin Khân, at his return gave him a numerous army to subdue the Urus or Russians, Cherkassians, Bulgars, and other neighbouring nations. He likewise ordered his son Kayuk, who succeeded him, Mangu, son of Toley, and Baydar, son of Jagatay Khân, to accompany him in this western expedition.

On his return to Kipjâk, Togay Timûr feasted him and *His conquests.* all the princes splendidly for three days. Batû gave, in his turn, a feast, which lasted forty days, at the end of which he proceeded on his intended conquests. His expedition was crowned with success, and the khân having filled all the West with the glory of his great exploits, at length returned to Dasht Kipjâk, where he died some time after in the capital of the country, called Kok-Orda<sup>p</sup>. De la Croix places this event of his death in 1256 ; and says, he conquered the Alans, Afrites, Russians or Muscovites, Bulgars, and several other nations : that crossing through Ruffia, he even ravaged Poland, Moravia, and Dalmatia ; then marched into Hungary, with a design to besiege Constantinople, but was prevented by death ; a circumstance which contradicts Abu'lghâzi Khân's account, who says he died in Kipchâk. De la Croix adds, that Batû performed several other considerable exploits, and was said to have been the most liberal and generous prince in the world<sup>q</sup>.

Batû Saghin Khân was succeeded by his brother Burgha ; who, on that occasion, gave a very magnificent feast to all his vassal lords, and distributed several considerable presents among the chief of them. Nor did he forget to send some of great value to Hû-pi-lay Khân, in order to

<sup>p</sup> Abulghazi Khan, Hist. Turks, p. 193, &c seq.  
Croix, Hist. Gengh. p. 387.

<sup>q</sup> De la

Third.  
Burgha  
Khân.

obtain his confirmation of the choice which his subjects had made of him in the room of Batû. Burgha Khân reigned with great glory, and was much dreaded by all his neighbours. One day, being on the road to visit Koplay Khân, he met with merchants of Great Bukhâria, and discoursing with some of them about the Mohammedan worship, was so affected with the account they gave of it, that he immediately embraced that religion. He also in time converted his younger brother Togay Timûr, who accompanied him, and at his return published an order for all his subjects to embrace Mohammedism; but he died, says our author, before he could complete so fatal a work, after he had reigned twenty-five years. De la Croix says he reigned but ten, and that he died in 1266; but, by Abu'lghâzi Khân's account, which we prefer, his death must have happened in 1281. The first of these authors, besides taking notice that Bereke, as he calls Burgha, turned Mohammedan, adds, that he was engaged in a very bloody war with Hûlakû, khân of Persia; and that afterwards, being desirous to execute part of Batû's design, he marched as far as Constantinople, ravaging all the country in his passage.

*Fourth.  
Mengû  
Timûr  
Khân.*

Burgha Khân had for his successor his brother Mengû Timûr, who was a prince of wonderful courage and conduct. Some time after his advancement to the crown, he gave a tribe, subject to him, called Ak Orda, or the White Orda, to Behadr Khân, son of Sheybani Khân; and the cities of Kaffa and Krim to Orân Timûr, son of Togay Timûr. He afterwards took the field against the Bulgars; and having, in two years, made considerable conquests on that side, returned to his own dominions. From thence he marched towards the country of Irân, or Persia, against Abka Khân, who came to an amicable agreement with him, which continued with such friendship, that every year they sent each other presents; but his successor Ahmed, son of Hûlakû Khân, having been slain by Abka's son Argûn, as soon as the news reached the court of Mengû Timûr Khân, he sent Tarkay and Turkuchay, two of his generals, with eighty thousand men, towards the frontiers of Irân. On advice of this invasion, Argûn Khân detached Amîr Togâtur, one of his best officers, with a large body of troops, to meet them, and followed in person with all his forces. The two armies coming to an engagement at

\* Abulgh, ubi supra, p. 195.

a place called Karabakh, in Armenia, that of Mengû Timûr was defeated, and he himself died of grief<sup>\*</sup>.

Upon his decease Tuda Mangû, son of Batû Khân, ascended the throne of Kipják; but as he oppressed his subjects with taxes, Tokhtagu, son of Mengû Timûr Khân, thought himself obliged to remonstrate against the injustice of his conduct. This freedom was taken so ill by the khân, that he was constrained to leave the country: however, he found means to return not long after, at the head of a powerful army, and having gained a battle, in which Tuda Mangû was slain, succeeded him in the sovereignty.

Tokhtagu Khân reigned with universal applause, and subdued a great number of neighbouring cities; but he was carried off by death in the midst of his conquests, after a reign of six years, and was buried in the city of Shari Sarayjik (U) pursuant to his last directions.

Uzbek succeeded his father Tokhtagu, and though but thirteen years old, reigned with much prudence and resolution. He introduced the Mohammedan worship through all the provinces of his dominions, and conciliated the affection of his subjects to such a degree, that they assumed the name of Uzbeks, which they have ever since retained. After this event Uzbek Khân tried his fortune twice against Abu Saïd Khân, who reigned in Irân, but without reaping any advantage by those expeditions, and died at his return from the last<sup>t</sup>.

Uzbek Khân had for his successor on the throne of the Kipjáks, his son Jani Bek, who acquired the reputation of a very virtuous and devout Mohammedan. He usually resided in the city of Shari Sarayjik, and continually employed himself in designs for the good of his subjects. During his reign Mâlek Ashrâf, son of Timûr Tâsh, had seized the kingdom of Azerbejân in Irân, and the neighbouring provinces; but as he was a great tyrant, and led a scandalous life, many of his subjects left the country, and joined Janibek Khân. Among the rest was Mohûzo'ddin, a chief man of the law; who, one day expounding the Koran in the mosque before the khân, took an occasion to

*Fifth.  
Tuda  
Mengû  
Khân.*

*Sixth.  
Tokhtagu  
Khân.*

*Seventh.  
Uzbek  
Khân.*

*Eighth.  
Jani Bek  
Khân.*

\* Abulgh. ubi supra, p. 195, & seq. † Idem ibid. p. 197, & seq.

(U) This seems to be the same place with Shari Saray; the ruins of which are on the east side of the Wolga, a little to the north of Zariza, or Zä-

raygrood, a Russian city, on the west side, in the part where that river and the Don approach each other.

touch on the scandalous life of Mâlek Ashrâf; then addressing himself to Jani Bek, he declared, that in case he did not do his utmost to restrain the infamous conduct of that tyrant, both he (the preacher) and his subjects would accuse him, before the throne of God, of all the evil which might accrue from his tyranny.

*Conquers Azerbejân.* This menace made such an impression on the mind of Jani Bek Khân, that he, without delay, assembled all his forces, and marched into Irân; where, having defeated and slain Mâlek Ashrâf, he seized all his dominions, with his treasures, which he divided among his subjects, amounting to four hundred camels load, in stuffs and jewels, besides other valuable effects. Then leaving his son Birdi Bek to govern the conquered provinces, he returned to his own dominions. There falling sick immediately on his arrival, he dispatched couriers to his son, that he might see him before he died; but finding death not willing to allow him so much time, he enjoined the lords of his court to acknowlege Birdi Bek for their sovereign. Having thus settled the succession, he expired, and was buried in Shari Sarayjik, in the year of the Hejra 758 (of Christ 1356), after he had reigned seven years\*.

*Ninth.  
Birdi Bek  
Khân.*

Birdi Bek being detained by affairs of importance in the provinces of Irân, two years after his father's death, at length arrived; and having spent three days in lamenting that loss, caused himself to be publicly acknowleded khân. He afterwards abandoned himself entirely to tyranny and a brutish life. As he imagined he had a long time to live, he put to death all his relations, for fear any of them should attempt to expel him from the throne, which he possessed so unworthily; but his debaucheries soon put a period to his life; and as, with this khân, the

*Hejra 762.* posterity of Mengû Timûr Khân became extinct, the *A.D. 1360.* sceptre of the countries of Kipják was conferred on the other descendants of Juji Khân.

*Tenth.  
Urûs Khân.* After the death of Birdi Bek Khân, Urûs Khân, son of Badakul Oglan, son of Khoja, son of Avas Timûr, son of Togay Timûr, youngest son of Juji Khân, seized the sceptre of the Kipjâks, and reigned for some years very peaceably; till at length Toktamish, or Tokatmish, descended from Togay Timûr, by another branch, attempted to dethrone him; but his troops having been defeated by Urûs Khân, he was obliged to fly for refuge to Amîr Ti-

\* Abulgh. ubi supra, p. 198, & seq.

mûr, or Tamerlan, who resided at Samerkand in Great Bukhâria. A few days after, Idighi Mangap, who had engaged in the service of Tokatmîsh, followed him, with intelligence, that Urûs Khân, and all his forces, might easily be surprised, because he marched at a great rate towards Great Bukhâria. Idighi Mangap was the son of Kutluk Kaba, a man of distinction among the tribe of Ak Mungls, whose daughter Timûr had been given in marriage to one of his sons, of which marriage Timur Kutluk was the issue. Upon this advice Amîr Timûr sent Tokatmîsh with a numerous army against Urûs Khân; whom having defeated and slain in battle, he found no difficulty to ascend the throne.

Hejra 777.  
A.D. 1375.

We meet with a more particular account of this war between Tokatmîsh and Urûs Khân in the life of Timûr Beck, written by Sharîfo'ddîn Ali, a Persian author, which shall be produced in its proper place.

Although Tokatmîsh seemed to be now securely established on the throne of Kipjâk, yet he did not possess it long in quiet; for Tukta Kaya, eldest son of Urûs Khân, dying soon after his father, his brother Timûr Mâlek Aglen ascended the throne; and, marching with a powerful army against Tokatmîsh, after several skirmishes, once more entirely defeated him: but, by means of a very fleet horse, he escaped. The generous Timûr again supplied his losses, and sent him back with several commanders, who had orders to replace him on the throne of Kipjâk; a service which they performed accordingly, in the city of Saganak; and, pursuant to custom, sprinkled on him gold and precious stones. Mean time Orki-timûr, taken prisoner in the late battle, made his escape, and informed Timûr Bek, that Timûr Mâlek spent both night and day in debauches; that he slept till ten in the morning; and that all the people of Kipjâk desired Tokatmîsh for their sovereign. On this intelligence, the emperor advised that prince to march with all expedition to attack his rival, who had passed the winter at Karatal (X). Tokatmîsh Aglen immediately departed from Saganak; and, coming up with the enemy, defeated them; by which victory he recovered the throne. Timûr Bek was so rejoiced at this event, that he spent several days in feasting, and released many prisoners. Tokatmîsh Khân returned to pass the winter at Saganak; and, raising a great army in the spring, recon-

Eleventh.  
Tokatmîsh  
Khân  
established  
by Timûr.

(X) Karatal, a place in Kipjâk.

quered

quered the kingdom of Saray (Y) and Memak, with the rest of the empire of Tuſhi Khân <sup>w</sup>.

*Invaſes his dominions.* When Timûr Kutluk grew up, he went to dwell in the country of the Kipjâks, and Idighi Mangap put himself under his protection. This circumstance greatly displeased Tokatmish Khân; who, having besides entertained a suspicion that Timûr Kutluk sought to supplant him; endeavoured, without noise, to get rid of so dangerous a rival: but Timûr Kutluk, having discovered the khân's design, fled for refuge to Great Bukhâria, whither he was followed six months after by Idighi Mangap. While Amîr Timûr invaded Irân with all his forces, Tokatmish Khân entered Great Bukhâria, then destitute of troops, with a great army; and, having taken Samarkand, put to the sword a great number of the inhabitants. After this exploit, he set out for his own dominions; but Amîr Timûr, who, on intelligence of that prince's march, had returned homewards, followed him with so much diligence, that he overtook him on the banks of the Atel or Wolga. Tokatmish Khân, finding there was no way to avoid a battle, engaged with uncommon resolution; but the good fortune of Timûr having prevailed over all the conduct of the khân, he was obliged to escape by flight, after having lost most of his army in the engagement.

*Timûr Kutluk retires.* After the battle, Timûr Kutluk, who was in the action, with Amîr Timûr's consent, went to seek for his subjects, whom he had abandoned, for fear of Toktamish Khân; and, having met with a great number of them on the banks of the Atel, prepared to march with them to Samarkand: but Idighi Mangap advised him not to put it in Amîr Timûr's power to deprive him of his subjects, by distributing them in the cities belonging to his dominions; he told him, that step would necessarily reduce him to a state of absolute dependence on Timûr; he therefore counselled him to go and settle elsewhere with his people; an advice which the other followed so secretly, that it is not known whither he retired <sup>x</sup>.

*Twelfth. Kaverchik Khân.* Tokatmish Khân, at his death, left eight sons; but Kaverchik, son of Urûs Khân, seized the sovereignty, and reigned after him.

*Thirteenth. Barak Khân.* He was succeeded by his son Barak Khân:

w. Hist. Bek. lib. ii. cap. 24, 25. p. 187—190.  
ubi supra, p. 201, & seq.

x. Abulghâ

(Y) Of which Sharî Sarayjik, or Saray, above mentioned was the capital.

Upon

Upon whose demise, Mahmat, descended from Togay Timûr, usurped the sceptre of the country of the Kipjâks.

Mahmat Khân was succeeded by Abûsaïd, surnamed Jani Bek Khân, son of Barak Khân, who left nine sons; Iraji, Mohammed, Kafim, who gave battle to Mohammed Khân Shebani, in which the latter lost his life; Aytik, Janish, Kamber, Tamish, Awissak, and Jayik. The Uzbeks affirm, that the khâns of Turkestan are descended from Janish soltân, fifth son of Jani Bek Khân.

After the death of Jani Bek, Ghiazo'ddîn, son of Ti-mûrtash, son of Mahmat Khân, possessed himself of the throne of Kipjâk, and was succeeded by his son Haji Garay<sup>y</sup>.

Haji Garay, or Keray Khân, left eight sons; who, after their father's death, divided his dominions among them; but their descendants did not long enjoy their respective possessions; for the Urus, or Russians, seized the whole country of Kipjâk in the year of Christ 1553; and, since that time, we hear no more of the posterity of Haji Garay Khân. All we know for certain is, that the khâns of Krîm are sprung from one of his sons; but we cannot determine which of them it is<sup>z</sup>.

This is all the account given by Abû'lghâzi Khân of the khâns who have reigned in Kipjâk; to which some particulars may be added to La Croix, relating to Haji Keray Khân, and his successors in Krîm Tartary. According to this author, Haji Keray Khân died in 1475, and left twelve sons; which great number of princes was the cause that the empire of Kipjâk fell into confusion, for three of them reigned as khâns at the same time. This division occasioned a war which ruined several provinces, of which the Russians got possession; in short, the great empire of Kipjâk would have been utterly ruined, if sultân Mohammed II. who subdued Constantinople, touched with the misfortunes of those princes, had not taken care to succour them. For this purpose, he sent Ghedîk Ahmed Pasha, who took the city of Kaffa from the Genoese, and then that of Mankûp.

Here he found Mengheli or Menkeli Keray, son of Haji Keray Khân, who lost his liberty with the rest of the inhabitants. He had been khân of Kipjâk for a few days; but, having been vanquished by his brothers, fled for refuge to the Christians, and waited an opportunity to remount the throne; on which Mohammed soon after re-

Fourteenth.  
Mahmat  
Khân.  
Fifteenth.  
Jani Bek  
Khân.

Sixteenth.  
Ghiazo'ddîn  
Khân.

Seventeenth.  
Haji Garay  
Khân.

<sup>y</sup> Abulgh. ubi supra, p. 203.

<sup>z</sup> Idem ibid. & seq.

placed

placed him <sup>a</sup>. The sultan not only appointed this prince khân of the Krîm, on certain conditions, but also sent him with an army of Othmâns into Kapchâk, or Kipjâk ; which he soon recovered by their assistance, after having defeated and killed his brother. This was the first khân of Tartary appointed by the Turks ; and the first who, in the Krîm, ordered the kotba, in the name of the Othmân emperor, to be used in the prayers <sup>b</sup>. These khâns assume the title of Padîshâh, or *Emperor*.

### *Khâns of Krîm Tatary.*

*Eighteenth.  
Mengheli  
Keray  
Khân.*

1. MENGHELI KERAY, or Ghyeray Khân, succeeded his father. La Croix makes him the forty-second khân of Kipjâk ; but he was no more than the eighteenth, according to Abûlghâzi Khân ; whose numbering thus far, being more exact, we shall follow in the margin, to carry on the succession of the khâns of Kipjâk.

*Nineteenth.  
Mehemed  
Keray  
Khan.*

2. Mehemed Keray Khân succeeded his father Mengheli Keray Khân, in the dominion of Kipjâk, as well as that of the Krîm. Here it may be proper to observe, that all the khâns, who succeeded Mengheli Keray, took or retained the name of Keray, Geray, or Khyeray.

*Twentieth.  
Gâzi Keray  
Khân.  
Twenty-  
first.  
Saadet Keray  
Khân.*

3. Mehemed was succeeded by his son Gâzi Keray Khân, who was deposed, after a reign of six months.

4. Saadet Keray Khân, who gave his brother Sahhib Keray Khân in hostage to sultan Selim I. emperor of the Othmâns. From this time the Turks gave one thousand and fifty aspers per day as a pension to the khâns of Krîm Tartary, and other pensions to the lords of the Tatar court, as appears from the book *Kunho'l Akhbar*.

*Twenty-se-  
cond.  
Islam Keray  
Khân.*

5. Islam Keray Khân, son of Mehemed Keray. In his reign the kingdom was divided between two factions ; one adhered to Saadet Keray Khân, the other to Islam Keray Khân. At length, in 1517, the two parties came to hostilities on the banks of the Nieper, or Boristhenes ; and, those on Islam Keray's side gaining the advantage, Saadet Keray was obliged to fly to Constantinople, where the Othmân emperor gave him a pension to subsist on. After this, Islam was killed by,

*Twenty-  
third.  
Sahhib Keray  
Khân.*

6. Sahhib Keray Khân, who seized the throne ; but was himself, after having reigned a long time, deposed by Solyman II. sultan of the Turks. The Russians, who had been vassals to the Tatars till the reign of the czar or tsar

<sup>a</sup> La Croix, ubi supra, p. 390.  
p. 112, & seq.

<sup>b</sup> Cantemir, Hist. Othm.

Ivan Basiliwitz, took the city of Kazan, or Kafân, situate on the river Kafânkâ, a little to the east of the Wolga, from this khân, on the 9th of July 1552<sup>c</sup>; and, in a year or two more, conquered the kingdom of Astrakhân, to the south of that of Kazân, with the rest of Kipjâk to the west of the river Jaïk; so that Sahhib Keray Khân may properly said to be the last khân of the race of Juji Khân who reigned in Kipjâk; excepting that part called Little Tartary, which became a part rather by conquest than original occupation. After the conquest of this large country, the several tribes of Kipjâks and Tatars submitted to the Russians, and still remain in their ancient territories.

7. Sahhib Keray was succeeded by Dolet (or Dawlat) Keray Khân, son of Mobarek, son of Mengheli Keray Khân, and died in 1577.

8. Dolet Keray had for his successor Mehemed Keray Khân, who was deposed for having disobeyed the Othmân sultân.

9. Islâm Keray Khân (Z), who had been imprisoned at Rhodes, was restored: he died in 1588.

10. Gazi Keray Khân succeeded: he was a learned prince, an excellent poet, and able musician. The Othmân sultân increased his pension to about five pounds English per day; having done great services to the Turkish empire, in the war with Persia, where he displayed all the qualifications requisite in a great officer; yet he was deposed for some time, but was afterwards restored; and died in 1607.

11. Fateh Keray Khân, who was deposed almost as soon as he was advanced to that dignity.

12. He was succeeded by Selâmet Keray Khân (son of Dolet Keray Khân), who died in 1610.

13. Jani Bek Keray Khân succeeded Selâmet Keray; and, in 1617, marched into Persia by order of the Port. He likewise went to besiege Kaffa, at the head of forty thousand Tatars; nevertheless he was deposed in 1621; but re-established in 1627.

14. Jani Bek had for his successor Mehemed Keray Khân, who was killed in the course of the same year.

15. Anayet Keray Khân, son of Gâzi Keray Khân, deposed in 1637; and afterwards put to death in the same

Twenty-fourth.

Dolet Keray Khân.

Twenty-fifth.

Mehemed Keray Khân.

Twenty-sixth.

Sahhib restored.

Twenty-seventh.

Gâzi Keray Khân.

Twenty-eighth.

Fateh Keray Khân.

Twenty-ninth.

Selâmet Keray Khân.

Thirtieth.

Jani Bek Keray

Khân.

Thirty-first.

Mehemed Keray

Khân.

<sup>c</sup> La Croix, ubi supra, p. 391.

(Z) This must be a mistake for Sahhib Keray, who was imprisoned at Rhodes: Islâm Keray was killed.

*Thirty-second. Ana-yet Keray Khân.*

year at Constantinople<sup>d</sup>. According to other accounts, he was slain this year by a nephew of his competitor Kantemîr; which latter was put to death at Constantinople, for killing a Tatar. As Anâyet had shaken off much of his respect for the Othmân emperor, his murder was applauded at the Port; who set up his brother, then at Jamboli in Rum-ili, or Thrace, in his room.

*Thirty-third. Behadr Keray Khân.*

16. Behadr Keray Khân, son of Selâmet Keray Khân, succeeded Anâyet, and died in 1641. This khân is called Bekhir Gheray by others.

*Thirty-fourth. Mehemed Keray Khân.*

17. Mehemed Keray Khân, another son of Selâmet Keray. He was deposed in 1644, and restored: in 1664 he was deposed a second time.

*Thirty-fifth. Islam Keray Khân.*

18. Islam Keray Khân, a son also of Selâmet Keray. He carried on a war with Poland for fourteen years, and died in 1653.

*Thirty-sixth. Adel Keray Khân.*

19. Adel Keray Khân, son of Chûbân Keray Khân. He was deposed in 1671; and sent back prisoner to Rhodes, from whence he had been taken.

*Thirty-seventh. Selim Keray Khân.*

20. Selim Keray Khân, who reigned in 1672. We are informed by prince Cantemîr, that the Turks, distrusting the fidelity of Selîm, after the battle of Vienna, advanced Kior Gyeray, of the Chûbân Gyeray family, to the dignity of khân; but that in a few months he was deposed, and the ancient race of Gyeray replaced on the throne. That author adds, that it is thought the Chûbân Gyeray will never rise to the same honour again, although they may enjoy the office of galga sultân; nor nûro'ddîn, which are in the power of their relations<sup>e</sup>. The reason assigned for the supposition, that none of the Chûbân Gyeray family will be advanced for the future, is, that they are of a spurious race; which reflection they retort, in their turn, on the Gyerays of Krîm. However, they are allowed, by the Othmân emperors, to live at Jamboli (formerly Janopoli), which is the destined seat of the Tatar princes<sup>f</sup>. He was famous in war; for, in one campaign, he defeated the Russians, Poles, and Germans. After he had been twice khân, he abdicated, on his return from Mecca; but being made khân the third time by the Port, instead of his son, the latter revolted; yet was reduced by his brother sultân Gazi Keray, in 1702, when the khân was about forty. He was succeeded by sultân Gazi, named

<sup>d</sup> La Croix, ubi suprà, p. 391, & seq.  
Othm, not. p. 113.

<sup>e</sup> Cantem. Hist.

<sup>f</sup> Idem ibid.

21. Dolet Keray Khân, son of Selîm Keray Khân. This prince was much beloved by his subjects, and accounted a great soldier; but he was deposed by the Port, and sent first to Rhodes, and then to Khio.

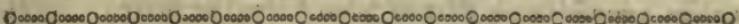
Thirty-eighth. Dolet Keray Khân.

22. Kaplan Keray Khân. This prince having been defeated in Chirkassia, by some rebels, whom he went to reduce, the sultân deposed him, in 1708; and re-established in his room Dolet Keray Khân<sup>g</sup>, who had been deposed before him, and is, according to La Croix, the sixty-fourth khân of Kipják.

Thirty-ninth. Kaplan Keray Khan.

23. Dolet Keray Khân, who began his second reign in 1708.

Fortieth. Dolet Keray Khan.



## C H A P. XV.

*The History of the Princes of the Race of Jenghîz Khân, who have reigned in the Great and Little Bukhâria, with Part of Karazm.*

### S E C T. I.

#### *A Description of Great Bukhâria:*

**B**UKHARIA, Bokhâria, Bokâria, Bogâria, or Bohâria, is the name given at present to all that region or tract of land lying between Karazm and the Great Kobi, or Sandy Desert, bordering on China. It signifies the country of the Bukhârs; *Bukhâr*, as Abû'lghâzi Khân informs us, being a Mungl word, importing, *a learned man*; because all those formerly who wished to be instructed in the languages and sciences, went, for that purpose, into Bukhâria<sup>h</sup>. Hence it appears, that this name was given originally by the Mungls, who conquered this country in the time of Jenghîz Khân. This great region is divided into two parts, the Great and the Little Bukhâria.

Bukhâria in general.

The country of Great Bukhâria is nearly the same with that called by the Arabs *Mawara'lnahr*, which signifies, *Its several names.*

<sup>g</sup> La Croix, ubi supra, p. 393.  
&c. p. 108.

<sup>h</sup> Abu'lgh. Hist. Turks,

what

*what lies beyond the river*, meaning the Jihûn, or Amû, the Oxus of the ancient Greeks, and is little other than a translation of Transoxana, the name given formerly to those provinces. Under this denomination was comprised all the extent of country possessed by those powers, the Greeks and Arabs, beyond the above mentioned river; which country, at different times, had different dimensions.

**Târân.**

Great Bukhâria is also comprised under the name of Turân, or the country of the Turks; which is likewise given, by the Arabs and Persians, to the country situated to the north of the river Amû, in opposition to Irân, or Persia at large, lying to the south of that river; and includes a considerable part of what fell to the share of Jagatay Khân, second son of Jenghîz Khân, from whose descendants, the Uzbeks, of the race of Juji, or Tûshi Khân, conquered it.

**Jagatay  
Uzbek.**

After the conquest of this country by the Mungls, and its grant to Jagatay Khân, it took the name of Jagatay, or Zagatay, in honour of the new proprietor. This name continued as long as the khâns descended from him reigned in those parts. Upon their expulsion by the Uzbeks, the Persians gave it the name of the country of Uzbek<sup>i</sup>.

**Situation  
and extent.**

Great Bukhâria is situated between the 34th and 46th deg. of latitude, and between the 76th and 92d deg. of longitude. It is bounded on the north by the river Sîr, which separates it from the dominions of the Elûths, or Kalmûks; the kingdom of Kâshgar, in Little Bukhâria, on the east; by the dominions of the Great Mogul, and Persia, on the south; and by the country of Karazm on the west; being about seven hundred and seventy miles long, from west to east; and seven hundred and thirty miles broad, from south to north.

**Soil and  
produce.**

According to Bentink, nature has been very bountiful to this agreeable country; the mountains abound with the richest mines; the vallies are of an astonishing fertility in all sorts of fruits and pulse; the rivers swarm with excellent fish; and wood, which is scarce all over Grand Tartary, is found here in great plenty: in short, it is the best cultivated, and best inhabited, of all the northern Asia: but all these blessings are of very little use to the Tatar inhabitants, who are naturally so lazy, that they would rather go rob and murder their neighbours, than

<sup>i</sup> Teixeira, Hist. Pers. p. 319.

apply themselves to the cultivation and improvement of these natural benefits <sup>k</sup>.

Great Bukhâria is divided into three large provinces, *Division into provinces.* namely, Proper Bukhâria, Samarkant, and Bâlk; and each of them has commonly its particular khân.

### 1. Province of Proper Bukhâria.

THE province of Proper Bukhâria or Bokhâria is the most western of the three; having on the west, Karazm; on the north, a desert called by the Arabs Gaznah; on the east, the province of Samarkand; and on the south, the river Amû. It extends about three hundred and ninety miles in length; and the breadth in some places amounts to three hundred and twenty. The towns are chiefly Bokhâra, Zam, Wardansî, Karakul, Siunjbala, Karshi, Zarjui, Nersem, and Karmina.

The city of Bokhâra, situated in the lowest part of all the country, in 39 degrees 10 minutes of latitude; twenty days journey from Urkenj, the capital of Karazm. It was, in 1559, of great extent, and fortified with a high wall of earth, divided into three parts, whereof the castle of the khân, who resides here, made one; the mursas, officers of the court, and those belonging to the khân's retinue, took up the second part; the third and largest being possessed by the burghers, merchants, and other inhabitants. In this last division, every trade or profession has its particular quarter. The houses are generally of earth; but the temples and many other structures, as well publice as private, are of stone, sumptuously built, and gilded; especially the baths, which are very artfully contrived.

A litter river runs through the city: but its water breeds in the legs of those that drink it worms an ell long, between the flesh and the skin; which, working out about an inch every day, are rolled up, and thus extracted. Notwithstanding this inconvenience, it is forbidden to drink any other liquor than water and mares milk; and such as break that law, are scourged through the markets.

The king (or khân) has neither great power nor wealth. As his revenues are but small, he is maintained chiefly by the city: for he takes the tythe of all things sold in it, to the great impoverishment of the people; and when he wants money to pay his debts, sends his officers to take goods from the shop-keeper, upon credit.

<sup>k</sup> Abû'lgh. ubi supra, p. 209.

*Language,*

As the country of Boghâr was formerly subject to the Persians, the Persian language is still spoken there: but the Boghârians are continually at war with the Persians their neighbours, on account of religion, although both nations are Mohammedans, but of different sects. They likewise quarrel with them, because they do not shave the upper lip; for this reason, they call them *kafrs*, or *unbelievers*. They have no gold coin in Bukhâria; and only one silver coin, worth twelve pence English, which the king raises and lowers occasionally. Their copper money is called *puli*.

*and trade.*

As to the trade of Bokhâra, Jenkinson observes, that, in his time, there was a great resort of karawâns, from India, Persia, Balk, Russia, and other countries: but he adds, that the merchants are poor, and the articles inconsiderable. The Indians brought nothing but white calicoes; and carried back wrought silks, red hides, slaves, and horses<sup>1</sup>.

*Karmina city.*

Bentink gives an account of three or four more of the cities belonging to Propria Bukhâria. First, Karmina, situated in a province of the same name, towards the borders of Karazm, to the north-west of Bokhâra; poor and inconsiderable at present.

*Wardansi.*

Wardansi, to the west of Karmina, near the borders of the same country, is a pretty large straggling town, inhabited by the Bukhârs, who traffic to Persia and Karazm.

*Karshi.*

Karshi stands to the north of the river Amû, and is, at present, one of the best cities of Great Bukhâria, being large, populous, and better built than any other in that country. The neighbouring lands are exceeding fertile, in all sorts of fruits and pulse; and its inhabitants drive a great trade in the north parts of the Indies.

*Zamin, or Zam.*

Zamin is a small town on the right (or north side) of the Amû, towards the borders of Persia, remarkable for nothing but its ferry over that river; which is of great advantage to the Uzbeks of Great Bukhâria, in their expeditions on that side<sup>m</sup>.

## 2. *The Province of Samarkand.*

*Bounds and extent.*

THIS province, called "Mawara'l-nahr" by Bentink, lies to the east of Proper Bukhâria, and north of Balk. It extends as far as the borders of Kashgar, in Little Bukhâria;

<sup>1</sup> Jenkinson's Voyage to Boghar, in Purch. Pilgr. Vol. iii. p. 239, & seq. <sup>m</sup> Abu'lgh. Hist. Turks, p. 464, & seq.

being about five hundred and forty miles long, from west to east; and five hundred broad, from south to north.

This country was formerly full of flourishing cities; but most of them are, at present, either entirely ruined, or much fallen to decay. The capital of the province, and indeed of all Great Bukhâria, taken in the largest sense, is Samarkant or Samarkand, situated on a river, and in a valley, both of which bear the name of Sogd; from whence the Sogdiana of the ancients had its denomination. It is seven days journey to the north-east of Bukhâria; and, according to the observation of Ulug Beg (grandson of Timûr Beg or Tamerlan), who reigned here in 1447, lies in 39 degrees 37 minutes 23 seconds of latitude. Although it falls short, at present, of being so splendid as in times past, yet Bentink says, it is still very large, and well peopled. It is fortified with strong bulwarks of earth; and its buildings are much in the same condition with those of Bokhâra: some of the private houses are of stone, dug out of quarries which are near the town<sup>n</sup>.

The academy of sciences in this city is one of the most eminent among the Mohammedans, who resort thither to study, from all the neighbouring countries. The silk-paper made here is said to be the most beautiful in all Asia, and therefore in great request throughout the East. The soil produces pears, apples, raisins, and melons, of an exquisite taste; and in such plenty, that the empire of the Great Mogul, and part of Persia, are supplied from hence. The little river Sogd, which glides by the town, would be of great use to the place, by opening a communication with the neighbouring dominions, if the inhabitants had the art and industry to make it navigable.

The other remarkable cities in this province were, Otrâr, Zarnuk, Tashkunt, Kojand, Kash, Saghanian, Wahjerd, and Termed: but of these we meet with scarce any account in modern travellers. Otrâr, called by the Arabs Farâb, is the most distant city from the capital, and lies almost due north. It stands in the north-west part of the province, on a small river, which falls into the Sir. This place is famous for the death of Timûr Beg, in 1405°; and, though not considerable at present, was the capital city of Turkestan, when that kingdom or empire was in its flourishing state, under Kavar Khân.

<sup>n</sup> Abu'lgh. Hist. Turks, p. 462.  
P. 462, & seqq.

o Abu'lgh. ubi supra,

*Kojand.*  
*Termed.*

*Kash.*

Tashkunt, at present, belongs to Turkestan; four days journey to the south of which, and seven north-east of Samarkand stands Kojand or Kojend, and Khojend, on the Sir, being a famous passage over that river, as Termed is over the Amû. Saghanian and Washerd are seated on the river Saghanian, which falls into the Amû. Kash or Kesh lies not far to the east of Karshi, and south of Samarkand. Timûr Beg was prince of this city, before he rose to his future greatness.

To these places may be added Anghien, which is the most eastern town of consequence in all Great Bukhâria; standing near its borders, towards Kashgar, and not far from the source of the Sir, on whose northern side it is situated; in the latitude of 40 degrees, according to the Jesuit's map of Tibet, drawn from the journals of Chinese and Tatar travellers.

### 3. *The Province of Balk.*

*Bounds and extent.* THE province of Bâlk or Bâlkh lies to the south of the province of Samarkand, and east of Proper Bukhâria, about three hundred and sixty miles long, and two hundred and fifty broad.

Bentink observes, that although this province is the smallest of the three, yet, being extremely fertile, and thoroughly cultivated, the prince draws a competent revenue out of it. The country particularly abounds with silk, of which the inhabitants make very pretty manufactures.

The Uzbeks subject to the khân of Bâlk, are the most civilized of all the Tartars inhabiting Great Bukhâria; a circumstance owing, in all likelihood, to their commerce with the Persians.

The country of Bâlk is divided into several provinces; the most remarkable whereof are, Khotlân or Katlân, Tokharestan, and Badâgshân. Its chief cities are, Bâlk, Farriab, Talkhân, Badâgshân, and Anderâb.

*City of  
Bâlk.*

The city of Bâlk is situate towards the borders of Persia, about fifty miles to the south of Termed, and on the river Dehask; which, about forty miles from thence, to the north-west, falls into the Amû. Bentink informs us, that Bâlk is, at present, the most considerable of all the towns possessed by the Mohammedan Tartars, being large, handsome, and well peopled. Most of its buildings are of stone or brick; and its fortifications consist of earthen bulwarks, lined on the outside with a strong wall. The khân's castle

is

is a great structure, after the eastern fashion, built almost wholly of marble, dug out of the neighbouring mountains. The chief cause to which this prince owes his preservation, is the jealousy which reigns among the neighbouring powers; so that he is always sure of being assisted by one, when attacked by another.

As foreigners have free liberty to trade in this city, it is become the resort of all the business carried on between Great Bukhâria and the Indies. To this the fine river, which passes through its suburbs, greatly contributes.

Anderab is the most southern city, possessed, at present, *Anderâb.* by the Uzbeks; situated at the foot of the mountains, which divide the dominions of the great Mogul and Persia from Great Bukhâria. As there is no other way of crossing these mountains towards India, with beasts of carriage, but by the road through this city; all travellers, and goods, from Great Bukhâria, designed for that country, must pass this way, paying four per cent. On this account, the khân of Bâlk maintains a considerable number of soldiers in the place, which otherwise is of no great strength. In other respects, Anderâb is very rich and populous, considering it is but small. The neighbouring mountains yield noble quarries of lapis lazuli, in which the Bukhârs drive a great trade with Persia and India.

Badagshân or Badakhshân is a very ancient city, exceeding strong, by its situation, at the foot of those high mountains which separate Hindûstân from Great Tartary. It belongs to the khân of Proper Bukhâria, and serves him for a kind of state-prison. Although the town is not very large, yet it is well enough built, and very well peopled. The inhabitants are enriched by the mines of gold, silver, and rubies, which are in the neighbourhood. They who live at the foot of the mountains gather a great quantity of gold and silver dust in spring, brought down by the torrents, when the snow melts<sup>p</sup>.

Those heights are called, in the Mungl language, Belur *Its situa-*  
Tâg, or the *Dark Mountains*; in which rises the river *tion.*  
Amû, there called Harrat. Badagshân stands on the north side of it, above a hundred miles from its source, two hundred and thirty from Bâlk, and two hundred and ten from Anghien, in the province of Samarkand. It is a great thoroughfare for the karawâns going to Little Bukhâria, which take the same road.

<sup>p</sup> Bent. ap. Abu'lgh. ubi supra, p. 466, & seq.

*Of the Inhabitants of Great Bukhâria, their Manners and Customs.**Inhabitants.*

THE inhabitants of Great Bukhâria are of three sorts. 1. The Bukhârs, who are the ancient inhabitants. 2. The Jagatays or Mungls, who settled there under Jagatay Khân, second son of Jenghîz Khân. And, 3. The Uzbek Tatars, who are the present possessors.

*The Bukhârs per-  
sons.*

1. All the great towns, both of Great and Little Bukhâria, from the borders of Karazm, as far as China, are inhabited by the Bukhârs; who, being the ancient people of those provinces, have that name given them throughout the East: but the Tatars commonly call them Tajiks; which word, in their language, signifies nearly the same as *burgess*, or *citizen*. The Bukhârs are well-set, and very fair, considering the climate; have generally large eyes, black, and lively; their countenances open and liberal; their noses aquiline; their hair black, and very fine; and their beards bushy. In short, they have nothing of the deformity which appears in the Tatars, among whom they inhabit. The women are generally tall, and well-shaped, with fine complexions, and very beautiful features.

*Their dress.*

Both men and women used callico shifts and drawers; over which the men wear a vest of quilted silk, or callico, which reaches to the mid-leg, and is tied about the middle by a silk-crape girdle or sash. When they go abroad, they fling over it a long cloth gown, faced, and even lined in winter with fur. The head is covered with a round cloth bonnet, with a large fur border; and some wear turbans. Their boots are made like the Persian buskins, but not altogether so neat; and they have a very singular art of preparing horse-hides for the purpose. The women wear long gowns, full and loose, of the same materials. They let their hair hang in tresses, adorned with pearls, and other jewels. Their bonnets are small, flat, and coloured. Their slippers like those worn in the north of the Indies.

*Religion  
and trade.*

All the Bukhârs profess the Mohammedan religion, nearly after the Turkish form, excepting in some few ceremonies. They live by following mechanic trades, or commerce, which is wholly in their hands: but, as seldom any foreign merchants arrive among them, especially in those parts where the Mohammedan Tatars are masters, they resort in numerous karawâns to China, the Indies, Persia, and Siberia, where they traffic to considerable advantage.

advantage. Although they possess all the towns of these provinces, they never meddle with arms, leaving the business of war and government to the Elûths, or Kalmûks, and Uzbek Tatars, who are in possession, the latter of Great, the former of Little, Bukhâria ; to whom they pay tribute, which is regulated every year. On this account, the Tatars despise them extremely, as a cowardly, weak people.

### 2. *The Jagatay Tatars.*

EVER since the reign of Jagatay Khân, second son of Jenhîz Khân, who had, for his share, Great Bukhâria, <sup>says,</sup> and part of Karazm, those provinces bore the name of Jagatay, and his Tatar (or Mungl) subjects, whom he brought along with him, that of Jagatay Tatars ; till Shabakht Soltân having driven out the descendants of Timûr Beg (or Tamerlan), the name of Jagatay gave place to that of Uzbeks. The descendants of the Tatars who first possessed that region, and those are the present masters of it, making now but one mixed body, are comprised under the general name of Uzbeks. On the other hand, the troops, and other crown-officers of the Great Mogul of Hindûstân, are called Jagatays by the Orientals, because they were the Jagatays who conquered that country <sup>1</sup>, under sultân Bahr, after he had been expelled out of Great Bukhâria.

### 3. *Uzbek Tatars of Great Bukhâria.*

THE Uzbeks, who possess this region, are generally reputed the most civilized of all the Mohammedan Tatars, although they are great robbers, like the rest. They are clothed, both men and women like the Persians (but not so neatly), as low as their boots ; and the chiefs wear plumes of white heron feathers on their turbans. Their most delicious dishes consist of pillaw, which is rice stewed in broth, and horse-flesh. Their common drink is kumis (or kammez) and arak, both made of mares milk. Their language is a mixture of the Turkish, Persian, and Mungl tongues ; yet they are able to understand and converse with the Persians. Their arms consist of the sabre, the dart, the lance, and the bow, of a larger size than ordinary, which they manage with much strength and dexterity. They have used muskets for some time past, after the Persian manner. When they go to war, a great part of

*Uzbeks  
dress, diet.*

<sup>1</sup> Bent. ap. Abu'lgh. ubi supra, p. 458, & seq.

their

their cavalry wears coats of mail, and a little buckler for defence.

*Robust and brave.* The inhabitants of this country value themselves on being the most robust and valiant of all the Tatars; and they must be acknowledg'd people of courage, since the Persians, naturally very brave, are, in some measure, afraid of them. The women also of Great Bukhâria pique themselves on their valour.

*Always at war.* The horses of the Uzbeks are very ill shaped, and frightfully lean. But, notwithstanding this sorry appearance, they are exceedingly swift, endure great labour, and very easily maintained. Their masters are commonly at war with the Persians, their incursions being encouraged by the fine plains of Khorassân: but the mountains, inaccessible to their cavalry, hinder them from penetrating into the dominions of the Great Mogul. Such of them as feed on their cattle, live under portable huts, like their neighbours the Kalmûks, encamping wherever they find convenient. - But they who cultivate lands, dwell in the villages and hamlets; very few of them living in the cities or towns, which are all possessed by the Bukhârs, or ancient inhabitants<sup>1</sup>. We shall speak of the origin, and other particulars, relating to the Uzbeks, when we come to the history of Karazm.

## S E C T. II.

### *A Description of Little Bukhâria.*

*Its name;* THE name of Little Bukhâria is given to this country, not because it is less in dimensions than the Great-Bukhâria, being in reality much larger: but because it is inferior to it, as to the number and beauty of its cities, goodness of the soil, and populousness.

*bounds and extent;* Little Bukhâria is surrounded by deserts: it has, on the west, Great Bukhâria; on the north, the country of the Elûth, or Kalmûks, in Tartary; that of the Mungls subject to China, on the east; on the south, Tibet, and the north-west end of China; from both which countries it is separated by two kabis, or deserts, of vast extent, which communicate with each other. It is situated between the 92d and 118th degrees of longitude, and between the 35° 30' and 45th degree of latitude; being in length, from

<sup>1</sup> Abul'gh. ubi sup. p. 459, & seq.

east to west, about eight hundred and fifty miles ; and in breadth from south to north, five hundred and eighty.

This region is populous and fertile ; but the great elevation of its land, joined to the high mountains which bound it in several parts, especially towards the south, render it cold and uncomfortable. It is very rich in mines of gold and silver ; but the inhabitants know not how to work them. However, they gather some gold dust every spring out of the gutters made by the torrents which fall from all sides of those mountains, when the snow melts. This is the true source of that gold dust which the Bukhârs carry into India, China, and Siberia. Musk is likewise found in this country ; together with diamonds and other precious stones.

Little Bukhâria consists of one long chain of mountains, with its branches extending through the Kobi, or Sandy Desert, which, towards the foot of those hills, is interspersed with fruitfnl plains ; so that it may be compared to a long reef of rocks and islands rising in the sea. Between the cities in this country there are no villages : whence it happens, that, in travelling a whole day from one to the other, there is not a house of entertainment to be found.

Little Bukhâria contains several distinct states, or countries ; but their exact number, bounds, and dimensions, are not ascertained by authors. In the time of Goes the Jesuit, who travelled through it in 1603, it consisted of two kingdoms, Kâshgar in the west, and Chalis in the east, both under one sovereign : at present it may be divided into four parts ; the kingdom of Kâshgar, and the provinces of Aksû, Turfân, and Khamîl, called by the Chinese Hami.

1. Kâshgar is the most western province of the four ; or lies, more properly, to the south of Aksû. It has, on the west, Great Bûkhâria ; from whence it is separated by a double chain of mountains, with deserts between them. On the south lies Tibet ; and, to the east, the great Kobi, or Desert, which extends as far as eastern Tartary. It may extend about four hundred and thirty-four miles in length from south to north, and three hundred and fifty broad from west to east : within this compass we do not meet with more than eight or nine towns mentioned by authors, of which only three are of consideration, namely, Kâshgar, Yarkian, and Khotam.

\* Abul'gh. Hist. Turks, &c. p. 469, & seq.

*City of  
Kâshgar.*

i. Kâshgar, written by the Jesuits Hafikar, is called also Ardukand, according to Abû'l-feda. It lies to the north-west of the other two cities, towards the frontiers of Great Bukhâria, at the foot of the mountains which separate that province from the lesser. It stands on the east bank of a river which falls from those mountains, and loses itself in the desert, thirty or forty miles distant from the city. It was formerly the capital of the kingdom : but, as Bentink observes, is very much declined since the Tatars have been masters of it : however, there is still some commerce carried on with the neighbouring countries, though very inconsiderable to what it was <sup>t</sup>. This city, before Jenghîz Khân's conquest, was, for a time, the capital of Tûrkestan, or the dominions of the Turks, in Tartary ; likewise of the western Lyau, or Karakitayans : since that period it has been the seat of kings descended from Jagatay Khân, who appear to have reigned there till the conquest of Little Bukhâria by the Elûths in 1683.

*Yarkian  
the capital.*

The city of Yarkian, or Yerkian, according to Bentink, is at present the capital of all Little Bukhâria, and situated to the north of Kâshgar, on the banks of a small river, whose waters are reckoned unwholesome. But as to its situation, he was probably misinformed ; for the Jesuits, in their map of this country (which they include in that of Tibet), place it to the south-east of Kâshgar, about ninety miles distant, and on a river, which rises in the mountains, about the same distance to the south-west, and falls into the lake of Lop, about six hundred miles from its source. The same author adds, that Yarkian is large, and pretty well built in the eastern way, although most of the houses are of sun-burnt bricks. There is a castle in this city, where the khân of the Elûths comes to reside for a time, when his affairs require it ; whence it is mistaken by some for the place of his usual residence. The country round Yarkian is very fertile in all sorts of fruits and pulse.

This city must be very populous, and the Bukhâr inhabitants rich, since it is the centre of all the commerce carried on between the Indies and the north of Afia, Tibet, Siberia, Great Bukhâria, and China. The emperor of Russia, Peter I. intended to have settled a regular trade with Yarkian, by the river Irtysh, which would have proved very advantageous to his dominions.

<sup>t</sup> Abulgh, ubi sup. p. 471.

The city of Khotam, or Hotom, is variously written *Khotam, or Hotom.* by authors: it is called by Marco Polo, Kotam; Hotom, in the map of the Jesuits; Koton, in other maps; Kha-teen by Bentink; and Khton by the Oriental historians. Abûlseda says, it was incredibly large, and its inhabitants were originally of Kitay<sup>u</sup>. It was probably built by the Karakitayans, who conquered this country, and founded a dynasty there in 1124. This city lies to the south-east of Yarkian, on the river Hotomnisolon. According to Bentink, it is subject to the grand khân of the Elûths; and still in a pretty flourishing condition, on account of its great traffic with Tibet and the Indies. Liberty of conscience is allowed here by the inhabitants, who are mostly Mohammedans. The houses are built with bricks, and the circumjacent country is exceeding fruitful. The citizens pay a certain tribute to the khân of the Elûths for his protection, and are not plundered by his people.

2. The country of Aksû lies to the north of Kâshgar, *Country of Aksû.* and west of the province of Turfân, about three hundred and fifty miles in length, and seventy in breadth. Aksû, the chief town in this region, is frequently mentioned by travellers, but no account given of it, farther than that it belongs to the kingdom of Kâshgar. According to the Jesuits map, it stands on the north side of a small river, which runs south-east, and loses itself in the sands. The river Ili has its springs in the mountains in the north-east part of this province, and runs north-westward into Tartary, where it falls into the lake Palkati, about a hundred and twenty leagues from its source. On the east side of this river, towards the said lake, the late khans of the Eluths used to fix their encampments, called Harkas, or Urga. More to the west rise the Chui Muren and Talas Muren, on which last stands the town of Sayrâm, according to the information of the Jesuits. Both these rivers, after a course of about a hundred and eighty miles, fall into a lake situate in Great Tartary.

3. To the east of Aksû lies the province of Turfân, *Turfân province.* which is about two hundred miles long and eighty broad. It contains several towns, of which Turfân is the chief. Goez represents it as a strong well-fortified city; but the later missionaries give no account of its present state, farther than that it is a considerable city, and that it is six days journey from Hami, or Khamîl, over a branch of

<sup>u</sup> *Descri. Chorasm.* p. 80. Edit. Hudson.

*Khamil  
province.*

the Kobi, or Desert; but ten days by the hills, to the north of this last city, which is the safer way.

4. The province of Khamul, Khamîl, or Hami, is about a hundred and eighty miles long, and eighty broad. It contains only one small city, of the same name; but is full of houses, and has a few villages, as laid down in the Jesuits map. The inhabitants are large-bodied people, and very robust, well shaped, and neat in their houses. It stands ninety leagues from the gate in the great wall of China called Kyayu-quan, and has lands enough round it, yet extends no farther, because that whole tract is nothing but a dry sand, and the most barren part of all Tartary.

*Religion,  
soil.*

This country, though formerly inhabited by idolaters, is now free from them, being possessed by Mohammedans. The soil scarce produces any fruit, except melons; but those of an excellent flavour, and they will keep beyond the season, so as to be served up at the emperor of China's table all the winter<sup>w</sup>.

*Country of  
the Vigûrs.*

The provinces of Turfân and Khamîl seem to have composed the country possessed formerly by the Vigûrs, Oygûrs, or Igûrs, whose capital, according to the Oriental authors, was Bishbalig; but Gaubil places it eight or nine leagues to the east of Turfân, and names it Ho-chew (according to the Chinese), and says, it is still called Pe-ting-tu-hû-fû; whereas Bishbalig is situated, by him, to the north of Turfân, and the country of Almaleg to the west of that of Bishbalig<sup>x</sup>. The Igûrs were likewise masters of the neighbouring parts of Tartary as far as the river Irtish and Mount Altay.

*The ad-  
joining de-  
sert.*

The desert, lying between Khamîl and the great wall of China, is part of the Sha-mo, or Kobi. As it affords neither forage nor water, travellers, in crossing it, frequently lose their horses; for this reason the Tatars make use rather of dromedaries, who are content with little food, and can be five or six days without drinking. However, the whole desert is not included within this space of ninety leagues; for it has several branches, which spreading here and there like so many infected veins, divide the country into as many plots, some dry, and quite uninhabited; others fertile enough to subsist a few Tatars<sup>y</sup>.

<sup>w</sup> Du Halde, Descr. China, vol. ii. p. 253.  
Gentch, p. 13. 126, 127.

<sup>x</sup> Gaubil, Hist.  
<sup>y</sup> Du Halde, ubi supra, p. 253.

*The Inhabitants of Little Bukhâria.*

THE inhabitants of this country, though under the dominion of the Elûths, are, for the general, Bukhârs. These are generally sun-burnt and black-haired, although some of them are very fair, handsome, and well made. They do not want politeness, and are acquainted with commerce, which they carry on with China, the Indies, Persia, and Russia. They who deal with them will be sure to be over-reached if they are not on their guard.

*Inhabitants, their shape.*

The habits of the men differ very little from those worn by the Tatars. They fall as low as the calf of the leg, *The dress of both sexes.* with sleeves very wide towards the shoulders, and close about the elbows. Their girdles are like those of the Poles. The garments of the women differ in nothing from those of the men, and are commonly quilted with cotton. They wear bobs in their ears twelve inches long; part and twist their hair in tresses, which they lengthen with black ribbands embroidered with gold or silver, and with great tassels of silk and silver, which hang down to their heels: three other tufts of a smaller size cover their breasts. They have necklaces ornamented with pearls, small pieces of coin, and several baubles either gilded or silvered over. Both sexes carry about them prayers written by their priests, and kept in a small leathern purse, in the nature of reliques. The girls, and some of the women, tinge their nails red, with the juice of a herb called by the Bukhârs, kena.

Both sexes wear close breeches, and boots of Russia leather, very light, and without heels, or leather soles; putting on galloches, or high-heeled slippers, like the Turks, when they go abroad. They wear also the same sort of bonnets and covering for the head; only the women ornament theirs with trinkets, small pieces of money, and Chinese pearls. Wives are distinguished from maidens only by a long piece of linen worn under their bonnets, which folding round the neck, they tie in a knot behind, so that one end of it hangs down to the waist<sup>2</sup>.

The Bukhâr houses are of stone, and pretty good; but their moveables are few, and not very elegant; consisting only of some China trunks plated with iron. Upon these, in the day, they spread the quilts which they make use of at night, and cover them with a cotton carpet of various colours. They have likewise a curtain sprigged with flowers,

*Houses and furniture.*

<sup>2</sup> Bentinck ap. Abu'lgh. Hist. Turks, &c. p. 476, & seqq.

*Their diet.*

and other figures ; also a sort of bedstead half a yard high, and four yards long, which is hidden in the day with a carpet. They go to bed naked, but always dress when they rise. They are very neat about their victuals, which are dressed in the master's chamber, by his slaves, whom the Bukhârs either take or buy from the Kalmûks, Russians, and other neighbours : for this purpose there are in the chamber, according to the largeness of the family, several iron pots set in a kind of range, near a chimney. Some have little ovens, made like the rest of their walls, with stiff clay or bricks.

Their utensils consist in some plates and porringers of Capua wood, or of china, and in some copper vessels to boil tea and water. A piece of coloured callico serves them instead of a table-cloth and napkins. They use neither chairs nor tables, knives nor forks, but sit cross-legged on the ground, and the meat being served up ready cut, they pull it to pieces with their fingers. Their spoons resemble our wooden ladles.

Their usual food is minced meat, of which they make pies in form of a half-moon ; these serve for provision when they go long journeys, especially in winter. Tea is their common drink, of which they have a black sort prepared with milk, salt, and butter<sup>a</sup>.

*Marriage-ceremony.*

As the Bukhârs buy their wives, so the surest way to be rich is to have many daughters. The persons to be married must not see or speak to each other from the time of their contract till the day of marriage, which is celebrated for three days with feasting. On the eve of the wedding a company of young girls meet at the bride's house, and divert themselves till midnight in playing, dancing, and singing. Next morning the guests assemble, and help her to prepare for the ceremony : then notice being given to the bridegroom, he arrives, accompanied by ten or twelve of his relations or friends, followed by minstrels playing on flutes, and by an abûs (A), who sings; while he beats two little timbrels ; then he makes a horse-race, which being ended, he distributes the prizes, six, eight, or twelve in number, according to his ability. They consist in damasks, sables, fox-skins, or callico. The parties do not see each other while the marriage-ceremony is performing, but answer at a distance to the questions asked by the priest. As soon as it is over the bridegroom returns

<sup>a</sup> Bentink. ap. Abu'lgh. Hist. Turks, &c. p. 422.

(A) The abûs is a kind of priest.

home with his company, and after dinner carries them to the bride's house, and obtains leave to speak to her. Then he goes back, and returns in the evening; at which time he finds her in bed, and, in presence of all the women, lays himself down by her in his cloaths, but only for a moment. The same farce is acted for three days successively; but the third night he goes to bed in reality, and next day carries her home.

Some husbands, by agreement, continue with their parents some time longer, and often a whole year, the wife remaining all that time with her's; but if she dies in the interim without children, her relations keep all that her spouse gave her, unless they are pleased to return him one half. The women are reckoned impure forty days after their delivery, and dare not say their prayers all that time. The child is named on the third day after it is born, by the father, or some relation, who makes it a present of a bonnet, piece of linen, or coat, according to his circumstances: they are circumcised at the age of seven, eight, or nine.

Although polygamy is looked on as a sort of sin by the Bukhârs, yet it is never punished; so that some have ten wives, or more. Any man may at pleasure send back his wife; but then she is intitled to whatever he gave her during their cohabitation. The woman also may part from her husband; but then she cannot carry away the least article of what belongs to her.

When a Bukhâr falls sick, a mullah is sent for, who reads to him a passage out of some book, and breathes on him several times, then, with a very sharp knife, makes several cuts on the side of his face. They imagine that, by this scarification, they cut the root of the distemper, which they say is caused by the devil. When any man dies, the priest lays a Koran on his breast, and recites some prayers. The body is afterwards carried to the grave, which they commonly make in some pleasant wood, and inclose with a hedge or palisade<sup>b</sup>.

The Bukhârs have no money but copper kopeiks, which weigh near one-third of an ounce. When they have silver or gold to receive or pay, they weigh it, like the Chinese and other nations. Their language, according to Gerbillon, is apparently that of the Uzbeks, differing from the Mungl; but he adds, that this last is commonly under-

*Child-bearing.*

*Polygamy.*

*Distemper,  
how cured.*

*Money and  
language.*

<sup>a</sup> Bentink ap. Abu'lgh. Hist. Turks, p. 481, & seq.

stood, by means of the great commerce between the two nations<sup>c</sup>.

Although the prevailing or established religion, in all the towns and villages throughout Little Bukhāria, is the Mo-hammedan, yet all others enjoy an unlimited toleration; because the Kalmūks, or Elūths, think they ought not in conscience to suffer people to be molested on account of their belief. According to the Description of Bukhāria, the Bukhārs say, that God first communicated the Koran to men by Moſes and the prophets; that afterwards Mo-hammed explained and drew a moral from it, which they are obliged to receive and practise.

### S E C T. III.

#### *The History of Great Bukhāria. Of Jagatay Khān and his Successors.*

*Empire of Jagatay.*

JAGATAY, or Chagatay Khān, second son of Jenghīz Khān, was a prince who excelled the rest of his brothers in every accomplishment<sup>d</sup>. He had something so severe in his countenance, that every body was afraid to look at him; however, he possessed an extensive understanding, on which account Jenghīz Khān gave him, for his share of the empire, all the country of Great Bukhāria, and half of Karazm; likewise the country of Vigūrs, the cities of Kāshgar, Badāghshān, Bālk, and Gaznah, with their dependencies, as far as the river Sîr-Indi, or Indus<sup>e</sup>.

*First. Jagatay Khān.*

This prince, after the death of his father, chose the city of Bishbālek, in the country of the Igūrs, for the place of his residence; however, he lived almost continually with his brother Oktay, who, though his senior, loved and respected him as his master. In his absence his dominions, were governed by Karajar, or Karashar Noyan, whom Jenghīz Khān, at his death, appointed his wazîr, to preside in his councils, and command his armies. This lord was one of the most powerful among the Mungls, and the fifth great ancestor, or grandfather, of the famous Timûr Bek, or Tamerlan<sup>f</sup>.

As the country was governed with great wisdom and moderation, nothing disturbed the peace of it till the year 630,

<sup>e</sup> Du Halde, ubi supra, p. 261, & seq.

Gengh. p. 394.

<sup>f</sup> D'Herbel. p. 390.

<sup>d</sup> La Croix, Hist.

Abu'lghazi Khan, Hist. Turks, &c. p. 165.

when

when Mahmûd, surnamed Tarâbi, having, by his false miracles, deluded a multitude of people, went at the head of them, and took Bokhâra. He afterwards marched against the Mungl generals, who could not venture to attack him on account of a thick dust with which they were incommoded; infomuch that, although Mahmûd was slain by a random arrow-shot, in the midst of his camp, yet neither the enemy, nor his own soldiers, knew any thing of the matter. Mean while the Mungls, attributing this extraordinary dust to the impostor's skill in magic, fled in a panic; and their shameful flight animating the Tarâbian rebels, they pursued them, killing above ten thousand. At their return their general was not to be found; but being told, by those who were in the secret, that he had disappeared for some time, the credulous disciples set up his brothers Mohammed and Ali for his lieutenants in his absence.

Thus the flame spread, instead of being extinguished. Karashar Noyan, seeing the principal cities daily reduced, at length assembled the chief forces of the empire, in order entirely to suppress the rebels. He began with the city of Bokhâra, which had favoured them, plundered the territory belonging to it, and slew a great number of the inhabitants. This execution obliged them to sue for pardon to Jagatay, whose clemency easily granted it; while his troops destroyed the Tarâbians without mercy.

Jagatay Khân died in the year 1240. Among a great many wives and concubines, he distinguished two above the rest, who were sisters, the daughters of Kaba Noyan, chief of the tribe of Kankrats. His sons were seven in number; but Khondemîr says he had no successor who succeeded to all his dominions; for that his sons and nearest relations divided his empire among them, and those who had the longest sword obtained the greatest share. However, we are told that thirty-one princes, who were either his sons or nephews, reigned in this country, called after him, Jagatay.

The first of these, according to La Croix, was Bisumen-kay Khân; the same doubtless with the Bußumunga of Abu'lghâzi Khân, who yet does not reckon him among the khâns of Jagatay, placing Kara Hulacû as his immediate successor.

Mubârek Shâh, son of Kara Hulacû, succeeded; but as he was very young at his father's death, his mother Argata Khatun assumed the regency during his minority.

Hejra 630.  
A.D. 1232.

A false prophet,

His followers exterminated.

Hejra 638.  
A.D. 1240.

Jagatay dies.  
Wives and children.

Seconda.  
Kara Hu-lakû.

Third.  
Mubârek Shâh.

*Fourth.  
Algû.*

The successor of Mubârek Shâh was Algû, son of Baydar, seventh son of Jagatay Khân; who, acknowleging Koplay for grand khân of the Mungls in the East, had for his share all the country from the river Amû, bounding on Persia, to Mount Altay <sup>g</sup>.

*Fifth.  
Barâk  
Khân.*

Barâk or Berrak Khân, son of Yasunta. This prince, in the second year of his reign, embraced Mohammedism, and took the name of Gayâzo'ddîn <sup>h</sup>.

*Sixth.  
Beghi  
Khân.*

After Barâk Khân's death the dignity of khân was conferred on Beghi, son of Sarmans, son of Jagatay.

*Seventh.  
Buga Ti-  
mûr Khân.*

Buga (or Buka) Timûr, great grandson of Mutagun, succeeded Beghi Khân.

*Eighth.  
Doyji  
Khân.*

Doyji Khân, son of Barâk Khân, succeeded Beghi Khân, and was esteemed a very just king.

*Ninth.  
Konja  
Khân.*

He was succeeded by his son Konja Khân, called by La Croix Kavenjik Khân.

*Tenth.  
Baliga  
Khân.*

Baliga (or Baligû), whó was also a grandson of Mûtagun, succeeded Konja.

*Eleventh.  
Isan Buga  
Khân.*

The successor of Baliga in Great Bukhâria was Isan Buga, second son of Doyji Khân. He was named also Amu Khoja; and on the death of Ilyas or Elias Khoja, son of Toglák Timûr, was invited by the inhabitants of Kashgar, and the rest of Little Bukhâria, to take the sovereignty of that country upon him, as will be related hereafter.

*Twelfth.  
Dui Timûr  
Khân.*

Isan Buga Khân was succeeded by his brother Dui Timûr. His successor was his brother Tarmashir; who restored Mohammedism, which, from the time of Barâk Khân, had so declined in Great Bukhâria, that scarce any traces of it remained. This khân was slain by his brother Butan Khân, who afterwards feized the throne <sup>i</sup>.

*Fourteenth.  
Butan  
Khân.*

Butan Khân was succeeded by his nephew, Jangshi, son of Ulugan, brother of Butan Khân. The brother of this prince, named Yasun Timûr, ambitious of the throne, formed a design against his life: but their mother suspecting his intention, advised Jangshi to be on his guard. Hereupon the khân immediately took the field against his brother; but had the misfortune to lose the battle, with his life.

*Sixteenth.  
Yasun Ti-  
mûr.*

Yasun Timûr, having thus by force ascended the throne, to be revenged on his mother for discovering his conspiracy to his brother, he, like another Nero, caused her belly to be ripped open.

<sup>g</sup> Abu'lgh. ubi supra, p. 163.  
<sup>h</sup> Hist. Timur Bek, vol. i. p. 18.

<sup>h</sup> D'Herbelot. art. Barâk

During the reign of Yasun Timûr, Ali Soltân, a prince of the posterity of Ugaday or Oktay, became so formidable, that neither the khân, nor the other princes descended from Jagatay, were able to make head against him; so that after the death of Yasun Timûr, he brought Great Bukhâria under his subjection.

Seven-  
teenth.  
Ali Soltân  
Khân.

After the death of Ali Soltân Khân, Kazan Soltân re-entered into possession of the dominions belonging to the house of Jagatay Khân. This prince was the son of Jasur Aglen, son of Urek Timûr Khân, son of Kutugay, son of Bosay, son of Mutugan, son of Jagatay: so that there were in all sixteen khâns of this last prince's posterity, who reigned, without interruption, one hundred and nine years over the provinces of Mawara'lnahr or Great Bukhâria. After them indeed other khâns lived in that country; but they were such as only bore the name of khân, without having the power; each head of a tribe assuming the liberty of doing what he pleased, and obeying the khân no farther than he thought fit\*.

Eighteenth.  
Kazan  
Khân.

Soltân Kazân began his reign in the year 733; but was Hejra 733.  
A.D. 1332.  
  
Death and character.

very cruel, and so tyrannical, that when he sent for the princes his dependents to court on any occasion, they commonly made their wills before they went. Mîr Kazagan, one of the most considerable princes of his time, in conjunction with others, took up arms against him; but were defeated in 746, and their leader was wounded in the eye with an arrow by Kakân himself; so that he not only lost that eye, but was quite blind for a long time after. The grand khân returned to Karshi, where he had the misfortune to lose so many horses by the severity of the winter, that almost all his cavalry were reduced to march on foot. Mîr Kazagan, who had advice of this particular, without loss of time attacked the khân, who was slain in the battle in the year 747.

Hejra 746.  
A.D. 1345.

After Kazân Khân's death Mîr Kazagan placed on the throne a prince of the race of Oktay Khân, called Dâshmenja Aglen; but soon after put him to death, and at length advanced to the dignity of grand khân Bayân Kuli, son of Sorgâdû, son of Dava Khân. This prince was esteemed for his justice and liberality; while Mîr Kazagan, who assumed the government of the kingdom, acquitted himself to the satisfaction of all his subjects. After his death, which happened by the hands of his son-in-law in 759, he was succeeded by his son Mirza Abdol-

Nineteenth.  
Dâshmenja  
Khân.

Twentieth.  
Bayân Kuli  
Khân.

\* Abu'lgh. ubi supra, p. 168, & seqq.

*Hejra 759.* A.D. 1357. *Iah*, who confirmed Beyân Kuli Khan in his dignity ; but soon after caused him to be assassinated, to obtain the empress, with whom he was enamoured, and placed Timûr Shâh Aglen on the throne.

*Twenty-first.*

*Timûr*

*Shâh Khân.*

Timûr Shâh Khân was son of Bisûn (or Yasun) Timûr Khân, son of Ulagan, son of Doyji Khan : but he did not long enjoy his dignity ; for the princes, shocked at Abdollah's conduct, made war upon him, routed his forces, and having taken his brothers, with the khân, put them all to death<sup>1</sup>.

*Twenty-second.*

*Adel Soltân Khân.*

Adel Soltân Khân succeeded Timûr Shâh ; and was the son of Mohammed Pulad, son of Konza Khân, son of Doyji Khân. According to Abû'lghâzi Khân, two heads of tribes, Amîr Timûr, and Amîr Huzzayn, nephew of Abdollah, son of Amîr Kazagan, seized the Khân, and caused him to be drowned.

*Twenty-third.*

*Kabûl Soltân Khân.*

*Hejra 765.* A.D. 1362.

Kabûl Soltân Khân, son of Dorji, son of Iljaktay, son of Doyji Khân, was, after the death of Adel Soltân Khân, established in his room by the two lords above mentioned ; who, in his reign, seized the city of Bâlk, and flew the khân<sup>m</sup>. This event happened in the year 765, according to Sharifo'ddin Ali ; who, without mentioning any thing of Adel Soltân Khân, says, that, after the defeat of the Getes, the princes of Great Bukhâria aiming at independency, Timûr and Huzzayn, to prevent anarchy, found it necessary to elect a grand khân ; whereupon Kabûl Shâh Aglen was proposed, and chosen in a general assembly<sup>n</sup>.

*Twenty-fourth.*  
*Seyrukta-mish Khân.*

After the death of Kabûl Soltân Khân, Syruk Tamish was advanced to the dignity of khân. He was the son of Danishmanja, son of Kaydu, son of Kashî, son of Ugaday or Oktay Khân. He was created khân in 1369 by Timûr ; who, after Huzzayn's death, ordered the khân, Kabûl Shâh (or Soltân), made by that prince, to be slain<sup>o</sup>. Sior-gatmish reigned nineteen years, dying at Bokhâra in the year 1388, while Timûr was on his march to Karazm. Timûr, as soon as he returned to Samarkand, established soltân Mahmûd, the late khân's son, in his father's place.

*Twenty-fifth.*  
*Mahmûd Soltân Khân.*

Mahmûd Khân, whose name Timûr caused to be written on the top of his orders, to make the people believe that he observed the laws of Jenghîz Khân, in acknowledging one of his descendants for khân : this titular prince followed Timûr in his expeditions, particularly that against Bayezid, and was often sent to make inroads into

<sup>1</sup> Sharifo'd. Hist. Timur Bek, cap. 1, 2. p. 4. 14, & seqq.  
<sup>m</sup> Abulgh. ubi supra, p. 171. <sup>n</sup> Hist. Tim. Bek, lib. i cap. 11. p. 53. <sup>o</sup> Ibid. p. 124. 128.

the Othmân territories ; in one of which he died in 1402, near Sattala in Anatolia, where he was seized with a violent distemper.

La Croix adds another khân, as the thirty-first, whom he names Tumen Kotluk Aglen ; and says he was crowned by Timûr in 1690 : but he must certainly be mistaken, since Mahmûd lived twelve years after. This, therefore, is the last of the khâns of the race of Jenghîz Khân, who reigned in the empire of Jagatay ; for after Timur's death the dignity of khân was suppressed by his successors, who governed in their own name, and founded a new dynasty.

#### S E C T. IV.

*Of the Descendents of Jagatay Khân, who reigned in Little Bukhâria.*

ALTHOUGH Jagatay Khân possessed both the Bukhârias, yet, after his death, the empire was divided among the princes of his family, every one seizing a part, according to his power. It is likely, therefore, that Little Bukhâria separated very early from the Greater ; and had a succession of khâns, till about the beginning of the fourteenth century : when, by some means or other, the line happened to fail. On this occasion, we are told by a Tartarian author, that the inhabitants of the cities of Kâshgar and Yarkian, and of the countries of Alatakh and the Vigûrs (or Igûrs), finding none of Jagatay's posterity among them, who was capable of filling the vacant throne, saw themselves under a necessity of calling in Amul Khoja, who then reigned in Great Bukhâria, under the name of Ifan Boga Khân <sup>o</sup>.

This prince, the son of Doyji Khân, having no children by his wife Satil Tamish, had commerce with a slave called Manlaghi, who became pregnant. Satil Tamish, being incensed at this amour, one day, when the khân was gone a-hunting, gave her in marriage to a Mungl chief, named Shiragol, and obliged him to carry her with him into his own country. Amul Khoja, at his return, was informed of what had passed ; but not willing to quarrel with his wife, seemed to take no notice of the step she had

*First.  
Amul Khoja  
Khân.*

<sup>o</sup> Abulgh. Hist. Turks, &c. p. 176.

taken. Some time after this transaction he died ; and, as he left no issue, the state was rent in pieces by different factions. In this extremity Amîr Yalawji, one of the principal lords of Kâshgar, sent Tash Timûr in quest of Manlaghi ; whom at length he found, with her son, called Togalak (or Togluk), playing with his brother-in-law. Amûr, watching his opportunity, carried off the boy to Kashgar, where he was immediately proclaimed khân by the name of Togalak Timûr Khân.

A.D. 134<sup>7</sup>.

*Second.  
Togalak  
Timûr  
Khân.*

A great part of this khân's reign was employed in suppressing the factions which opposed him in the countries above mentioned : but, when he had established himself firmly, he entered with a powerful army into Great Buharia, and brought that province also under his obedience. Then, leaving his son Elias Khoja to govern in Samarkand, he returned to the city of Kâshgar, where he died.

Togalak Timûr was the first descended from Jenghîz Khân, reigning in Kâshgar, who embraced the Mohammedan religion. As he was one day hunting, he observed several foreign merchants in the place which he had chosen for assembling the game, contrary to his express proclamation. In a transport of passion he ordered them to be brought bound before him ; and asked, why they infringed his laws ? Sheykh Samalo'ddin, who was among them, answered, that they were ignorant of any such prohibition, as being strangers from the country of Kattak. The khân replied, “ Perhaps you are Tajiks, and, consequently, worse than dogs.” “ If we were not true believers (rejoined the sheykh), there would be grounds for making no more account of us than dogs ; because, in that case, notwithstanding the reason we are endowed with, we shoud yet be less reasonable than beasts .”

*Turns Mo-  
hammeden;*

This answer having touched the khân's heart, at his return from the chace he sent for the sheykh, and in private said to him, “ What is your religion, that you durst make me such an answer ? ” The sheykh, thus questioned, explained the articles of the Mohammedan faith ; and Togalak Timûr was so fully convinced of its truth, that he ordered him to repair, at a proper season, to concert the means for establishing it in his dominions. The sheykh dying soon after his return to his own country, his son Sheykh Rashîdo'ddin, pursuant to his father's orders, repaired to Kâshgar : but not being able to obtain access to

\* Abu'lgh, ubi sup. p. 177, & scq.

the khân, he went one morning to a hill near the castle, where he said his prayers so loud, that he awaked Togalak Timûr; who sent to him to know the reason why he bawled so dreadfully. The sheykh taking this opportunity to execute his commission, that prince no longer deferred embracing Mohammedism. All the lords of his court followed his example, excepting one; who, standing forth, offered to put his conversion on this issue: "There is (said he), among our people, a man endowed with extraordinary gifts: now, if the sheykh will venture a fall with this person, and throws him, I will embrace his religion; otherwise I will not." The khân was unwilling to permit such a trial of skill; but the sheykh pressing for liberty to accept of the challenge, he at length consented. Rashido'd-din hereupon advancing to the Mungl, with one back-stroke of his hand on the stomach, laid him prostrate on the floor, where for a good while he remained motionless. At length, getting up, he fell at the sheykh's feet, and declared he was ready to become a Moslem. The lord, who had proposed this trial, embraced the faith; and all the Mungls who were subject to Togalak Timûr Khân, to the number of a hundred and sixty thousand, followed their example.

Amîr Yalawî, who was instrumental in the khân's advancement, dying, Togalak conferred on his son amîr Khudaydat, though but seven years old, all his father's employments. Kamro'ddîn, the youngest of the amîr's five paternal uncles, desired that he might officiate for his nephew till he came of age: this request the khân not thinking proper to grant, Kamro'ddîn, who was very ambitious, as well as powerful, conceived a violent hatred against him; yet concealed it during his life: but, after his death, revolted against his son Ilyas Khoja (or Elias Koja), who succeeded on the throne of Kâshgar, and caused him, with all his family, to the number of eighteen persons, to be assassinated: then, seizing the government, gave the people liberty, by proclamation, to kill any of Togalak Timûr's kindred, who were to be found.

At the time of Kamro'ddîn's revolt, Amîr Aga Khatûn, one of Togalak's wives, being delivered of a son named Kezra Khojah, in order to secure him from the tyrant, she trusted him to the care of amîr Khudaydai, who never could be prevailed on by his uncle to deliver up the young prince; and war breaking out afterwards between Amîr Timûr (who reigned in Mawara'l-nahr, now Great Bukhâria) and the usurper, Khudaydat took that opportunity to send

*Third.  
Ilyas Khoja  
Khân.*

*Fourth.  
Kamro'ddin usurps.*

send him, under a trusty guard, to the mountains of Bâdâghshân, where jasper is found. This war was carried on for some years with much fury; and such equality of success, that, after five bloody battles, it seemed doubtful which would finally get the advantage. At length Timûr advancing with a powerful army, at a time when Kamro'ddîn fell sick, the troops of Kâshgar, destitute of a chief, fled, not daring to wait for the enemy. Kamro'ddîn was, in this confusion, carried, for security, into a desert to the east of the capital city: but, after the retreat of Timûr's army, he never could be found; although a long time after his subjects discovered, that he resided with Malek A-jân, a man entirely unknown.

*Fifth. Kezra Khoja Khân.* Amir Khudaydat, seizing this opportunity, brought back Kezra Khoja from his obscure retreat, and caused him to be proclaimed khân, with the usual solemnities. This prince reigned thirty years over the country of Kâshgar; and all those who have since possessed that throne, have been descended from him. We know very little of the actions of this prince, excepting what we find in the history of Timûr Bek, who made war on him in 1389, plundered his country, and capital city Aymal Gûjû; pursued him, on one side, beyond the river Irtîsh, and, on the other, to Yaldûz (or Yalis), and Karakoja (or Aramuth, near Khamîl, in Little Bukhâria); in short, drove him out of Jetah. Next year he made another expedition into the same country; and, at Al Maleg, hearing of Kamro'ddîn, followed him beyond the Irtîsh, driving him into the woods towards Tawlas<sup>r</sup>.

*Succession established.* This is all the account we can find relating to this branch of Jagatay Khân, excepting a few scattered particulars. Among the rest, Mahamed was khân of the kingdoms of Kâshgar and Chalis (that is, of Little Bukhâria), in 1603, when Goes the Jesuit travelled through the country, in his way to China; so that, on the authority of Abû'lghâzi Khân, he must have been descended from Kezra Khoja, as well as the khân, who reigned in 1665, when that prince finished his history: but, in 1683, Little Bukhâria was subdued by the Elûths, or Kalmûks<sup>s</sup>.

<sup>r</sup> Abu'lgh. ubi sup. p. 179, & seq.  
cap. 3. p. 325. & cap. 9. p. 345.

<sup>s</sup> Hist. Tim. Bek, lib. ii.

## C H A P. XVI.

*History of the Descendents of Jenghîz Khân,  
who reigned in Irân, or Persia at Large.*

## S E C T. I.

*The Reign of Hulígû Khân.*

FR OM the death of Jenghîz Khân, which happened in 625 of the Hejra, of Christ 1227, the country of Irân (or Persia at large), with the neighbouring countries which he had conquered, were governed by officers appointed by his successors, who reigned at Karakoram, in the eastern parts of Tartary, till the year 651; when Mangu, fourth khân of the Mungls, with a design to extend his empire, raised three great armies: one of them was sent towards Hindustân, or India, the second to Korea, and the third into Irân. This last, which was the most considerable of the three, the khân intrusted to the conduct of his brother Hulâgû, who had a general under him of great learning and experience, called Kokân. This army, in the Chinese history, is said to have been designed against the khalif of Bâghdâd; whereas, according to the Persian historians, the khalif was attacked at the persuasion of a famous Persian astronomer <sup>†</sup>.

Hulâgû, the son of Tuli Khân, fourth son of Jenghîz Khân, was furredmed Il Khân; from whence his posterity took the title of Ilkhanians. This prince crossed the Jihûn in the year 653, to enter Irân: he was accompanied by his brother Sontay Ogul, and several great lords from divers parts: he carried with him also his eldest son Abâka, and another called Yafimun, with his wives Dukuz Khatûn, a Christian lady, and Al Jay Khatûn. Arriving in the neighbourhood of Samarkant, he there encamped, and lost his brother Sontay Ogul. Argûn, appointed governor of the countries to the south of the Jihûn, came to wait on him, with several lords of that province: Hulâkû, after having examined into the state of the country, resolved to purge it of the Ismaelians, who had for a long time committed great disorders.

*Western ex-  
pedition  
under Hu-  
lakû.*

A.D. 1255.

*Enters  
Irân.*

<sup>†</sup> Gaubil, Hist. de Gengh. p. 113, 136.

We have already, in our history of the Arabs, given an account of this dynasty of Ismaelians, or Affassins, specifying in what manner Rucno'ddin Khuz Shâh, their last sovereign, submitted, and was put to death with his whole family.

Hulâkû, while he was employed in besieging the castles of the Molâhedah, or Ismaelians, sent an ambassador to the khalif Al Mostâassem, to desire his assistance. The khalif would have answered his request; but the wazîrs and princes opposed his inclination; alledging, that Hulâkû did not want forces, but made the demand only to weaken Bâghdâd, that he might the more easily take it. When the castles were reduced, II Khân sent another ambassador to reproach Al Mostâassem for neglecting to send him succours. The prime wazîr, being consulted what was to be done on this occasion, told them, that the prince ought to be appeased with very rich presents: but while they were getting them ready, Dowaydâr and his party insinuated that the wazîr corresponded with the Tatars, and intended to betray them; for this reason the khalif, instead of a great number of costly presents, sent only a few of little value. Hulâkû, provoked at this mark of contempt, gave the khalif to understand, that he should repair to the camp himself, or send thither either the wazîr Dowaydâr, or Solymân Shâh: but, as none of them would obey Al Mostâassem's command, he sent others; a step which not satisfying Hulâkû, he ordered Bayejû Nowayn, and Sunjak Nowayn to march by the way of Erbel (or Arbela), while himself took the road through Holwân (B).

*First.  
Khân Hu-  
lakû.*

*Mausel  
submits.*

As soon as Badro'ddin Lûlû, lord of Mausel (or Musol), heard that Bâghdâd was taken, he sent his son Al Mâlek Al Sâleh Ismaël, with part of his army, to the assistance of Hulâkû; who, looking on him with a stern countenance, reproached him and his father with their backwardness in bringing their succours; saying, " You waited to see who should get the better; and if the khalif had been victor, would have gone to him, instead of coming to me." Badro'ddin, terrified when he heard his son, at his return, repeat these words, which he considered as presaging no good towards him, immediately-resolved to prepare a magnificent present: to make up which, he not only employed all the precious stones and jewels that were in his own treasury, but stripped his rich subjects of their wealth;

(B) For the particulars of this expedition, including the siege of Bâghdâd, and the death

of the Khâlf Al Mostâassem, we must refer the reader to our history of the Arabs.

requiring

requiring the very bracelets of their women, and the pearls out of their children's ears. With this offering he set out for the mountains of Hamadân, to pay his respects to Hulâkû; who received him very kindly, in reverence to his years; made him sit beside him on the same sofa; and permitted him to touch his ear-rings, in which were two union pearls of great value. Badro'ddîn, after having paid homage, returned to Mausel, overjoyed at his good fortune, and amazed at the power, majesty, and wisdom of Hulâkû.

In the course of the same year Al Afshîrâf, lord of Miyafarekin,<sup>Miyafare-  
kin's block-  
aded.</sup> made a visit to Al Mâlek Al Nâsr, lord of Halep, or Aleppo, requesting assistance of him, that he might prevent the Mungls from entering Syria: but Al Nâsr, looking upon his apprehensions as altogether groundless, paid no regard to his intreaties. Al Afshîrâf thus repulsed, went away in anger; and on his return to Miyarekin, not only drove out the Mungl governors, but hung up a priest, whom the khân had sent to him with mandates. Mean time the Mungl army, led by Yashmût, son of Hulâkû, following him, invested the city. In one day and night they surrounded it with walls and a ditch, then placing their engines, vigorously attacked it; but finding the place was not to be taken by force, they turned the siege into a blockade<sup>4</sup>.

In 657 Hulâkû sent an ambassador to Al Mâlek Al Nâsr, lord of Halep, with letters, exhorting him to submit, and avoid the khalif's fate, by coming to his camp without delay. As his lords would not permit him to obey this summons, Al Nâsr, in great consternation, sent his son Al Mâlek Al Azîz, with a large sum of money, and rich presents. After Al Azîz had waited the whole winter, he received this answer: "We required to see Al Mâlek Al Nâsr, not his son. If therefore he really be for us in his heart, let him come to us, otherwise we will go to him." When Al Nâsr heard this declaration he was greatly terrified, not knowing what course to take. Hulâkû afterwards sent for Azzo'ddîn, king of Rûm, and his brother Rocno'ddîn, who obeying his summons, were received with great honour and kindness: then having divided the dominion between them, he began his march for Syria, taking with him the Seljûk princes; who, on their arrival at the Euphrates, were permitted to return into their own country.

<sup>4</sup> Abu'lfar, p. 344, & seq.

**Hejra 658.** In 658 he arrived at Harrân, with an army of eighty thousand men, which city, with Roha, or Orfa, surrendered on conditions; nor were any of the inhabitants injured; but those of Sarûj were all put to the sword for not obeying the Mungl mandate. Hulâkû II. Khân ordered three bridges to be laid over the Euphrates; one near Matîya, another at Kalao'rûm, and the third not far from Karkisia; by which all his forces having crossed into Syria, they made a great slaughter towards Manbej (C). Then the army dividing in order to reduce the cities and castles, only a few soldiers took the route of Halep. Al Mâlek Al Moâddham, eldest son of Salâho'ddîn, or Salâdîn, advanced to meet them; but, being put to flight, returned to the city. The party which marched to Moarrah, pillaged that place; but Hamah and Hems surrendered on terms. When Al Mâlek Al Nâsr heard of these misfortunes, he betook himself, with his wives, children, and most valuable effects, into the deserts of Al Karak and Al Shawbak for shelter.

*and sub-  
dued.*

When the Mungls came to Damascus, the principal men delivered up the city, which received no injury from the enemy. Hulâkû himself pitched his camp before Halep; and having raised a mount to command it, began to play his engines. The attack was chiefly made against the gate of Erâk, or Irâk, which was found to be the weakest part; so that being forced in a few days, the Mungls entered, and slew more people than they had massacred at Baghhdâd. Nor did the castle hold out long: then proceeding to the castle Al Harem, the inhabitants were willing to surrender; but not caring to trust to his word, required the oath of a Mussulman for their security. Il Khân consented; and they chose Fakro'ddîn, governor of the castle of Halep, because they said he was a truly honest man; who being sent to them, took all the oaths they proposed, and then they opened their gates to the Mungls; but Hulâkû made them pay dear for their suspicion; for he first ordered Fakro'ddîn to be slain, and then all those who had been in the castle, without sparing any of either sex, or even the children in their cradles\*.

\* Abu'l'sar, p. 346, & seqq.

(C) Manbej is a corruption of Manbe, or Mambe, or Bambe, the ancient Bambyce, or Hierapolis; called by Pliny,

Magog, instead of Mabog, the Syrian name; an error uncorrected in Hardouin's last edition.

Hulâkû, after these examples of perfidy and vengeance, returned eastward, leaving in Syria a great commander, named Ketbûga, with ten thousand horse. When he arrived at Tel Bâsher he was joined by the army, which had taken Miyafarekîn, and brought with them Al Ashrâf its prince; after having put to the sword the few inhabitants whom the famine had spared. Il Khân caused Al Ashrâf to be slain; but gave the government to that prince's commanders. When he arrived near Mardîn, he sent to the lord of that place, who, unwilling to obey the summons, sent his son Modâffero'ddîn; because he accompanied Hulâkû, when in Syria, along with Al Mâlek Al Sâleh, son of sultân Badro'ddîn Lûlû, late lord of Mausel. Hulâkû bad him go back to his father, and command him to repair to the camp, and not turn rebel, otherwise he should be severely punished; but the father, instead of taking his son's advice, caused him to be imprisoned.

Upon this provocation the Mungls besieged Mardîn; but could not have taken it in less than two or three years, had not the king, and most of the inhabitants, died of the pestilence: in consequence of which calamitous events, Al Modâffer surrendered the castle, and all the wealth belonging to the city. When Hulâkû was informed what that prince had suffered, he treated him with much affection, and appointed him king in his father's room. Mean time Ketbûga, who was left in Syria, having discovered Al Mâlek Al Nâsr's lurking place, sent men to seize and carry him to Hulâkû, who was pleased to see him, and promised to restore him to his kingdom; but while fortune seemed to flatter his hopes, Kotûz, sultân of the Turkmâns, who reigned in Egypt, hearing that Hulâcû was returning home, and had left Ketbûga behind him, with no more than ten thousand men, raised a great army, and attacked that general, who was killed in the battle, his forces were defeated, and his children taken prisoners. When advice of this disaster reached Il Khân, who was then in the mountains of Al Tak (D), he was violently enraged, and ordered Al Mâlek Al Nâsr, with his son Al Mâlek Al Dhâher, and all belonging to him, to be put to death<sup>y</sup>.

Kotuz, sultân of Egypt, after the victory just mentioned, recovered Syria, and having placed governors in Halep, Affairs of Syria.

<sup>y</sup> Abu'lfar. p. 348, & seq. D'Herb. p. 445.

(D) Another copy reads Al Atlak.

Damascus,

Hejra 659.  
A.D. 1260.

Damascus, and the other provinces, returned to recruit his forces in order to oppose the Mungls; but when he had advanced as far as Gazza, Bibars, called Al Bunkokdár the Lesser, revolting, slew him, and seized the kingdom. This sultân, who became very famous, took from the Franks all the cities and castles which they possessed along the coast of Syria. However, in 659, the Mungls entered Syria a second time, under the command of a general named Gûgâlkî; and having proceeded almost as far as Hems, making great devastation, and destroying the people, returned to Halep. There he ordered all the inhabitants and peasants, who had retired thither, to go forth into the plain, under pretence of numbering and conducting them to their respective homes. There he exclaimed, "If your hearts had been sincerely towards us, you would not have fled from us;" and, without any more ceremony, put every soul to the sword, so that none of them escaped, excepting those who were cautious enough to stay in Halep. In the mean time, as soon as the Egyptians understood that the Mungls had evacuated Syria, they entered that country, and seized it again.

A famous  
observa-  
tory.

Hej. 663.  
A.D. 1264.

Huiâkû  
dies.

Hulâkû, after his expedition into Syria, had returned into Azerbijân, to take some repose; he assembled the principal astronomers to be found in the Mohâmmadan countries, to whom he gave large pensions, and furnished all sorts of necessary instruments for making observations at Marâgha (E), where he built a famous observatory. He died in 663, after he had reigned six years, since the death of his brother <sup>z</sup>: for the authors consulted by D'Herbelot suppose, that this prince, during the lifetime of Mangû Khân, governed Irân, as his deputy; but that on his death, in 657, he succeeded as fifth khân of the Mungls, in that part of Asia. However, it appears, from what has been elsewhere related, that Koplay Khân was the immediate and true successor of Mangû, not only at Karakoram, but in all parts of the Mungl dominions, or empire; and that Hûlakû actually acknowledged Koplay as such. It is true, his successors in Irân did at length throw off their subjection to the successors of Jenghîz Khân, in the East: but it is not expressly mentioned under what prince this revolution happened.

<sup>z</sup> D'Herbel. ubi supra, p. 454.

(E) A city on the lake of the south-west of Tabriz, or the Shâh, about forty miles to Tauris.

One of the principal wives of this monarch, named *His wives;* Dughûz Khatûn, was a Christian, and accompanied him in all his military expeditions ; being much esteemed by him, for her prudence and knowledge.

The dominions which Hulâkû left at his death consisted of the great province of Korastân, of which Nishabûr, was, *and large dominions;* at that time, the capital; Jebal, or Persian Irâk, the country of the Parthians, whose capital was Ispahân ; Irâk Arabî, called also Irâk Bâbelî, comprising Assyria (or Kûrdestân and Khaldea), whose metropolis was Bâghdâd ; Adber-bejân (or Azerbejân), that is, Media, its chief city Tabriz, or Taurîz ; Pârs, or Proper Persia, its capital Shîraz, formerly called Cyropolis ; Khûrestân, or Khûzeftân, the ancient Susiana, whose capital was Toster, or Shûster, formerly called Susa, of Persia ; Diyârbekr, which comprehends part of Assyria, or Kûrdestân, and Al Jazîreh, or Mesopotamia, whereof Mûssal (or Mosul), built near the ancient Nineveh, was the capital ; lastly, the country of Rûm, or the Romans, containing Armenia, Georgia, and Asia Minor, whose capital was Konîya, the ancient Iconium <sup>b</sup>.

The Oriental historians begin this dynasty of Mungl *Found the* *dynasty.* princes with Jenghîz Khân : but as Hulâkû was the first of his descendants who reigned in Irân, we shall place him at the head of it. Abû'l-Faraj dates the commencement of the Mungl dynasty in Irân, or Persia at large, from the destruction of the khalifat, in the year 656. The Persian historians allow him a reign of six years only, reckoning from the death of Mangû Khân, in 657.

According to Mirkhond, Hulâkû, before his death, divided his dominions among three of his sons, Abâka, Yashmut, and Tandon ; to the first he gave the kingdoms of Irâk, Mazanderân, and Khorassân ; to the second, Arân, or Armenia, and Azerbejân ; to the third he assigned Diyârbekr and Rabîya, which are two provinces of Al Jazîreh or Mesopotamia. Hulâkû had, besides these three sons, two others, Nikûdar Oglan, and Targahe, (or Targhiyeh) Khân, who had no share in their father's partition of his dominions ; yet one of them obtained the empire, which was likewise inherited by the children of the other <sup>c</sup>.

<sup>b</sup> D'Herbel. ubi sup.      <sup>c</sup> Mirkhond ap. Teixeira Hist. Pers. p. 309, & seq.

## S E C T. II.

*The Reign of Abâka Il Khân.*

Hejra 663.  
A.D. 1264.

*2. Khân  
Abâka.*

*His first  
regulations.*

AFTER the death of Hulâkû, his son Abâka was in an assembly consisting of his sons the princes, and the ladies his widows, unanimously acknowledged for his successor. He was a prince endowed with prudence, capacity, learning, and knowlege: which great qualities rendered him dear to his subjects, and gave him success in all his transactions, both foreign and domestic<sup>d</sup>.

As soon as this prince ascended the throne, he sent one of his brothers to Darbend, on the Caspian sea, and another into Khorassân, to secure the passages into his dominions from the descendants of Tûshi or Jûgi Khân on one side, and those of Jagatay Khân on the other. He declared Sunjak (or Sowenjak) Nowayn general of his armies, and his lieutenant throughout his empire; bestowed the employment of grand wazîr, and president of his councils, on Shamfo'ddîn Mohammed, who made Bahao'ddîn, his son, wazîr of Ispahân; and Alao'ddîn Athao'l Molk, his brother, wazîr of Baghdaâd. Under the wise government of this latter, that capital recovered its lustre, which it had lost by the arms of Hulâkû; on the contrary, Bahao'ddîn exercised so much rigour at Ispâhan, that he often involved the innocent in the same punishment with the guilty; nor could the advice of his father Shamfo'ddîn, to whom frequent complaints were made, reclaim him, till death freed the inhabitants from his severity.

Hej. 664.  
A.D. 1265.

*Invaded  
by Barkah.*

At the beginning of Abâka's reign, Barkah Khân, of the race of Jagatay Khân, who reigned in Great Bukhâria, having marched with a body of forces on the side of Darbend, with design to break into Persia, Shamat, brother of Abâka, who was posted in that city, opposed his entrance; and, having worsted him in battle, obliged him to retire. But this defeat served only to irritate that prince: for, soon after, he raised an army of three hundred thousand men, with which he threatened utter desolation to Persia, had not Abâka Khân marched in time with all the forces of his empire. Barkah Khân, after having conducted his army through the vast plains of Kipjak, round the north side of the Caspian Sea, had forced the narrow

<sup>d</sup> Abu'l Faraj, ubi sup. p. 355.

passages

passages between that sea and mount Caucâsus, commonly called the Irôn Gates ; and was already on the banks of the river Kûr, when Abâka Khân appeared at Teflîs, capital of Gurjestân, or Georgia : but, as the two armies were on the point of giving battle, Barkah Khân, very happily for Persia, was taken out of the world ; for, immediately on his death, his army divided, and returned into Tartary.

In 666, Borak Oglan, who was also of Jagatay Khân's race, sent to the court of Abâka Khân one Mâssûd, under pretence of a compliment, but in reality to examine into the state of affairs, and observe the roads by which Persia could be invaded. This design being perceived by a soldier, he informed Shamfo'ddîn, the grand wazîr, who continued to treat him with great civility, as if he suspected nothing, resolving to have him seized, or cut off in his return ; but Mâssûd had taken such precautions, by causing horses to be placed along the road, that he was not overtaken in his retreat. Borak Khân, having received the necessary informations from this spy, in 667 passed the Jihûn, or Amû, with one hundred thousand horse ; and, having reduced the great province of Khorassân, where he met with little opposition, he advanced as far as Azerbejân, where Abâka had the bulk of his forces. The van of the Tatars was repulsed ; but next year the two armies faced each other not far from Herat. There a bloody battle was fought ; wherein victory, after a long suspense, declared in favour of Abâka, who remained master of the field, with all the baggage and booty of the enemy. Borak, after this defeat, was obliged to repass the Amû ; and Abâka, having left his brother Benshîn with troops sufficient to guard Khorassân, returned to Azerbejân <sup>e</sup>.

Bundokdâr (F), lord of Egypt, sent to require Hâtem, king of Armenia, to pay him tribute, and settle a commerce between their respective subjects. As Hâtem would not consent to this submission, for fear of the Mungls, Bundokdâr invaded his dominions. The Armenian king, upon this surprize, made a journey, to implore assistance of Nefji, the Mungl governor in Rûm (or Anatolia) ; who answered, that he could not join him without Abâka's or-

Hejra 666.  
A.D. 1267.

and Borak  
Khân.

A.D. 1269.

The Mam-  
lûks ra-  
vage Lesser  
Armenia ;

<sup>e</sup> Khondemir ap. D'Herb. p. 1. art. Abâka.  
art. Abâka.

<sup>f</sup> Idem, p. 2.

(F) He was fourth sultân of after the family of Ayub, or the Turkish mamlûks, or of Salâho'ddin. slaves, who reigned in Egypt

der. Mean while the brothers and sons of Hâtem marched, with what forces they could raise, to oppose the entrance of the Egyptians, but were defeated; and one of the king's sons being slain, the other was taken prisoner. For twenty days the enemy plundered Sîs and Ayyâs, carrying away great numbers of people captives. At length, when they were gone, Hâtem arrived with an army of Mungls and Rûms; who, finding nothing but a desolate country without people, indulged himself in good cheer, and consumed every thing which the Egyptians had left.

Hâtem, grieved for the devastation made in his country, but more for the loss of his son, sent to offer Bundokdâr cities and castles, with a large sum of money, for his ransom. Bundokdâr replied, that he would release him, provided only Sankar Al Ashkar, who was a slave among the Hejra 668.  
A.D. 1269. Mungls, should be sent home. Hâtem, on this intimation, made a journey to the court of Abâka; who, pitying his distress, ordered him to go back, and promised to send Al Ashkar to him, if he was to be found. Accordingly, next year, Al Ashkar was conveyed to him from Samarkand; and being transmitted to Bundokdâr, this latter returned Hâtem's son in exchange. Afterwards Hâtem made another journey, to intreat permission to resign the crown to his son; to which proposal Abâka consented: but the joy this favour created was greatly allayed by a dreadful earthquake, which, in 670, happened in Armenia; and, besides overturning many castles, destroyed above one hundred thousand people.

Hejra 675.  
A.D. 1276. In the year 675, Abâka Khân went to pass the winter at Baghdâd. Hâtem's son, now king of Armenia, understanding, by his correspondents, that Bundokdâr intended to invade the country of Rûm, through the instigation of some of the natives, gave notice to the Mungl commanders to be upon their guard; but Berwânah having persuaded them that it was a false alarm, they neglected his advice; so that the Egyptians came upon them when they were in liquor, and slew them all. After this success, Bundokdâr marched to Kaysariya (or Cæsarea), where he remained fifteen days, but did no mischief to that city; saying, he came not to ravage the country, but to deliver its lord from slavery.

Fly from  
Abâka. When the news of these transactions reached the court of Abâka II Khân, he was greatly enraged; and, assembling his forces, marched towards the country of Rûm; but, before he arrived, the Egyptians had withdrawn into Syria. Then sending for Berwânah, he received him with

with seeming friendship ; and carried him to the camp, under pretence of consulting with him what number of men would be sufficient to secure Rûm against the Egyptians. There, at a banquet, he plied Berwânah well with mares milk, for he drank no wine ; and giving a sign, when the latter went out to make water, an officer in waiting followed, and killed him. Bundokdâr, on his way to Egypt, died at Hems in Syria; some say of poison ; others, of a wound from a Mungl arrow <sup>g</sup>.

In 679 Sayfo'ddîn Kelawn, farnamed Al Alfî (G), having seized the dominion of Syria and Egypt, after the death of Mâlek Al Sâleh, son of Bundokdâr, Sankar Al Ashkar before mentioned, who had opposed his advancement, fled to Rahaba, on the Euphrates, and confederating with Isa Ebn Mohânnâ, a Bedwîn (H) prince, sent an ambassador to invite Abâka II Khân into Syria, promising to deliver into his hands both that country and Egypt. On this promise an army was sent in the year 680, under the command of Kungortay, a younger brother of Abâka ; but when, in winter, they arrived in Syria, Al Ashkar, being afraid to join them, took refuge in the castle of Sâhyûn. The Mungls, nevertheless, advanced as far as Halep ; and having destroyed all the places in their passage, returned into Irân. However, next year they invaded Syria again with fifty thousand troops, under the conduct of Munga Timûr, youngest brother of Abâka, accompanied by the king of Armenia, with all his forces. The enemy, led by Al Alfî and Al Ashkar, who were now reconciled, met them between Hamâh and Hems, where a battle was fought, in which the Mungls prevailed ; but when they were on the point of gaining the victory, and had even put the Syrians to flight, the Arabs of the tribe of Bâni Taglab rushed out of an ambuscade on the left wing of the Mungls ; who, thinking themselves surrounded by another numerous army, fled with precipitation, and were followed by the main body. Mean time the right wing, in which was the king of Armenia, with five thousand Gorjans, defeated the Egyptians who opposed them ; and pursuing them to the gates of Hems, killed a considerable number ; nor did the slaughter cease, till intelligence of the flight of their companions drew them off. In their

Hejra 679.  
A.D. 1280.

Mungls  
invade Sy-  
ria.

Hejra 680.  
A.D. 1281.

A.D. 1282.

*They are  
defeated.*

<sup>g</sup> Abu'lfar. ubi supra, p. 357, & seqq.

(G) He was seventh sultân of the Turkish mamlûks, or third from Bundokdâr.

(H) The Bedwîns, or Badwîns, commonly called Bedowîns, are the Field Arabs.

return, they fell in with some troops of the enemy, who followed their flying squadrons ; hereupon the battle was renewed, in which many were slain on both sides, but at length they returned laden with spoils.

*Abâka's death.*

While Munga Timûr was on his march back through Al Jazîrah, some of his domestics, who had been corrupted, gave him poison one day, after he came out of the bath. The prince, finding himself much indisposed, turned off towards Nisibîn, where he died. This year was fatal likewise to Abâka II Khân himself : he made a progress to Bâghdâd, from whence he returned to Hamadân, where he celebrated Easter-day with the Christians in their church (I). Next day Bahnâm, a Persian, gave him a magnificent feast ; but on Tuesday he found himself very ill, and became delirious ; so that he died on Wednesday the 20th of Dhu'l'hajjah, after a reign of seventeen years<sup>b</sup>.

### S E C T. II.

*The Reigns of Nikûdar Oglan, or Ahmed Khân; Argûn Khân; Genjatû Khân; Baydû Khân; Gazan, or Kâzan Khân; Aljaytu, or Aljaptu Khân; and Abu-saïd Khân.*

Hejra 681.  
A.D. 1282.

Third.  
Khân  
Ahmed.

Turns Mo-  
hammedan.

ABAKA II KHÂN being dead, the princes of the blood, and the great men, with one consent, conferred the government on Ahmed, son of Hulâkû by Kutay Khatûn ; as judging him most worthy to reign, and that the empire belonged to him after his brother. To all the qualities requisite in a prince, he joined extensive knowledge and unbounded munificence. Accordingly, one of his first acts was to distribute the treasures which he found among his sons, the grandees, and the army ; nor was his benevolence confined to the Mungls alone, but extended to those of all other nations, including even the Christians<sup>i</sup>. His name was Nikûdar Oglan (K) ; but after he had embraced Mohammedism, he assumed that of Ahmed. On occasion of his conversion, he wrote a long letter to Al Mâlek Al Mansûr Kelawn, sultân of Egypt and Syria, who was at that time the most considerable of all the Mohammedan princes, to inform him that he would publicly profess the Mussulman religion, and offered his favour and protection

<sup>b</sup> Abu'lfar. ubi supra, p. 360.

<sup>i</sup> Idem ibid. p. 361.

(I) Some authors say he was Christian. Mirkond, in Teixeira, Nikûdar, the Good Son.

(K) That is, according to

to all the professors of it. This sultân's change of religion excited great troubles in his family, and also through his dominions; because the Mungls or Tartars of those times had an extreme aversion to the Mohammedans; so that this prince, though endowed with several excellent qualities, could never gain their affections.

These troubles began in the very first year of his reign. Argûn revolts. His nephew Argûn, who could not bear to see him upon a throne to which he himself had pretensions, retired immediately into the province of Khorassân, where he made preparations to dispute the sovereignty with his uncle; but did not declare himself openly till the year 683, when he came to encamp with his forces at Damegân. As soon as Ahmed received advice of these motions at Baghdaâd, Hejra 683. A.D. 1285. he caused his forces to march, under the conduct of Al Inâk, an experienced and valiant commander, who soon dispersed the troops which Argûn had assembled. This young prince, being thus left without an army, was obliged to return to Khorassân, and at length to retreat to the castle of Burdeh; whither Al Inâk did not fail to follow and besiege him. However, without using force, he enticed him out of the fort, by promising to reconcile him to his uncle; but as soon as he arrived at the imperial camp, he was confined by the sultân's order, and guarded by four thousand men.

Ahmed, believing that he had now no sort of danger to fear, resolved to return to Baghdaâd, to enjoy the sweets of peace. Before his departure he gave directions to the amîr Bûga, who guarded Argûn, to deprive him of life in seven, or eight days: but Bûga, in concert with several other lords of the court, who could not relish the soft and delicate manners of the sultân, resolved to set Argûn at liberty, and attack the quarters of Al Inâk. This design being immediately put in execution, Al Inâk was slain, with the principal officers of the sultân who had remained in the rear-guard of the army, which was on the march. Argûn put himself at the head of the most resolute troops, and pursued the sultân; who having received information of this revolt, escaped from the city of Esfarayn, where he then was, in hopes of reaching the camp of his mother Kutay Khâtûn, near Serâb in Azerbejân: but the scouts of Argûn followed him so swiftly, that they soon overtook and brought him to the camp of his nephew. This prince, immediately delivered him into the hands of sultâna Kûngortây, his mother-in-law, who put him to death, to revenge the loss of her children, whom he had treated in the same

same manner. This event happened in the year 683<sup>k</sup>, after he had reigned two years and two months.

### *The Reign of Argún Khán.*

Hejr. 683.  
A.D. 1284.

Fourth.  
Khán Ar-  
gún.

AS soon as Argún was upon the throne, he conferred the chief post in the empire on Buga, or Boga, who disposed of every thing with an almost absolute power. Shamso'ddin Saïd, who was president of the dîwan, that is, chief of the councils, in the reign of Ahmed, upon that prince's deposition, retired from court; and had already left Ispahân, in order to go into Hindûstân, when Argún, whose good-will he suspected, sent for him, and confirmed him in his office; but Buga, finding his authority thus divided, presently contrived how to get rid of his colleague: he accused Said of poisoning his father Abâka; and the too credulous prince, without examining the depositions of the witnesses, sacrificed that great man to the ambition of his rival, who wanted to put in his place a creature of his own<sup>l</sup>.

The wazir  
Saïd put to  
death.

Shamso'ddin was a man endowed with great understanding and experience; perfectly versed in all the arts of government, and eminent for his humility. Several elegies were composed, to console the people for his loss; and the historians report this circumstance of his death, that, when the executioner entered to perform his office, he made the ablution usual before their prayers; and then opening the Koran, to draw the *fâl*, or *good lot*, met with these words: "They who say to God, it is you who are our master, and to those who walk in the right path, and conformable to that belief, God will send angels to comfort them in their afflictions, and assure them of the paradise which has been promised to them."

Hejr. 686.  
A.D. 1287.

A Jew  
wazir.

However this be, Buga, seeing himself delivered from his rival, set no bounds to his ambition, and rose to such a pitch of authority, that he was but one step from becoming master of the whole. At length he took off the mask, and in 686 revolted openly against the sultân; but did not push his fortune any great length, for he was slain miserably, in the midst of his enterprize. After Buga's death, a Jew, named Saedo'ddawlet, by profession a physician, so ingratiated himself with sultân Argún, that all the affairs of the greatest lords of the empire depended on him. He put many of his own nation and religion

<sup>k</sup> Kondemir, ubi supra, p. 72. art Ahmed.  
D'Herb. p. 126. art. Argoun.

<sup>l</sup> Idem ibid. ap.

into

into employments ; without hurting, however, the interest of the Christians, who were very powerful at court. The Mussulmans were the only people who had no credit there, especially since the death of Saïd ; a circumstance which made them murmur continually against both. Argûn, at the solicitation of the Christians, had deprived the Mussulmans of all the places belonging to the judicature, as well as the finances. In short, the two ruling parties carried things so far at last, that they denied them access to the sultân's camp, and in the end forbade them to appear at court.

Argûn, say the historians, had promised the Christians to convert the temple of Mecca into a church ; where, instead of worshipping the Almighty God, they would have adored statues and images : but Providence, which always watches over the preservation of Moslemism, and the prayers of good Mohammedans, prevented this great revolution ; for Argûn fell sick at that very juncture. All those, throughout the empire, who had an interest in the life of that prince, spared neither prayers nor alms ; and the Jew Saedo'ddawlet, who was prime minister, sent express orders into all the provinces, to re-establish whatever had been unseasonably changed ; but as the moment of the sultân's death was fixed, neither their prayers nor alms availed any thing. Mean while Argûn grew extremely weak, and was even near his last agony, when he had the mortification to understand that his favourite the Jew was assassinated by his enemies. In fine, the sultân died in the year 690 ; and the Mussulmans, reckoning his death among the miracles of Mohammed, say, that it restored Moslemism, which had received great dishonour under this prince's reign. Hejra 690.  
A.D. 1291.

Some Arab historians relate, that the favourite Jew was put to death on a suspicion of having poisoned his master. Whether this accusation was true or false, it is certain that the enemies of the Jews, who had beheld, with envious eyes, the great authority they were in, and perhaps suffered many injuries at their hands, took this occasion, after the death of the sultân and his minister, to be revenged, by making a cruel massacre of that people. *The Jews massacred.*

### *The Reign of Ganjatû Khân.*

THIS prince, named also Kaïktû and Kaykatû, was *Fifth.* the son of Abâka Khân, and succeeded Argûn Khân in *Khân Gan-* the empire of the Mungls in Irân. *Khondemîr,* the Per-*jatû,* fian

fian historian, remarks, that the true name of this prince was Aykatû or Gaykatû, which, in the Mungl language, signifies *marvellously fine and shining*. He adds, that this prince, notwithstanding his debauches, was the most liberal of all the descendants of Hulâkû; and administered justice with so much circumspection, that, under his reign, no innocent person suffered death. Bahi Bok, or Bashi Bog, was generalissimo of the armies of this prince, under the title of Amîro'l Omara; and Khovajeh Sadro'd-dîn Khaled Zenjani was his prime wazîr.

**Hejra 694.** Ganjatû Khân fullied all the good qualities which he A.D. 1294. was possessed of, by his excessive lewdness. At length several lords of his court, whose daughters he had seized to put in his haram, conspired against him, and some of them were imprisoned on the occasion: but the rest sent privately to Baydû Ogul, son of Targay, and grandson of Hulâkû, then governor of Baghdâd, informing him, that, if he would take the field without delay, he might easily become master of the empire. Baydû, having assembled a body of forces, advanced towards Mogân (L), where Ganjatû waited for him with his army: but this prince, finding himself betrayed and abandoned by his generals, escaped to a certain grotto; whither being followed by those lords whom he had imprisoned, and who had been released by the rest of the conspirators, he was by them assassinated, in the year 694<sup>m</sup>.

**Sixth.  
Khân Bay-  
dû.** THE partizans of Baydû Khân, having slain Ganjatû, saluted him emperor in the city of Hamadân, and afterwards caused him to be proclaimed through all the provinces and cities of the empire. The first step he took, on ascending the throne, was to testify his gratitude to Dogajar, who had been the principal instrument of his advancement, by giving him the chief command of all his troops; at the same time he made his friend Jamâ-lo'ddin president of the diwân, or his council. Mean time Gâzân or Kâzân, who ever since the death of his father, possessed the government of Khorassân, resolved to revenge the death of Ganjatû; and, for that purpose, consulted with the amîr Newrûz Gâzi; with whom, for some

<sup>m</sup> Khondem. ubi sup. p. 359. art. Gangja.

(L) A great plain in Azerbe-jân, bounded on the north by the rivers Arras and Kûr, and on the east by the Caspian Sea.

time past, he had been in friendship. This amîr was the son of Argûn Aga, who had possessed Khoraffân as governor, under the descendants of Jenghîz Khân, during the space of thirty-nine years. After his father's death, he became an officer in the court of the emperor Argûn Khân, where he continued till such time as that prince put to death Bega, his friend and relation: for being in fear of meeting with the same fate, he fled to the most eastern part of Irân. There, making open profession of Mohammedism, he waged war upon the enemies of that religion, and gained several great advantages over them. On this occasion he had many quarrels with Gâzân, who then governed the province of Khoraffân: but at length, matters being accommodated between them, the amîr came to kiss the feet of that prince, and henceforth became his best friend.

Gâzân having consulted Newrûz about the manner of *takes arms*, wresting the provinces of Azerbejân and Irâk out of the hands of Baydû, to join them to Khoraffân, which he already possessed, that amîr told him boldly, that, if he would embrace Mohammedism, he would do his utmost to put him in possession of the empire, and expel his rival. Gâzân, without hesitation, gave himself up to the direction of Newrûz; and, soon after, made public profession of Moslemism, in the city of Firûzkûh: where a great number of persons embraced the same faith, and engaged in his party. Then he set forward with a numerous army, shaping his march towards Ray; and, arriving in the neighbourhood of that city, sent an ambassador to Baydû, to demand the murderers of sultân Ganjatû: but no regard was paid to his application. He therefore resolved to make use of hostilities; and his scouts having met with the vanguard of Baydû's army, defeated, and took most of them prisoners; while the rest carried the news of this rupture to their camp<sup>n</sup>.

Gâzân, after this advantage, having recourse to artifice, *comes to terms*, sent a second ambassador to Baydû, to excuse what had happened, pretending his troops had been attacked without his knowledge. This apology having been accepted of, it was agreed that the two princes should have an interview, each accompanied by a certain number of persons in his train. They met, and a conference was held; in which, after many compliments on both sides, Gâzân demanded of Baydû the government of the provinces of Pârs and Irâk,

<sup>n</sup> Khondem. ubi sup. p. 178. art. Baidû.

to hold of him by way of homage. The khân, who desired nothing so much as peace, yielded to his request. Then it was agreed, that, the day following, a splendid entertainment should be made, for joy of this accommodation ; and that the two princes should visit each other in his tent : but Gâzân, having been informed that a plot was laid to assassinate him on his entering the khân's tent, broke off the conference, and immediately returned with his army into Khorassân.

**Baydû  
leaves  
Tâm.** However, as soon as he arrived in that province, he sent a third ambassador to acquaint Baydû, that the cause of his hasty return, without taking leave of him, was the advice he had received of a revolt among some of his officers ; and prayed, at the same time, that he would send his orders into the two provinces above mentioned, for delivering them up to him, pursuant to his grant. Baydû dissembled the chagrin which Gâzân's abrupt departure had given him ; and directed Jamâlo'ddîn, his wazîr, to dispatch the orders for putting the officers of that prince in possession of those provinces. Jamâlo'ddîn obeyed ; but at the same time, gave secret orders to the contrary ; so that Gâzân's officers were obliged to return without accomplishing the business which they were sent about. The amîr Newrûz, who managed the affairs of Gâzân, persuaded that prince to send him as deputy to the sultân's court, under pretence of soliciting his interest there ; but the real end of his embassy was, to form a party against Baydû, in favour of his master. In effect, he managed his intrigue so well, that, having gained Dogajar, prime minister of Baydû, they agreed together to dethrone this prince, and set up Gâzân in his room.

**Is deceived  
by Newrûz.** Mean time Baydû, who had some suspicion of Newrûz, caused him to be watched, and would not suffer him to stir out of his palace : but that amîr assured him, with many oaths, that, if he would permit him to return to Khorassân, he would deliver Gâzân, bound, into his hands ; and at length he obtained leave. It is reported, that, as soon as Newrûz returned to Khorassân, to save his oath, he sent a kettle tied up in a bag to Baydû ; thus joining raillery to his knavery ; for Gâzân or Kâzân (which word is pronounced indifferently either way) signifies, in the Mungl or Turkish language, *a kettle*. The sultân perceived, by this equivocation, that he had made a false step, in letting the amîr Newrûz escape out of his hands : but now there was no remedy. In effect, that lord, after having corrupted the principal officers of Baydû's court, went

went back, to dispose Gâzân to put in execution the design which he had long meditated ; while Shamso'ddin arrived very seasonably to forward the enterprize : for he informed Gâzân, who was then at Sebzwâr, of the divisions which reigned among the lords of Baydû's court, and the general aversion which the people had to his person.

Gâzân, finding, by this intelligence, that things were come to the pass he wished them at, lost no time, but sent Newrûz before, with the van-guard of his army. This commander set out immediately, and ravaged the country wherever he came : at the same time he made such haste, that, in one night's space, he reached a camp, which was only two days journey distant from that of the sultân. As soon as Dogajar, and those of his cabal, who had the chief posts in the khân's army, heard that Newrûz was come, they, like traitors, left their camp, and joined his troops. The unfortunate prince, thus abandoned by his army, had no other resource but flight ; and, thinking he might be safe in Nakhshivân or Nakshivân, in Arrân, he took the road to that city : but Newrûz pursued him so eagerly, that he overtook him by the way, and put him to death, after a reign of no more than eight months, in the year 694°.

### *The Reign of Gâzân or Kâzân Khân.*

G A Z A N Khân, who took the name of Mahmûd, after he turned Mohammedan, was the son of Argûn Khân. This prince was no sooner seated on the throne, than he received advice that some of his kindred had passed the Jihûn, in order to dispute the sovereignty. He therefore sent Newrûz against them with a potent army ; who obliged those princes to return, and leave Gâzân to enjoy in peace a kingdom which he governed with much wisdom and equity. Indeed, he often sat personally in his court of justice, where all his subjects might freely make their complaints against the greatest lords and prime ministers of his court ; whom he obliged to make satisfaction, according to the wrongs which they had done ♦

The amîr Newrûz, who had done his master such signal services in Khorassân, was again sent thither in quality of governor : but he had no sooner arrived, than several

*puts to  
death his  
general  
Newrûz,*

♦ Khondem. ubi sup. p. 178. art. Baidu.      ♪ Idem, ubi sup. p. 363. art. Gâzân. Peacock, Suppl. ad Abu'l's. p. 2.

lords

lords of the country, who sought that preferment, and envied his advancement, created a suspicion of him at court; this they confirmed, by means of a letter of Newrûz, which they pretended to have intercepted, and sent to Sadro'ddîn Khâled, president of the diwân; by which he seemed to enter into combination with the king of Egypt, to make war on Gâzân. As soon as the sultân was informed of this plot, he, without enquiring farther into the matter, immediately assembled his troops, in the year 696; A.D. 1296. and, fending them into Khorassân, under the conduct of Kutluk Shâh, ordered that general not to return to court till he had punished Newrûz for his rebellion. Gâzân was at this time at Hamadân, where he usually resided, although he had been crowned in Tauris, the capital of his empire; because the disputes which he had in Syria, with the king of Egypt, obliged him to be near that province. Kutluk Shâh, having entered Khorassân, presently constrained Newrûz to abandon his government, and retire towards Fâkro'ddîn Mâlek Kûrt, who was his son-in-law and creature: but this faithless prince, forgetting all his obligations, as well as duties of alliance and hospitality, delivered him up, loaded with chains, into the hands of Kutluk Shâh; who put him to death on the spot, and sent his head to Gâzân.

*and treasurer,*

In 697, Gâzân gave the government of Khorassân to sultân Aljaptu (or Aljaytu), his brother; who had many disputes with Mâlek Kûrt, on account of the vicinity of their dominions; but at length they came to an agreement, by means of the mufti Shehâbo'ddîn Jâmi. In 699 Gâzân caused his wazîr Sadro'ddîn Renjâni, surnamed Sadr Jehân, to be prosecuted for mismanagement in the finances; but, in reality, with a view to strip him of the great wealth which he possessed. This minister having been put to death, his employment was divided between two considerable officers of state.

*Invades Syria.*

In the course of the same year, Gâzân entered Syria, and gave battle to Naffer, son of Kalawn, sultân of Egypt, near the city of Hêms; in which the latter being defeated, escaped with no more than seven horsemen. After this action, Kutluk Shâh, the Mungl general, took Damascus by composition, and all the rest of Syria was subdued; but shortly after Gâzân had repassed the Euphrates, to return to Hamadân, the Syrians cut the throats of all the Mungl garrisons through the country. In 702 Gâzân made a second expedition into Syria, and advanced to Halep; where, having spent some time in diverting himself, he left the

Hejra 702.  
A.D. 1302.

the care of recovering that province to Kutluk Shâh, and his other generals. In the mean time, Naffer, hearing of his return into Syria, was come with a powerful army to Damascus; where he waited for the khân, who had already passed the Euphrates, in his way back; while his *His forces defeated.* generals, deceived by their spies, and knowing nothing of Naffer's arrival, advanced towards Damascus, expecting to surprise it; when, of a sudden, their vanguard, having descried the army of Naffer, was obliged to come to an engagement. The battle was long and bloody; but although the amîr Jubân exerted himself in a surprising manner, yet, not being well supported by the other Mungl officers, who turned their backs to the enemy, the latter gained a complete victory.

Kutluk Shâh, having been thus vanquished, retired with *His death,* his forces, of which he had lost ten thousand, into Persia; and, near Kazwîn, joined the sultân, who rewarded the valour of the amîr Jubân, and punished with the korrah, or whip, according to the Mungl discipline, those who had not done their duty. He afterwards became bed-ridden; and died, greatly lamented by all his subjects, in a place named Shâm Gâzân, that is, the *Damascus of Gâzân*<sup>4</sup>. The town was built by this emperor of the *and acts.* Mungls, near Tauris, in imitation of the Syrian Damascus, and adorned with a stately mosque; where he was interred in the year 703. It was the only sepulchre of the Mungls which remained standing in the time of Khondemîr, about two hundred years after. He built two other cities, to which he gave the names of Kaherah (or Kayro) and Halep. In the year 702 this prince established Kaykobâd, son of Feramorz, last sultân of the Seljûks of Rûm, or Anatolia, in the sovereignty of these dominions<sup>5</sup>. Gâzân, according to Al Jannâbi, died on the 13th of the month Shawal, near Hamadân; and thence was conveyed to Al Shâm, near Tauris, after he had reigned eight years and about ten months. Some say he was taken off by poison.

#### The Reign of Aljaytu or Aljaptu Khân.

ALJAYTU, or Aljaptu Khân, the brother of Gâzân, relinquished the religion of Jenghîz Khân, and became a Mohammedân; upon which occasion he assumed the name of Gayâtho'ddin Mohammed Khodâbandeb; which last word signifies, in Persian, the *Servant of God.*

Heira 703.  
A.D. 1303.

Eighth  
Khân Al-  
jatu.

<sup>4</sup> Khondemir, ubi supra, p. 363. art. Gâzân.      <sup>5</sup> D'Herbel.  
P. 773. art. Sham Gâzân.

This prince came from the province of Khoraffân to Ar-rajân, where he was crowned emperor ; and gave the post of amîr al omara, which is that of generalissimo, to Kotluk Shâh; dividing the office of prime wazîr between Rashido'd-dîn and Saedo'ddîn ; but this latter, being some time after suspected of committing certain misdemeanors, was put to death, and his place assigned to Ali Shâh. In 704 Aljatu built the city of Soltania, and made it the seat of his empire. Several lords of Syria and Egypt came to implore his assistance against Mâlek Al Nasser, son of Kelawn, sultân of Egypt. Aljaytu, who ardently desired to recover Syria, which his ancestors had possessed, passed the Eu-phrates in 712, with a great army, and encamped at Ru-habat, near Damascus. Several skirmishes happened be-tween the Syrian and Mungl forces ; but they never came to a pitched battle, for the wazîr Rashîd, by his manage-ment, brought about a peace between the two powers ; and Aljaytu returned to Soltânia.

*Repulses  
the Turks.*

He was scarce returned, when he received advice that Kepék Khân and Bissur Oglan, two princes of Turkeftân, had passed the river Amu, with a design to reduce the province of Khoraffân. These invaders had already defeated Yeslawl and Ali Kûshji, the principal commanders in that province, when Aljatu marched against, and compelled them to repass the Amû with great precipitation. This irruption of the Turks induced the khân to confer the go-vernment of Khoraffân on his son Abûsaïd, sending with him considerable troops to defend that province, and the amîr Sunej to direct his affairs. The young prince began his government by punishing the two generals before men-tioned, who had fled from the Turks ; and caused such exact justice to be observed in all respects, that he quickly restored peace and commerce to that large province.

*Hejra 716.  
A.D. 1316.*

*His death.*

Not long after this event, Bissur Oglan, having aban-doned the interest of Kepék Khân, went over to Abûsaïd ; an incident which must have occasioned a war between the neighbouring powers : but the death of Aljatu, which hap-pened in 716, prevented the storm. This prince died at the age of thirty-six, after he had reigned twelve years ; during which justice flourished in his dominions more than under any other of the family of Jenghiz Khân. He had a great zeal for the Mohammedan religion ; and ho-noured the chief professors of it, especially those of the sect of Ali, in favour of whom he caused the names of the twelve imâms to be engraved on his coin \*.

\* Khondem, ubi supra, p. 88, art. Algiaptu.

*The Reign of Abûsaïd Khân.*

ABUSAID, surnamed Behâdr Khân, succeeded his father Aljatu, and was crowned in the city of Soltânia. He immediately confirmed Rashîd and Ali Shâh, his father's wazîrs, in their employments ; and appointed Jûban Noyân generalissimo of his forces, who governed the empire as tutor to the young prince, then but twelve years of age.

In 718 Ali Shâh so far wrought upon the amîr Jubân by his management and presents, that Rashîo'ddîn was deprived of his office, and some time after put to death. The same year Bayfur, a prince of the royal blood of the Mungls, revolted against Abûsaïd ; and, advancing from Khorassân into Mazânderân, threatened to march on to Soltânia itself, if the sultân had not sent a potent army, under the conduct of the amîr Hûssayn Kurkhân, to reduce him to obedience. The sultân at this time passed the winter at Karabâgh (in Arrân) ; where advice came, that Uzbek Khân had crossed over the Great Desert of Kapjâk (or Kipjâk), and made himself master of the city of Dârbend. This intelligence obliged him to depart immediately, with the few troops which he had about him, to go and encamp on the Kûr, in order to hinder the Tatars from passing that river. On the other hand, the amîr Jûbân, who had followed the amîr Hûssayn, to appease the troubles raised in Khorassân, no sooner heard of the irruption of the enemy, than he turned back, to strengthen the army of sultân Abûsaïd.

The Tatars had hitherto done nothing but plunder the country, without undertaking any thing of consequence ; yet their army was much diminished ; so that Shâh Uzbek, finding himself no equal match for the sultân, whose forces were now considerably increased by reinforcements, resolved to break up his camp, and retire ; but being closely followed by the amîr Jûbân, he lost a great number of men in his retreat. After this success, while Abûsaïd marched back to Soltânia, the general caused several of the principal officers of the sultân's army to be scourged, according to the Mungl discipline, for not having done their duty in his absence, and then proceeded towards Gorji (or Georgia). The officers, who had received the correction, plotted to revenge that disgrace ; and engaged in their party several others, who bore with impatience the severe temper of the amîr Jûbân<sup>t</sup>.

Ninth  
Khân Abû-  
säid.

Hejra 718.  
A.D. 1318.

Amîr Jû-  
bân regent.

Repulses  
the Uzbeks.

<sup>t</sup> Khondem. ap. D'Herb. p. 32, art. A'houſaïd.

*His troops  
revolt.*

The malecontents, having formed a pretty considerable army among themselves, followed that general, who had already entered Gorja ; and while he left his camp, to go on some enterprize against the enemy, they seized, and pillaged it. After this surprize, which reduced the amîr to great want of every thing, they attacked and defeated him. Jubân stood in need of all his courage, but more of his wit and address, to extricate himself from such imminent danger. However, by making use of several stratagems, he at length escaped ; and, by marching many indirect ways, arrived at Soltânia. The khân, not thinking himself safe in his capital, while the rebels continued in arms, assembled a body of troops, and marched against them in person. The revolters, losing all respect for the sultân, gave him battle, but were defeated ; and it was on this occasion that Abûsaïd acquired the surname of Bahâdr, or *Brave*, by rushing into the midst of the enemy.

*Hejra 719.  
A.D. 1319.*

*Marries  
Abûsaïd's  
sister.*

In 719 the amîr Hûssayn Kurkhân, who was at war with Bay sua in Khorassân, obtained so many advantages over him, that he at length constrained him to repass the Amû into Great Bukhâria ; where he was slain some time after, in fight with a prince of the race of Jagatay, son of Jenghîz Khân. In 721 the sultân gave his sister Satibeg in marriage to the amîr Jûbân, whose nuptials were celebrated with great magnificence. Next year Timûrtash, son of Jûbân, who was governor of the country of Rûm, or Anatolia, revolted against Abûsaïd, declaring himself sovereign in his own department. The amîr, on this advice, though in the depth of winter, took the field with a powerful army, to bring him back to his duty ; a circumstance which the son no sooner understood, than he laid down his arms, and put himself into his father's hands ; who carried him as a prisoner to the feet of the sultân. By this conduct Abûsaïd was appeased ; and, pardoning the son, in consideration of the father's services, restored him to his government.

*Hejra 723.  
A.D. 1323.*

*Disobliges  
him.*

In 723 Ali Shâh the wazîr died ; and his post was conferred upon Sayn, lieutenant-general of the amîr Jûbân. Some time after, the amîr gave his daughter, named Baghdâd Khâtûn, one of the greatest beauties in all Asia, in marriage to the amîr Hassân Ilkhâni, son of sheykh Hûssayn : but this marriage proved very fatal to him ; for sultân Abûsaïd, having fallen in love with that lady, demanded her in marriage of her father. According to the laws of the Mungls, every private person was obliged to repudiate his wife, when the khân chose to espouse

pouse her. But the amír Jubân never would consent to his daughter's divorce ; and even uttered disrespectful words against this young prince, who required nothing contrary to the laws, or his own duty <sup>u</sup>.

Abûsaïd at that time dissembled the resentment which *Out of favour.* he conceived at this refusal ; while the amír Jubân, thinking to cure his passion by absence, sent his son-in-law and daughter to Karabâgh, and carried the sultân, against his inclination, to Baghdâd, there to pass the winter : but Abûsaïd's love, far from abating, increased in consequence of this separation. Mean time the wazîr Sayn inflamed the aversion of the prince against Jubân, by several false reports which he framed, relating to the conduct of the amír and his sons. As these practices of the wazîr came to the knowlege of Damashk Khowajeh or Khoja, son of the accused, one of the chief officers of the sultân's household, and who had frequent access to him, he took care to send his father an account of them. On this occasion the amír Jubân took a very bold step ; for, under pretence of going to quell some insurrections in Khorâstân, he departed hastily from Baghdâd, and went to Soltânia, carrying with him the wazîr Sayn, as a hostage for his son, whom he had left at court.

This son assumed the direction of all affairs : for Jubân, who had the entire management of them, communicated them to none but him. At length Damashk, abusing his father's authority, disposed so absolutely of all things, that Abûsaïd had little left besides the name of sultân. This prince, weary of being always under guardianship, discovered his dissatisfaction to some of his confidants ; and they informed him that Damashk carried on an intrigue with one of the wives of the late sultân Aljaytû, his father. On this advice, the prince ordered Damashk to be watched, to discover the truth ; and in a short time was himself witness of an assignation made by the two lovers. The sultân, wounded in his honour, as well as authority, by this insolent minister, would readily have signed the order for his death ; but as none of his domestics durst undertake so dangerous a task, he found there was a necessity of leaving things to accident ; which soon turned out to his wishes. At this very juncture some heads of men, who had revolted in the provinces, having been brought to the sultân's palace, a report was spread that they were the heads of the amír Jubân and his adherents,

*His son  
Damashk  
put to  
death.*

Hejra 727.  
A.D. 1326.

<sup>u</sup> Khondem. ubi supra, p. 32. art. Abousaid.

which had been sent from Khorassân. This rumour so intimidated Damashlik, that, without enquiring into the truth of the matter, he left the palace in the night, with only ten men, and fled. Abûsaïd sent after him Mesr Khawajeh, who overtook, and cut off his head, which he brought to the sultân.

*Raises an army.*

This prince, delivered from the son, proposed soon also to get rid of the father: for this purpose he sent strict orders to the officers of Khorassân to seize the person of Jubân; and sent couriers to those of other provinces, to put to death all who could be found, either of his relations or dependents: but as those officers lived in good understanding with that general, instead of executing the sultân's mandate, they immediately gave him notice of it. Upon this intelligence he lost no time; for, making use of the favour and credit of his friends, he raised an army of seventy thousand horse, with which he moved towards Kasbin; whither the sultân was advanced, with all the forces which he was able to assemble. Jubân, before he left Khorassân, caused the wazîr Sayn to be slain, in revenge, for the death of his son; and Abûsaïd appointed for wazîr Gayâtho'ddîn Mohammed, a person of learning, son of Raflido'ddîn, whom the amîr had also put to death.

*His troops desert.*

Mean while the amîr Jubân marched forward, with design to make himself master of the court, and the person of the sultân. When he arrived at Semnân, iu Kumes, he made a visit to Rocno'ddîn Alao'ddawlet, whose tomb is still respected there, by the Mohammedans, for his great sanctity; and after some conferences with him, promised, on oath, to follow strictly his advice in every thing; proposing, as a testimony of his sincerity, that the sheykh should go from him to the sultân, to demand the murderers of his son, and the conditions of a lasting peace. Abûsaïd received the sheykh with respect, and did him many honours; but refused either to deliver up the assassins, or even to treat with Jubân. The amîr, enraged at this refusal, no longer kept any measures with the sultân; but advancing, encamped within one day's march of his ordû, or imperial camp, in a place named Kuha. He did not, however, continue long in that post; for several of his principal officers, who entirely owed their fortunes to him, abandoned him, with thirty thousand horse, and went over to their sovereign.

*He retreats.*

As the amîr Jubân, after such an instance of inconstancy in so considerable a part of his troops, could not prudently

prudently confide in the rest of them, he quitted his camp, and took the road of the desert of Nubendijân, with design to retire into Khorâsfân. This long and difficult march, joined to a farther desertion of his officers, so weakened his army, that being no longer able to support his party in that province, he resolved to repair to Turkestan; a country where there were several great princes, who often made incursions into the dominions of Abûsaïd. This resolution would probably have proved very advantageous to the amîr, had he pursued it; but his evil destiny so ordered it, that when he came to the river Morgâb, he suddenly changed his mind, and turned back, to throw himself into the arms of Gayâtho'ddîn, surnamed Mâlek Kûrt, whom he had bred up from his youth, and advanced to the principal posts in the armies of Asia.

Mâlek Kûrt proved not more faithful to him than the rest: for having, at the same time, received an express from the sultân, with dispatches full of great offers and promises, if he would send him Jubân's head, the first message he received from this ungrateful officer was by the executioner. The amîr could never obtain so much as the favour to see him; so that finding he must die, he required three things of him. First, that as soon as his head was severed from his body, he should send one of his fingers, which was double at the end, to the camp of Abûsaïd. Secondly, that he would cause his body to be sent to Medina, there to be buried in a chapel which had been built at his expence. And thirdly, that he would convey his son Jalayr, whom he had by Satibeg, to the court of Soltan Abûsaïd his uncle. These three requests being granted him, the executioner cut off his head; which Mâlek Kurt sent immediately to the sultan; and set out soon after in person, to receive the reward of his perfidy: but he was much surprised, when he understood, on the road, that sheykh Hassan had divorced his wife, the daughter of Jûban, and sent her into the sultan's harâm. What still more increased his chagrin was, that sheykh Hassan, by this submission to the desires of Abûsaïd, had obtained the employment which he expected at court; and that Bâghdâd Khâtûn had gained an ascendant over the mind of the prince <sup>w.</sup>

*Betrayed  
and slain  
by Mâlek  
Kurt.*

This disagreeable intelligence made him resolve, before he proceeded any farther, to send his orders into Khorâsfân,

<sup>w</sup> Kondam. ubi sup. p. 33. art. Abûsaïd.

to put to death Jalayr, son of the amîr Jûban ; whose life he had preserved, at the request of his father, though contrary to the sultân's orders. After this second execution, he continued his route towards Karabâgh, where Abûsaïd then resided ; but, through the great credit which Lâgh-dâd Khâtûn, who was married, in a solemn manner, by the sultân, possessed at court, he received but a very cold reception ; and was considered rather as the murderer of the sultâna's father, than a person who had rendered a great piece of service to Abûsaïd. The corps of Jubân and his son were brought from Khorâsân to Awfân ; where the sultân ordered them to be put into the hands of the pilgrims of Mecca, to be buried at Medina. To defray this expence, he caused forty thousand dinars to be paid to them ; and gave to Mâlek Kurt no other reward, than the permission of returning to his own country. With regard to the amîr Jûban, we shall only observe farther, that he had always been esteemed as a good man, a lover of justice, and a great zealot for his religion.

*Hejra, 732.  
A.D. 1331.*

*Sheykh  
Hassân  
promoted.*

In 732, some persons envying the good fortune of sheykh Hassân, and uneasy at the great power which the sultâna had engrossed, began to whisper, that this princess still carried on a secret intimacy with her first husband. As these reports came, at length, to the sultân's ears, he banished sheykh Hassân to the castle of Kamakh, and treated his new wife with great coldness : but the falsity of those insinuations having been discovered, and the authors of such black calumny punished, Abûsaïd restored the sultâna and the sheykh to his favour ; and even conferred on the latter the government of part of Rûm, or Asia Minor, which, at that time, belonged to his dominions.

*Hejra, 736.  
A.D. 1335.*

*Uzbek  
Khân's in-  
vasion.*

In 736, Shâh Uzbek made a second irruption into the territories subject to sultân Abûsaïd ; who, next year, marched to fight his enemy : but he had scarce arrived in the province of Shîrwân, when the heat and malignity of the air threw him into a dangerous sickness : for this, his physicians prescribed bathing ; but one day, while he was in the bath, he fell into a swoon, and in a few days expired. His body was transported to Soltânia, with a pomp worthy of so great a monarch, and inhumed in the sepulchre of his ancestors. Arbah Khân, his successor, caused the sultâna to be put to death, who was accused of being concerned in the death of Abûsaïd ; and had been convicted of corresponding with Shâh Uzbek \*.

\* Khondem. ubi sup. p. 34.

## S E C T. IV.

*Dynasties which sprung up on the Death of Abûsaïd Khan.*

ON the death of Abûsaïd, in 736, the empire of the Mungls in Irân, or Persia at large, became dismembered : for after him they acknowledg'd no single monarch of the race of Jenghîz Khân ; but dispersed themselves in the several provinces, which were plundered by the frequent wars which the lords waged among themselves, every one aiming at the sovereignty. Nor did these disorders cease till the time of Timûr Beg, who, after the conquest of the countries to the north of the Jihûn, or Amû, turned his arms against those to the south of that river ; and, in a short time, brought all the contending princes of Irân under his obedience.

Among the petty dynasties which, during this interval of distraction, sprung up in that great region, historians mention two Mungl sovereignties which rose out of the ruins of their empire, immediately on the death of Abûsaïd. The first, called Il Khânian, its princes being descended, in a direct line, from Hulâkû Khân, surnamed Il Khân. The second, named Jûbânian, or Chûbânian, as being founded by the family of Jubân, or Chûban. The first had four princes, who reigned from the year 738 to 813, the space of fevnty-six years. The second had but two, who held the sceptre only twenty years, that is, from 738, two years after the death of Abûsaïd, to 758 ; though some make their dominion end two years sooner. The Il Khânians reigned in Arabian Irâk and Azerbejân ; the Jûbânians in this latter province, and the Persian Irâk : but as the affairs of these two dynasties are neither important, interesting, nor well distinguished, we shall pass them over, and proceed to matters of greater consequence.

## C H A P. XVII.

*The History of Timûr Bek, commonly called Tamerlan, and his Successors.*

## S E C T. I.

*The Transactions preceding Timûr's Reign.*

BEFORE we enter directly upon the reign of Timûr Bek, it will be proper to recount some transactions which preceded it, and, in effect, prepared the way to his future grandeur (A).

(A) Among the many oriental authors who have written the life of this great prince, two are particularly famous. The first is the mûlla Sharifo'd-din Ali, a native of Yezd, in Pârs, or Proper Persia; who wrote in Persian, at the command of Ibrahîm Soltân, son of Shâh Rukh, son of Timûr, in the year 1424, nineteen years after the death of that conqueror. Not only Khondemîr, but all other historians, agree that he is the most valuable of all those who have written on the subject, on account both of the delicacy of his style, and the precision of his work. It was compiled from a journal, or memoirs, wherein the minutest actions and discourses of Timûr on all occasions were penned down by Tatar and Persian secretaries, who always attended him for that purpose. To these were added reports of facts, by several officers and great lords who were upon the spot; after they had been verified, in the presence of Timur, by other credible witnesses, whom

he examined himself.

The second author is Ahmed Ebn Arabshâh, a Syrian, who wrote in Arabic; and thirty-five years after the death of Timûr, published his history, which is reckoned by Golius to comprise all the elegance of that language: but this author lived at too great a distance to be acquainted with the actions of that prince so well as the former; besides, being prejudiced against Timûr, like several other Turkish and Arab historians, for having conquered their countries, he takes all occasions to vilify and blacken his character. These writers pretend he was originally a shepherd, who raised his fortune by robbing on the highway: they have changed his name from Timûr Bek, or Beg, to Timûr Lenk, which signifies *lame*, pretending that he was lamed by an arrow, with which he was shot by a farmer, whose sheep he was stealing; and from hence Europeans have formed the name of Tamerlain, or Tambourlan.

After

After the death of Kâzân Khân, in 747, the princes of the empire assumed the privilege of electing khâns at pleasure ; leaving them little more than the bare title, while they themselves usurped all the authority. The first of those princes was amîr Kazagân ; who, in the administration of affairs, acquitted himself with a conduct which deserves to be immortalized in history.

*Hejra, 747.  
A.D. 1346.  
Confusion in Jagatay.*

After the death of Abûsaïd Khân, eighth successor of Hulâkû in Irân, or Persia at large, who died in 1335, that country fell into confusion for want of a successor of the race of Jenghîz Khân to succeed in his dominions, which the princes and governors divided among themselves ; and as the Turks, Moguls, and Tatars had no longer the sovereign power in Khoraffân, Mâlek Husfayn, farnamed Moazo'ddîn, son of Mâlek Kayazo'ddîn, prince of Herât, capital of that country, took advantage of the conjuncture to extend his authority. Maßûd, farnamed Vejedîn, king of the Serbedâls, who, on the death of Abûsaïd, had formed a small kingdom at Sebzâwâr, a strong city towards Nishâbûr, in order to check this rival, marched from that fortrefs in 743 (1342). The armies met near Zâve, between both cities ; and that of Mâlek Huffayn was defeated : but this prince, rallying three hundred horse, attacked the Serbedâls while they were plundering his camp, killed their general, made a great slaughter, and took all their camp, the young king escaping by flight <sup>y</sup>. In consequence of this victory, Mâlek Huffayn assumed sovereign authority ; and knowing that Kâzân's tyranny had thrown Jagatay into confusion, made incursions as far as the borders of Andekûd and Shebûrgân, near Bâlk, in Khoraffân. Mîr Kazagân, informed of these hostilities, passed the Jihûn, or Amû, with the grand khân and princes of the empire, and marched towards Herât ; in the neighbourhood of which Mâlek Husfayn, with four thousand horse and fifteen thousand foot, expected him : but after an obstinate battle, his troops were defeated, and he fled into the city, attended only with his guards. Next day the Jagatays besieged the place, which held out vigorously forty days ; at the expiration of which, Huffayn, with the consent of his lords, proposed, in case Mîr Kazagân would withdraw his forces, to go next year, and implore pardon of the grand khân and him. Mîr Kazagân, who was of a merciful temper, consented to those terms, and returned to Great Bukhâria in 752 <sup>z</sup>.

*Mâlek  
Huffayn.*

*Opposed by  
Kazagân.*

<sup>y</sup> Hist. Tim. Bek, lib. i. cap. 5.

<sup>z</sup> Ibid. p. 6—11.

Mean

**Hejra 752.**  
**A.D. 1351.**

*who is  
slain.*

Mean while the commanders of Mâlek Hussayn's army declared for his brother Mâlek Baker; but he was pardoned next year by the clemency of Mîr Kazagân; who now having sent his son Mîrza Abd'allah to conquer Karazm, which he subdued accordingly, after passing the spring, as usual, at Karânver, went to spend the summer and autumn at the city of Munek, for the conveniency of hunting. One day, parting unarmed from Sâli Saray with only fifteen persons, he crossed the Jihûn, with design to hunt in the country of Arhenk; but while he was employed in the chace, Kotluk Timûr, his son-in-law, in revenge for a supposed affront, fell on him with a company of robbers, and slew this great prince; but some of his officers, pursuing the assassin, overtook and killed him, then carried back the body of Mîr Kazagân, to Sâli Sa-

**Hejra 759.** **A.D. 1357.** ray in 759. Upon his death all the princes paid homage to his son the mîrza Abdo'llah, who immediately confirmed Beyan Kûli in the dignity of khân. After which confirmation, contrary to the advice of the princes, he removed to Samarkand with the grand khân, whom he caused to be assassinated, to secure possession of the empress, with whom he had fallen in love, placing on the throne Timûr Shâh Aglen, son of Bisun (or Yasun) Timûr Khân.

**Timûr Shâh Khân.** Timûr Shâh Khân did not long enjoy his dignity; for, the princes offended at Abdo'llah's conduct, Beyan Seldû raised an army at Hissar, and being joined at Kesh by Haji Berlâs, Timûr Bek's uncle, marched to Samarkand, where Abdo'llah being routed, and his brothers taken, they were both put to death, together with the khân whom he had made. The two princes, who were at that time in great reputation and authority, subdued the country, and assumed the reins of government. Beyan Seldûz was of a social disposition; but as he loved wine to excess, and seldom passed eight days without a debauch of that kind, his intemperance occasioned great confusion in his kingdom, and made the princes declare themselves sovereigns, some through ambition, and others in their own defence<sup>a</sup>.

**Empire divided.** The city of Kash, or Kesh, with its dependencies, remained in the possession of the princes Timûr and Haji Berlâs. The country of Khojend was in the hands of prince Bayezid Jalayr; Mîr Hussayn, son of Musella, son of Mîr Kazagân, seized Kabul, and several other lordships, where

<sup>a</sup> Hist. Tim. Bek, p. 11—15.

he maintained his independency a considerable time; A.D. 1357. Olaja Boga Seldûs became sovereign of Bâlkî; and Mehemed Koja Aperdî, prince of the Naymâns, took possession of Shebürgân; the kings of Badâgshân fortified themselves in their mountains, while Key Khostrû and Olaja Itû Aperdî seized Katlân and Arhenk; lastly Keser Yefûri, prince of the tribes of Serpol and Takun, assumed the title of king. All these princes were continually at war among themselves; and some were slain in battle, particularly Mehemed Koja Aperdi, in a rash attack upon Mâlek Huffayn, prince of Herât.

Togluk Timûr Khân, prince of Jetah, son of Aymel *Togluk Timûr Khân*, son of Dava Khân, to whom the crown of this country belonged, taking advantage of the confusion which at this time reigned, invaded it with a great army, by way of Tâshkunt and Khojend; the prince of which, Bayezid Jalayr, judged it prudent to join them. Haji Berlâs, after having raised troops at Kash and Kârshi, retired into Khorâstân. Prince Timûr Bek, who was but twenty-five years old, and had just lost his father Tragay, concluded, that the only way for him to save his patrimony, and serve his country, was to give way to necessity, and submit to the grand khân. This submission was so acceptable to Togluk Timûr's commanders, who had entered Great Bukhâria, that they conferred on him the command of a toman, or a body of ten thousand men, which had belonged to his great ancestor Karashar Noyân, and the principality of Kash, or Kesh, with its dependencies. Soon after, a dissension arising between these commanders, they marched out of the country to attend their master<sup>b</sup>.

Mean while amîr Huffayn, intending to make war on Timûr Beyân Seldûz, requested succours of Timûr Bek, Kefûre Yefûri, and Bayezid. These princes agreed to assist him; and while the two first went to join him, the third was sent to excuse this step to Togluk Timûr Khân; but finding when he came to Kojend, that the khân was returned home, he proceeded no farther. The other two princes having joined amîr Huffayn, they all marched to Hissar, or the fortress of Shaduman; and Beyân Seldûz not being in a condition to oppose them, fled to Badâgshân, whither they pursued him. These hostilities obliged the king, Shâh Bahao'ddîn, to fly also, by which means the whole country came into the hands of amîr Huffayn, who afterwards put to death Key Kobâd, brother of Key Khostrû, prince

<sup>b</sup> Hist. Tim. Bek, p. 15—22, cap. 3 & 4.

of Katlân. The war being thus finished, Timûr Bek and Kefer Yefûri returned home; but were not there long before amîr Huffayn sent again to solicit their assistance against Togluç Seldûz, who had broken the peace by several acts of hostility. The princes hastened to his assistance; but the enemy fled on the news of their approach.

Timûr Bek, being on his way back, was informed that his uncle Haji Berlâs was on his return to Kash, and had joined Mîr Bayezîd, with a design to attack Kefer Yefûri. On this intelligence he joined prince Kefer with his troops, and advanced towards that city, and Haji Berlâs marched thither also. The two armies meeting, a bloody battle was fought, in which Timûr gained the victory, and obliged his uncle to fly to Bayezîd at Samarkand. The two princes resolved to follow him thither; but, in the way, all the troops of Kash, by what motive is unknown, abandoned Timûr, and went over to Haji Berlâs. This defection raised a jealousy in Kefer Yefûri, which he discovering both by his words and behaviour, Timûr returned to his own country, where his uncle gave him a kind reception, and conducted him to Mîr Bayezîd.

*Escapes a plot.*

These chiefs resolving to renew the war against Kefer, Timûr, who longed for an occasion to revenge the affront, readily joined with them, and marched at the head of the van-guard. He met the enemy beyond the mountain of Kash, and after an obstinate engagement, obliged them to fly. This victory secured Bayezîd on the throne, and Haji Berlâs in possession of his territories: yet these two princes held a consultation next day to the disadvantage of Timûr; who discovering it in the council, pretended his nose bled, and went out; then, returning home, he mounted his horse, and retired with his arms into the field, by which means he avoided the snare. As soon as his uncle heard of his departure, he sent to desire him to raise the troops of the desert, and return to his assistance against two princes who threatened them with war. Timûr complied with his request, and defeated Ali Gurguri near Termed, which he entered <sup>c</sup>.

A.D. 1360.

*Togluç Timûr Khan promotes Timûr;*

In the mean time Togluç Timûr Khân, of Jetah, or the Getes, renewing his design of conquering Great Bukhâria, in 762 marched on that side with a great army. As soon as he arrived at Kojend, Mîr Bayezîd, prince of that place, paid him his respects; Beyân Seldûz went to meet him as far as Samarkand, and Haji Berlâs, at this time,

<sup>c</sup> Hist. Tim. Bek, p. 22—28. cap. 5.

made no scruple to wait on him; but the khân having seized and killed Mîr Bayezîd, Berlâs, for fear of the like treatment, fled with a few troops, and crossed the Jihûn, or Amû. There, being overtaken by the regiment of Kashmîr, a bloody battle was fought, in which Shugam Berlâs was killed, yet Haji Berlas, with his brother Idekû, escaped, only to be slain by robbers at the village of Koraşh (dependent on Sebzwâr), which, on the reduction of Khorassân soon after, Togluk Timûr Khân gave to Timûr Bek, who slew the murderers of his uncle. The khân likewise confirmed him in the sovereignty of Kash, and of a toman which descended to him by the death of Haji Berlâs.

Togluk Timûr Khân afterwards marched against amîr Huffayn, who waited for him at the river Vâkeşh, but Key Kofrû, prince of Katlân (whose brother, Key Kobâd, Huffayn had put to death), going over to the Getes, that prince fled, and was pursued across the Jihûn as far as Kondoz. The khân, after this transaction, returning to Samarkand, murdered Beyân Seldûz, suspecting him of harbouring inclinations to revolt; but behaved kindly to those whom he judged to be sincerely in his interest; and having brought the empire of Jagatay to submit to his authority, gave the government of the conquered countries to his son Elias Koja Aglen. Several lords and great officers were ordered to attend him, under the command of Bikîjek, and Timûr had the principal administration of affairs under the prince; afterwards Togluk Timûr Khân returned to his capital <sup>a</sup>.

Prince Timûr observing that Bikîjek's proceedings, in contempt of his master's authority, would throw things into confusion, withdrew from court, and repaired to amîr Huffayn in the desert of Kivak. The two malecontent princes went to Tekil, the governor of Kivak; but he having a design to seize them, they left him. Tekil pursued them with a thousand horse; but though they had only sixty men, they made so brave a stand, that when they had but seven men left, the enemy were reduced to fifty, who still continued the fight, and would have twice slain Huffayn but for Timûr. At length, the first having dismounted Tekil, the latter dispatched him with a pike, whereupon the battle ceased. After this action, the two princes thinking it safer to part, Timûr crossed the desert with his wife Turkhân Aga, Huffayn's

<sup>a</sup> Hist. Tim. Bek, p. 28—31. cap. 6.

A.D. 1362. sister, and came to Jursey, where he was surrounded by the Turkmāns, and would have been in a dangerous situation, if he had not been known by one of them, who protected, and put him in a condition to join his brother-in-law at a place called Mahmūdi, in the desert.

*Taken prisoner;*

*released again.*

Meantime Ali Bey, having advice of their arrival, surprised and carried them prisoners to Makhān, where he detained them for two months, notwithstanding the remonstrances of his brother Mohammed, from Thūs, or Mashhād; he also seized the presents which Mohammed sent them, and dismissed them with one lean horse and an old camel. In this distress McBarek Shāh, prince of Sanjer, went in quest of them with several fine horses and other necessaries, which enabled them to pursue their design of returning privately into Great Bukhāria. Timūr being known at Samarkand, retired to Kesh, and thence to Kandahār: from hence, at the request of the prince of Sistān, or Sejestān, they marched to his assistance with a thousand horse. In their return they were intercepted by some people of the country, in which conflict Timūr was wounded in the hand (M). At length, arriving at Arsf near Bakalān, they were joined by several princes and bodies of men. Others hearing of the success of their affairs, broke with the Getes, and went to meet them in the country of Bālk. There they were opposed by Abusāid, son of Tayfū, Mengheli Buga Seldūz, and Hayder Andekūdi, three princes, their enemies, with six thousand men. The battle, which lasted from morning till night, was renewed next morning; and although the troops of the two princes were much inferior in number, yet, by Timūr's valour, they gained the victory.

*Enters Great Bukhāria.*

Of two thousand horse which remained, Timūr took one half; and passing the Jihūn at Termed, sent scouts to Kolūga, or the Iron Gate; but these falling asleep, were surprised by Ajūni, brother of Bikījek; so that while Timūr thought himself secure, both the scouts and enemy arrived at his camp. The soldiers not having time to draw up in order, were under a necessity of repassing the river, which they did in barks, while Timūr made a stand in an isle to favour their design. The two parties remained in sight of each other for thirty days; after which

(M) This wound seems to have lamed him; and hence possibly the Turkish historians make him lame of a leg. This he revenged afterwards at Sistān, by putting to death the author of it.

Timūr,

Timûr, having burnt the barks, joined Mîr Huzzayn at Kulm, on the borders of Bâlk. From thence they marched towards Badagshân; and having assembled troops, went and encamped near Ghûlek. Here they learned that a new army of Getes was arrived in Great Bukhâria, and that several princes were encamped between Jâla and the bridge of Senghîn, with twenty thousand men. In consequence of these tidings six thousand men deserted the princes; yet Timûr, not dismayed, marched with two thousand men, to dispute the passage of the bridge.

This prince, after having maintained the battle from morning till night, finding himself not strong enough to execute his design, had recourse to policy. He left five hundred men at the foot of the bridge; and, swimming over the Jihûn with the rest, in the night, went and posted himself on the hills. Next morning the enemy, perceiving, by the tracks of horses, that troops had passed the river, refrained from fighting that day. When night came, Timûr ordered his men to approach them, and light fires on the tops of the hills. This expedient struck the Getes with such terror, imagining themselves surrounded with a numerous army, that they fled in disorder; but not towards the bridge, because they believed the men posted there to be much more numerous than they were. Meanwhile, Timûr, perceiving the effect of his stratagem, came down from the mountains; and, being joined by Huzzayn, made a great slaughter of the enemy. This defeat gained great reputation to Timûr, who recovered Kash by another stratagem.

About this time Elias Koja, who was encamped at Tash Aighi, four leagues from Kash, received advice of the death of his father Togluk Timûr Khân. But Timûr, whose troops were much increased since the late victory, proposed to pay him a visit before his departure, though his army was greatly inferior to that of the enemy. He encouraged them by declaring, that, in his sleep, a voice pronounced, “ Fear nothing: for the most high God will graciously give thee the victory.” With this assurance, they marched against the Getes in two bodies; Huzzayn commanded the right wing, and Timûr conducted the left. The new emperor likewise divided his army into two bodies: and, putting himself at the head of the left wing, gave the conduct of the right to Mîr Tokat-mûr and prince Bikijek. The two armies being at length

Heira 7651  
A.D. 1363.

*Another  
overthrow  
with great  
slaughter.*

engaged, Timûr broke through the enemy with such fury, that he threw the right wing into disorder, and drove the first line upon the second. Having put them to flight with great slaughter, he advanced to attack Bikijek and Tokatmûr in the rear, whom Husseyn had engaged in front : so that, notwithstanding the number of their troops, and bravery of their generals, they were compelled to follow their companions. Tokatmûr and several other generals were killed ; and Bikijek, with Elias Koja Khân himself, besides other great commanders, taken : but these two being known by some of Timûr's soldiers, they generously gave them their horses, and let them escape. Timûr pursued the enemy to the river Yam, where he made a great slaughter ; then crossing the Sihûn (or Sîr), at Kojend, in pursuit of the khân, encamped at Tâshkunt.

*New khân elected.*

The two princes, observing that the rest, who had joined them against the Getes, paid them no great deference ; and aimed at being independent, found the only way to prevent things running into confusion, was to elect a grand khân ; and, in a general assembly, proposed Kabul Shâh Aglen ; who was accordingly chosen at Samarkand. Then, causing him to ascend the throne, they presented him with the royal cap, after the custom of the Turkish kings, and bowed nine times before him <sup>f</sup>.

A.D. 1364.

*Timûr's  
gratitude.*

After the election of Kabul Khân, Timûr made a great feast ; after which, he proposed to deliver out of prison amîr Hamid, lieutenant-general of the Getes, whose father had been his friend, and prince Eskânder his companion : Husseyn consented, although the latter was his enemy. When those, who assisted at the assembly, were returned home, Timûr sent two amîrs to release the prisoners : but their keepers, seeing the amîrs at a distance, and imagining they came to put Hamid to death, to save them the trouble, knocked him down, and cut off his head. This mistake proved fatal also to Eskânder : for amîr Husseyn sent to demand that prince, who was sent to him, and put to death.

*New invasion  
of the  
Getes.*

Things seemed now to be in a settled condition ; when, in the beginning of next spring, news came that the Getes were marching towards Great Bukhâria. The princes, having passed the Sihûn at Kojend, met the enemy at Ezam, between Tâshkunt and Chinaz : the amîr Husseyn commanded the right wing, and Timûr the left. The Getes were headed by the emperor Elias Koja himself ; and, though they were by far inferior in number to the troops

<sup>f</sup> Hist. Tim. Bek, p. 44—53. cap. 9, 10, 11.

of the princes, yet they overcame them (if we may believe the historian,) by help of the stone Jedi, which, steeped in water at a certain hour, has power to produce tempests, rain, and thunder. A violent tempest certainly happened, and to this the Getes, who were better sheltered than their enemies, owed the victory.

After the storm, the princes attacked them again ; but the Getes, who had covered themselves and horses with felts, brought for the purpose, received them with such vigour, that their forces were obliged to fly. Timûr at length rallied them, and a terrible carnage ensued : every man must have been slain, had not Shem Kûn Noyân been killed by prince Yaku Berlâs, as he was rising to strike Timûr with his sabre. As soon as Elias Koja Khân heard that his general was dead, he retreated with his troops, who were pursued by Timûr. Mean while the left wing of the Getes pressed on the right wing, even to the guards of amîr Huffayn. The fight was bloody, and the enemy prevailing, when Timûr advanced, and put Shamfo'ddîn, one of the generals, to flight. This incident gave Huffayn an opportunity to rally his troops ; and he might have obtained the victory, had he followed Timûr's advice to advance ; but, whether through envy or presumption, he twice abused the messenger sent, for that purpose, by Timûr ; who, seeing so fair an opportunity lost, through Huffayn's caprice gave over the attack, and resolved to be revenged. When the other was recovered from his ill humour, he sent several messages to Timûr, to intreat him to come and see him ; but this prince, weary of his duplicity, refused to go.

Next morning the battle was renewed, and, the Getes being soon put to flight, Timûr pursued them. In the way, his men perceiving the standard of prince Shamfo'ddîn, who was separated from the rest, with a great number of troops, stopped the pursuit, and turned towards the white standard : the enemy likewise, perceiving them, rallied, and returned to the charge. The fight was bloody ; and at length Timûr's forces were defeated : a great number perished in the marshes ; many were killed in the pursuit ; and more than ten thousand men were slain in the whole. This famous battle, called that of Lây, or *The slough*, was fought in Ramadân, in 776. After this great defeat, Huffayn, and the other princes, crossed the Jihûn, and returned to Sheberto ; but Timûr remained in the country, with a resolution to oppose the

A.D. 1365

*Samarkand besieged.*

Getes. However, finding his endeavours vain, he repaired to Balk, where he took great pains to increase his forces <sup>g</sup>. Mean while the Getes laid siege to Samarkand, at that time without a citadel. The inhabitants defended themselves a long time very bravely ; but, provisions at length beginning to fail, they must have surrendered, had not the loss of three-fourths of the enemy's horses, by a mortality, obliged them to retire. The principal men of the city hereupon assumed a superiority over the rest, and caused great disorders in the place. On this advice, Timûr and Hüssayn, having renewed their friendship more strongly than before, agreed to be at Samarkand in the beginning of spring ; where they executed all the Serbedâls who had usurped the authority, excepting Mulâna Zâde (N), whom Timûr saved through a motive of piety. It was now that Hüssayn, seeing all obstacles removed, discovered his insatiable avarice, and meanness of spirit. Although Timûr had as much, or a greater, share in the war, he even taxed his domestics. He exacted great sums of the princes who had lost all in the wars ; and, although he saw his sister's jewels among the money which Timûr lent them to make up the demand, he did not hesitate to receive them. Indeed, when Timûr gave his horses for three hundred dinârs, or gold ducats, which remained unpaid, he would not take them ; but waited till Timûr discharged that debt another way.

*Confederacy against him.*

The lords, incensed at this conduct of Hüssayn, resolved to break off the union between him and Timûr : to whom, after humbling the other, they proposed to give the absolute power ; as he was of a mild temper, generous soul, and, in short, possessed of every virtue necessary to form a great prince. In order to effect this purpose, they wrote Hüssayn, that Timûr, offended with the grand khân and him, was raising forces to attack him. Hüssayn, on this information, sent to desire Timûr would come to Samarkand, to confront his accusers. Timûr immediately went thither, and his accusers fled to Kojend : but, finding Hüssayn still harboured his suspicion, and knowing his temper, he one day opened his heart to the princes, declaring his intention to remedy the evil. Shîr Bahrâm, and Bahrâm Jalayr, on this occasion took off the mask ;

<sup>g</sup> Hist. Tim. Bek, p. 53—63, cap. 11, 12.

(N) They were all, or most of them, ecclesiastics, and this Mulâna the chief of them.

declaring their hatred, and design of all the princes to break with Huzzayn : they, accordingly, entered into a treaty with Timûr to make war on him, and then retired. Shîr Bahrâm, having raised troops at Katlân, began hostilities against Huzzayn : but this politic prince, by his artifice, gained him over to his interest. Nevertheless Timûr pursued his enterprize ; and, having at length raised an army, consisting of the most valiant men of the empire, in autumn 767 detached prince Seyfo'ddîn, *Hejra 767.*  
*A.D. 1365.* with the vanguard, against Huzzayn ; who, sent a treaty, drawn up in the most ensnaring manner, to soften Timûr ; but this prince would pay no regard to his overtures. However, as the governor he had left at Samarkand (O), and some other princes, had before gone over to Huzzayn ; so, on this occasion, he was deserted by the tribe of Yefûri <sup>b.</sup>

Mean while Huzzayn advanced with a great army : but, *His treachery.* aiming still to over-reach his rival, sent another letter to him, with the Koran ; and, declaring that, by virtue of that book, his intentions were sincere, proposed a conference at Shekichek, each to be accompanied with no more than a hundred men. Timûr, convinced of his deceit, was not inclined to grant this interview : but, to gratify the princes, who chose peace, if it could be had, he went with three hundred men ; and, leaving two hundred at some distance, advanced with the rest to the place of interview. Huzzayn, after having put Shîr Bahrâm to death, detached three thousand men to surprise Timûr at Dehno, of which design a peasant, who had been a domestic of this prince, fled from the enemy to give him notice. But the officer, who stood sentinel at the palace, not giving credit to what the man said, sent him away, without mentioning the matter to Timûr ; so that, when this prince approached the place of rendezvous, he was alarmed with the appearance of those forces ; whose march he stopped in a narrow pass, and then made his retreat fighting.

The army, hearing of Huzzayn's treachery, and concluding all was lost, dispersed ; and Timûr, with the other *Timûr surprises Karavans.* *princes,* retired to Makhân, in Khorassân, where he kept a seraglio of women. There he stopped all the karawâns ;

<sup>b</sup> Hist. Tim. Bek, p. 63—73. cap. 13, 14.

(O) About the same time who thereby lost the cement of also died his wife Olâja Turk-union with Timûr. hân Aga, sister of Huzzayn ;

and, when he gave them leave to depart, took the road to Herât in their sight, as if he designed to go to that city. This circumstance the merchants reporting, when they arrived at Karshi, amîr Müssa left the fortress, intending, with seven thousand men, to visit Uzkunt: but Timûr, when the karawâns were at some distance, returned to his old station; and, having remained till such time as the merchants might be going to Kârshi, set out for the same place, although he had but two hundred men, and there were twelve thousand near that city. Being arrived in the neighbourhood of Karshi, he reconnoitered the walls in person, and at length perceived a proper place for scaling. The experiment was tried, and succeeded. Timûr surprised the city, while the troops seized the castle, where they took Mehemed Bey, son of the amîr Müssa.

A.D. 1366.

Defeats  
amîr Müssa.

This lord, being very young, was suffered to escape, that the news might cause his father's troops to disperse. Instead of retiring, he and Mâlek Behâdr, next day, invested the city with twelve thousand horse: but they were so harassed by fallies, that at length Müssa fled with his seven thousand horse; and left Mâlek, who still stood his ground, with five thousand koronas (P): yet, as soon as he perceived Timûr advancing with his horse, he fled likewise; and, being pursued, his men dispersed. In the pursuit, Timûr, perceiving the wife of amîr Müssa, who fled with Mâlek Bahâdr, called to him to quit her. Mâlek, to save his life, which, on that condition, was promised him, abandoned the lady, and fled by himself. Nevertheless the lady continued her flight full speed; and, as Timûr alone pursued, a servant offered to shoot, if he advanced. The prince, who had neither buckler nor arrows, taking him for a better archer than he was, stopped, till Dawlet Shâh joined him; and, covering his head with his buckler, renewed the pursuit. The valet then let fly at him; but, missing his aim, fled as fast as the rest; so that Dawlet Shâh was not able to come up with them. Azû Mulk, then far gone with child, was soon after delivered of a princess, named Tûmân Aga, who was afterwards married to Timûr<sup>i</sup>.

Retires to  
Makhân.

This prince wintered at Karshi; where he bestowed the government of Amûya on Nikepeysha, and that of Bok-

<sup>i</sup> Hist. Tim. Bek, p. 73—85. cap. 15, & seq.

(P) Koronas are a militia.

hâra on Manûcha; whose son-in-law, Ali Yesûri, came A.D. 1366. and submitted with his tribe. Amîr Huzzayn was astonished at the recital of what had passed: yet, having raised an army, he left Sâli Saray; and sent amîr Müffa before with ten thousand koronas, who encamped at Shekedâlik. Timûr at first intended to attack them in the night; but, having only two hundred men, he thought proper, after appearing in sight of the enemy, to retire to Bokhâra; and from thence to Makhân, by way of Merû. Mean while Huzzayn came and besieged Bokhâra, where Manâcha and Ali Yesûri made a brave defence: but their soldiers, having severely suffered by venturing too far in a sally, could not be brought to fight afterwards. This circumstance obliged them to fly by night to Makhân, and leave the city to the enemy. Timûr afterwards set out with six hundred men to reduce Nikepeysha, governor of Amûya; which aim having accomplished, he went and defeated the army of the koronas, encamped near Bokhâra; then returned to Makhân.

Timûr, unable long to be idle, crossed the Jihûn again with six hundred men, and invested Karshi; but, hearing five hundred koronas were at Kuzimondâk, he marched to attack them, not knowing that they had been joined by several other troops. However, after a bloody fight, he drove them back as far as their main army, which he advanced to reconnoitre: and, on their approach, rushing forward like a lion, in less than an hour, entirely routed this vast multitude. In the pursuit to Shekedâlik, they took the principal officers prisoners, with a great booty. Timûr resolved not to give the enemy time to recover their loss, but marched against amîr Huzzayn: however, the princes refusing to assist in that enterprize, he returned to Samarkand. At his approach, the governor Ushâra Bahâdr fellied out with the amîr Müffa's troops, but was routed, and escaped with difficulty; yet he made another sally, with one thousand five hundred raw soldiers, who fled at the cry of Timûr's men. While this prince diverted himself in the delicious valley of Sogd, intelligence arrived, that a great body of koronas was encamped on the Tûm, and amîr Huzzayn with a numerous army at Kârshi.

On this advice, Timûr deferred his revenge; and disbanding his other forces, with his first six hundred men retired towards Kojend, where he crossed the Sihûn. Understanding here, that Key Kosrû and Bahrâm Jalayr were at Tashkunt, with seven thousand Getes, just brought from Jetâh, he turned that way; in hopes that Bahrâm, who

*Crosses the Sir.*

had by his means recovered his patrimony, and had sworn to join him against Huzzayn, would assist him, when now in his power : but not finding the friendship he had reason to expect, he reproached the amîr with his ingratitude. On the contrary, Key Kosrû, who was son-in-law to Togluk Timûr, khân of Jetâh, entertained Timûr magnificently at his palace, for a month ; promised to join him against every person, and to give Rakia Khân, his daughter by another wife, to the mirza Jehân Ghîr, Timûr's eldest son <sup>k.</sup>.

*Defeats the enemy.*

Meantime, amîr Huzzayn having entered Sebz, with a great army of koronas, sent before twenty thousand men, under the command of amîr Musfa, and his most considerable generals ; who, through fear of Timûr's valour, detached three great squadrons, by different roads, to intercept that prince's passage. Timûr, accompanied by Key Kosrû, and two thousand Getes, on this advice, crossed the Sihûn or Sîr at Kojend ; and, with one thousand five hundred men, in the night, attacked Jehân Shâh, who had with him the same number, and dispersed them. Next day, he defeated Khermân, with his thousand soldiers, at Dizâk : then, with two hundred horse only, departed, to attack Mâlek Bahâdr, who commanded a detachment of three thousand. When the enemy saw the thirty men who were sent before, so well equipped, advancing with great boldness, they were surprised ; and, taking them for the van-guard of the Mungls, began to fly. Timûr pursued ; while the fugitives approaching the main body under Musfa, the whole detachment fled full speed to rejoin Huzzayn.

*Peace with Huzzayn,*

A.D. 1367.

When this prince saw them, he was incensed at their pusillanimity, and, departing with the khân, sent ten thousand choice men, to attack the two princes ; who marched to Barzin with one thousand five hundred, and there caused the trumpets to be sounded ; the noise of which so frightened the enemy, that they fled to Huzzayn. Key Kosru went afterwards to winter at Otrâr, and Timûr at Tâshkunt. In spring, the messengers, whom Timûr had sent to Jetâh, returned, and brought word, that a numerous army was coming from thence to his assistance. As this intelligence soon reached Huzzayn, he resolved to make peace with Timûr ; and the better to succeed, applied to the doctors of Kojend and Tâshkunt, to dispose him to an accommodation. The mollahs undertook the task ; and urged the danger which the state was in of being ruined by war, and the risk the Musulmâns ran of being plundered, as

\* Hist. Tim. Bek, p. 85—100. cap. 16, 20.

well as slaughtered, by idolaters. These remonstrances, with a dream which followed, determined Timûr to make peace, and to go himself to Huzzayn, as the most effectual way, to agree on articles. He was met near Sâli-saray by the amîrs Müssa and Olajia Itû, on the part of Huzzayn, to ask pardon for all that had passed. When the peace was settled, the princes disbanded their armies; and having indulged themselves with diversions, Timûr returned to Kash to enjoy the sweets of this delightful kingdom.

Not long after this pacification, while amîr Huzzayn and the khân were gone to reduce the kings of Badâgshân, who had revolted, Mâlek Huzzayn, prince of Herât, sent forces to ravage the provinces about Bâlk, which were subject to the amîr. Timûr immediately advanced, to repulse the enemy, who did not wait for him. Then he went in quest of the khân and amîr; who, meeting him at Kondoz, renewed their friendship. They marched together to reduce Pulâd Buga and Ak Buga, who had revolted at Kâbul; which reduction, after some loss, they effected. In their return from this expedition, Huzzayn asked Timûr's advice, in relation to a design he had to reside at Bâlk. Timûr endeavoured to dissuade him, by the example of his uncle Mîrza Abdo'llah; who, contrary to the advice of his lords, removed his seat to Samarkand. Although Huzzayn approved of Timûr's counsel, yet he did not follow it: but prevailed on him to go to that city; where, as soon as he arrived, he began to rebuild the fortress of Hendwân<sup>1</sup>.

In the mean time, advice arriving, that an army of Getes were on the march towards Great Bukhâria, the two *Watches the  
Getes.* princes took the field: but, while the enemy wintered at Tâshkunt, discord arose among the lords of Jetâh. Kam-ro'ddîn, of the tribe of Uglat, Kepek Timûr, and Shîrawl, joined against Haji Arkenût, who resolved to give them battle. When they were ready to engage, a peace was concluded; and Arkenût returned home: but the other two, instead of following him, retreated with their troops; and Shîrawl's son cut off Arkenût's head: which execution putting the Gete army into disorder, obliged them to retreat. Timûr would have pursued them in this confusion: but, as the king of Badâgshân had renewed his irruptions into Huzzayn's dominions, this prince prevailed with him to march on that side. On his

<sup>1</sup> Hist. Tim. Bek, p. 100—110. cap. 21. 23.

approach the enemy fled: yet at length they fought, and were routed; Sehykh Ali, the king, being made a prisoner.

*In great danger.*

However, part of those who fled having defeated Jehân Mulk, amîr Huffayn's son, who pursued them, and taken six hundred and thirty horses, Timûr, in a transport of rage, ascended the mountain: but as his soldiers refused to follow him, he, with only thirteen horse, seized a narrow pass, where he furiously attacked, and defeated the enemy; although he confessed this was the most obstinate battle he had ever been engaged in. Mean while, fifty of their foot, covered with their bucklers, boldly marched up, and discharged a shower of arrows at Timûr: at the same time, two hundred more advanced, to second them. But the prince escaped this danger, by the address of Elchi Buga; who running up to them, on foot, began to soothe them. "The person you see (said he) is the great Timûr: he will restore you your slaves: why then do you fight to no purpose? You know, if you are either killed or made prisoners, you will bear the blame of having your slaves taken." When the soldiers heard that prince's name, they left off fighting, kissed the earth, in token of submission, and sent two of their number to implore pardon. Timûr promised to return their slaves, provided they would bring the horses and bucklers they had taken, next morning, to his camp; a condition which they performed accordingly.

*Huffayn's jealousy.*

Not long after this transaction, amîr Huffayn having sent to acquaint him, that Mehemed Beyân Seldûz and Key Khoſru had made war on him, Timûr left Badâgshân: on which notice, the rebels informed him of the cause of their discontent, and begged his assistance. As the prince knew this letter was intercepted by Huffayn, he became jealous that Huffayn did not shew it him at their interview: and, at his return to Kesh, three persons came to tell him Huffayn designed to surprise him. This intelligence was confirmed by a lord, who shewed him a letter from the khân Kabul Shâh; importing, that amîr Musfa had orders to watch an opportunity to seize him. Timûr went to know the truth of this intelligence from Huffayn, whom he met on the bank of the Jihûn: but, as he was going to speak, intelligence came, that the enemy was at hand; and he, being desired to advance against them, put the troops immediately in motion. At his approach, Sheykh Mehemed and Key Kojrû fled. After the pursuit, Timûr returned

returned to Kesh; and Hūssayn repaired to Bâlk, to reside A.D. 1368. in the castle of Hendwân<sup>m</sup>.

Although Hūssayn's chief support, was the friendship of Timur, yet he ceased not to do him ill offices. He sent for all that prince's subjects in Kash, to people Balk, and to bring away Timur's sister: because her husband, amir Muyad, had killed a man, and fled. He likewise dismissed prince Jehângîr, whom Timur had placed about his person. Upon all these provocations, Timur consulted with amir Mûsâ, and other lords; who, after having concluded to make war on Hūssayn, as a prince not to be trusted, as well as an oppressor of the people, they began hostilities, by the death of Ali, brother of Kezer Yefûri: and then Timur boldly declared war against him at once.

*Timur declares war.*

Having raised a body of troops, he departed from Kash: *Joined by the princes.* but, at Kuzar, the amir Mûsâ, seized with a panic, returned to Samarkand. Mean while, Timur sent Siorgat-mish Aglen, with the amirs Muyad and Hûssayn Berlâs before, as spies, who found those of amir Hûssayn at Termed. At Boya, within three leagues of that city, Timur met the holy Seyd Bereke, the most considerable of the sharîfs, or descendants of Mohammed; who presenting him with a drum and standard, which are the usual marks of sovereignty, as if inspired, sang a hymn, predicting Timur's future grandeur. Here that prince contracted an inviolable friendship with this great sharîf; and ordered, that after his death he should be buried in the same tomb, with his face turned side-ways: that at the day of judgment, when every one should hold up their hands to heaven, to implore assistance of some intercessor, he might seize the robe of this child of the prophet.

Timur having passed the Jihûn, and encamped at Kulm, *Besieges Bâlk.* was joined by a great number of princes, who hated Hûssayn. Among the rest, were the amir Olajia Itû, placed in Kondoz by Hûssayn; Sheykh Mehemed, king of Badâghshân, whom Timur had invited; amir Key Kostrû, who had fled from Katlân to avoid Hûssayn; the amir Yâkû, with the troops of that country; and Zende Hasham, with the hord of Aperi: so that Timur saw himself at the head of a powerful army. Then he gave Siorgatmish Aglen the title of khân; and having regulated his army, departed for Bâlk. As soon as he arrived,

<sup>m</sup> Hist. Tim. Bek, p. 111—117. cap. 24, 25.

A.D. 1368. he blocked up the city on all sides, and besieged the citadel called Hendwân. The enemy made a vigorous defence : they sallied out to repulse the confederates ; and the two armies fought with unparalleled courage till night. In this battle, prince Omar Sheykh, a son of Timûr, fighting valiantly, though but fifteen years old, was shot through the foot with an arrow ; and though the surgeons drew a hot iron through the wound, he bore it with extraordinary fortitude<sup>n</sup>.

*Hussayn surrenders ;* Next morning, at sun-rise, the besieged made another sally, and renewed the fight. Hussayn, who at a distance beheld this terrible encounter, perceived his affairs to be in a desperate condition. Timûr sent to acquaint him, that, if he desired his life, he must submit, and deliver up the fortress. Hussayn, for once, acting with prudence, sent two of his sons, with the khân he had set up, offering to resign his crown to Timûr ; and only requesting a free passage out of the citadel, in order to go in pilgrimage to Mecca. Timûr having granted this request, the amîr sent again to acquaint him, that he would depart the next day ; and requested a promise, that no person should attempt any thing against his life. Timûr yielded to his desire ; but Hussayn was so accustomed to break his word, that he suspected the prince could not keep his promise ; and therefore went out the same night, with two servants. After having wandered about for some time, he arrived at the old city of Bâlk ; and, when morning came, through fear ascended the minâra (Q) of the principal mosque, where he hid himself.

*taken, and slain with two sons.* A soldier of Timûr, who had lost his horse, going up, to take a view of the plain, in hopes of discovering him, spied Hussayn, whom he knew. The amîr flung down a handful of pearls ; and, by promising a farther gratification, obtained a promise that he should not be betrayed : nevertheless the soldier ran immediately to Timûr with the news of this discovery. The officers and soldiers hastened to the mosque ; where Hussayn, who perceived them coming, hid himself in a hole. But, still pursued by ill fortune, a skirt of his garment happened to be seen, so that, being taken, he was carried in chains to Timûr ;

<sup>n</sup> Hist. Bek, p. 118—125, cap. 26, & seq.

(Q) Steeple, or turret, built near the masjeds, or mosques, from whence the muzims, or cryers, proclaim the times of prayer. La Croix.

who,

who, unwilling to break his promise, said to the amîrs A.D. 1368. who were near him, “ I renounce the right of taking away his life ; and cancel the sentence of his death.” But when Huzzayn was dismissed from Timûr’s presence, Kây Kostrû, prince of Katlûn, desired that the amîr might be delivered to him, in order to do justice on him for taking away his brother’s life. Timûr exhorted that prince to stifle his resentment ; while the remembrance of his ancient friendship as well as alliance with Huzzayn, melted him into tears. Olajâ Itû, an amîr of years, and great experience, imagining, that if Huzzayn escaped, through Timûr’s affection, they might all repent of it afterwards, made signs to Kay Kostrû and Muyad to leave the assembly. They obeyed the signal, without asking Timûr’s leave ; and, taking horse, followed Huzzayn, and slew him.

At length the fortress of Hendwân being taken, Kon-  
saïd and Norûz Soltân, two of Huzzayn’s sons, were burnt, and their ashes scattered in the air. His two other sons, Jehân Mulk and Kalîl Soltân, fled into India, where they perished. The khân whom Huzzayn had created was also put to death. Timûr acquired all the treasure which that prince had amassed with so much avarice ; and kept four ladies of his seraglio to himself. He gave the great queen, Sevenj Kotlûk Aga, daughter of Turmeshîrîn Khan, Huzzayn’s first wife, Dilshad Aga, to Zende ; and the other ladies to considerable lords. He likewise ordered, that the inhabitants of Bâlk, who had sheltered themselves in the citadel, with their late prince, should return and rebuild the old city. The citadel, as well as palaces of Huzzayn, were all razed to the foundation ; and every thing belonging to him destroyed, that there might remain no footsteps of a prince so detested <sup>o</sup>.

*The citadel destroyed.*

## S E C T. II.

### *The Exploits of Timûr, from his Enthronement to the Reduction of Irân, or Persia at large.*

AFTER the reduction of Bâlk, all the amîrs, princes, and generals of the army, the khâns of Termed, and Seyd Bereke, chief of the sharîfs, who had predicted Timûr’s advancement to the throne, assembled in that

A.D. 1369.  
*Timûr enthroned.*

<sup>o</sup> Hist. Tim. Bek, p. 125, & seqq.

city, and unanimously chose him to fill the imperial seat of Jagatay. When the hour arrived to perform the ceremony of coronation, Timûr ascended the throne, placed the crown of gold on his head, and girded himself with the imperial belt, in presence of the princes of the blood and the grandees. These kneeled before him; wishing him prosperity, made him sumptuous presents, sprinkled handfuls of gold and precious stones upon his head, and gave him the title of Saheb Karân, which word signify, *the Emperor of the Age, and Conqueror of the World.* As to the inhabitants of Bâlk, he treated them with the utmost rigour, beheaded some, imprisoned others, enslaved their wives and children, burnt their houses, seized their riches, and ravaged the country. Thus he exterminated the rebels, and, at the same time, distributed the plunder among his lords and officers.

*A plot discovered.* From Bâlk Timûr returned to Kash; where he appointed officers of state, both civil and military. He then repaired to Samarkand, which he made the seat of his empire. The amîr Müssa, who had deserted Timûr, fled on that prince's success, to Turkestan; but, being pursued, returned to Zende Hashâm, at Shebürgan in Khorassân, and prevailed on him to revolt. Timûr having ordered the kûrûltay, or dyet, to be held; and Zende Hashâm not appearing, he sent him a threatening summons; but this young prince, instead of obeying, imprisoned the messengers. Incensed at this insult, the emperor went with an army, and besieged him in Sefiddez, or the *White Fort.* At sight of the imperial troops, Hashâm's courage failed. Having sued for pardon, he delivered up the amîr Müssa: whom, instead of punishing, Timûr feasted, and loaded with favours, giving him the command of a tribe, and a province. Nevertheless Hashâm rebelled a second time; but being besieged in Sheburgân, submitted again, was pardoned, and received among the officers of the court <sup>p</sup>.

*Hej. 772.  
A.D. 1370.* In the year of the Hog, which answers to 772, Timûr crossed the Sihûn (or Sir), to invade the country of the Getes; two of whose princes, Komze and Orenkitmûr, submitted to him, with their tribes and countries, the government of which he gave to Kepek Timûr; who soon after rebelling, he marched against him, by way of Sayrâm, on the borders of Jetâh, and, in a month, reduced the enemy. Mean while, the amîr Müssa and Zende

<sup>p</sup> Hist. Tim. Bek, p. 130—141. lib. ii. cap. 1—4.

Hashâm, forgetting all their obligations, conspired with <sup>A.D. 1370.</sup> Abû Is-hâk, and others, to seize Timûr, at the chace ; but the plot being discovered, the conspirators were tried, and convicted : yet the emperor would not put them to death. He pardoned Mûsa, on account of his great age, and relationship by marriage ; only banished two sheykhs, as they were descended from Mohammed ; and condemned Zende Hashâm to a dungeon at Samarkand.

As soon as Timûr had returned to his capital, he sent <sup>Attacks  
Karazm.</sup> ambassadors to Huzzayn Sofi, king of Karazm, to demand restitution of the countries of Kat and Kivak ; which that prince had seized five years before, during the troubles, though belonging to the empire of Jagatay. Huzzayn's answer was, that he had conquered them by the sword ; and that Timûr might recover them the same way, if he could. The mullah Jalâlo'ddîn, who was the emperor's müfti, in order to prevent bloodshed, desired leave to try what could be done in the way of negociation : but the Karazmian, instead of listening to his advice, imprisoned the mullah. In consequence of this outrage, Timûr, in 773, marched at the head of his army ; and, at Sepaye, on the Jihûn, defeated the enemy's scouts. From thence he proceeded to Kat, which he invested. In the first assault, the soldiers, having forced a passage on all sides into the town, seized the governor, and put the greater part of the garrison, as well as the inhabitants, to the sword ; carrying away the wives and children, whom Timûr next day set at liberty.

Hej. 773.  
A.D. 1371.

After this exploit, his van-guard having defeated the <sup>Grants a  
peace.</sup> enemy, at Jiwi Korlan, he ordered inroads to be made from all parts ; so that all the provinces of Karazm were ruined. Huzzayn, being in no condition to defend himself in the city of Karazm, sent to beg pardon, and demand quarter : but, diverted by Kay Kosrû, who promised to go over to him, with his tomân, he marched out with his troops to the river Kawn, six miles from the capital. However, he was repulsed ; and finding himself blocked up in his fortresses, soon died of grief. His brother Ifûf Sofi, who succeeded him, had recourse to submission : and as Timûr thought that Sevinâ Bey, commonly called Khân Zâdeh, the daughter of Ak Sofi, Ifûf's brother, who was reckoned the greatest beauty in the world, would be a proper match for his son Jehân Ghîr, he granted peace, on condition of the marriage. On his return to Samarkand, he ordered Kay Kosrû Katlani to be arrested, and prosecuted for his intrigues with Huzzayn Sofi : of which having

ing been convicted, he was delivered, bound, to the officers of amîr Hûsâyîn, who put him to death, to revenge the murder of that prince; and his province given to Mehemmed Mireke, son of Shîr Bahrâm, his relation <sup>q</sup>.

*Hejra 774.*  
A.D. 1372.

*Marries  
Jehân  
Ghir.*

When Kay Koſrû was apprehended, his son Soltân Mahmûd, with two other lords, left the court, and retired to Karazm; where they persuaded Ifûf Sofî to violate the peace: and accordingly, in autumn, he ravaged the country of Kat; but, in Ramazân 774, on the news of Timûr's march, he sent persons to intercede for him, and renew the treaty; promising forthwith to send the princefs Khân Zâdeh to Samarkand. Next spring Timûr dispatched ambassadors, with rich presents, to conduct to his court that princefs; who set out with a portion of precious stones, jewels, and furniture of great value. Timûr gave her a magnificent reception; and the marriage with his son was solemnized with the greatest pomp, after the happy moment had been fixed, with the greatest care, by the most learned astrologers.

*Hejra 776.*  
A.D. 1374.

*Marches  
into Jetâh.*

In the month of Shawal 776, Timûr began his march to Jetâh, sending before his son, the Mîrza Jehân Ghîr, with the van-guard. When they had passed Sayrâm, and arrived at Jarûn, a town of Jetâh, they were informed, by a prisoner, that Kamro'ddîn, prince of the tribe of Uglat, was encamped with an army at Gheuk Tûpa, or the Blue Hill, where he waited for Haji Bey, not expecting any enemy. On this advice, they hastened their march: but Kamro'ddîn, receiving intelligence of their approach, retired to an inaccessible place, called Birkey Gûrian, where there are three defiles of mountains, extremely steep, and three great rapid rivers. Jehân Ghîr advanced to the third defile, where Kamro'ddîn had fortified himself, and attacked his forces with great impetuosity. The action lasted till night, when the enemy fled. Next morning the prince pursued them; and Timûr, coming up at sun-rise, sent detachments along the stream of the river Abeile, to plunder the country <sup>r</sup>.

*Avoids a  
conspiracy.*

Timûr proceeded to Baytak; from whence he sent the mîrza his son, with a great army, to seize Kamro'ddîn. The prince, having ruined the cantons which are in Uchfermân, found his enemy in the mountains, whom he pursued, and obliged to abandon his troops. He ravaged all the country, razed his palaces, and seized on his wife

<sup>q</sup> Hist. Tim. Bek, p. 143—156, cap. 7—11.  
p. 157—165, cap. 11—14.

<sup>r</sup> Ibid.

**Buyân Aga**, with his daughter Dilshad Aga. After Timûr had waited fifty-three days at Baytak, he received these tidings, and, on his way home, married the princess Dilshad Aga. Then proceeding on his march by Yâssî Daban, encamped at Ozkunt. Here Adel Shâh, son of Bahram Jalayr, gave him a splendid entertainment, and presented him with some fine horses. Under this mask of hospitality, his design was, in concert with two other lords, to have seized Timûr; but this last conceiving strong suspicions, left the assembly, and thus frustrated their plot. During the winter, when he resided in his capital, they came and confessed their crime; while Timûr politely pretended to have known nothing of it, and, at the same time, highly caressed Adel Shâh.

In the beginning of the year 777, the troops were ordered to assemble, with the view of invading Karazm. As soon as the amîrs arrived at the imperial city, the sheykh Mehemed Bayân Seldâz, one of the conspirators, was apprehended; and his crime having been fully proved, he was delivered into the hands of Heri Mulk Seldûz, his relation, who put him to death, in revenge for having killed his brother. In spring, Timûr sent several amîrs, with thirty thousand horse, into Jetâh, with orders to search diligently for Kamro'ddîn, that he might be punished with death: he likewise marched with a great army towards Karazm; and being come to Sepaya, on the Jihûn, saw Turkhân Erlât, another of the conspirators, pass over with his troops, appearing willing to join him: but, through a sudden panic, he immediately returned to his orda, near Korzwân. Pulâd, who was ordered to pursue him day and night, having passed Andkûd, overtook him at Farâb, on the Sihûn. The two parties fought like lions: but, at length, the enemy flying, the victors pursued, and Pulâd alone overtook Turkhân; who, finding his horse tired, alighted, and brought down Pulâd's with an arrow. He discharged another at his enemy before he was able to get up: but it went through his cap without hurting him; then Pulâd rushed on, and, after a long struggle, flung him on the ground, where his head was cut off. At the same time, an officer brought the head of Tûrmîsh, brother of Turkhân, and both were laid at the foot of the throne\*.

Among the amîrs sent to Jetâh, Sâr Buga and Adel Shâh, conspiring with Katay Bahâdr, Elchi Buga, and

Hejra, 777.  
A.D. 1355.

Punishes the  
plotters.

\* Hist. Tim. Bek, p. 165—170, cap. 14—16.

Hamdi, which last Timûr had left governor of Andekhân, on the frontiers of Turkestan, assembled their ordâs of Jalyr and Kipjak, and marched to Samarkand, which they besieged. Ak Buga, the governor, wrote word of this revolt to Timûr; who, though he had already arrived at Khas, immediately returned. While he encamped near Bokhâra, the mîrza Jehân Ghîr, who advanced before him, met the rebels at Karmîna, and defeated them. They retired to the deserts of Kipjâk, and listed themselves in the service of Urûs Khân, emperor of that country. Sâr Buga and Adel Shâh had not been long in the service of that prince, before they fled from his court, after having killed his lieutenant, and went to Jetâh; where they persuaded Kamro'ddîn to join them, in making war on Timûr. Thus instigated, that prince marched to the country of Andekhân, where Omar Sheykh, Timûr's second son, was governor; but, being deserted by the hezâra of Kûdak, he retired to the mountains, and sent his father word, that the enemy, with a great army, had ruined Andekhân.

*Kamro'ddîn defeated.*

This advice so incensed Timûr, that he immediately departed for Jetâh. Kamro'ddîn commanded his household and orda to leave Atbâshi, while he remained in ambush with four thousand horse. Timûr coming to the place, and suspecting no snare of this kind, sent his amîrs, with all the army, in pursuit of the enemy; while he followed, with no more than two hundred men. Kamro'ddîn, glad of this occasion, fellied out with his men upon the emperor; who, no way dismayed, spurred his horse against the enemy, and, being obliged to expose his person, performed surprising acts of valour; which were so well seconded by his soldiers, that they at length defeated that numerous body. He afterwards met Kamro'ddîn again at Senghez Agâjeh, and forced him to fly. Uchkaria pursued him so closely, that at length he obliged him to return, with eight men only; who being surrounded by the amîr's soldiers, Kamro'ddîn, after having his horse killed, escaped on foot, wounded in several places.

*Death of  
Jehân  
Ghîr,*

Before the last battle Timûr dreamed, that in one of the forty-six visions, which are esteemed prophetic, he saw the sheikh Bûrhâno'ddîn Klîch, and having humbly begged of him to pray for his son Jehân Ghîr, then sick at Samarkand, the holy man only answered, "Be with God." This, with another dream he had afterwards, increased his melancholy, and convinced him that he should lose his beloved son, whom he found dead at his return to that capital. This prince, who was but twenty when he died, left

left two sons; Mohammed Soltân, by Khân Zâdeh; and Pîr Mohammed, a posthumous son, by Bâkti Mulki Aga, daughter of Elias Yesûri.

Timûr, about this time, being informed that Adel and Adel Shâh Jalayr was in the mountains of Karachuk, beyond Shâh. Otrâr, sent thither two amîrs with fifteen horse, who having found him at Akfûma, a tower on the top of Mount Karajik, put him to death according to law. Soon after, mîrza Omar Sheykh, with several amîrs, were sent against Kamro'ddîn, whom they met and defeated on the borders of Kûratû, a country of the Getes<sup>t</sup>.

The troops were no sooner returned than Timûr resolved to march in person into Jetâh; and his van-guard were so fortunate as to come up with Kamro'ddîn at Bûgam Afi Gheul; where, after a furious battle, they put him to flight, ravaged his country, and reduced his subjects to obedience. After having pursued him as far as Kûchar, Timûr returned to his capital, by way of Oynagû and Uzkunt. That prince, when at Kûchâr, being informed that Tokatmîsh Aglen had withdrawn from the court of Urûs, khân of Kipjâk, in order to come over to him, sent Tumen Timûr Uzbek to meet and conduct him to Samarkand, where he was received with great honour. Timûr heaped favours on him, and gave him the government of several places for his subsistence. He likewise assisted him against Urûs Khân, who soon after attacked him, entered his dominions with a great army, and placed Toktamîsh on the throne of Kipjâk. This prince being A.D. 1376. expelled, he restored him again in 778.

Timûr seemed now to have attained the summit of felicity, many of his officers bearing the titles of khân and sultân, when, to increase his happiness, in the year of the Serpent, and that of the Hejra 779, in the month of Rabiyo'laker, the mîrza Shâh Rukh was born. Soon after this event Timûr made a fourth expedition into Karazm. Whilst he was at Otrâr, to observe Urûs Khân, Isûf Sofi, king of that country, sent an army to Bokhâra, which ravaged the province. Timûr sent an ambassador to complain of these hostilities; but Isûf, instead of making any apology, threw the ambassador into prison. He served a second envoy in the same manner, and sent Tui Bogay, surnamed the Robber, with his followers, to carry away the cattle of the Turkmâns which were about Bokhâra. However, Timûr did not molest him this year, the re-

Heira 779.  
A.D. 1377.

Timûr's  
greatness.

<sup>t</sup> Hist. Tim. Bek, p. 170—178. cap. 16—18.

mainder of which he spent at Zenjir Saray, after he had married Tuman Aga, daughter of the amîr Mûssa, for whose sake he adorned Samarkand with several beautiful monuments, and among the rest a pleasure-houſe, to the west of that city, called Bâghi Behisht, or *the Garden of Paradise*<sup>u</sup>.

A.D. 1378.

*Karazm conquered.*

In Shawal 780, Timûr entered Karazm at the head of his army, and invested the town of Eski Skuz, while several parties ravaged the country. On this occasion Ifûf or Yusef Sofi sent a challenge to Timûr, who, putting on his armour, contrary to the prayers of his commanders, went to the edge of the ditch, and called on Yusef to come forth; but that prince thought it safer to keep within the walls. However, Timûr having received some melons from Termed, thought it uncourteous if he did not send Yusef some when he was so near him; the present was made in a gold bafon, delivered at the wall; but Yusef had so little politeness, that he ordered the fruit to be thrown into the ditch, and gave the bafon to the town porter. The besieged made a furious sally, and frequent skirmishes drew on a general battle, in which the enemy were defeated, and retired into the city. Timûr then ordered the amîrs to begin the siege of the capital; which having continued near four months, till the castle was ruined, the khân, Yusef Sofi, died of grief, as the emperor had predicted. At the same time the batteries being renewed, and breaches made, the town was attacked, and at length taken, after a very brave resistance. The city was pillaged, many of the inhabitants were killed, and all the learned men, as well as tradesmen, sent to Kash.

Hejra 781.  
A.D. 1379.

*Kash walled.*

This city, which had long been a seminary of learning, farnamed Kûbbet Elilmî Veledeb, that is, *the Dome of Science and Virtue*, was also called Shâh Sebz, or *the Green City*, from the verdure of its gardens and meadows. At the end of the year 781 the emperor declared it his ordinary residence in summer, and the second seat in the empire. He therefore inclosed it with new walls, and built a new palace, called Ak-faray, from the exceeding whiteness and height of its walls.

Mâlek  
Kayâzo'd-  
din sum-  
moned.

In winter Timûr sent to summon Mâlek Kayâzo'ddîn Pîr Ali, son of Mâlek Huffayn, prince of Herât, who died in 1369, to the kûrûltay, or assembly of the states, which was to be held the next spring. Pîr Ali pretended submission to the summons; but delayed the messengers

<sup>u</sup> Hist. Tim. Bek, lib. ii. p. 178—193. cap. 19—26.

with excuses in order to finish the fortifications of Herât, which he had encompassed the year before with a wall two leagues in circuit, inclosing the suburbs, and gardens without the wall of the old city. These circumstances were reported to Timûr at the time when Ali Bey, son of Argûn Shâh Jûn Garbani, returned to his obedience, and was pardoned. The emperor even consented that his daughter should marry his grandson Mehemed Soltân, son of Jehân Ghîr, and consulted with him about his design upon Herât, whither Ali Bey promised to go in spring<sup>w</sup>.

It was Timûr's ambition of universal monarchy that impelled him to these undertakings. He used to say, it was neither fit nor decent that the world should be governed by two kings. About this time many rebels had seized the provinces of Irân, and declared themselves independent. This division exceedingly displeased Timûr, who having conquered the kingdom of Tûrân, resolved to subdue the empire of Irân, or Persia at large. Preparatory to this enterprize, he made his son, mîrza Mirân Shâh, then but fourteen years of age, governor of Khorasân, and sent him thither, accompanied with several amîrs, and fifty companies of horse. The Tatar troops having crossed the Jihûn, passed the autumn, and most of the winter, at Bâlk and Shebürgân; but towards the end of that season, took from Mâlek the town of Badghîz.

Towards the end of the year 782, Timûr having raised a great army of Turks and Tatars crossed the Jihûn, and advanced into the country of Khorasân. When he arrived at Andekûd, his devotion prompted him to visit the illustrious santon Baba Senkû, one of those darwîsh who make profession of folly (R). This lunatic flung a breast of mutton at the emperor's head, who believing this to be a good augury, said: "I am perswaded that God will grant me the conquest of Khorasân, because this kingdom has always been called the breast or middle of the habitable world." Timûr left Andekûd; and, as soon as Mâlek Mehemed, brother of Mâlek Kayazo'ddîn, who was then in the fortress of Saraks, had notice of his march, he came before the throne, and had the honour to kiss the impe-

*Hejra 782.  
A.D. 1380.*

*Heinwades  
Mâlek.*

<sup>w</sup> Hist. Tim. Bek, p. 194—201. cap. 26—29.

(R) These are natural fools. The Mohammedans have an extraordinary vénération for them, and say, that God loved them before their creation, and

on that account did not endue them with reason; so that they are incapable of offending. *La Croix.*

rial carpet, as well as to receive many caresses and presents. After a long march the army passed by Maru Ar-rûd, and encamped at Chekedalek, eleven leagues from Herât.

*Fu-shenj besieged and taken.*

As Mâlek Kayâzo'ddân had just taken Nishâbûr from the Sarbedals, Timûr marched to Jam and Kûfûpa, that the enemy's troops, who were in those parts, might not join Mâlek. From thence he advanced to Fushenj, about twenty-five miles short of Herât, and invested it immediately. This town was surrounded with high walls, a good rampart, and deep ditch full of water. Its other fortifications were exceeding strong ; yet the soldiers, crossing the ditch on planks, advanced to the wall, and made a great slaughter of the enemy with their arrows. Timûr, who often rode round the place without armour, to encourage his men, was wounded with two arrows. At length some amîrs mounted the wall, while others forced the gate, and entering also by the breaches, put a great number of the inhabitants to the sword. Fushenj being thus taken, the army marched to Herât, and besieged that city \*.

*Herat surrendered.*

The troop of Gûris, or Gowris, reckoned the most valiant men of Irân, made a sally ; but being forced to retire after a bloody conflict, the citizens, to save their lives and fine houses from destruction, refused to make resistance ; so that Mâlek, finding he could not bring them to a second sally, was obliged to submit ; and coming out to beg pardon, kissed the imperial carpet on his knees. Timûr gave him a vest of honour, and dismissed him with assurances of favour and protection. Then the conqueror seized the treasures and other riches which the Gowri or Gawri kings had amassed for several years, consisting of silver coin, precious stones, rich thrones, and crowns of gold, vessels of plate, gold and silver brocades, with other curiosities ; he likewise commanded the walls, both old and new, to be razed. A tax likewise was levied on the inhabitants for their ransom, and the gates of the city, covered with iron plates, and adorned with sculptures and inscriptions, were carried to Kash.

Mâlek Kayazo'ddân was now ordered to deliver up the fortress of Eskilj, called also Amân-hûh, governed by the amîr Gowri, his youngest son, reckoned the most brave and experienced officer in the kingdom, whom Mâlek prevailed on to deliver up the place, which was accounted impregnable.

*Hej. 783.  
A.D. 1381.*

\* Hist. Tim. Bek, p. 201—208. cap. 30—32.

Timûr, highly pleased with his success at Herât, sent other troops to conquer Nishâbûr and Sebzâr; but as Ali Bey places submitted in the person of his envoy, he marched to Kellât and Tûsh, or Mashâd. Ali Bey, on advice of the emperor's march, submitted; so did the governor of Sebzâr, and both were received into favour. He then proceeded for Esferâyîn, belonging to the amîr Veli, or Wali, prince of Mazânderân. The soldiers immediately rushed to the walls, in which they made considerable breaches, and entering the place, put to the sword a great number of people, and demolished all the houses of that great city. After this chastisement Timûr sent an ambassador to the amîr Veli, who submitted, and promised shortly to repair to his master.

Having made several regulations in the political state of Khorassân, confirmed Mâlek Kayâzo'ddin, prince of Herât, and the other amîrs, in their respective governments, Timûr returned to his own dominions, and passed the winter at Bokhâra; but while he diverted himself in that city, his pleasure was imbibited with the loss of his daughter Tâji Khân, married to Mehemed Bey, son of amîr Müffa, a princefs who had scarce her equal in beauty and virtue. He was so deeply affected at her death, that when advice was brought that Ali Bey, in conjunction with the amîr Veli, had besieged Ali Muayd, whom he had left governor of Sebzâr, he was altogether unmoved, nor would have resented the insult, but for the remonstrances of his sister Kotluk Turkhân Aga, who urged the bad consequences which would attend his neglect of affairs. Roused by the words of this princefs, he assembled his forces, and took the field, though it was in the midst of winter. He crossed the Jihûn with his army over a bridge of boats; and having passed by Makhân, encamped in the neighbourhood of Kel't, where Ali Bey took refuge; nor could be prevailed on to submit, either by threats or promises, relying on the mountain whereon that fortres was built, which he imagined to be inaccessible.

Timûr, to deceive the bey, went down to Korân, dependent on Abswerd, where he declared that he intended to invade Mazânderân. On this report Ali Bey sent the horses, sheep, and other animals, which had been shut up in the fortres, to graze again in the meadows; when suddenly the emperor changed his route, and returned to Kelât, which he invested on all sides. Ali, seeing himself

Kelât besieged.

thus unexpectedly invested, had recourse once more to Timur's clemency, and promised, in case his majesty would come to the gate of the town with only a few persons, he would repair to the gate and ask pardon for his faults: to which proposal the emperor agreed. The walls of Kelât were built on the brink of a high mountain, and along them was a narrow passage among the rocks, shut in by a gate, and joined to that of the town. Here the treacherous Ali Bey placed men in ambush, with orders to kill Timûr, who went to the place appointed with only five horsemen; but the assassins, by some mistake, remained in their concealment beyond the time, and even forgot to leave open the door by which the emperor was to have entered; so that, after having waited a long time for Ali Bey, he returned to his camp.

*Tenibz reduced.* Hejra 784. A.D. 1382. He then ordered the troops of Mecrit and Badâghshân to scale the walls. They were followed by Timûr with a troop of brave officers, and made such a slaughter, that Ali Bey promised on oath to make his submission next day to Timûr at the gate of the town; a ceremony which he performed accordingly; but as he was indulged in his request not to repair to court till next day, he in the night barricadoed the passes by which the imperial troops had ascended the mountain, and again violated his engagement. The emperor rebuilt the fortress of Kakhaka, in the road to Bawerd; but sent Siorgotmîsh Khân, with the mîrza Ali, and the brave sheykh Ali Behâdr, to block up the passes to Kelât, while he went to reduce Tershîz. This is a famous fortrefs, almost inaccessible, situated in the mountains, and esteemed impregnable on account of its high walls, and deep ditches; it was garrisoned with Gowris, as well as provided with arms and provisions. The enemy were so obstinate, that they would not evacuate the place at the command of Mâlek Kayâzo'ddîn; but the walls and breast-work being destroyed, they begged for quarter, and were inrolled, for their bravery, in Timûr's troops.

*The amîr Veli and Ali Bey submit.* About this time Jalâlo'ddîn Shâh Shujah, king of Pârs or Proper Persia, sent one of his principal officers, with a letter, to assure the emperor of his services and sincere friendship, accompanied by rich presents. In return for which, Timûr sent others, with an envoy, to demand the daughter of that prince for the mîrza Pîr Mehemed, son of the late mîrza Jehân Ghîr. He then marched towards

Mazânderân ; and the amîr Veli had recourse to submission ; in consequence of which, Timûr withdrew again with his army. Mean while, sheykh Ali Bahâdr mounted the walls of Kelât in the night, with only a few domestics : but, mistaking his way in the dark, was perceived by the enemy, who began a bloody fight : yet, when their quivers were emptied on both sides, some persons, through a religious motive, effected an accommodation. Ali Bey met and embraced the sheykh Ali Bahâdr ; and, after entertaining him for several days, went with him to the imperial camp at Radekhân ; where he was received into favour, at the intercession of the sheykh, with whose behaviour on this occasion Timûr was highly pleased.

The emperor, having now entirely reduced the kingdom of Khorassân under the obedience of the mîrza Mirân Shâh, dismissed his troops, and repaired to his capital. Ali Bey, with the amîr Gowri, and his brother Mâlek Mehemed, sons of Mâlek Kayâzo'ddîn were sent bound to the mîrza Omar Sheykh at Andekhân : but Mâlek himself, and his eldest son Pîr Mehemed, were kept at Samarkand. These were all put to death, *Put to death.* except Pîr Mehemed, on the following occasion : during the winter, Mâlek Mehemed, son of Mâlek Fakro'ddîn, to whom Timûr, in pity to his poverty, had given the government of Gowr, being joined by Abûsaïd Espâbed, whom that monarch had also released out of prison, marched to Herât with a troop of Gowris, and, assisted by other rebels, committed all sorts of disorders. The governor, and other officers, having retired to the fortress of Ektiaro'ddîn, the rebels burnt the gate, and put all the Turkish garrison to the sword, who had leaped off the walls to save their lives. On this advice, the mirza Mirân Shâh marched from the river Morgâb, where he was then encamped, to Herât ; and slew so many of the rebels, that his soldiers built a high tower of their heads<sup>a</sup>.

In 785 died the princess Dilshadaga, wife of Timûr ; *Hejra 785.*  
and, a few days after, Kotluk Tûrkhan Aga, his eldest *A.D. 1383.*  
sister ; famous for building hospitals, mosques, colleges,  
and other public works. These losses deeply affected him  
for a long time : but at length reflecting, that an hour  
only, employed by a prince in executing justice, is of more  
importance than the worship given to God, and all the  
prayers made during one's whole life, he gradually re-  
sumed the management of public affairs. Having learned  
that there were some commotions in the country of the  
*Jetâh invaded.*

<sup>a</sup> Hist. Tim. Bek. p. 227—233, cap. 39—41.

Getes, the greater part of whom were not Mohammedans; he ordered the mirza Ali to march thither with an army, and destroy those seditious people; then to pursue Kâmrô'ddîn, the author of those troubles. He sent after them sheykh Ali Bahâdr, and other amîrs, with ten thousand horse; who, at Atakom, intercepted the first party on their return, defeated and plundered by the people of Bah-rîn; but afterwards they took vengeance on them with great slaughter. They all went back together, in pursuit of Kamro'ddîn, to Ifsigheul, and thence as far as Gheuk-topa or the *Blue Hills*; but, not finding him, returned in autumn.

*Cruel punishment.*

In the mean time, sheykh Dawd, whom Timûr had made chief commander in Sebzwâr, having slain the governor Taban Bahâdr, the mirza Mirân Shâh laid siege to the place, and slew abundance of the rebels; but the sheykh Dawd escaped to the fortresses of Bâdrabâd, which the prince sent troops to invest. The emperor detached the sheykh Ali Bahâdr and Uchkara Bahâdr, at the head of a great army, against the amîr Veli, prince of Mazânderân; and marched in person towards the country of Sistân or Sejestân, which was in rebellion also. At the beginning of Ramadân 785, his army invested Herât, whose inhabitants had joined the Gowri rebels: from thence he marched to Sebzwâr, which was attacked and forced. Near two thousand slaves taken prisoners, were piled alive, one upon another, with mortar and bricks, as a monument to deter others from revolting. After having made this dreadful example, he sent his vanguard to Sistân; and followed with the rest of his army, which consisted of a hundred thousand warriors. In his way, prince Shâh Jalâlo'ddîn, of Fârâh or Parrah, came and submitted. The army likewise took the fortresses of Zâreh, with the slaughter of near five thousand soldiers, of whose bodies they made a mountain, and with their heads erected a tower.

*Sistân besieged;*

When the emperor arrived at Sistân or Sejestân, there appeared some lords deputed from Shâh Kothbo'ddîn, to offer tribute to Timûr, and the usual customs; but, during this conference, the besieged sallied out in multitudes, and were repulsed with some difficulty. In the night they made a second irruption with as little success<sup>b</sup>.

*taken, and destroyed.*

Next day the army assaulted the place, on all sides; and the king, Shâh Kothbo'ddîn, despairing to defend himself, came out of the town to ask pardon of the emperor; who

<sup>b</sup> Hist. Tim. Bek, p. 233—241. cap. 41. 44.

granted it without hesitation. Mean while between twenty and thirty thousand of the populace, sliding down by the walls, advanced to attack the besiegers, who repulsed them with great slaughter : then, pursuing their victory, they gave a second assault ; and, having made several breaches in the walls, entered the city, which they left desolate ; they not only demolished the walls and houses, but slew all the inhabitants, men, women, and children. Thus was this fine city destroyed, and all the treasures of the Sistân kings carried away, in the month of Shawal. The king Kothbo'ddin, generals of the army, and governors of provinces, were sent to Samarkand.

From Sistân the army marched to Bost ; and, in their passage, they took the fortress of Tak. As the army proceeded by the upper part of the Hirmen, the prince of Mam Katû waited on Timur with presents ; but, as Timur knew him to be the person, who, when he returned from Sistân with the amîr Huffayn, had wounded him in the hand, he ordered him to be seized, as soon as he was gone from his presence, and shot to death. The troops, proceeding on their march, took the city of Mam Katû and Kala Surk, that is, *Red Castle*. Then arriving at Hezarpez, where three thousand of Tûmen's subjects had fortified themselves in the mountain, they took it by assault, though deemed impregnable, and put them to the sword, to punish them for the disorders they had committed.

The army advanced to attack the Owgani (S) of Kûh Soleyman, a fortress on a mountain of that name, who had lately submitted, and afterwards revolted. A bloody battle was fought ; but the place being at length taken, the Owgani were all massacred, according to the laws of Jenghîz Khân. From thence Jehân Shâh Yakû Bahâdr was sent to Kandahâr, which he carried by assault ; and, seizing the governor of the province, sent him to court, where he was hanged. Timur rewarded Jehân Shâh, and then dispatched him with forces to Kelât ; which, after several assaults, he took and demolished. Sistân, Zablestân, and their dependencies, being thus brought into subjection, the emperor disbanded the amîrs, officers, and troops, and repaired to Samarkand.

After Timur had resided three months in his capital, to enjoy the delightful season, he again invaded Mazânderân. *A.D. 1384*

(S) These are the Awgâns, Awgwâns, or Afgâns, who lately caused such troubles in Persia.

*Invades  
Irán a-  
frejb.*

He took the rout of Burkey Tash, Bâverd or Abiverd, and Nesa, where he learned that the amîr Veli had shut himself up in the citadel of Dûrûn. His van-guard met that of the amîr, and an action ensued, in which the enemy was worsted. Dûrûn was besieged, and taken by assault : on which occasion, the governor and garrison were put to the sword <sup>c.</sup>

From Dûrûn they marched by Chilawn, a country full of villages ; and, passing the river at Jorjân, encamped at Shafumân : there the two armies engaged. These skirmishes continued for twenty days. The amîr Veli advanced, and fought with heroic valour ; but was at length obliged to fly, and many of his best officers fell in the pursuit. Toward evening, Timûr ordered thirty companies to lie in ambuscade : in the night, the amîr Veli fellied out of the fortress upon the right wing commanded by prince Mirân Shâh, who marched against him ; and, at the same time, he was charged by those who lay in ambush : so that, being put to flight, many of his troops fell into the snare which they had laid to entrap the enemy. The army arrived in the morning at Aftâr-âbâd (T), capital of Mazanderân, where they burnt and destroyed every thing, without sparing even fucking infants.

The amîr Veli fled, with his wives and children, by the way of Langaru, to Damgân ; and, leaving them in the fortress of Shîrdekhûh, retired to Ray ; in the neighbourhood of which, being almost overtaken, he took refuge in the woods of the country of Rusteyndâr, and thus escaped.

*Soltân Ah-  
med flies.* The emperor, leaving above two-thirds of his army to winter at Aftâr-âbâd, marched with the rest towards the kingdom of Ray. Soltân Ahmed Sheykh Ayîs Jalayr, who was then at Soltânîya in Irâk, alarmed at this unexpected approach, left a strong garrison there, under the command

*Hejra 787.  
A.D. 1385.*

of his son Akbûga, and retired to Tauris. Mean while Omar Abbâs, at the head of threescore horse, advanced towards Soltânîya, while the country was covered with snow, to gain intelligence. The enemy, on the news of his march, departed in great haste, with their young prince, for Tauris ; but, as they had not all withdrawn when Omar Abbâs arrived, that commander entered, sword in hand, and made himself master of the place. Timûr, who, in spring, repaired to Soltânîya, having sent

<sup>c.</sup> Hist. Tim. Bek, p. 241—253. cap. 44—48.

(T) Situated at the south-east corner of the Caspian Sea.

to Shîrâz for Sarek Adel (one of the greatest lords belonging to sheykh Avîs, then in the service of sultân Zeyn al Abo'ddîn), conferred on him the government of that province, and the territories dependent on it; leaving with him also an army, to subdue the neighbouring countries.

After this expedition, Timûr, returning from Soltâniya, entered the mountains of Rusteyndâr; and, as the princes of the country retired as he approached, the amîr Veli fled also from Yalûs; while the army directed its march towards the cities of Amol and Sarye or Sari: but the princes, who possessed those places, prevented the danger, by offering to pay tribute, and obey Lokmân Pâdîshâh, prince of Astâr-âbâd. Timûr, having thus reduced Irân, as far westward as Soltâniya, returned to the seat of his empire.

During the winter, Tokatmîsh, khân of Kipjâk, sent an army of near ninety thousand men, by way of Dârbend, to attack Tauris. The inhabitants of Tauris having, by advice of the amîr Veli, who had retired thither, fortified their city, repulsed the enemy for eight days; but at length the army of Toktamîsh Khân reduced the place, where they exercised all manner of cruelties and abomination. Having, in six days, pillaged all the treasures, they carried them off, with an incredible number of slaves, to their own country.<sup>d</sup>

Timûr, when he heard of this devastation, was greatly incensed, and confirmed in his resolution to conquer Irân: which, being in confusion for want of a sovereign, was subject to such invasions, and liable to fall into the hands of some rival potentate. In the year 788, therefore, he crossed the Jihûn with a formidable army; and, after a long march, arrived at Firûzkûh. Here, being informed of the outrages committed by the people of Lûrestân, or country of Lûr, who had lately attacked and plundered a karawân of pilgrims, passing through their country to Mecca, he thought himself obliged to chastise such villains. Therefore, taking with him every fifth man, he marched thither with all expedition, ordered Urujerd, with the neighbouring places, to be plundered, and at length reduced Korram-abûd, an almost impregnable fortress, whether the robbers of Lûrestân had retired; the greater part of whom, being taken, were thrown headlong from the tops of the mountains. Having thus subdued this little principality, he rejoined his army at Nahawend.

<sup>d</sup> Hist. Tim. Bek. p. 253—260. cap. 48—51.

A.D. 1385.

Takes  
Tauris.

Having received advice that sultân Ahmed Jalayr had raised troops at Baghdaâd, and returned to Tauris, he moved in haste towards this last city. The sultan did not wait his coming. Troops, being sent to pursue him, overtook and plundered his baggage. He abandoned his army, and retired with a small number of attendants : but, at the salt-pits of Nemekzar, beyond Nakchivân, was overtaken again by Elias Koja, son of Sheykh Ali Bahâdr, at the head of a few horse. The sultân made a brave resistance ; and Elias having been disabled by a wound, this incident afforded him an opportunity of escaping. In the mean time, several great lords and sharifs of Azerbejân came to submit to the emperor ; and a sum of money was imposed on the inhabitants of Tauris, by way of ransom for their lives.

Azerbejân  
reduced.

The whole kingdom of Azerbejân being now reduced, the court remained at that capital during the summer. The amîr Veli was seized wandering in the province of Kalkal, and put to death. In autumn the army marched to Merend ; and then to the river Urus, which it passed, over the bridge of Ziao'l Mulk, one of the most magnificent in the world, standing in the territory of Nakchivân, near the town of Yulaha.

Invades  
Georgia,  
and sub-  
dues it.

The army having reduced the citadel of Korni, and town of Surmalu, advanced to Kars : a town with a citadel so strongly built of stone, and difficult of access, that the inhabitants of the country deemed it impregnable : Nevertheless the governor Pirûz Bâkht, a Turkmân, after a very brave defence, was obliged to surrender the place ; which was plundered, and then razed to the ground. As Timûr's aim from the first, was to make war on the infidels, because it is recommended by God to Mohammed, as the most excellent of all actions, so, being at this time in the neighbourhood of Georgia, he resolved upon the conquest of that country, which he had long before meditated. With this view he decamped from Kârs, and, by the way of Kitû, arrived at Teffis, capital of that country, which was well fortified with strong walls, besides a citadel : but, by the valour of Timûr's troops, the city was taken, and prince Mâlek Ipokrates brought in chains to the camp \*.

Several detachments were sent into different parts of the country, which reduced many cities and provinces.

\* Hist. Tim. Bek, p. 260—269 cap. 51—54.

At Karabâgh (or the Black Garden), Timûr sent for Ipo-krates ; and used such convincing arguments, that he turned Mohammedan. He presented the emperor with a coat of mail, reported to have been that which the prophet Dawd, or David, forged in a smith's shop ; and made proof, by dying it several times. Timûr, in return, made him several presents, and permitted him to return home : which humane treatment, induced the greatest part of Mâlek's subjects to embrace the Moslem faith.

At this time the amîr Sheykh Ibrâhîm, prince of Shîr-wân, distinguished for his power, honesty, and noble descent, came and submitted to Timûr. Among other presents, there was one of eight captives, whom he had bought ; and, as some person said that the ninth piece was wanting (U), he presented himself, to make up the number ; which action so highly pleased the emperor, that, besides other bounties, he bestowed on him the kingdom of Shîr-wân, and its dependencies, with the title of king ; under which he became very famous. Other sovereigns followed this prince's example ; particularly those of Ghilân, or Kilân, who, confiding in their mountains and woods, marshes and sloughs, which rendered access difficult, as well as in the strength of their walled towns, had not obeyed any king for many ages.

Timûr, having passed the winter at Karabâgh, on the banks of the Urûs (or Aras), in the beginning of the year 789 marched to Bardaa. There he received advice that Toktamîsh, khân of Kipjâk, had revolted ; and sent an army to make an irruption into Azerbejân, by the way of Dârbend, contrary to the advice of his principal lords ; but Ali Bey, and Kazanshi, who had killed his own father, having found access to him, persuaded him to a rupture with the emperor. A body of troops being sent over the Kûr, to observe the motions of this enemy, were defeated ; but a stronger detachment advancing to support them, under the command of the mîrza Mirân Shâh, Haji Sayfo'ddîn, and other princes, the Kipjacks were routed in their turn, and pursued as far as Dârbend. The prisoners Timûr generously released without ransom.

From the Kûr he marched to Gheukche Tenghîz, that is, the Blue Sea, where the empress Saray Mulk Khanûm arrived with her two sons, from Samarkand. At length he proceeded to Alenjik, where there was a fortress be-

Hejra 789.  
A.D. 1387.

*Defeats the  
Kipjacks.*

(U) It is the custom to present nine pieces of a fort.  
longing

A.D. 1387. longing to sultân Ahmed, which he took, and razed to the ground <sup>f</sup>.

*Chastises  
the Turk-  
mâns.*

Advice arriving, that the Turkmâns were continually molesting the Mohammedans ; that they robbed the kara-wâns, not sparing even those of Mecca ; and that nobody could pass in safety by the places where they dwelt, Timûr left the province of Nakchivân, and resolved to chastise those ruffians. In the way, he ordered the baggage to repair to Alatak ; when he arrived at the castle of Bayezîd, his troops pillaged it, and carried off all that the inhabitants had left in the adjacent country.

*Reduces  
Armenia,*

In the course of his progress, he compelled Taharton, sovereign of Arzengan, to submit and pay tribute : he reduced Arzerum, Mush, and Aklat. Then, proceeding to Adeljawz, the prince came out to meet him with presents, and was confirmed in the possession of his principality. The emperor continued his march by the lake of VÂN ; and, having passed Bend Mahi, at length arrived at Alatak, where he joined the baggage and body of the army. The forces, thus united, advanced to VÂN and Vastân. Mâlek Azzo'ddîn, who commanded in the former, retreated into the citadel, which was very strong, situated on the ridge of a mountain, bounded on one side by the lake. The army used all their efforts to take both the castle and the town. At length the prince came out, and submitted : but the inhabitants refusing to surrender, the siege was renewed ; and the fortrefs, which had never been conquered before, was entered on the twentieth day by the soldiers ; who slew a great number of those robbers.

*and Kûr-  
destân.*

Timûr, having ordered the castle of VÂN to be demolished, went to Salmâz, a city of Azerbejân, where he left Mâlek Azzo'ddîn in possession of all Kûrdestân. At the same time the prince of Armitzek came to submit, and was confirmed in the principality of Armit. The emperor marched to Marâgha, and Ghilân : from whence, in autumn 789, he set out to conquer the kingdoms of Fâra and Irâk. He had some time before sent to summon to his court Zayno'labeddîn, prince of Shirâz, whose father, Shâh Shûjah, before he died, had recommended him to Timûr's protection ; but this prince, instead of obeying the summons, imprisoned the envoy. The army, taking its route through the country of Hamadân, arrived at Jer-

<sup>f</sup> Hist. Tim. Bek, p. 269—278. cap. 54—58.

badekhân, from whence the emperor advanced to Ispâhân. The governor Seyd Muzaffer Kâshi, maternal uncle of soltân Zayno'labeddîn, with other chief men, came out to implore the mercy of Timûr; who entered the city, and lodged in the fortress of Tabarrûk. Having placed a garrison in the city, and appointed a governor, he returned to his camp; but in the night, the populace headed by one Ali Kuchapa a blacksmith, took to their arms, and massacred the commissaries of Timûr, with about three thousand of his soldiers <sup>g</sup>.

Next morning, when Timûr was informed of this sedition, he ordered his army to take the city by assault. Troops were sent to guard the quarter of the sharîfs, and doctors of the law; but he ordered all the rest of the inhabitants to be put to the sword, excepting those who had preserved any of his soldiers. According to the registers of the divân, the number of the slain amounted to seventy thousand; their heads were laid in heaps on the walls, and afterwards piled up in towers, as usual.

After the reduction of Ispâhân, Timûr marched towards Pârs and Shîrâz: on advice of this motion, Zayno'labeddîn, prince Kermân of Pârs, or Proper Persia, fled with his troops to join shâh Mansûr, governor of Tostar, his cousin-german; but his soldiers, being bribed, went over to Mansûr; who, seizing the imprudent prince, first imprisoned him, and afterwards his treacherous troops, confiscating all their effects. Mean while the emperor arriving at Shîrâz, on the first of Zulhajeh, that metropolis, with the whole kingdom, submitted. The governors agreed to pay one thousand tomans (W) Kapeghi; and the kotbah was read in Timûr's name. Here shâh Yahîa, prince of Yazd, a city of Pârs, nephew of the late shâh Shuja; soltân Ahmed, prince of Kermân, brother of the same Shuja; and Abu Ishâk, his grandson, from Sirjian; all the neighbouring sovereigns; also the atâbeks of Lor and Gurgian Lar, came and made their submission; while the troops continued to pillage the countries which refused to obey the summons <sup>h</sup>.

<sup>g</sup> Hist. Tim. Bek. p. 278—290, cap. 58—60.  
290—299. cap. 60—62.

<sup>h</sup> Idem, p.

(W) A toman is worth twenty French crowns. La Croix.

## S E C T. III.

*Wars with the Kipjáks and Getes. Conquest of the Countries to the Euphrates.*

*Toktamish  
Khán re-  
pulsed.*

IN the interim, Toktamish, khán of Kipják, defeated by Timûr in the West, had gone round, and attacked his dominions in the East. His army, having passed by Saganâk, invested Sabrân; but were obliged to raise the siege. However, as they continued to ravage the country, the Mîrza Omar Sheykh marched from Andekhân; and, being joined by the troops left at Samarkand, crossed the Sihûn in autumn. They met the enemy's army in the field of Juklik, five leagues to the east of Otrâr; and fought till night. Anketûra, nephew of the amîr Haji Bey, with an army from Mogulestân, having in the mean time arrived at Sayrâm and Tâshkunt, Omar Sheykh immediately returned to cut off their retreat; and came up with them before Aksiket. The armies, for some days, marched along the banks of the Sihûn, in view of each other, waiting for an opportunity of engaging to advantage<sup>1</sup>.

*The Getes  
defeated.*

At length, one night, Anketûra, leaving one thousand men in his camp, with orders to light fires, that the mîrza might think all the army was still there, marched with the rest of his troops, and forded the Sihûn. At the same time Omar Sheykh advanced against and fought him; but, as the enemy far surpassed him in number of forces, he desisted, and entered Andekhân. Anketûra pursued him, and attempted to seize all the avenues; but the mîrza harassed him with sallies in such a manner, that growing weary of the expedition, he returned homewards. The troops of Kipják pillaged the towns of Great Bukhâria; and, being joined at Bokhâra, by another body of their army, besieged that city: but, as they were always worsted in their attacks, they raised the siege, and made incursions through the country; in one of which, they burnt Zenjîr Saray, one of the emperor's palaces, whither they were conducted by sultân Mahmûd, son of Kay Kofrû Katlânî.

*New con-  
quests set-  
tled.*

When Timûr received advice of this invasion, he gave the government of Shîrâz to shâh Yahia, nephew of shâh Shuha; that of Ispâhân to sultân Mehemed, son of shâh Ya-

<sup>1</sup> Hist. Tim. Bek. p. 290—299. cap. 60—62.

hâ; that of Kirmân to sultân Ahmed, brother of shâh Shuja; and invested the sultân Abu Is-hâk, shâh Shuja's grandson, with the government of the province, as well as city and castle, of Sirjân, which he bestowed on him and his heirs for ever, signing all their patents with the imperial signet called altomga, that is, *the mark of the red hand*. Then he sent all the great amîrs belonging to the court of the late shâh Shuja, with all the mechanics of Shîrâz, to Samarkand; and he himself set out for that city, at the end of Moharran 790. As soon as the enemy heard that he had crossed the Jihûn with his army, they retreated to Kipjâk, and were pursued as far as Bilen.

In the beginning of the year Timûr departed for Karazm; and at the river Shedris, learned by a deserter, that Iltmish Aglan, king of that country, and Solymân Sofi, had quitted that kingdom, and retreated to Kipjâk. In consequence of this intelligence he sent some troops in pursuit of them, who, overtaking them, made a terrible slaughter, and plundered their baggage. When he reached the capital of Karazm, he ordered the inhabitants to remove, with their goods, to Samarkand; and razed that great city to the very foundations, sowing the ground with barley. However, in 793, Mûsik being sent by Timûr to Karazm, he repeopled the country, and restored it to its ancient splendor.

Hejra 790.  
A.D. 1388.

During Timûr's expedition into Karazm, Mehemed Mireke, son of Shîr Bahrâm, whom he had made governor of Katlân, and honoured in marriage with his daughter sultân Bâkt Begum, revolted; and invested Termed, but could not take that city. On the first news of this rebellion, the mîrza Omar Sheykh pursued the rebels, who dispersed; and Mireke fled to the kingdom of Katlân. Being followed by the mîrza to the narrow pass called Darrey Darvâz, he implored the protection of shâh Jalalo'ddin, who refused him entrance into the castle: to add to his affliction, most of his domestics abandoned him. Meantime Omar Sheykh could get no tidings of him; but while he staid in Katlân, waiting the event, one of his officers, in his way to Samarkand with some domestics, arrived at a fountain in Katlân; where observing the tracks of horses which had gone out of the common road, he had the curiosity to follow them; and had no sooner passed some hills, than he perceived Mehemed fitting with four servants, while their horses fed on the grass. He immediately surrounded, seized, and bound them; then

*Revolt of  
Mireke,  
and Bûrûl-  
day sup-  
pressed.*

sent notice to the mîrza, who ordered him to put Mireke to death.

At the same time that Mireke rebelled, the amîr Jehân Shâh departed from Kondoz with the tomâns of Bûrûlday, Taykhân, and Aperdi. In their march, that of Bûrûlday revolted, and returned back: the amîr, with some troops, pursued them to Bakalân, and pillaged their houies. Hearing of Mereke's rebellion, he prepared to march against him; and advanced with a detachment to the Jihûn, where he was to be joined by two other commanders with the rest: but, as soon as night came, Junayd Bûrûlday, and his brother Bayezîd, revolting with the squadrons they commanded, consisting of three thousand horse, attacked Jehân Shâh, who had no more than sixty men; yet this valiant general, having the river on his back, advanced with his soldiers against the rebels; and, when they had emptied their quivers, had recourse to their lances and swords. Mean time Koja Yusef, son of Ola-jîa Itû, sent Jehân Shâh word, that he was hastening to his assistance. Animated by this intelligence, his men held firm till night; when Yusef arrived, and fell so vigorously on the enemy, that they fled with great precipitation \*.

*Hejra 791.  
A.D. 1385.*

*The Kip-jâks de-feated,  
with great  
slaughter.*

Towards the latter end of the year, Toktamîsh Khân, of Kipjâk, brought a numerous army into the field, composed of the troops of Russia, Chirkassia, Bulgaria, Kipjâk, Krîm, Kaffa, Allan, and Azâk. Timûr immediately appointed a place of rendezvous for his army, six leagues from his capital, and went thither in person; but being informed that Ilitmîsh Khân had passed the Jihûn at Kojend with a great body of horse, and encamped at no great distance, he would not wait for reinforcements, but began his march against the enemy, though the ground was covered with snow. Being joined on his march by mîrza Omra Sheykh, with the troops of Andekhân; he detached a body of horse to fall on the enemy's rear; and block up the passes to hinder their retreat. Next morning they came in sight of the enemy; and immediately made the great cry Sûrûn! as an intimation to begin the battle. After a bloody engagement, the enemy were obliged to fly; and, being pursued, many flung themselves into the Jihûn, to avoid the sword; while the rest, meeting with the troops sent to cut off their retreat, were hemmed in, and the greater part put to the sword. Timûr then returned to his capital; and, in the month of Safar

\* Hist. Tim. Bek. p. 305—315. lib. iii. cap. 1, & seqq.

791, encamped near that city; waiting for the troops from all parts of the empire, which arrived in the beginning of spring. In the month of Rabiyo'lawel he began his march for Kipjâk; and passed the Sihûn at Kojend, over a bridge of boats, at the head of a formidable army. The van surprised the enemy's advanced-guard, and cut most of them to pieces; the rest fled to Toktamîsh Khân, who had laid siege to Sabrân, but was obliged to raise it; and as soon as he heard that Timûr had passed the river, he fled with precipitation through the desert.

Timûr, having ruined the Sarbedâl kingdom, was prevailed on by his lords to quit the farther pursuit of Toktamîsh Khân for the present, and turn his arms against Kezra Koja Aglan, king of Jetak, and Ankatûra. He departed from Alkûshûn in 791, and took the road of Mount Urnak; beyond which, being in great want of water, they found in the desert a large meadow covered with ice and snow, though in the midst of summer, which relieved both men and cattle. At the town of Shîpar Aygher, they defeated one thousand horse belonging to Ankatûra, who, they learned, was at Uronk, or Uronkyar, another town of Jetah. The army marched that way; but, the guide having lost his road in the night, Timûr next day divided it into two bodies; one he kept with himself, and gave the other to the mîrza Omar Sheykh, to seek the enemy. After having passed through many towns and villages, he encamped at Karaguchûr, a temple of the Mungls; while the mîrza, taking another route, at length came up with Ankatûra, at the town of Kûbak; where he defeated and obliged him to fly to Kakamaburjî; abandoning to the victor his cattle and daughters, who were exceedingly beautiful<sup>1</sup>.

On his return he was ordered to go in quest of part of the army detached on another service. He was accompanied only with fifty persons; but they were all princes, amîrs, and generals. When he arrived at the plain of Ichmas Alagheul, they fell in with eight hundred of the enemy's horse, whom they defeated, after a bloody conflict, and returned with their cattle to the camp at Karaguchûr. As Timûr remained here to refresh his horses, he detached thirty thousand men towards Artish in quest of the enemy. When they arrived at the Irtish, they marched along that river, and sent detachments into the isles, and other places, where they slew and took a great number of

*Timûr  
marches  
into Jetah;*

*Hejra 791.  
A.D. 1389.*

<sup>1</sup> Hist. Tim. Bek. p. 315—323. cap. 2—5.

prisoners, with their effects. At their return the enemy decamped ; and passing the great desert, after many days journey, arrived at Aymal Gûjû, capital of Jetah.

*and defeats  
Kezra Koja  
Khân,*

Timûr, in order effectually to root out the Getes, divided his army into several bodies, under as many generals, who were ordered to take different routes ; being provided both with guides and charts of the country. The mîrza Omar Sheykh, crossing the mountain Dûbehîn Andûr, proceeded as far as Karakoja, three months journey of the karawân from Samarkand : another party penetrated to the town of Kara Arf, and valley of Shûrûjluk, in Mogulestân : Kodâdad Huffayni, with a body of twenty thousand men, arriving at Bikût, by way of Urichû, towns in the same country, met with the tribes of Bulgaji and Ilker, whom they defeated, after a bloody battle, which continued for twenty-four hours. Those who escaped fell into the hands of Timûr ; who, with his guards and household troops, having taken the road of Oluk Kûl, engaged them at the hill of Sichkhân Daban, and cut them to pieces. A fifth body advanced as far as Ligh and Ghevayar, towns in Mogulestân.

Several amîrs, who had been ordered to follow Timûr in this expedition, after many days journey, came to Ur-daban, a mountain of Jetah, near Great Bukhâria, then crossed the river Abeile, and arrived at Sutgheul. At length they advanced to Chicheklik and Balaykhân, towns of Mogulestân, which they plundered. At Molzûdû they met with Kezra Koja Aglen, king of Mogulestân, at the head of a great army : as they were much inferior to the enemy in number, they dismounted, and tying the bridles of their horses to their girdles, discharged their arrows : they fought back to back, turning on all sides, without stirring out of the place for forty-eight hours ; at the end of which they made a treaty with the enemy, and retired to Yulduz, the place of rendezvous.

*who quits  
Jetah.*

Timûr, who was then at Keytû, passing by Konghez, arrived at Yelduz, where, chusing out the bravest men of his army, he crossed the river at Ulakianawr, and followed the track of Kezar Koja Aglen. After having passed the great desert, he arrived at Karabûlak ; from thence he advanced to Tabertâsh, and coming to Kûshon Kay, discovered the enemy's army, who fled under cover of the night ; and as they took different routes, many fell into the hands of Timur's troops, and were slain. The emperor, having passed the mountain Nayrin Keutel, pursued the enemy to Karatâsh, another mountain ; and thus constrained

constrained the king of Jetah to abandon his kingdom, after having suffered infinite fatigues, and seen all his soldiers either slain or taken prisoners, as well as his wives and children, together with the inhabitants of this country, which besides was entirely ruined.

After these exploits, Timur began his march home-wards; and at Jalish, a town near Bikut, divided the immense booty among his soldiers. From thence, passing by the town of Kajirtu, and mountain Bilajir, he arrived at Yulduz, that is, *the Morning Star*; so called from the beauty of its fountains and pastures; a most delightful place. From thence the mirza Omar Sheykh was sent home, by the way of the Iron Gate, named Koluga; beyond which he found the prince Kublik, one of the great amirs of the Getes, whom he defeated with great slaughter, and slew. The mirza having seized his effects, and exterminated his subjects, continued his route by Kuzan, Ucheferman, and the great city of Kâshgar, from whence at length he arrived at Andekhân<sup>m</sup>.

Timur, having finished the expedition against the Getes, left Kechik Yulduz, or the Lesser Yulduz, in order to return, after a march of above one thousand leagues. When he arrived at Yulduz, or the Greater Yulduz, he made a magnificent entertainment for the generals and officers of his army, on whom he bestowed robes of honour, and belts adorned with precious stones. Then proceeding on his march, he arrived at Samarkand in twenty-two days, though reckoned two months journey by the kârawân. In winter he went to Bokhâra, and passed the season at Gheul-ferketi, near that city, where he took the diversion of fowling; the ponds being stocked with an incredible number of swans, and other kinds of birds. Here he gave the princess Soltân Bakt Begüm, widow of Mereke, in marriage to amir Solymân Shâh, and married the young mirza Abûbekr to the daughter of the amir Haji Sayfo'ddin.

When winter was elapsed, Timur went to encamp at Akiar, in the meadow of Kash, on the bank of the river Kosha. As the officers were become very rich by the spoil they had acquired in the wars, he thought it advisable to augment the regiments; that, by increasing the expences of the commanders, he might diminish their wealth, which might seduce them from their obedience. He assembled the kûrûltay in 792: he gave the grandees

Returns to

Samar-

kand.

Hejra 792.  
A.D. 1390.Political  
regula-  
tions.<sup>m</sup> Hist. Tim. Bek, p. 328—338. cap. 5, & seq.

A.D. 1390. another magnificent feast ; and on this occasion married his grandson, the mîrza Omar Sheykh, to the princess Sevinj Kotluk Aga, daughter of Sheyrin Bey Aga. Then he dismissed the assembly, and returned to Samarkand.

*Kamro'ddin pur-fued.*

At the beginning of the same year he sent an army into the country of the Getes, under the command of the amîrs Solymân Shâh, Kodadad Huzzayn, Shamfo'ddîn Abbâs, and his brother Ozmân. Having crossed the Sihûn at Tâshkunt, they marched to Iffigheul, and from thence to Gheuktopa : from thence they took the road of the mountain Arjakû, destroying the country, slaying or enslaving the people, and carrying away their effects. Thus they proceeded through all the provinces of the Getes, and advanced as far as Al Mâlegh ; where, having swam over the river Abeile, they arrived at Karatâl, a hord belonging ro Ankatûra. Being informed that four hundred men, detached before to get intelligence, had met with Kamro'ddîn ; that most of the soldiers on each side were slain ; and that the prince had marched towards Ichna Buchna, they departed in search of him ; and having passed through that town, arrived at Uker Kaptaji, where they left their baggage, and rode post towards the Irtish. When they arrived at that river they learned that Kamro'ddîn had crossed it, and was gone towards Tawläs, into the woods where sables and ermins are found. The amîrs passed the Irtish by means of the rafts and boats which the enemy had left behind ; and impressed their arms with fire on the pine-trees, as an evidence to succeeding ages of their conquests beyond that river. After they had been absent six months, they returned by Altûn Kawrke, a town on the great lake of Atrak Gheul, where there is a convenient road made along its banks ».

*Timûr invades Kip-jâk.*

In autumn Timûr made preparations for carrying the war into Kipjâk. Having visited the tomb of sheykh Maflahet, where many miracles are said to be wrought, he crossed the Sihûn at Kojend, and went to Tâshkunt, between Barsin and Chinas, with design to pass the winter in that city, where he lay dangerously sick for forty days. On his recovery the mîrza Mirân Shâh, arrived with the troops of Khorassân ; and on the 12th of Safar, 793, Timûr began his march, conducted by Timûr Kotluk Aglen, son of Timûr Mâlek, khân of Kipjâk ; Konje Aglen, another prince of that country ; and Aydekû Uzbek. He left the mîrzas Pîr Mehemed and Shâh Rukh to govern

the empire of Jagatay in his absence; and sent away all the women, excepting his favourite foltâna Chulpan Mulk Aga, daughter of Haji Bey, of Jetah.

When they arrived at Kara Suman, a town of Kipjâk, *Refuses to withdraw.* ambassadors arrived from Toktamîsh Khân, with a letter, and presented the emperor with a shonkar, and nine very fleet horses. Although Timûr received presents, the ambassadors had no great reason to be pleased with their reception. He inveighed bitterly against their master's ingratitude, and breach of oath: he said Toktamîsh was not to be trusted; however, that if he sincerely desired peace, he should send Ali Bey, his first minister, to treat with his great amîrs. He then regaled them, and ordered them to follow the army, which, in the beginning of March, proceeded in the conquest of the empire of Tushi. They passed by Yassî, Karachoh, and Sabrân; but in three weeks, for want of water, the horses were reduced to extremity. At length, on the 26th, they arrived at Sarek Uzan, where, the river being full, their want was supplied. Having swam over, they continued their march in the great desert, and encamped in places where there were wells, to avoid the like inconvenience.

On the 12th of April they arrived at the mountain Ulûk Tâk, from whence he viewed the vast desert of Kipjâk, which, for its extent and verdure, appeared like the sea. There he ordered a stone obelisk to be erected, and inscribed with the date of his expedition. From thence they hunted to the river Ilanjûk, which they crossed, and in eight days arrived at Anakargû, in Kipjâk. In all this march, of six or seven months, from Tâshkunt, they had not met with a single man, or any spot of cultivated land. Viâuals were now extremely scarce; so that they were forced to hunt for their food. Among other game, they found a sort of stags, larger than buffalos, call kandagay by the Mungls, and buken by the Kipjâks.

Timûr, resolving to send a general to command the *Seek the mangalay, or van-guard, the young mîrza Mehemed Sol-* *enemy.* tân fell on his knees, and besought his father to honour him with that post. The emperor, much pleased with his resolution at so tender an age, granted his request, informing him at the same time, that he had need of great presence of mind, a strong constitution, and uncommon activity, to acquit himself of an employment which was the principal part of war, and on which the security of the army entirely depended. On the 24th of April, the hour being fixed by the astrologers, the mîrza put himself at the

Hejra 793.  
A.D. 1391.

*His army  
distressed.*

A.D. 1391. head of the light troops, to go in quest of the enemy. They found a beaten road, and fires in many places; then passed the river Túpal, but found no enemy. At length they met with ten horsemen in a wood, who gave them tidings of Tokatmîsh Khân. After having passed several lakes and rivers, on the 11th of May they arrived at the river Tîk, which the army were two days in swimming over, because Timûr suspected ambuscades at the three fords. Six days after, coming to the river Semmûr, the advanced-guard heard the cries of the enemy; and one of them being taken, declared that a number of the ordas had been there encamped, but returned as soon as they were informed of Timûr's approach.

*Get intelligence of Tokatmîsh.*

The emperor, on this advice, advanced in order, and May the 17th arrived at the river Ayik (Y), or Jaik, which the army crossed, partly over a bridge, and partly by swimming. Three of the enemy, who were taken, related that two deserters first informed Tokatmîsh Khân of Timûr's invasion: that the khân, enraged at their information, said he would raise two armies, and sent to assemble troops from his camp, then at Kerk Gheul; that expecting Timûr would cross the Tîk at the ordinary passes, he lay there in ambuscade to surprise him. After having received this account, the emperor marched with great precaution, and ordered lines to be drawn round the camp every night. The army was greatly fatigued with passing the marshes they met with in this country. At length three bodies of the enemy came in view, but soon disappeared: however, the scouts found a troop of horse in a wood, some of whom were killed, and forty taken. They had repaired to Kerk Gheul, according to proclamation; but to their surprize, finding no troops assembled at the place of rendezvous, they wandered in the woods: after having made this discovery, they were all put to death. The son of the prince of Memak being wounded, was taken: he said he was on the road to Saray, the capital of Kipjâk, to meet the khân; but did not find him at the rendezvous, nor could give any account of him.

*Meet the scouts.*

Mean while the scouts, ascending a hill, discovered thirty companies of horse in armour, watching to surprise the invaders. The scouts retired without noise; while

o Hist. Tim. Bek, p. 347—366. cap. 9—12.

(X) A river of Kipshâk, or Kipjâk, which falls into the Caspian Sea. La Croix. (Y) Or Jaïk, a river which falls into the Caspian Sea. La Croix.

Aykûtmûr remained behind with some horse to secure their retreat : but the enemy observing what passed, fell upon him at full speed. The valiant amîr made a brave resistance ; but having two horses shot under him, he was surrounded on foot, and cut in pieces by the Kipjâks. His death was followed by that of Heri Mulk, son of Yadghiar Berlâs ; the famous Ramazân Koja ; and the celebrated Mehemed Erlât, who were the greatest captains Timûr had : but their death was soon revenged ; for the army advancing, attacked, and routed the Kipjâks, with great slaughter. After this action the scouts of the enemy appeared, and skirmished every day with Timur's soldiers. At length the two armies coming in sight on the 5th of July, the emperor ranged his army with great care, dividing it into seven bodies ; and this disposition being uncommon, it was believed to be the effect of special inspiration.

He gave the command of the first body, which served for the van-guard, to sultân Mahmûd Khân ; and the amîr Solymân Shâh was his lieutenant-general. He placed the mîrza Mehemed Soltân at the head of the second division, which passed for the main body. The third, which served as the rear, or body of reserve, consisting of the regiment of guards, and twenty companies of chosen veterans, was conducted by Timûr himself, and posted behind the second body, to reinforce the other divisions, in case of need. At the head of the fourth, which served for a right wing, was the mîrza Mirân Shâh, whose lieutenant-general was the prince Mehemed Soltân Shâh. The fifth body, designed as a van-guard to the said right wing, was led by the amîr Haji Sayfo'ddîn, who usually engaged in the most dangerous enterprizes. The sixth, consisting of the troops of Andekhân, composed the left wing, and had for its leader the mîrza Omar Sheykh. Lastly, the seventh body served for a van-guard to the left wing, and was commanded by Birdi Bey, son of Sâr Buga, and by Kodadad Huffayn, amîrs of undaunted bravery, and approved conduct. The army of Tokatmish Khân which exceeded that of Timûr's in number, was divided into three bodies, as usual. His officers were all princes of the blood of Tushi, and his soldiers completely armed. The battle began at the sound of the great trumpet kerrenay (Z). Timûr prayed to God devoutly for success, and Seyd Be-reke promised him victory.

(Z) Of a monstrous size, very deep sound, and heard several miles off.

The

A.D. 1391.  
The fight begins.

## *History of the Moguls and Tatars.*

The amîr Haji Sayfo'ddîn was the first who rushed on the enemy's left wing, and routed it : a party of Kipjâks advanced to attack his rear ; but were forced to retreat, by Jehân Shâh Bahâdr, who marched against them with his detachment from the body of reserve. Mean while the mîrza Mirân Shâh, with the right wing, put their cavalry into confusion, and overthrew their left wing ; while Mehemed Soltân, with the main body, broke through that of the enemy. Omar Sheykh, with the left wing, did great execution ; and Birdi Bey, with Kodadad Hussayn, put their right wing to flight. The other generals had no less success. Tokatmîsh Khân observing how his troops diminished, and finding he could not withstand the squadrons which Timûr commanded in person, attacked the mirza Omar Sheykh, but without making any impression. He afterwards fell on the orda of Seldûz with such fury, that, notwithstanding Timûr Bahâdr's brave resistance, the Kipjâks had nearly defeated him. They penetrated through the squadrons, and even took post behind the imperial army.

Tokatmîsh  
Khân de-  
feated.

Timûr, who was in pursuit of the enemy's main body, being informed of this incident, turned his troops on that side ; but as soon as Tokatmîsh Khân, whom Omar Sheikh had already engaged, perceived the imperial standard moving towards him, he lost courage, and fled. The other generals following his example, the Mungl army was entirely routed : while the victors pursuing, made a dreadful slaughter, for forty leagues together. The emperor having returned the Deity thanks for this great victory, and received the compliments of his generals, detached two thirds of his cavalry to destroy the remainder of the enemy, whose flight being obstructed by the river Wolga, very few of them escaped the swords of their pursuers, who carried away their women, children, baggage, and other effects. Konje Aglen, Timûr Kotluk Aglen, and Ayde-kû, three princes of the blood of Tûshi, who bore an ancient hatred to Toktamish, from whom they had deserted, obtained leave of Timûr to go in pursuit of the tribes which they formerly commanded, promising to engage them in his service ; but Konje only, who was very familiar with the emperor, returned, with part of his subjects whom he found ; the other two, aspiring to the crown of Kipjâk, fled, with their hords, into the desert <sup>P</sup>.

Great re-  
joicings.

Mean while Timûr, following the troops which he had sent in pursuit of the enemy, arrived at the Wolga, and

<sup>P</sup> Hist. Tim. Bek, p. 366—379. cap. 12—14.

encamped

encamped in the plain of Urtûpa, which, for its verdure and pure air, surpasses all others. Here he gave a magnificent feast to his amîrs, at which was sung and played a piece of music, called the Triumph of Kipjâk. This plain was the seat of Tûshi Khân and his successors. All the army shared in the diversions, which lasted twenty-six days. After this victory no more enemies remained in the deserts or the isles of Wolga, Timûr therefore set out on his return, followed by a great train of captives. All the poor servants of the camp, who before could scarce find subsistence, were now in possession of so many horses and sheep, that, not being able to carry all away with them, they were obliged to leave part behind.

When the army arrived at the Tîk, Konje Aglen, who but a little time before had returned, with his subjects, to the camp, now fled with them into the desert. Some days after the army had crossed that river, Timûr, leaving the amîr Haji Sayfo'ddîn, with other commanders, to conduct the body of the army and baggage, went before, through the rest of the desert, to Sabrân and Otrâr, then crossing the Sihûn, arrived at Samarkand, where he was received with the usual solemnity. He afterwards began his journey for Taškunt, and repassing the river, encamped in the great plain of Barsin, near that city; where, in the beginning of the year 794, the amîr Haji Sayfo'ddîn arrived with the troops; so that this important campaign continued eleven months. Towards spring the emperor returned to Samarkand, where he entertained the court with a general hunting, and appointed the mîrza Pir Mehemed, son of Jehân Ghîr, governor of the kingdom which formerly belonged to the great sultân Mahmûd, that is, all the country from Gâzna and Kâbul, as far as Hindûstân, and from Kandahar to the river Indus, called in Persian, Ab Send.

Hejra 794.  
A.D. 1392.

As many princes and great lords desired leave of him to marry their children, he not only consented, but, to convince them he shared in their joy, would also be present himself at their feasts. A royal banquet was prepared for this purpose in the meadow of Kanigheul, where the tables were ranged like an army in order of battle, Timûr being placed at the head of them on a throne of gold. The bridegrooms were on one side, and the brides on the other. To honour the occasion, the mîrzas Pir Mehemed, and his brother Rustem, married the daughters of Kayâzo'ddîn Terkhân, and the mîrza Abû Bekr, son of Mirân

*Marriages  
celebrated.*

A.D. 1392.

Expedition  
into Irán.

Mirân Shâh, espoused the daughter of the amîr Haji Say-fo'ddîn <sup>9</sup>.

While Timûr was on his return from Kipjâk, he had resolved to make an expedition into Irán, to suppress the disorders which, during his absence, had arisen in that country. With this view he sent into all the provinces, to assemble the troops for a campaign of five years. When he was near Bokhâra, May 25th, he was seized with a distemper, which continued till June 10th. On the 6th of Ramazân (July 2) he departed at the head of his troops, having sent the mîrza Mehemed Soltân before with the van-guard. He crossed the Jihûn at Amûya, and, by way of Makhân and Abiverd, arrived at Yafli Daban, where, on the appearance of the new moon, he read the prayers of Bayrâm, which is the grand feast of the Musulmans. At Ilgazigaj Kabûshân he joined the mîrza Mehemed Soltân, who commanded the advanced guard, and, at length, arriving in the territory of Astarabâd, encamped on the river Jorjân (A), where Piri Pashâ, son of Lokmân Pashâ, paid his duty to his majesty.

The army, after three days march from Astarabâd, came to a very thick wood, through which they opened three passages, and insensibly arrived at Sâri, whence Seyd Kamálo'ddîn, lord of that city, had fled to Seyd Rázio'd-dîn, at Mahanasar. These are three towns, situated four leagues from Amol, on the shore of the Caspian Sea, where they had built a fort on an adjacent hill, which joined the sea on one side, and, instead of ditches, was surrounded with precipices, washed for the space of a mile by the sea, which, in turbulent weather, dashed over the rocks. Round the wall they had fixed great trees, so close together, that they served instead of a second wall. Hither the princes of Amol and Sâri, the rich inhabitants, and foreign merchants retired, with their families and effects, confiding in the strength of the place. Timûr, informed of these particulars, passing the lakes and marshes, arrived in three days at Amol, where he ordered the Seyd Kayáz'oddîn to advise his father to come and make his submission.

*Mahanasar  
besieged,* The army could march no more than three miles a day, because obliged to cut down trees to render the marshes

<sup>9</sup> Hist. Bek, p. 379—386. cap. 14—16.

(A) It passes by a city of the Caspian Sea at Astarabâd. the same name, and falls into La Croix.

passable.

passable. The Seyd Kamâlo'ddîn Derâz, and Mûlâna Amâdo'ddîn, came and implored pardon, which Timûr granted, on condition that the sharîfs, who commanded in all those quarters, should send him part of the effects of the inhabitants, and that each should part with one of his children as a hostage. The sharîfs not liking these conditions, Timûr sent some officers, with the masters of the barks of the Jihûn, to seize the enemy's vessels, and carrying the soldiers by squadrons to the foot of the walls, besieged Mahanafar in form.

On the 25th of November, the enemy observing Timûr to approach the place on horseback, through fear, came out in companies, and implored his protection: his wrath was accordingly appeased: he made them presents, and exhorted them to embrace the orthodox sect of the Sunni, in whose maxims he instructed them, and to renounce the errors of the Shiay, which they followed. Timûr staid some days at Mahanafar to dispose of the great riches which were lodged there, among his soldiers, and then ordered the place to be reduced to a heap of rubbish. He then commanded all the Fedais (B), who were very numerous in this country, to be put to the sword. Thus the province was freed from the disorders committed by those assassins; for, such was their frantic zeal, that if they found a man who had a paper or book in his possession, no matter whether a lawyer, philosopher, or man of letters, they held it lawful to destroy him. Eskânder Sheykhi, to revenge the death of his father, and other relations, slain by the Darvîshes, disciples of Seyd Kawâmo'ddîn, invested Amol, that no man might escape his wrath, and made the most terrible massacre in that city ever mentioned in history. Seyd Kamâlo'ddîn and his son were sent in vessels to Karazm; the seyds Mûrtâzah and Abdallah, with their sons, and several others, were carried to Taishkunt<sup>r</sup>.

The province of Mazânderân being entirely brought under subjection, Timûr, in the beginning of the year 795, caused a fine palace to be built at Shafman, in the neighbourhood of Jorjân. In the spring he resolved to continue his conquests; and fixed the campaign of that year for the kingdoms of Pârs and Irâk. He departed from Mazânderân the 20th of January, having sent the mîrza Mehemed Soltân, at the head of the van-guard, ac-

Hejra 795.  
A.D. 1393.

*Irâk invaded.*

<sup>r</sup> Hist. Tim. Bek, p. 386—396. cap. 16—19.

(B) The same whom Europeans call Assassins. La Croix.

compañied

A.D. 1593.

accompanied by his brother, Pîr Mehemed, the sheykh Ali Bahadr, and other amîrs. He gave the command of another van-guard to the mîrza Shâh Rukh, and went in person to Yilâk Veli. The mîrza Mehemed Soltân, and his brother, on their arrival at Kazvin, defeated and took prisoner the governor Shâh Souar. On their approach the governor of Soltânîya fled. They garrisoned the place, and marched towards Baghdâd. In the way, a courier brought an order to reduce all the inhabitants of Kurdestân, and free the country from those robbers. The sheykh Ali Bahâdr was sent with a body of troops upon that expedition, accompanied by one of the chief men of the country, who offered to be his guide.

*Kurdestân  
submits.*

Ibrahim Shâh, prince of those places, received sheykh Ali with marks of friendship, and sent his son sultân Shâh with presents to the princes, who, content with this submission, ordered sheykh Ali to return. He accordingly began his march; but on the road his guide, disappointed of his hopes, by his peace with Ibrahim Shâh, treacherously slew him with a knife. The assassin was immediately seized by sheykh Ali's men, who put him to death with the most cruel torments, and afterwards burnt his body to ashes.

*Khuzestân  
reduced.*

Timûr having proceeded from Yilâk Veli, by Damgân and Semnân, to Ray Shâhriar, in Persian Irâk, arrived at Urûdjerd on the 26th of February, and was joined by the mîrza Omar Sheykh, who had taken the road of Ava, the fortress of Kiow, Marvân, and Kerherûdh, all towns of Kûzestân, which submitted, excepting Kiow, but that was easily reduced. Timûr having left a governor in Nahawend, and troops to besiege Korramabâd, he sent parties of horse into all quarters of Lorestân to root out the robbers, and departed for Toftar (C). In eleven days he reached the bridge of the river Abzâl (D): and, when Mîrûn Shâh returned from Kashân, which submitted, sent Omar Sheykh to Havîza, which made no resistance, its governor for Mansûr king of Fârs having fled. When Timûr arrived at Toftar, he sent troops to pillage the country, and crossing the Chehâr Donke, encamped in a forest of palms near that city.

(C) Capital of Kurestân, a mistake for Khuzestân, between Fârs and Irâk Arabi. La Croix.

(D) A river which runs through Khuzestân, by Toftar,

and falls into the Persian Gulf at Hesn Mâhdi. It is famous for an aqueduct a mile long, built by Shâbur, or Sapore, king of Persia. La Croix.

When Timur encamped in the neighbourhood of Tostar there were no fewer than ten pretenders to the kingdom of Fars, or Persia, all of the house of Muzaffer, who making war upon one another, threw the whole empire of Irân into confusion; for which reason Timur resolved to subdue those turbulent princes, and restore peace.

With this view, April 17, he left Tostar, which he had reduced, and marched with expedition towards Shîraz. Having crossed the rivers Abargûn and Kavedân, he, on the first of May, encamped at the foot of Kalaa Sefid, or *the White Castle*, one of the strongest citadels in all Asia. It stood at the top of a very rugged mountain, the only ascent to which was one slippery path, so formed, that in any narrow part three men might hinder a hundred thousand from passing. On the top was a fine plain, twelve miles in compass, stooked with water, animals, trees, and cultivated lands; so that those who possessed it were secure against famine, and, as it was deemed inaccessible, no prince had ever yet attempted it by siege.

However, Timur ascended the mountain, with his officers, to the gate of the fortrefs, followed by several troops. The two wings encamped on another mountain, which joined the place. Orders being given for a general assault, the army attacked the citadel on all sides. Next day the attack was renewed; and the soldiers made breaches in the rock with pickaxes, to clear the way. At length, Akbûga, an officer, mounting a steep rock, the enemy were so surprised to see themselves attacked in a place which they thought none dared to ascend, that they left off fighting; so that the soldiers advancing on all sides, the fortrefs was taken, and the garrison precipitated from the top of the mountain. The governor Sadet was put to death. As for Akbûka, who first mounted the rock, the emperor enriched him with silver, slaves, cattle, and other valuable effects.

The 3d of May, Timur proceeded, in quest of shâh Mansûr, the usurper of Persia, who had deposed, and imprisoned, the sultân Zayn Alabeddîn, in the Kalaa Sefid, where the emperor now found him deprived of sight, and promised to redress his grievances. Timur advancing to Shîraz, perceived, in the fields without the city, three or four thousand horse, armed with coats of mail, helmets, and breast-plates of leather, lined with iron; their horses were covered with a kind of cuirasses made of thick silk, and their ensigns displayed. At the head of these men, inured to war, Mansûr advanced like a furious lion, and attacked

attacked Timûr's main body, composed of thirty thousand Turks (E), the most warlike men of their time; yet he overthrew their squadrons, broke their ranks, and penetrated even to the rear: then returning, he rode up to Timûr, who had stopped, with fourteen or fifteen attendants to behold his prowess. Though he had not his lance at hand to oppose him, yet he stood till Mansûr came up, and struck him twice with his scimetar on the helmet. Then Adel Aktashi held a buckler over Timûr's head, and Komari Yesaul advanced before him.

*Killed by  
shâh Rûkh.*

Shâh Mansûr, having been repulsed from before the emperor, assembled the infantry of the main body; while the mîrza Mehemed Soltân so vigorously attacked the right wing of the Persians, that it gave way, and being pursued, a terrible slaughter was made. The mîrza Pîr Mehemed bravely defeated their left-wing. Several regiments which were in the main body, having been routed by shâh Mansûr, returned to the charge; and the mîrza Shâh Rûkh, who fought near Timûr with the utmost intrepidity, rallied a whole battalion which had been broke. In short, this young prince, although but seventeen years old, behaved with so much valour and conduct, that he hemmed in the shâh, cut off his head, and cast it at the feet of the emperor his father. This lucky incident so discouraged the Persian troops that they fled: but while Timûr was presented, by the amîrs, with the gold cup, according to the custom of the Mungls, they, on a sudden, saw a body of the enemy advancing behind to attack them; however, these were quickly repulsed, and cut to pieces in their flight<sup>s</sup>.

*Muzafferian  
princes  
slain.*

After this victory, Timûr made his triumphal entry into Shirâz, and lodged in the gate of Sâlm. The treasures of shâh Mansûr were then distributed among his amîrs, and a ransom levied on the inhabitants. The same steps were taken at Ispâhân. The princes of the family of Muzaffer, having no place to retire to, resolved to submit, and made rich presents to the emperor; but the sheykhhs, doctors, and imâms, with the chief inhabitants, of Fârs and Irâk, having presented him petitions, (in which they displayed the disorders brought in by the Muzafferian princes, and requested that his majesty would no longer trust the com-

<sup>s</sup> Hist. Tim. Bek. p. 409—419, cap. 23—25.

(T) Turks, Moguls, and Tatars, are, by the author Shari-

fo'ddin Ali, used synonymously, as hath been already ob-  
served.

mand of two kingdoms in the hands of those tyrants) he, in the middle of June, ordered those princes to be seized, loaded with chains, and their houses pillaged. He appointed governors in their room; placing over the kingdom of Fârs his son the mîrza Omar Sheykh; and restored Pîr Ahmed to the government of the little kingdom of Lorestân, or Malamîr, of which shâh Mansûr had deprived him. In fine, towards the end of June, at the village Kûmsha, near Ispâhân, he issued that famous order, so remarkable in history, and much desired by the people, that the princes of the house of Mûzaffer should be put to death (F); an edict which was rigorously executed, according to the laws of Jenghîz Khân.

Timûr, having stayed five days at Ispâhân, repaired to *Yezdi de*  
Jerbâdekhân. Next night he arrived at Ankûan, whose *stroyed.*  
inhabitants, being atheists, had fortified themselves in caverns and rocks; but the army drowned them, by forming rivulets along the mountains, and then breaking down the banks, let the water descend in torrents into their hiding places. The emperor, while encamped in the plain of Hamadân, as a recompense for the services of the mîrza Mirân Shâh, invested him with the kingdom of Hûlâkû, giving him the sovereignty of Azerbijân, Kûhestân, Shîrwân, and Ghilân, with their dependencies, and the adjacent country as far as Rûm, or Anatolia, subject to the Othmâns; on which occasion, the mîrza gave his father a magnificent entertainment.

Timûr advancing to Kûlâghi, a town of Kûrdestân, led *Ghebrs  
massacred.*  
his troops against the robber Sarek Mehemed, the Turk-mân; who had fortified himself in the mountains, where he had a citadel, called Habâshi. This, however, was taken, and great numbers of the banditti were put to the sword. As there was another place in those parts, in which a great number of ghebrs (G) were assembled, Timûr ordered it to be attacked. The siege lasted some time; but being at length taken, it was reduced to rubble, and the people were massacred. While the court resided at Ak Bûlak, the great mufti Nûro'ddin Abdarârh-

(F) All the princes of that house were executed, who could be found, excepting prince Shebeli, whose eyes had been put out by his father shâh Shuja; and Zayn Alabo'ddin, blinded by shâh Mansûr; these

two were sent to Samarkand, and part of that city assigned them for their maintenance.

(G) Adorers of fire, professing the ancient religion of the Persians.

mân, came as ambassador from sultân Ahmed Jalayr, of Baghdâd, with offers of submission, and presents; which the emperor did not receive with his usual affability, because he suspected Ahmed's sincerity, as the prayers were not read, nor money coined, at Baghdâd, in his name.

*Timûr  
marches to  
Baghdâd.*

However, Timûr honoured the mufti for his merit; but dismissed him, without any positive answer, because he resolved to besiege Baghdâd; towards which city, he began his march October 3d. He marched day and night, without intermission, he himself being carried in a litter. When he reached Ibrâhîm Lîk (H), he inquired of the inhabitants, whether they had sent pigeons to Baghdâd, to give notice of the approach of his army? and, on their answering in the affirmative, made them write another billet, importing, that the dust, which they had perceived at a distance, was caused by the Turkmâns, who fled to avoid Timûr. This notice was tied under the wing of a pigeon, which immediately fled to its house at Baghdâd. But although this advice gave sultân Ahmed fresh courage, yet he did not entirely confide in it; having, on the receipt of the first, ordered his furniture to be carried over the Tigris <sup>t</sup>.

On the 10th of October, when Timûr arrived at Baghdâd, the sultân had already crossed the river, broken the bridge, and sunk the boats, flying by the way of Hille. The Tatar troops, who covered near two leagues of ground, threw themselves into the water, with a great cry, and passed the Tigris, notwithstanding its rapidity. Timûr pursued the sultân ten leagues, and then returned to Baghdâd, at the entreaty of his amîrs, who continued their route. These, when they arrived at the Euphrates, observing that the sultân had broken the bridge, and sunk the boats, marched along the shore till they found four boats, and then crossed it, with the army: but the horses of the soldiers being fatigued, the amîrs were obliged to pursue the sultân by themselves. They first came up with his baggage, and at length overtook him, in the plain of Kerbela, with near two thousand horse, two hundred of whom turned on the amîrs; who, alighting, discharged their arrows, and thus repulsed them twice. The third time they returned to the charge, with great vigour; many were killed on both sides, and the amîrs gave up the pursuit.

<sup>t</sup> Hist. Tim. Bek. p. 419—432. cap. 25—30.

(H) A place of devotion (on the Tigris), twenty-seven leagues north of Baghdâd. La Croix.

About the same time the mîrza Mehemed Soltân returned from his expedition against the Kûrd robbers; whom he so effectually reduced to obedience, or exterminated, that one or two men might safely travel through their country; whereas before, large karawâns, guarded by one hundred archers, were obliged to take bye-roads. The sultân's wives and children, with all the learned men of Baghdâd, and masters of arts, were conveyed to Samarkand. After Timûr had sent ambassadors to invite Mâlek Azzâher Barkok, sultân of Egypt and Syria, to a treaty of amity, he advanced, November the 11th, towards Takrît, a place on the Tigris, esteemed impregnable, to destroy that nest of robbers. The town was built on a high rock near the river; the passes were closed up with stones laid in mortar; and it was so well fortified, that it was deemed impregnable<sup>u</sup>.

Hejra 796.  
A.D. 1393.

The amîr Haffan, who commanded in the place, sent several times to offer to capitulate. Mean while the soldiers, having advanced to the foot of the wall, began to sap; the whole army, consisting of seventy-two thousand men, being employed in the work. At length part of the walls fell down; but the besieged repaired this great breach, and fought desperately. Fire being afterwards set to the wooden props, most part of the walls fell on a sudden, with a great tower. Yet still the robbers, armed with planks, and great bucklers, continued to defend themselves against the soldiers; who advanced to the very middle of the place, where a bloody battle ensued. Timûr ordered the rest of the walls to be undermined; and a large bastion falling, Haffan was so terrified, that he retired with his soldiers to the edge of the mountain. Some of the besieged came out, beseeching the amîrs to intercede for their lives: but Timûr answered, "Let him come, or not, no quarter shall now be given." The soldiers, animated by these words of the emperor, at length gained the top of the rock; and, seizing the amîr Haffan, and those about him, brought them bound in chains to Timûr; who ordered the soldiers to be separated from the inhabitants, and put to death: he likewise caused part of the walls to be left standing, for posterity to wonder at his performance, while towers were built with the heads of those robbers, for a terror to others.

Timûr returned to Harbi, a town between Annah and Marches Takrît, which was the rendezvous of all the troops; and to Koha.

<sup>u</sup> Hist. Tim. Bek, p. 432—443. cap. 30—33.

thence departed for Diyârbekr. At crossing the Tigris, he caused a report to be spread, that he was on his return home, in order to deceive the enemy: he marched to Tûk, and then to Karkûk, where all the princes of that country came and submitted, especially the chief of Altûn Kûpruk: he then advanced to Arbela, and from thence marched to Muzol, where he visited the tombs of the prophets Jonas and Georges, giving twenty thousand dinârs Kapeji for raising domes over them, with much alms to the poor. Then taking Yar-ali, prince of that place, for his guide, departed: he passed by Mardîn; and, at Râs al Ayn, sent to pillage the lands subject to Huffayn, called the Black Sheep, and other princes. On his approach to Roha, its prince, named Ghûzel, fled with some inhabitants to a high mountain; but they were pursued and taken. Timûr entered the city, said to be built by Nimrod; and, with his court, bathed in the fountain, which, as the Mohammedans believe, sprang up in the place of a furnace wherein Abraham had been cast, and quenched the fire.

*Omar Sheykh slain.*

The emperor spent nineteen days at Roha in sports and entertainments, and several princes came and submitted; among the rest the prince of Hesn Keyfa: but sultân Aysa, prince of Mardîn, refusing to come as he had promised, Timûr marched back, and reduced him to obedience. While the army lay before Mardîn, news arrived of the death of the mîrza Omar Sheykh. This prince had reduced all Pârs, and then went to besiege Sirjîân in Kirmân: but being sent for to court, left his troops before that city, and hastened to Shirâz. In his way through the country of the Kûrds, he stopped at Kormatû, a little fort inhabited by a few people; and ascending an eminence to view the place, was shot with an arrow, which killed him on the spot, when he was forty years old. The soldiers, to revenge his death, destroyed all who were in the place, and razed it to the ground. The kingdom of Pârs (or Proper Persia) was given by Timûr to the mîrza Pîr Mehemed, son of the deceased, although but in the seventeenth year of his age <sup>w</sup>.

*Al Jazireh ravaged.* Although sultân Aysa came out of Mardin, yet his brother and the inhabitants refused to deliver up the place; which being found to be the effect of Aysa's orders, he was put in fetters; but there not being forage enough for the cavalry, Timûr deferred the siege. Mâlek Azzo'ddîn,

<sup>w</sup> Hist. Tim. Bek, p. 443—457. cap. 33—37.

prince of Jazîreh, who had before submitted, refusing to deliver up an amîr, who had stolen some curiosities belonging to Timûr, the emperor marched hastily with his troops, and next day coming on the enemy by surprize, took two or three fortresses, with a great booty. In the confusion, Mâlek fell into the hands of a soldier, who took from him many valuable things, and, not knowing who he was, let him escape. The emperor returned to Mardîn ; and, investing it next day, assaulted and took the city, while the besieged fled into the fortrefs named Kûh, situated on the ridge of a mountain. The besieged, finding themselves hard pressed, came out with rich presents, and offered to pay a yearly tribute ; which was the more readily accepted, as intelligence had just arrived of the birth of a son to the heir of the crown, mîrza Shâh Rukh, who was called Oluk Bey.

Mardin  
submits.

Timûr gave Mardîn to sultân Saleh, brother of Aysâ ; then the army proceeded on its march, in several bodies, by different routes. The emperor took that of Sawr, accompanied by mîrza Shâh Rukh ; and, on his arrival at the Tigris, halted three days, with a design to return to Alatâk (in Armenia) : but receiving advice from the mîrzas Mehemed Soltân and Mirân Shâh, that the inhabitants of Karâche Koja, commonly called Hamed, refused to submit, he marched thither. The strength of this city consists in the height and thickness of its walls, which are built of free-stone.

Amid, or  
Diyârbekr  
besieged  
and taken.

Timûr having encamped without the city, ordered the assault to be given next day. The soldiers advanced, covered with their bucklers, and discharged a shower of arrows into the place : the miners carried on the sap ; and, breaches being made in several places, the walls were scaled in different parts : so that the city was carried in less than three days. The soldiers, entering the place, pillaged it, and set fire to the houses ; while most part of the garrison were killed in the breaches. While the emperor was on the road to Alatûk, Yaik Sûfi, the greatest amîr in the left wing of the army, next the princes of the blood, being accused by an Uzbek soldier of fomenting a rebellion, and designing to escape in the night, confessed his crime, and discovered his accomplices. As he had been often pardoned before for the like offences, and yet promoted by the emperor, his judges ordered him and his son to be fettered, and all his accomplices to be put to death.

*Alenjik  
besieged.*

Timûr having passed by Miyafarkîn, Batmân, Astima, and Sivâsser, arrived at Betîs ; whose prince, Haji Sharîf, the most courteous of all those in Kûrdestân, came to salute him, and make a present of fine horses. Timûr confirmed him in his possessions, honoured him with a vest, belt, and sword ; and left Yaik Sûfi a prisoner in his castle. Then, ordering charts of the country to be made, he sent a detachment to besiege Alenjîk ; at whose approach Kara Yûsef, with his Turkimâns, fled. At Aklât he gave Kak-hân, prince of Adeliaws, the lordship of Aklât, with its dependencies, for ever. Then parting from the army, to meet the young princes and empresses coming from Sol-tâniya, he found them at Uch Kilissa, that is, the three churches of Alatâk. On the 24th of June, he proceeded to Aydîn (or Bayezîd), whose inhabitants, presenting him with all their effects, begged quarter, which he granted. He then returned in one night to Uch Kilissa ; where Tahârten, governor of Arzenjân, came to pay his respects, and was honourably received \*.

*Avenik,  
or Van,  
invaded.*

On the 2d of July, Timûr began his march for Avenik (or Van), whose prince, Messer, son of Kara Mehemed, refused to come to court. The soldiers immediately took the town, and razed the walls : Messer retired, with his Turkmâns, into the fortress, situated on a steep and craggy mountain, all the passes of which were blocked up and fortified. The amîrs, and bravest soldiers, alighted to attack the gate ; while the horsemen shot arrows on those who appeared on the breastwork. Messer sent his son and lieutenant, with considerable presents, to implore pardon ; which Timûr granted : but, on their return, he renewed hostilities. After Tahârten had convinced him of his error, the prince sent his son, and a near relation, with more presents, to ask pardon ; but Timûr, perceiving he had no design to quit the place, caused the messengers to be arrested.

*Timur's  
clemency.*

However, next morning, the emperor ordering Messer's son, who was but six years old, to be brought before him, he was so moved with the supplications of this young prince, that he said, " Go, child ; I will give your father his life, on condition that he appears before me." Then he gave the child a vest, and fixed a collar of gold about his neck ; sending him back to Messer with a very obliging letter. When the besieged saw the young prince in this condition, they applauded the emperor ; and condemned

\* Hist. Tim. Bek, p. 457—470. cap. 37—43.

the conduct of Messer, who still appeared irresolute. However, the battering engines having beaten down several houses, Messer's mother came to beg quarter for her son; alleging his fears as the only cause of his opposition. Although Timûr promised to spare him, in case he left the place immediately, yet the Turkman continued obstinate. At length a meljûr, or hill made of earth and trees, being raised higher than the walls of the fortress, the place lay quite exposed to the engines. These poured in heaps of huge stones, which quickly ruined the houses, and beat down the arches upon the soldiers heads. They were also reduced to such extremity for want of water, that, July 30th, they turned out all the inhabitants incapable of bearing arms. Messer, therefore, in despair, sent his lieutenant once more to beg quarter; which was granted, provided he would repair to the camp: yet still that prince continued stubborn, or irresolute.

Meanwhile Koja Shahin, and seven other brave soldiers, mounting one of the arches in the night, reached the foot of the walls of the place; and there lighting fires, to give notice, two amîrs descended the mountain, and came to a very narrow arch; where the besieged attacked them, though in the dark. Amâns'hâh Kazâneji, being dangerously wounded, returned to the camp: but Argûnshâh, and the rest, mounting on another arch, arrived at the walls, which they began to sap. The officers and garrison seeing themselves thus hard pressed, were overwhelmed with consternation; some threw themselves off the mountain; while others exclaimed against Messer, flung down their arms, and begged leave to retreat. Messer, to appease them, sent his mother once more to beg his life. Timûr, touched with her affliction, said, that for her sake he would spare him, provided he came himself to ask pardon: yet Messer did not go out that day; and would have continued to defend himself, if his domestics had not quitted him, and leaped off the walls. Then, tying a handkerchief about his neck, and with a sword in his hand, he left the fortress; and applying himself to the mîrza Mehemed Sol-tân, by his means obtained mercy. He was sent to Samarkant; and his treasures were distributed among those who had behaved bravely in the siege. Timûr also conferred the principality of Arzenjân on Tahârten; presenting him, on that occasion, with a crown, and belt of gold enriched with precious stones.

During these transactions the army, which besieged Ay-Bayezid <sup>Bayezid</sup>, gave such furious assaults, that the amîr Bayezid, its <sup>surrenders.</sup>

prince, demanded a truce ; promising to depart as soon as the forces should decamp from before the walls. The general Zirek Yakû consenting to the proposal, Bayezid went out in the night, without his knowledge ; and, arriving at Timûr's camp, fell at the emperor's feet ; who, pleased with his submission, confirmed him in the principality, with a power to establish a governor in the town of Aydîn <sup>y.</sup>

*Georgia invaded.*

Timûr, in pursuance of Mohammed's injunction to his followers, to make war on those who profess a different religion, resolved to carry his arms into Gurjeftân, or Georgia, against Aksîka, prince of that country ; and having passed by the forests of Alatâk, with a very numerous army, arrived at Kârs ; where he received news of the birth of prince Ibrahim Soltân, son of the mîrza Shâh Rukh. Next day Timûr decamped from the meadow of Kârs, for the plain of Minek Gheul. Hither the amîrs, whom he had sent into Georgia, having gained several battles, conquered great part of the country, and taken many strong places, repaired with the spoils, and congratulated the emperor on the birth of his grandson.

*Splendid feast.*

On this occasion, a splendid banquet was prepared. The tents took up two leagues of ground : Timûr's was under a canopy sustained by forty pillars, and as spacious as a palace. Every thing being prepared, his majesty came, with the crown on his head, and sceptre in his hand, and sat on the throne, which was erected in the middle of the tent, adorned with precious stones ; and a great number of the most beautiful ladies of Asia placed on each side, with veils of rich brocade, bedecked with jewels. The music was ranged in two rows ; the voices on the right, and instruments on the left. Nine chaush, as stewards, with golden rods, marched before the dishes which were served up ; they were followed by cup-bearers, having in their hands crystal bottles and golden cups, with red wine of Shîrâz, white of Mazanderân, grey-coloured of Kosrwan, and water exceeding clear. After this festival, the mîrza Shâh Rukh set out for Samarkand, of which his father conferred on him the government.

Timûr's zeal for religion prompting him to undertake the war of Georgia in person, he entered the mountains, destroying all before him. The Kara Kalkânlik (that is, the *Black Bucklers*) having fortified themselves in castles situate on very steep mountains, he marched into their

A.D. 1394.

lands, vanquished and put them all to the sword, seizing their effects. After having indulged his army with some repose, he continued his march to Teflîs, capital of Georgia; and thence to Sheki, from whence troops were detached to pillage the lands of prince Bertâz. A second body entered other mountains, called the Kûhestân of Georgia, governed by Sedi Ali, of Sheki, prince of the house of Erlât; who fled, and left his houses and effects to be destroyed by the enemy. But, while Timûr was employed in harrassing the Christians in this manner, intelligence was brought, that the troops of the khân of Kipjâk, had passed by Dârbend, and ravaged some parts of Shîrwân. In consequence of this information, he immediately departed from Sheki, and arrived at the Ab Kûr (or river Kûr): but, on advice of his march, the enemy fled. Timûr encamped in the plain of Kalin Gombed, near the town of Fakr-abâd in Georgia. There he sent for the empresses and princes from Soltâniâ; and the mîrza Mirân Shâh quitted the siege of Alenjîk to come to court; being informed, on the road, of the birth of a son, whom the emperor named Ayjel<sup>2</sup>.

At the close of winter, Timûr departed for Kipjâk, at the head of a powerful army, to make war on Tokatmîsh (or Toktamîsh) Khân; who, having re-established himself in his kingdom, was daily making irruptions into the emperor's dominions, to repair the loss of his last defeat. Timûr had sent that prince a letter, to know his resolution, and reason for invading his territories; which, with the arguments of the ambassador, Shâms'o'ddin Almâleghi, were so convincing, that he would have concluded a treaty, if his courtiers and generals, whose interest it was to make war, had not persuaded him against it. Shâms'o'ddin, at his return, found Timûr on the river Samnûr, which runs at the foot of mount Albûrz (I), reviewing his army, which extended from thence to the sea, five leagues, and was the most numerons that had been assembled since the time of Jenghîz Khân. Timûr, incensed at the rudeness of the answer, and frivolous reasons alleged by the khân, began his march in order of battle; and, passing Dârbend surprised and cut to

Tokatmîsh  
khân  
invades  
Shîrwân.

<sup>2</sup> Hist. Tim. Bek, p. 478—487. cap. 45—50.

(I) Or AlbûrzKuh; by which is to be understood the ridge of mountains called by Europeans Caucasus; some call it Albrûz, and Brûz.

*Timûr  
meets him.*

pieces the orda of Kaytag, which encamped at the foot of mount Albûrz.

Here an ambassador from Tokatmîsh was actually on the road to the camp ; but, on sight of the army, he returned through fear. At Terki intelligence being brought, that the advanced guard of the enemy were encamped on the river Koy, Timûr, with a body of choice men, advanced in the night, and attacking them by surprize, cut them all off. Thence he continued his route to the Saveni, where he encamped ; at the same time that the khân, with a formidable army, occupied the banks of the Terk ; but, on Timûr's approach, he retreated either through fear, or to gain a more advantageous situation. The emperor crossed the Terk, and marched towards the country of Kûlat, in quest of provisions. Mean while, the scouts having brought advice, that the khân had rallied his troops, and was marching by the lower part of the river, Timûr ranged his army in order of battle ; and, always preserving the rising ground, wheeled about to face the enemy.

*Obstinate  
battle.*

Next morning, Timûr divided his army into seven bodies, placing at the head of them those who had the title of Bahâdr (or *intrepid*), and the infantry before the cavalry, covered with their bucklers. The mirza Mehemed Soltan commanded the main body, strengthened with the bravest men of the army ; while Timûr placed himself at the head of twenty-seven chosen companies, who composed the body of reserve. The battle began with showers of arrows, accompanied with the cries “ Give and slay, hold and take ! ” A great detachment from the enemy's right wing having attacked the left wing of Timûr, the emperor advanced with his reserve, and forced them to give way ; but one of the companies pursuing them to their main body, they rallied, and obliged them to retreat, in their turn, upon the other companies, who, by this shock, were broken, and began to fly. The Kipjâks, taking advantage of this disorder, advanced upon the others, as far as the place where Timûr was posted, whom they boldly attacked ; and, notwithstanding his vigorous resistance, in which he discharged all his arrows, and broke his half-pike to shivers, would have hemmed him in, if the amîr Sheykh Nûroddîn had not dismounted near him, with fifty archers, and kept off the enemy with their arrows.

*Timûr in  
danger.*

The emperor's danger brought others to his assistance : Mehemed Azâd, his brother Ali-shâh, and Tuzel Bawrshi, took three of the enemy's waggons, and joined them just before

before Timûr, to embarrass the enemy, and break the ranks. Allahdâd, at head of his company, dismounting, placed himself near the sheykh Nûroddîn. Huzzayn Mâlek Kûchin and Zirek Yâkû arrived with their clubmen. The regiments of guards came also, with the horsetail erected; and Uftoni, with his company, posted himself behind the guards. All these soldiers, having dismounted, opposed the enemy; who made continual attacks on them, with incredible impetuosity and perseverance. Kodâdâd Huzzayn, who conducted the van-guard of Timûr's left wing, advanced between Konje Aglen, who commanded the enemy's right, and planted himself behind Aktâo, who boldly faced the emperor. Mean while, the mîrza Mehemed Soltân marched to the left of his father, with his recruits; who bravely rushed on the enemy, and, with their scymetars and lances routed their right wing <sup>a</sup>.

The amir Haji Sayfo'ddîn, who commanded the van-guard of the right wing, found himself more pressed than the others; for he was inclosed by the enemy's left; so that despairing of his life, he dismounted with his toman. But, although the Kipjâks continually increased, and charged furiously with their lances and swords, yet Sayfo'ddîn's soldiers kept them at bay till Jehân Shâh Bahâdr, coming to their assistance from another part of the field, fell impetuously with his toman on the enemy. Here an obstinate fight ensued, and a horrible slaughter was made: but at length the van-guard of the Kipjâks left-wing gave way. Mean while, mîrza Rustem, son of Omar Sheykh, though so very young, rushed impetuously on the main body, and put them to flight.

Things being in this situation, Yâghlîb Bahrin, a favourite and relation of Tokatmîsh, advanced with a toman <sup>Gains the victory.</sup> of brave men, and called out to Ozmân Bahâdr to meet him. Ozmân advanced at the head of his toman, and attacked him: after they had broken their sabres, they seized on their war-clubs and poignards; then grappled like two enraged lions. The soldiers of their tomans imitated their chiefs, and fought hand to hand with great fury. At length Ozmân Bahâdr overthrew his antagonist; and fell on his troops with such vigour, that he entirely defeated them. All the other generals performed their duty so bravely, that, after a long and obstinate battle, they put the enemy into disorder: yet they were not certain of the defeat, till Toktamîsh Khân shamefully turned

<sup>a</sup> Hist. Tim. Bek, 487—495. cap. 50—53.

his back, followed by the princes, and generals of his troops. On this incident, Timûr's soldiers rallied; and, joining together, fell upon the enemy, crying, "Victory! Victory!" They slew a great number, and afterwards hung up many of those whom they took alive.

*Pursues  
Toktamîsh.*

Timûr, finding himself victor, gave God thanks on his knees, received the congratulations of his officers; and distributed his treasures liberally on all those who had signalized themselves in the battle, particularly on the amîr Sheykh Nûro'ddîn, who had so signally exposed his life to save his prince, he conferred a higher post, presented him with a horse of great price, a vest of gold brocade, a belt set with precious stones, and a hundred thousand dinârs Kopeji. He likewise made a general promotion of officers. At the Koray (K), he left the baggage and booty; and marched, at the head of his best troops, in pursuit of Tokatmîsh: but when he arrived at the Wolga, the khân having crossed it, he halted at a passage called Tûratû. There he crowned Koyrichak Aglen, son of Urûs Khân, who was an officer of his court, emperor of Kipjâk; and sent him, with the squadron of Uzbeks, over the Wolga, to assemble the troops of his nation, and govern his new subjects. Mean while, the Jagatayans pursued the fugitives as far as Ukek, slaying and taking captives a great number; while others crossed the Wolga on floats: and Tokatmîsh, seeing himself closely pressed, fled into the impenetrable forests of Bûlár (L). The army advanced on the west side of the river, to a place not far from the dark ocean, or Icy sea; and, in their return, ravaged the country, bringing away an immense booty of gold, silver, precious stones, and spotted furs, with many beautiful children.

Timûr, resolving to conquer the rest of Asia, on the side of Kipjâk, entered the great desert, which leads into Europe, at the river Uzi or Boristhenes. At a town called Mankirmen, on that river, he found Bik-yarok Aglen, with other Uzbek Tatars; most of whom were cut to pieces, and their effects seized. Bâsh Temûr Aglen and Aktao crossed the Uzi, and fled into the country of Her-

(K) A river in the Kûhestân of Georgia, which falls into the Caspian sea, to the north of Terki. La Croix.

(L) Bûlár is Bulgâr or Bulgaria, reaching as far as Siberia, along the river Kamâl or Kama, to the Icy Sea. La Croix.

maday

*Makes  
Koyrichak  
khân.*

maday (M); whose inhabitants, being their enemies, so harraffed them, that the tomân of Aktao fled to Isra Yaka in Rûm or Anatolia, and there settled.

Timur then, changing his route, marched towards Muscovy, and Great Russia. At the Tanais (or Don) the army again overtook Bik Yarok, and pursued him as far as Kara Sû (N), a town of Great Russia, which they pillaged. His wives and children, who fell into their hands, were kindly treated by the emperor. This prince went in person to Moskow, which was pillaged; while parties were sent to ravage all the provinces of Great Muscovy, and Urûsjîk or Little Russia; who returned with prodigious droves of cattle, and beautiful captives, besides immense riches of all kinds. Timur afterwards directed his march towards Balchimkin (or the Palus Mæotis); and, arriving at Azâk (O), ordered that the Mohammedans should be set at liberty, and the other inhabitants put to the sword. From hence he marched to Kubân (P): but, as the Cherkas had destroyed all the pasture grounds between those two towns, a great number of horses died, and they suffered much for eight days. From Kubân the mirzas Mehemed Soltân and Mirân Shâh were sent to conquer Cherkassia; from whence they brought away infinite spoil <sup>b</sup>.

After these exploits, Timur returned towards mount Albûrz, in order to exterminate the Christians of Georgia. He accordingly destroyed all their towns and castles, ravaged their lands, and massacred the inhabitants who refused to embrace the religion of Mohammed.

There now remained unconquered in Georgia only the illes; whose inhabitants, called Balekchian, that is, Fisher-men, confided in their insular situation: but, as it was winter, and the waters were frozen two cubits in thickness, the soldiers passed over; and, having pillaged their houses, brought them away prisoners to the camp.

Timur receiving advice from his lieutenant in Astrakhan, of some treasonable practices in Mahmûdi, the go-

<sup>b</sup> Hist. Tim. Bek, p. 495—505. cap. 53—56.

(M) A country between the Borysthenes and Danube. La Croix.

(N) Otherwise called Kores, on the frontiers of Poland. La Croix.

(O) The same with Asof (as the Europeans call it) at the mouth of the Don.

(P) Capital of Cherkassia. La Croix.

*Haji Ter-khan razed.*

vernор, began his march thither, although the winter was extremely severe. He approached the city with only a few men: and, as Mahmûdi was obliged to come out to meet the emperor, he was arrested, and sent towards Saray, under the conduct of the mîrza Pîr Mehemed; who, in his way, ordered his prisoner to be thrust under the ice. Saray, capital of Kipjâk, Timûr reduced to ashes. Then he returned to winter quarters at Bugâz Kom; and ordered the spoils of Saray and Astrakân to be divided among the soldiers.

*Hejra 798.  
A.D. 1396.*

*Georgia farther ravaged.*

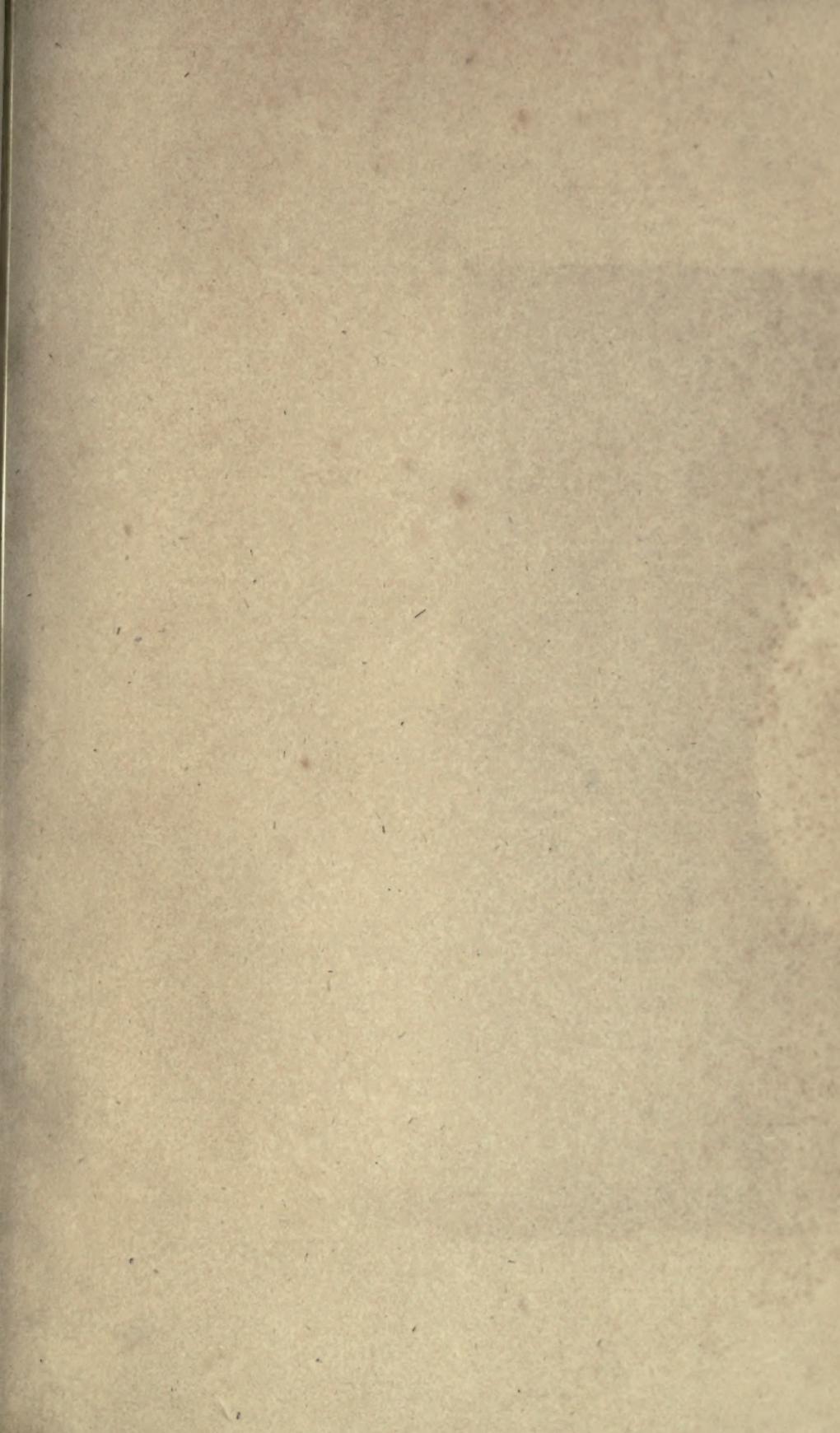
All the countries of Kipjâk and Keser, with the west and north parts of the Caspian Sea, were now reduced under Timûr's dominion: the towns and provinces of those climates had likewise all been plundered, as Ukek, Hungary, Little Russia, Cherkassia, Bâshgorod, Mekes or Moscow, Azâk, Kûbân, and Alân. All the princes of those countries had, moreover, given assurances of their obedience. At the beginning, therefore, of the year 798, Timûr began his march back to Azerbejân; and, in his route, reduced Usheni, and many other places, the inhabitants of which were cruelly butchered. Leaving Georgia, he marched to Dârbend Bakhû, where his army was feasted by sheykh Ibrahîm, prince of Shirwân.

\* Hist. Tim. Bek, p. 505—514, cap. 56—60.

END OF THE FOURTH VOLUME.









9233.

HMod  
M6897

Author

Title Modern [part of an] universal history. Vol. 4.

NAME OF BORROWER.	
DATE.	

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO  
LIBRARY

Do not  
remove  
the card  
from this  
Pocket.

Acme Library Card Pocket  
Under Pat. "Ref. Index File."  
Made by LIBRARY BUREAU

